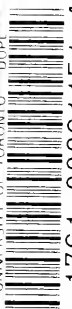


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO D1PI



3 1761 00361151 4

















I

# William of Palerne.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. 1.

1867.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA ; J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Print.  
Pteitol.  
reg.

119

11

THE ROMANCE OF

# William of Palerne:

(OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

THE ROMANCE OF "WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF")

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AT THE COMMAND OF  
SIR HUMPHREY DE BOHUN, ABOUT A.D. 1350;

TO WHICH IS ADDED A FRAGMENT  
OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

## Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN BY THE SAME AUTHOR,  
ABOUT A.D. 1340;

THE FORMER RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE LIBRARY OF KING'S  
COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

THE LATTER NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE  
BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE AUTHOR OF "A MÆSO-GOTHIC GLOSSARY,"  
EDITOR OF "PIERS PLOWMAN," ETC.

38054  
7/10/96

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCLXVII.

[Reprinted 1881.]

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, THE CHAUCER PRESS.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PREFACE.

### INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE:"

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the E. E. T. S.	§ 2.
"William and the Werwolf;" edition of 1832.	§ 3.
Missing portions supplied from the French.	§ 4.
The story.	§ 5.
Description of the MS.	... .. i
Preface to the edition of 1832; by Sir F. Madden. (Reprinted.)	... .. vii
Note on the word "Werwolf;" by Sir F. Madden	... .. xxv

### INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER:"

§ 1. Alliterative Romances of <i>Alexander</i> .	§ 2.
The <i>Alisaunder</i> in MS. Greaves 60, by the author of <i>William of Palerne</i> .	§ 3.
Description of MS. Greaves 60.	§ 4.
The Story.	§ 5.
Its origin.	§ 6.
On the dialect of the poems.	§ 7.
On the distinction between "thou" and "ye."	... .. xxix
WILLIAM OF PALERNE	... .. 1
THE GESTES OF THE WORTHIE KING AND EMPEROUR, ALISAUNDER OF MACEDOINE	... .. 177
Notes to "William of Palerne"	... .. 219
Notes to "Alisaunder"	... .. 236
Glossarial Index	... .. 250
Index of Names	... .. 324



## P R E F A C E.

---

### INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

§ 1. THE "Extra Series" of the publications of the Early English Text Society, of which this is the first volume, is intended to be supplementary to the ordinary series in such a way as to expedite the printing of the whole quantity of work to be printed. It has been proposed that it shall be reserved entirely for reprints and re-editions, and this rule will in general be adhered to. At the same time, a little laxity of definition must be allowed as to what constitutes a *reprint*. Thus, the editions of "Piers Plowman" (Text A) and of "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," being entirely new, and from entirely new sources, have been issued with the ordinary Series, though both have been edited before more than once; whilst, on the other hand, more than a thousand lines, never before printed, have purposely been included in the present volume, as belonging to the same date, and as having been written by the same author as the rest.

§ 2. Of the two poems here printed, it is the former that has been edited before, in a volume of which the title is—"The Ancient English Romance of WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF; edited from an unique copy in King's College Library, Cambridge; with an introduction and glossary. By Frederick Madden, Esq., F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.S.L., Assistant-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. London: printed by William Nicol, Shakspeare-Press. MDCCCXXXII." It forms one of the "Roxburghe Club" series, and only a limited number of copies were printed.

The thorough excellence of both the text and glossary of this edition is known to all who have had the opportunity of access to it, and it has always ranked as a contribution of great importance to our knowledge of Early English literature. Sir F. Madden justly claims to have been one of the first editors who insisted on the necessity of strict and literal accuracy, and it is impossible to say how much we owe to him, directly and indirectly. His edition is, in fact, almost a facsimile of the MS., being printed in black-letter, and with all the contractions of the original, a table of these being added to explain them to the reader. A copy of it having been provided for my use, it was sent to the printer, after I had expanded all the contractions by the use of italic letters, numbered the lines, inserted marks of punctuation, and added side-notes. Had the proof-sheets been corrected by this only, the volume would have contained no error of importance; but I judged it to be due to Sir F. Madden and to subscribers to make it absolutely correct (as I hope it now is, in the text at least,) by reading the proof-sheets with the MS. itself, to which I had ready access through the kindness of Mr Bradshaw, Fellow of King's College, and our University Librarian.<sup>1</sup> I have also added a few words within square brackets where there are obvious omissions; they are chiefly taken from Sir F. Madden's notes. As his glossary contained references to the *pages*, and our object is to have references to the *lines* of the poem, I have re-written it entirely, incorporating with it the more difficult words in the fragment of "Alisaunder." For the sidenotes, most of the notes at the end, and indeed for the whole volume in its present state, I am altogether responsible; but I consider it as no little gain that Sir F. Madden, with very great kindness, has looked over the revises of the whole work, and I am much indebted to him for his suggestions. The glossary is, of course, copied from his almost wholly; but to some illustrative notes that are left entirely in his own words I have drawn special attention by attaching to them the letter "—M." He has also per-

<sup>1</sup> May not some of the alleged difficulty of the study of Old English be fairly attributed to the shameful inaccuracy of some of the texts? The portion of "William and the Werwolf" printed by Hartshorne is, in places, simply inexplicable.

mitted the reprinting of his preface to the former edition, and of his note on the word "Werwolf" (with fresh additions).

§ 3. We are also under great obligations to M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris. To him we owe the transcript of a considerable portion of the beginning of the French version of the poem, enabling me to supply the missing portions of the English version at pp. 1—6 and 19—23, and further to compare the French with the English throughout the first 500 lines; some of the results of which comparison will be found in the "Notes." He even did more; for he secured for us the accuracy of the portions printed by comparing the proof-sheets with the MS. Bibl. de L'Arsenal, *Belles Lettres*, 178, from which his transcript was made.

#### § 4. THE STORY.

Most of the details of the story can be gathered from the "Index of Names" at the end of the volume, and from the head-lines and side-notes, but a *brief* sketch of it may be acceptable.

Embrons, King of Apulia, by his wife Felice, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, had a fair son named William. The brother of Embrons, wishing to be heir to the throne, bribed two ladies, Gloriande and Acelone, to murder the child. But at this very time, as the child was at play (at Palermo), a wild wolf caught him up, ran off with him, swam the Straits of Messina, and carried him away to a forest near Rome, not injuring, but taking great care of him. But while the wolf went to get some food for him, the child was found by a cowherd, who took him home and adopted him. (Now you must know that the wolf was not a true wolf, but a *werwolf* or *man-wolf*; he had once been Alphouns, eldest son of the King of Spain, and heir to the crown of Spain. His step-mother Braunde, wishing her son Braundinis to be the heir, enchanted him so that he became a werwolf.) One day the Emperor of Rome, going out a-hunting, lost his way, and met with the boy William, with whom he was much pleased, and took the child from the cowherd behind him on his horse to Rome, and committed him to the care of his own daughter Melior, to be her page. William, growing up beloved by *everybody*, attracted, as might have been expected, the love of Melior in particular; who, in a long but amusing soliloquy, concludes that, though she is degrading herself to think upon a foundling, she finds it harder still *not* to think of him, and seeks the advice of her dear friend Alisaundrine, a daughter of the Duke of Lombardy. This young damsel bids her be at ease, and, having some slight knowledge of witchcraft, causes William to dream of Melior, and to fall in love with her hope-

lessly. All his consolation is to sit in Melior's garden, and he considers himself sufficiently fed by gazing at her window the whole day. Worn out by this, he falls asleep there, and is found by the two ladies, and, by Alisaundrine's devices, the young couple are soon betrothed; but it has to be kept a great secret, lest the emperor should come to hear of it. About this time the emperor's lands are invaded by the Duke of Saxony. William, knighted for the occasion, is, by his prowess, the chief instrument of the invader's defeat; a defeat which the duke takes so much to heart that he shortly dies of grief. The emperor thanks and praises William greatly, very much to his daughter's delight. But the next circumstance is untoward enough. The Emperor of Greece (who be it remembered, is William's grandfather) sends an embassy, headed by Lord Roachas, to ask the hand of Melior for his son Partenedon. The emperor at once accepts the proposal, and the Emperor of Greece and Prince Partenedon set out for Rome. William falls ill at the news, but is soon recovered by the expressions of devoted constancy which he receives from Melior. The Greeks arrive at Rome, and great preparations are made; what is to be done? Melior and William consult their un-failing friend Alisaundrine, who, not knowing what else to do, steals the skins of two white bears from the royal kitchen, sews her friends up in them, and lets them out by a postern-gate from Melior's garden, and bids them a sad farewell. But they had been observed; for a Greek, walking in this garden, had seen, to his great astonishment, two bears walking off on their hind legs, and tells his companions of his adventure, for which he is well laughed at, nothing more being thought of it at the time. The lovers hurry away till they find a den, wherein they conceal themselves, but fear to die of hunger. In this strait the werwolf finds them, and brings them sodden beef and two flasks of wine, having robbed two men whom he met carrying them. Meanwhile, great are the preparations for the wedding, which is to take place at St Peter's church. But at the last moment, *where is the bride?* The Emperor of Rome, frantic with rage, questions Alisaundrine, who evades his questions, but at last avows her conviction that, if *William* cannot be found, neither will *Melior*. William is indeed missing, and the Greek's story about the two white bears is at once understood, and a hue and cry is raised after them. They are not found, and the Greeks return to their own country. The lovers, still disguised as bears, and guided and fed by the werwolf, flee to Benevento, where they are nearly caught, but escape by the werwolf's help. Finding their disguise is known, they dress up as a hart and hind, and at last, after a strange adventure at Reggio, cross the Straits of Messina to Palermo, the werwolf still guiding them. Palermo is in a state of siege. King Embrons is dead, and Felice is queen, but is hard pressed by the Spaniards, as the King of Spain has asked the hand of her daughter Florence (William's sister) for his son Brannidinis, and, on her refusal, has come to enforce his claim. Queen Felice has a dream of happy omen, and, perceiving the hart and hind, dresses herself also in a hind's skin, and goes to meet them, welcoming them and offering them protection, if

William will deliver her from the Spaniards. Rejoiced at this, William, on Embrons' horse, and with a werwolf painted on his shield, performs marvels, and takes both the King and Prince of Spain prisoners, never to be released till the wicked Queen Braunde shall disenchant the werwolf. She is sent for, and arrives, and reverses the charm, restoring Alphouns to his right shape, for which she is pardoned; and the Prince Alphouns receives great praises for his kindness to William, it being now seen that he did but steal him away to save his life from the plots of King Embrons' brother. By way of further reward, he is to marry Florence, and William is, of course, to marry Melior. William sends a message to this effect to Melior's father, who, for joy to hear that she is alive, promises to come to the wedding, and to bring Alisaundrine with him. At the same time the Emperor of Greece, Queen Felice's father, sends Partenedon his son to Palermo to help the queen against the Spaniards; but the prince is not a little chagrined at finding that he has come to see Melior, whom he once wooed, and whom he lost at the last moment, married to the husband of her own choice. Seeing no help for it, however, he submits as well as he can. But there is another disappointed suitor, Prince Braundinis; can nothing be done for him? It is at once arranged that he can marry Alisaundrine, and the triple wedding of William and Melior, Alphouns and Florence, Braundinis and Alisaundrine, is celebrated in one day; after which, Partenedon returns to Greece, and the Spaniards return to Spain. The Emperor of Rome dying, William is elected to succeed him as emperor, and is crowned at Rome; and Alphouns, his steadfast friend, who has become King of Spain on his father's death, is present at the joyful ceremony. And thus the Queen of Palermo lived to see her dream come true, that her right arm reached over Rome and her left arm lay over Spain; for her son was the emperor of the former country, and her daughter queen of the latter; nor was the kind cowherd forgotten, for his adopted son gave him an earldom, and brought him out of his care and poverty.

It ought to be remarked that the curious fancies about the enchantment of Alphouns into a werwolf, and the dressing up of William and Melior, firstly in the skins of two white bears and afterwards in the skins of a hart and a hind, as also the wearing of a hind's skin by the Queen of Palermo, form the true groundwork of the story, and no doubt, at the time, attracted most attention. To a modern reader this part of the narrative becomes tedious, and one wonders why the disguises were kept on so long. But as a whole, the story is well told, and the translator must have been a man of much poetic power, as he has considerably improved upon his original. For further remarks upon him, see Sir F. Madden's preface, and the "Introduction to Alisaunder."

## § 5. DESCRIPTION OF THE MS.

In addition to Sir F. Madden's remarks, I may observe that the size of the pages of the volume is about 12 inches by 8, and the class-mark is No. 13. The folios have been renumbered, it being ascertained that the missing leaves are the first three and the tenth. Thus *fol.* 1 of the former edition is now called *fol.* 4, and *fol.* 7 is now *fol.* 11. With this slight change, the numbering of the folios in the margin furnishes a ready way of comparing the two editions.<sup>1</sup>

The volume consists of two MSS. :—

I. William of Palerne, here printed ; containing 86 leaves (of which three are lost) ;

II. An imperfect copy of the Lives of the Saints, &c., attributed to Robert of Gloucester, and containing—

1. A description of bible-subjects for Lent, with the passion of Christ, &c. : Begins (fol. 1)—

“Seint marie dai in Leinte · among oþer daies gode”—

ends, “Now ihesu for þe swete crois · þat þou were on ydo

Bring [vs] to þe blisse of h[e]uene · þat þou vs bougtest to.  
AMEN.”

2. *Judas*. Begins (fol. 32)—“Ivdas was a luþer brid · þat ihesu solde to þe rode ;” ends—“þer we weneþ þat he be.”

3. *Pilate*, (fol. 34). “Pilatus was a luþer man · and come of a luþer more ;” ends—“fram so deolfol cas.”

4. *Seint Marie Egipciak*, (fol. 37 *b*). “Seint Marie Egipciake · in egipte was y-bore ;” ends—“þoru penaunce þat heo gan lede.”

5. *Seint Alphe*, (fol. 40 *b*). “Seint alphe þe martir · þat good man was ynow ;” ends—“to þe blisse of heuene wende. AMEN.”

6. *Seint George*, (fol. 43). “Seint George þe holi man · as we findeþ of him y-write ;” ends—“lete vs alle þider wende. AMEN.”

7. *Seint Dunston*, (fol. 44 *b*). “Seint Dunston was in Engelonde . icome of gode more ;” ends—“þat aungles þi soule to bere. AMEN.”

8. *Seint Adelme*, (fol. 46 *b*). “Seint Adelme þe confessour was man of good liue ;” ends—“þat he is on ido. AMEN.”

<sup>1</sup> See also the *Note* at the end of the Glossarial Index.



9. *Seint Austyn*, (fol. 47 *b*). “Seint Austyn þat brouzte · cristen-  
dom to Engelonde ;” ends—“zif we were wel vnderstonde.”

The last poem is imperfect, but has lost *only four lines*, which I venture here to transcribe from MS. Laud. 108, fol. 31 *b*, to complete it :—

“His day is toward þe ende of May · for in þat day he wende  
Out of þis lijf to ihesu crift · þat after him þo sende  
Bidde we zeorne feint Auftin · þat criftindom so brouzte  
þat we moten to þulke Ioye come · to zwan ore louerd uf bouzte.”

The Lives of *Judas*, *Pilate*, and *Seint Dunston* have been printed for the Philological Society, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1862.

Of the names scribbled on the margins of the MS., the one which occurs most frequently is that of Nicholas Williams, to whom it must have belonged in the sixteenth century. We find, on fol. 45, the entry, “Nicholas Williams was poysond, but by God’s grace escaped it. Gloria patri, Amen. by lacon in Salop.” Lacon is a township in the parish of Wem, some ten miles due N. of Shrewsbury.

For remarks upon the *dialect* of the poems, see the end of the “Introduction to Alisaunder,” p. xxxvii.

## PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF 1832.

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

The Romance of “William and the Werwolf,” contained in the present volume, is printed from an unique MS. preserved in the Library of King’s College, Cambridge, and its literary history renders it of more than common interest to the poetical antiquary. It is to the memorable Rowleian controversy we are indebted for the first notice of this poem in its English dress. In that singular dispute, in which Jacob Bryant, Fellow of King’s College, and the Rev. Jeremiah Milles, D.D., Dean of Exeter, so notably distinguished themselves in defence of the pseudo-Rowley and his writings, the former, by a piece of good fortune, stumbled on the Romance, and, still more fortunately for us, resolved to force it into his service

in support of the antiquity of Chatterton's forgeries. Accordingly, in his "Observations," Svo. Lond. 1781, pp. 14—23, he gives a short account of the poem, with a few extracts from it. His argument tends to prove it written in a provincial dialect, and for this purpose he produces a list of words, which he pronounces of a local nature. But however profound Bryant may have been as a classic scholar, he possessed very little, or rather, no knowledge of the formation or genius of the old English language. Indeed, his attempt to prove Chatterton's poetry the production of the 15th century, is quite sufficient to acquit him of any such pretensions. The consequence is natural. Nearly all the words considered by him provincial, are to be met with in every other writer of the period, and even those of rarer occurrence are, for the most part, found in the Scottish alliterative Romances of the same century.<sup>1</sup> But the citations made by Bryant from this MS. were sufficient at a somewhat later period to attract the attention of the kernel of 'black-letter hounds' then in full cry after the pothooks of Shakspeare's prompter's book, and George Steevens, I believe, applied for permission to inspect it. The volume was then in the hands of Dr Glyme, Senior Fellow of King's College, who, like Bryant, was a sturdy Rowleian,<sup>2</sup> and he, fancying

<sup>1</sup> Bryant's blunders in explaining these words are marvellous. A few instances, which may be compared with the Glossary at the end of this volume, will serve to show how little he understood the subject. Thus, he interprets *arud*, around; *bourde*, a public house or shop; *bretages*, bridges; *kud*, good; *kinne*, can; *maid*, madam; *welt*, held; *warder*, further; *boggeslyche*, boyishly! Many are also copied so incorrectly that they can scarcely be recognised, as *eni* for *em*, *asthis* for *aschis*, *genlych* for *gamlyche*, *kevily* for *kenely*, *konchaunce* for *konichaunce*, *wlouke* for *wlonke*, *satheli* for *scathli*, *neege* for *neize* [*neize*], *henden* for *hiezedden* [*hiezedden*], *feyful* for *feizful* [*feizful*], *wyeth* for *wycz*, *fayte* for *fayre*, *path* for *paye*. And yet this is the man who pretended to judge of Chatterton's forgeries, and even correct them by his own notions of Rowley's fancied original. We may truly apply to him some of the precious lines he wastes his commentary on:

" Wordes wythoute sense fulle groffingelye he twynes,  
 Cotteynge his storie off as wythe a sheere;  
 Waytes monthes on nothyng, & hys storie donne,  
 Ne moe you from ytte kenne, than gyf you neere begonne."  
 p. 69. *Ed. Tyrwhitt.*

<sup>2</sup> Dr Glyme bequeathed to the British Museum the original parchments fabricated by Chatterton, which now remain a 'damning proof,' were any wanted, of the imposture. They present a series of the most contemptible and clumsy forgeries.

that an examination of the book might not assist the claims of Rowley to originality, very prudently locked the treasure up, and there it slumbered till it was once more brought to light by the Rev. C. H. Hartshorne, about the year 1824.<sup>1</sup> By permission of the Provost, about 560 lines of the commencement were copied, and they form a portion of a volume intitled "Ancient Metrical Tales," published in 1829, 8vo., pp. 256—287. Of the inaccuracy of this transcript I shall say nothing, as it will sufficiently appear by comparison with the text now printed.

Having thus briefly stated the mode in which this MS. became known to the public, the next point of inquiry will be the author of the poem in its present shape; and here, I regret to add, no information can be gained. All we know on the subject is derived from the writer himself, who tells us, he translated it from the French at the command of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford. These are his words, at the end of the first *fytte* or passus :

Thus passed is the first pas of this pris tale,  
 And 3e that loven and lyken to listen ani more,  
 Alle wizth on hol hert to the hei3 king of hevene,  
 Preieth a pater noster prively this time,  
*For the hend Erl of Herford, sir Hunfray de Bowne,*  
*The king Edwardes newe, at Glouseter that ligges,*  
*For he of Frensche this fayre tale ferst dede translate,*  
*In ese of Englysch men, in Englysch speche.—(fol. 3.)*

And at the end of the poem, in similar but in fuller terms :

*In thise wise hath William al his werke ended,*  
*As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,*  
 And as his witte him wold serve though it were febul<sup>2</sup> . . . .  
 But faire frendes, for Goddes love, and for 3our owne mensk,

MSS. Add. 5766. A.B.C. Alas, for the shade of Rowley! [For specimens of these poems, and critical remarks upon them, see Warton, *Hist. English Poetry*, § xxvi.—W. W. S.]

<sup>1</sup> Weber has, indeed, pointed it out as one of those Romances worthy of publication, but he never saw the MS. itself. See *Metr. Rom. Introd.* p. lxxviii.

[<sup>2</sup> Sir F. Madden did not quote these first three lines in this place (though he quoted them farther on, see p. xxii); but it is worth while to observe that they tell us the poet's own Christian name, which (like his hero's) was *William*.—W.W.S.]

3e that liken in love swiche thinges to here,  
*Preizeth for that gode Lord that gart this do make.*  
*The heude Erl of Hereford, Humfray de Boume ;*  
*The gode king Edwardes douzter was his dere moder :*  
*He let make this mater in this maner speche,*  
*For hem that knowe no Frensche, ne never understo[nd] :*  
 Biddith that blisful burn that bouzt us on the rode,  
 And to his moder Marie, of mercy that is welle,  
*3if the Lord god lif, wil he in erthe lenges,*  
*And whan he wendes of this world, welthe with-oute ende,*  
 To lenge in that liking joye, that lesteth ever more.—(fol. 82.)

It has been the more necessary to quote these passages at length, in order to correct the absurd mistakes of Bryant, who, not understanding the phrases, “at Glouseter that *ligges*,” and “ferst *dede* translate,” nor the import of the line, “3if the Lord god lif,” &c., has supposed, first, that the Earl himself had made a prior translation to the one before us, and secondly, that he was dead and buried at Gloucester, when the second version was undertaken ! It is scarcely necessary to point out, that the words “ferst *dede* translate,” only mean first *caused* to be translated, and are strictly synonymous with “*gart* this do make,” and “*let* make.” Then, as to the Earl’s lying dead at Gloucester, the Poet can have no such meaning, for at the conclusion of the Romance he begs his hearers to pray to God and the Virgin to give the Earl “good life,” and after his decease, eternal felicity. The line simply means, resident or dwelling at Gloucester,<sup>1</sup> and although the term *to ligge* was in subsequent times more often used in the sense understood by Bryant, yet there is no reason, in the above instance, to depart from its original and obvious meaning.

<sup>1</sup> In the 21 Edw. 3, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, obtained the royal license to embattle his Manor-Houses in the Counties of Gloucester, Essex, Middlesex, and Wiltshire. In the former of these only one mansion is mentioned, that of Whitenhurst, or Wheatenhurst, situated about eight miles south from Gloucester, and it is very probable that this is the spot alluded to in general terms by the Poet. We know, moreover, that the Earl was not buried at Gloucester, but at the Augustine Friars, in London, which he had himself re-edified in 1354. See Dugdale, Baron, i. 184 ; Rudder’s Gloucest. p. 813 ; and Stowe’s Survey, p. 185.

The nobleman thus alluded to was the sixth Earl of Hereford of the name of Bohun, and third son of Humphrey de Bohun, fourth Earl of Hereford, and Elizabeth Plantagenet, seventh daughter of King Edward the First; consequently he was nephew to King Edward the Second, as intimated in the poem, and first cousin to King Edward the Third. He succeeded to the earldom at the age of twenty-four, on the death of his brother John without issue, 20th Jan., 1335-6, and died, unmarried, 15th Oct., 1361.<sup>1</sup> We are, therefore, enabled to fix the date of the composition of the English Romance with sufficient accuracy, nor shall we greatly err, if we refer it to the year 1350. This will agree extremely well with the scanty notices transmitted to us of De Bohun's life, which, like most of those relating to the belted barons of this chivalric period, are chiefly of a military character.<sup>2</sup> Yet it may be doubted whether, as a soldier, the Earl of Hereford was at any time distinguished, and whether he may not have been confounded by Froissart with his brother, the Earl of Northampton. And this conjecture corresponds with the instrument preserved in Rymer,<sup>3</sup> dated 12th June, 1338, by which the King ratifies Humphrey de Bohun's resignation of his hereditary office of Constable of England, in favor of his brother, "*tam ob corporis sui inbecillitatem, quam propter infirmitatem diuturnam qua detinetur, ad officium Constabularie exercendum,*" &c. We may, therefore, with

<sup>1</sup> Dugd. Baron. i. 184.; Milles, p. 1072.

<sup>2</sup> In 1337, he was entrusted with the guard of the important garrison of Perth in Scotland. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). Three years afterwards he is said to have taken a part, together with his warlike brother, William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton, in the battle of the Sluys, fought in the King's presence, (Froissart, by Lord Berners, f. 30. Ed. 1525), and commemorated by Laurence Minot, a contemporary poet. The next year, 1341, we meet with him in the magnificent feast and jousts held by the King at London in honor of the Countess of Salisbury—the same to whom the noble Order of the Garter is said to owe its origin (Froissart, f. 46). In 1342, he was ordered to provide forty men of arms and sixty archers for the King's service in Brittany, and to attend the Council at London, to treat concerning their wages. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). In 1346 he accompanied the King into France to relieve the town of Aguilon, then besieged by the French, (Froissart, f. 59*b*); but it is not stated by our historians whether he was present at the famous battle of Cressy, fought shortly after. In 1359, he again attended the King on a similar expedition, (Froissart, f. 100), and nothing further is recorded of him till his death, which took place two years afterwards.

<sup>3</sup> Vol. v. p. 52.

great probability conclude, that the Earl's weak state of bodily health exempted him from taking an active part in the warfare of the time, although he might have assisted the King with his counsels. To the same cause we may doubtless ascribe that love for literature which induced him to cause the Romance of William and the Werwolf to be translated from the French,—not, as is evident, for his own use, since French was then the language of the Court, but for the benefit of those persons of the middle class, to whom the French language was unknown. By the influence of a similar motive, we possess the translations made by Robert of Brunne at the commencement of this century :

“Not for the lerid bot the lewed,  
 For tho that in this land wom,  
 That the Latyn no Frankys com,  
 For to haf solace and gamen,  
 In felawschip whanne thai sit samen.”<sup>1</sup>

Higden's testimony to the prevalence of French in the education of gentlemen's children at that period is very precise, and it became so much the fashion towards the middle of the century, that a proverb was made of inferior persons who attempted to imitate the practice of the higher classes : “Jack wold be a gentylman yf he coude speke Frensshe.”<sup>2</sup> Trevisa adds, that “this was moche used tofore the grete deth [1349], but syth it is somdele chaunged ;” which was, doubtless, accelerated by the Act passed in 1362, ordering all pleadings to be in the English tongue, and much more by the popular compositions of Gower, Chaucer, and the author of *Piers Plouhman*. From all these circumstances it would seem most probable that the work was executed after the Earl's return from France, in 1349, between which year and his second expedition in 1359, he appears to have resided on his estates. That this style of composition was much admired and encouraged in England during the 14th century is apparent from the alliterative Romances still extant of the period. But it is very seldom we are indulged with the names of the persons by whom or for whom these poems were written, and, in

<sup>1</sup> Prol. to Chron. ap. Hearne, Pref. p. xcvi.

<sup>2</sup> Descr. of Brit. c. 15. Ed. 1515. *Jud. Notary*.

that respect, the present poem becomes more intitled to notice, from its introducing us to a nobleman, whose claims to biography are so very feeble, and who would never otherwise have been known as a patron of literature.

The history, however, of the Romance does not conclude here. We must next trace it in its original form ; and here, also, we shall find some circumstances which render it worthy of attention. The origin and progress of French poesy, both of the Trouvères and Troubadours, have been successfully illustrated by Fauchet, Roquefort,<sup>1</sup> De la Rue, Raynouard, and others, but, more particularly, by the authors of the *Histoire Littéraire de la France*. From these authorities we know that many Romances were composed by the Norman poets previous to the year 1200, which subsequently became the text-books of the English versifiers of the 14th century. Most of these were founded on the two great sources of fiction throughout Europe ; the exploits of Charlemagne and his *Douze Pairs*, and of Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, amplified from the fictitious histories of Turpin and Geoffry of Monmouth. The chief exceptions to this cycle of poetry at the period we are treating of, are the Romances of Havelok, Horn, Benoit's *Guerre de Troie*, Garin le Loherain, Alexander, Athys et Porfilias, Florimond, Gerard de Rousillon, and, perhaps, some few others composed by Raoul de Houdane, and Thiebaut de Mailli, all of which come under the class

<sup>1</sup> When speaking of our English Romances, Roquefort is by no means to be relied on. Thus, describing the English *Kyng Horn*, he says it was composed in the 8th or 9th century. He then confounds it with the Frankish fragment of Hildebrand and Hathubrand, published by Eckard, and takes Ritson to task, for saying that the French text was the original ; who would not, he writes, have committed such an error, if he had consulted MS. Harl. 2253, where the Romance exists in Anglo-Saxon !!! The reply is easy. The copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Harleian MS. was written about the year 1300, and it was from this very MS. Ritson published his text. The editor of the present volume [i. e. of the edition of 1832] was fortunate enough to discover another copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Bodleian, of the same age, which, in many respects, gives preferable readings. M. Roquefort goes on to call the Auchinleck MS. a collection of *French* poetry, &c. See his Dissertation "*De l'état de la Poésie Française dans les xii. et xiii. siècles.*" 8vo. Paris, 1815, pp. 48, 49. [NOTE. There is a still better copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Cambridge University Library, first printed for the Bannatyne Club by Mr T. Wright, and reprinted by Mr Lumby in his edition, published for the E. E. T. S. in 1866.—W. W. S.]

of *Romans mixtes*. Among these also we are intitled to place our Romance of William and the Werwolf, the title of which in the original, is, *Roman de Guillaume de Palerne*. The popularity of this singular tale, (which one would suppose was formed on some Italian tradition, picked up by the Norman adventurers in Apulia and Sicily), must have been considerable, since in the ancient inventories of the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy, taken in 1467 and 1487, we find no less than three copies of it.<sup>1</sup> At present, the catalogues of MSS. in England have been searched in vain for the poem, and in France, on a similar inquiry being made, only *one* copy has been discovered, preserved in the Bibliothèque de l' Arsenal, at Paris,<sup>2</sup> and, to all appearance, is the same MS. which was formerly at Brussels.<sup>3</sup> By the obliging attentions of M. Van Praet, the distinguished Librarian of the Bibliothèque Royale, the Editor is enabled to give some account of this unique volume. It is a vellum MS. of a small folio size, consisting of 157 leaves, and written in double columns of 31 lines each, towards the close of the thirteenth century. It contains the *Roman d' Escouffle* (fol. 1—77), and the *Roman du Guillaume de Palerne*. The latter commences thus :

Nus ne se doit celer ne taire, &c.,<sup>4</sup>

and ends in the following manner :

Del roi Guillaume et de sa mere,  
 De ses enfans et de son guerre, (?)  
 De son empire et de son regne,  
 Trait li estoires ci a fin.  
 Cil qui tos iors fu et sans fin  
 Sera, et pardoune briement,  
 Il gart *la contesse Yolent*,  
 La boune dame, la loial,  
 Et il descort son cors de mal.

<sup>1</sup> See a curious volume, intitled "Bibliothèque Prototypographique." 4to. Paris, 1830, pp. 199, 302, 323.

<sup>2</sup> Marked *Belles Lettres*, 178.

<sup>3</sup> See the work just cited, p. 323. It is there called of the *fourteenth* century.

<sup>4</sup> Here Sir F. Madden quotes the first 24 lines, which I omit, as, by the great kindness of M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale, I am enabled to give much longer extracts; see pp. 1—6, and 19—23, of this book.—W. W. S.]



*Cest liare jist diter et faire,  
 Et de Latin en Roumans traire.  
 Proions dieu por la bonne dam[e]  
 Quen bon repos en mete lame,  
 Et il nous doinst ce deseruir,  
 Qua boine fin puissons venir. Amen.  
 Explicit li Roumans de Guillaume de Palerne.*

The lady here referred to can be no other than Yoland, eldest daughter of Baldwin IV., Count of Hainault, and Alice of Namur. She was married, first, to Yves, or Yvon, Count of Soissons, surnamed *le Viel*, who is characterised by an old Chronicler as a nobleman “de grande largesse, et sage sur tous les Barons de France.”<sup>1</sup> On his death, without issue, which took place in 1177, she married, secondly, Hugh Candavene IV., Count of St. Paul, by whom she had two daughters, the eldest of which carried the title into the family of Chastillon. By the union of Judith, daughter of Charles the Bold, with Baldwin I., Count of Flanders, the Countess Yoland claimed descent from the blood of Charlemagne, and by the marriage of her brother Baldwin the Courageous with Margaret of Alsace, heiress of Flanders and Artois, she became aunt to Baldwin VI., Count of Hainault and Flanders, who in 1204 was elected Emperor of Constantinople,<sup>2</sup> and to Isabel of Hainault, who, in 1180, shared the throne of Philip Augustus, King of France. Such was the splendid alliance of the lady to whom our poem owes its origin. In accordance with the prevailing taste of the age, we find the Counts of Hainault and Flanders distinguished patrons of poesy. Chrestien de Troyes is said to have dedicated several of his Romances to Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, who died in 1191,<sup>3</sup> and Baldwin V., Count of Hainault,

<sup>1</sup> Du Chesne; Hist. de la Maison de Chastillon, fol. Par. 1621. *Preuves*, p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> The author of the analysis of this Romance, in the *Nouv. Bibl. des Romans*, t. ii. p. 41, who copies from the printed prose version, hereafter to be noticed, makes a singular mistake, by confounding the Countess of St. Paul with Yoland, sister of the Emperor Baldwin, and wife of Peter de Courteney, who was subsequently, in her right, Emperor of Constantinople, and died in 1221. He says also, that the Countess Yoland found the Romance among the papers of her nephew after his death [1205], but this is a mere invention of the writer himself, and contradicted by the original text.

<sup>3</sup> Hist. Litt. de la France, xiii. 193.

having found at Sens, in Burgundy, a MS. of the Life of Charlemagne, gave the work at his death [1195] to his sister Yoland (the same lady above mentioned), who caused it to be translated into French prose.<sup>1</sup> We have once more to lament that the author of our original (most probably, a native of Artois,) should have concealed his name, but the time of its composition may be assigned between 1178, the probable date of her marriage with the Count of St. Paul, and the year 1200. The Count died at Constantinople before 1206, and Yoland did not, in all probability, survive him long. She was, certainly, alive in 1202, as appears from an instrument in Du Chesne. This Romance may therefore be ranked among the earliest of those composed at the close of the 12th century, and it is surprising it should have been overlooked by Roquefort and the Benedictines.

At a much later period, apparently, at the beginning of the 16th century, this poem was converted into French prose. Three editions of it are known to book-collectors; the first printed at Paris, by Nicolas Bonfons, 4to *litt. goth.*; <sup>2</sup> the second at Lyons, 1552, by Olivier Arnoult, 4to; <sup>3</sup> and a third at the same place (probably a reprint) by the widow of Louis Coste, *s. a.* about 1634. The ‘traducteur,’ in a short preface, tells us he obtained the original by gift of a friend, and finding the language to be “romant antique rimoyé, en

<sup>1</sup> *Ib.* xiii. 386. Fauchet, *Recueil de l’Origine de la Langue Française*, fol. Par. 1581; p. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Copies of this exist in the British Museum, and in Mr Douce’s library. In the former there is a note in the handwriting of Ritson, who supposes it to have proceeded from the press of Nicholas, the father of John Bonfons, whose son Nicholas printed from about 1550 to 1590. The title is as follows: “*L’Histoire du noble preux & vaillant Chevalier Guillaume de Palerne. Et de la belle Melior. Lequel Guillaume de Palerne fut filz du Roy de Cecille. Et par fortune & merueilleuse aventure devint vacher. Et finalement fut Empereur de Rome souz la conduicte dun Loupgaroux filz au Roy Despayne.*” The text is accompanied with wood-cuts. This volume is noticed both by Du Verdier, t. iv. p. 169, Ed. Juvigny, and *Bibl. des Romans*, t. ii. p. 245, but neither of these writers mention the author. [NOTE. Besides these three, there is a *fourth* edition, printed at Rouen by Louys Costé (about 1620?), of which there is now a copy in the British Museum (class-mark 12513e). It is in Roman type, not black-letter, and seems to be merely copied from the first edition. A search for a particular passage shewed that both prose versions omit the portion contained in ll. 2449—2567.—W. W. S.]

<sup>3</sup> See Dr Dibdin’s *Tour*, vol. ii. p. 337, who describes a copy of this, and the later edition, in the *Bibliothèque de l’Arsenal*.

sorte non intelligible ne lisible," he turned it into modern French, with some additions of his own, for the assistance of those who might wish to read it: "Car en icelle lisant," he adds, "pourra l'on veoir plusieurs faictz d'armes, d'amours, & fortunes innumerables, & choses admirables, q' aduindrent au preux & vaillant cheualier Guillaume de Palerne, duquel l'histoire port le nom." He afterwards adverts to the Countess Yoland, and her nephew Baldwin, Emperor of Constantinople, who was slain by the infidels at the siege of Adrianople, in 1205. And adds: "Pour l'honneur de laquelle & de si haut empereur pouuons facilement accroistre les choses au present liure contenues." Whether the story will appear quite so credible at the present day is rather questionable. The French bibliographers are silent as to the author of this prose version, and Dr Dibdin's sagacity seems to have failed him here. But at the end of the volume is an acrostic of twelve lines, the first letters of which form the name of *Pierre Durand*, who, no doubt, is the compiler. Any further information respecting him I have been unable to obtain, unless he is the same with the Pierre Durand, Bailli of Nogent le Rotrou, en Perche, mentioned by Lacroix du Maine, who adds, that he was an excellent Latin poet, and composed many inedited verses both in Latin and French.<sup>1</sup> No notice is supplied of the period at which he lived. It was, most likely, from this prose translation, that the imperfect analysis of the Romance was borrowed, printed in the *Nouvelle Bibliothèque des Romans*, tom. ii. pp. 41—68, 12mo. Par. an. vi. [1808] where it is placed in the class of "Romans de Féerie," although professedly extracted from a MS. of the 14th century.

By the assistance of Durand's version we are enabled to judge of the accuracy of the English versifier, since they both translate from the same text, and it is surprising how closely the latter has adhered ✓ to his original. Another advantage gained from it is to supply the *hiatus* which, unfortunately, occur in the English poem. To avoid the prolixity of the prose author, the substance of the passages wanting, is here annexed: <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Bibl. Françaises, tom. ii. p. 272; ed. 1772. He is said also to have had an *enigma* or rebus in the front of his house, which seems to indicate the same taste which prompted the composition of the acrostic cited above.

[<sup>2</sup> These missing passages are supplied in this re-edition from the original rimed French version.—W. W. S.]

“There was formerly a King of Sicily, named Ebron, who was also Duke of Calabria and Lord of Apulia; rich and powerful above all other princes of his time. He married Felixe, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, and not long after their union, they were blessed with a son named William, the hero of the present story. The infant was intrusted to the care of two sage and prudent ladies, named Gloriande and Esglantine, who were chosen to superintend his nurture and education. But the brother of King Ebron, foreseeing that his succession to the throne would be now impeded, soon formed a resolution to destroy the boy, and, by means of promises and bribes so wrought on the governesses, that they at length consented to a plan by which both the Prince and King were to be put to death. At that time the Court was held at the noble city of Palerne [Palermo], adjoining to which was a spacious garden, abounding with flowers and fruits, in which the King was often accustomed to take his recreation. But one day, when Ebrons was walking here, accompanied by the Queen and the Prince (then about four years old), attended by the two governesses, an event took place which turned all their joy into the deepest consternation and grief. For, whilst the King’s brother and the two ladies were holding a secret conference how to carry their project into execution, a huge werwolf, with open jaws and bristled mane, suddenly rushed forth from a thicket, at which the ladies were so terrified, that they swooned away, and the rest fled, leaving the child alone, who was immediately carried off, without injury, by the beast. The King ordered pursuit to be made, but in vain, for the swiftness of the animal soon enabled him to distance his pursuers; to the great distress of the monarch and his court. The werwolf bore the child away to a place of safety, and thence, pursuing his course night and day, at length conveyed him to a forest, not far from the city of Rome, where he remained some time, taking care to provide what was necessary for his sustenance; and having dug a deep pit, and strewed it with herbs and grass for William to sleep on, the beast was accustomed to fondle the boy with his paws in the same manner a nurse would have done.”

Here commences the English Romance, which, with the exception of a folio (or 72 lines) missing between ff. 6—7, proceeds regularly to the end. This second defect occurs at the close of the Emperor’s speech to his daughter Melior, and the text again begins with Melior’s reproaches to herself for loving William. What intervenes may be easily supplied, even from fancy, but in the prose Romance we read as follows :

“The Emperor’s daughter received the infant, which proved of so gentle a disposition, that it seemed to have been bred at court all its life-time. It was soon clothed in dresses of silk and velvet, and

became the plaything of the fair Melior. ‘Et alors,’ says the writer, ‘Je faisoit mout beau veoir : car en toute la court ny auoit si bel enfant que luy, ne si aduenant. Sobre estoit en son manger & boire, facilemens fut apprins à seruir les dames à tables ; a tous ieux, & à deuiser & à dire ioyeuses sornetes a tous propos.’ But above all, William studied how best to serve his lady and mistress Melior, whom he loved above every one else. As he advanced in age he began to share in the chivalrous exercises of the time ; to bear arms, ride on the great horse, and practise various feats of strength, all for the love of Melior, his ‘mie’ ; and so great a favourite was he with all the ladies and demoiselles, that Melior heard of nothing but his praises. The Emperor, too, was so fond of William, as to keep him constantly by his side. In the mean time, the Princess would often withdraw to her chamber to dwell secretly on the personal attractions and graceful demeanor of William, and was at length so pierced by love’s keen arrow, that she could not refrain from sighing, and desiring to hold him in her arms. But then again, considering with herself, that a lady of her noble birth ought not to bestow her affection on any one but a Knight of her own rank, she often vainly endeavoured to drive William from her thoughts.”

The remaining part of *‘la belle Melior’s* soliloquy will be found in our poem, and the translation is sufficiently *naïve* to be interesting even to those who may, in general, despise the simple language of our old Romances.

The tradition developed in this story, and which forms its chief feature, namely, the transformation of a human being into a wolf, but still retaining many of the attributes of his nature, has been so learnedly and ably discussed by the author of the Letter annexed to the present remarks,<sup>1</sup> as to render any additional illustration unnecessary. But it may not be improper here to suggest, that the belief in this notion in the southern provinces of Europe may have been partly derived through the medium of the Northmen, among whom, as appears from various authorities, it was very general. A curious story of a *were-bear* in Rolf Kraka’s Saga is quoted by Sir Walter Scott,<sup>2</sup> which has some slight features of resemblance with our werewolf, and it is singular, that this metamorphosis should have been accomplished by striking the person transformed with a glove of *wolf-skin*. In the

<sup>1</sup> [In the Edition of 1832, a Letter by the Hon. Algernon Herbert, addressed to Lord Cawdor, on the subject of Werewolves, was annexed to the Preface.—W. W. S.]

<sup>2</sup> Border Minstr. ii. 110, ed. 1803. [The story, condensed, is given in S. Baring-Gould’s *Book of Werewolves*, pp. 21—27.—W. W. S.]

*Volsaige Saga*, also, cap. 12, we read of the similar change of Sigmund and Siufroth into wolves.<sup>1</sup> In general, the transformation was supposed to be accomplished, as in our Romance, by the aid of certain magical unguents.<sup>2</sup> With regard to the supposed form of these werwolves, and whether they differed from those of natural wolves, I have searched many writers, without much success, but Boguet informs us, that in 1521, three sorcerers were executed, who confessed they had often become *Loupsgaroux*, and killed many persons.<sup>3</sup> A painting was made to commemorate the fact, in which these werwolves were each represented with a knife in his right paw. This picture, we are told, was preserved in the church of the Jacobins, at Pouligny,<sup>4</sup> in Burgundy. One distinctive mark, however, of a werwolf is said to have been the absence of a tail,<sup>5</sup> yet this does not seem to correspond with the vulgar notions on the subject, since in the wooden cut prefixed to the prologue of the prose translation of this Romance, representing the werwolf carrying off the infant Prince of Palermo, there certainly appears a tail of due proportions.

On the style in which this poem is written, and its peculiarities of language, it is needless to dwell long. The history of our alliterative poetry has already been illustrated by Percy, Warton, and Conybeare, and the principle on which it was composed, even to so late a date as the middle of the 16th century, is sufficiently known.<sup>6</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> Biörner's *Kämpa-Dieter*, fol. 1737. [See S. Baring-Gould's *Book of Werewolves*, p. 18.—W. W. S.]

<sup>2</sup> See *Discours des Sorciers*, par Henry Boguet, 12mo. Lyon, 1608. 2de ed. pp. 363, 369; Verstegan's *Restitution of Decayed Intelligence*, 4to. Antv. 1605, p. 237; Jamieson's Dictionary, in v. *Warwolf*, and Nynauld's treatise *De la Lycanthropic*, Svo., Par. 1625, where several of these ointments are described.

<sup>3</sup> Another account says *two* sorcerers, named Pierre Bourgot and Michel Verdung. See *A Book on Werewolves*, by S. Baring-Gould, p. 69.]

<sup>4</sup> Boguet, p. 341. *Wierus de Præstigiis*, lib. v. c. 10.

<sup>5</sup> Boguet, pp. 340, 361. [A little girl described a werwolf as "resembling a wolf, but as being shorter and stouter; its hair was red, *its tail stumpy*, and the head smaller than that of a genuine wolf." See the story in S. Baring-Gould's *Book on Werewolves*, p. 91.—W. W. S.]

<sup>6</sup> See *Essay in the Reliques of English Poetry*, vol. ii.; Warton's *Hist. of Engl. Poetry*, vol. ii. § 10, Svo. ed.; Whitaker's *Introductory Discourse to Piers Plouhman*, and Conybeare's *Essay on Anglo-Saxon Metre*, prefixed to the *Illustrations of Anglo-Saxon Poetry*, Svo., Lond. 1826. [In the new edition of Bp Percy's *Folio MS.* by Hailes and Furnivall, Percy's *Essay* has been replaced by a fuller and longer one by myself, to which I beg leave to refer the reader.—W. W. S.]

lines in the poem consist of an indeterminate number of syllables, from eleven to thirteen, but sometimes more or less, which, like *Piers Plouhman*, and other compositions of this class, may be divided into distichs, at the cæsural pause, so as to give them the Saxon character on which they are all formed. Thus, for instance :

Hit bi-fel in that forest,  
                   there fast by-side,  
 There woned a wel old cherl,  
                   that was a couherde,  
 That fele winterres in that forest  
                   fayre had kepud, &c.

It adds, however, to the value of this Romance, that we have in it the earliest specimen of unrimed alliterative metre yet discovered ; for of the other pieces of this kind extant, there is not one which may not be placed subsequent to *Piers Plouhman*, composed after the year 1362.<sup>1</sup> It is also matter of satisfaction to be able to fix the date of this work prior to the period which produced such writers as Gower and Chaucer. We can now trace the English language step by step from the year 1300, since the writings of Robert of Gloucester, Robert of Brunne, Robert Davies, William of Shoreham,<sup>2</sup> Robert Rolle, and Laurence Minot, lead us up to the precise period when our poem was composed, and which forms the connecting link with Langland and the subsequent writers. Without deciding with Bryant, that our Romance betrays very distinctly a provincial dialect, we may accede to his conjecture of its author being, probably, a native of Gloucestershire, or an adjoining county ; although the orthography by no means betrays that decided western pronunciation

<sup>1</sup> Mr Conybeare is certainly mistaken in assigning the Romances of *Sir Gawayn* and *Alexander* to the 13th century, as I shall endeavour to show in another place. [See Sir F. Madden's notes to *Sir Gawayn*. See on the other hand my "Introduction to *Alisaunder*," (p. xxx), which poem is now found to be somewhat earlier than "*William of Palerne*."—W. W. S.]

<sup>2</sup> The poems of this writer, who flourished from 1320 to 1340, are preserved in an unique MS. belonging to Alexander Henderson, Esq., of Edinburgh, who intends, at some period or other, giving them to the public. [*The Religious Poems of William de Shoreham* were edited for the Percy Society by T. Wright, M.A., London, 1849. The MS. is now MS. Additional 17376 in the British Museum.—W. W. S.]

which characterises the poems ascribed to Robert of Gloucester. Of his ability as a poet we ought on the whole to form a favorable judgment; and when we consider the fetters imposed on him by the metre he adopts, and by the closeness of his translation, we may readily forgive the repetitions he abounds in, as well as the somewhat tedious minuteness of his narrative. There are some lines, such as for instance these :

And than so throli thouztes thurlen myn herte,  
That I ne wot in the world where it bi comse ;

and again,

So many maner ministracie at that mariage were,  
That when thei made here menstracie, eche man wende  
That heven hastili and erthe schuld hurtel to gader ;

which would seem to mark the author capable of better things. But the poet shall plead his own apology, in some lines at the close of the Romance :

In this wise hath William al his werke ended,  
As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,  
And as his witte him wold serve, though it were febul ;  
*But though the metur be nouzt mad at eche mannes paye,*  
*Wite him nouzt that it wrouzt, he wold have do beter*  
*3if is witte in eny weizes wold him have served.*

It would seem from this, as if the alliterative form of alexandrine verse had not yet become popular, and was, in fact, but lately introduced. It is worth observing also, that the number of French words here introduced, will serve to exonerate Chaucer from the charge made against him of debasing the English language by Gallicisms. Such a remark could only have come from one ignorant of what early English literature owes to our continental neighbours.

There are some minuter details respecting the grammatical construction of the poem, which perhaps deserve notice, such as the use of the present tense for the past, as *askes, arise, bere, seweth*, &c., for *asked, arose, bore, sewede*, &c., the use of the singular for the plural (if, indeed, it be not a contracted form of the plural, which I am inclined to believe, like *childer* from *children*), in the instances of *daie*,



*dede, burgryys, bere, &c.*, for *daies, dedes, burgryyses, beres, &c.*; but the fact is, these are not peculiarities, but authorised by usage, and many similar forms are retained, even at present, in familiar conversation, particularly among the lower classes.

It only remains to give a brief description of the MS. from which the present poem has been transcribed. It is a moderate-sized folio, written on vellum soon after the middle of the 14th century, and consisting of 130 folios, 82 of which are occupied by the Romance. A quire is wanting at the commencement, and a single leaf shortly after. The text is disposed in single columns, of 36-lines in a page, and the writing is in a remarkably distinct, but rather thick and inelegant, letter, with small blue and red initials.<sup>1</sup> . . . .

At the conclusion of the Romance, f. 86, is written in a hand of the early part of the 16th century as follows:<sup>2</sup> “ Praye we all to that heaven kinge that made all y<sup>e</sup> world off nowght to *pardou* the solle of humfray boune, that was erlle of herford, for hys grete dylygens and peyns takyng to translate thys boke owt off freynche In to englys; to y<sup>e</sup> entent to kepe youythe from ydellnes, [he] hathe sete furthe thys goodly story, wher apon we showld bestow *our* tym apon the holy day, & suche other tymes when we haue lytle or nothyng a doying elles, & In so doynge ye may put away all ydell thowghtes & pensyffnes [of] harte, for the wyche traueyll pray we all to that heuyn kyng to graunt hym eternal lyf for hys good wyll.” The rest of the volume is occupied by a portion of the Metrical Lives of the Saints, composed in the reign of Edward the First, and written in a different and rather earlier hand. The lives are those of *Judas, Pilatus, Seint Marie Egiptiak, Seint Alphe, Seint George, Seint Dunston, Seint Abdelme, and Seint Austyn*.<sup>3</sup> There are several other

[<sup>1</sup> I here omit the words “ A fac-simile of the first seven lines is subjoined,” which are followed by the fac-simile itself. The marks of abbreviation are explained further on; see p. xxiv. A peculiarity of the MS. is that the initial letter of every line is separated from the rest by a slight space, as in Sir F. Madden’s edition. The central metrical pause is *nowhere* marked by a dot. I am responsible for the *insertion* of these, which will, I believe, be found to assist the reader.—W. W. S.]

[<sup>2</sup> These words were clearly suggested by the concluding lines of the poem, and it was hence, perhaps, that Bryant adopted the idea that Sir Humphrey translated the French *himself*.—W. W. S.]

[<sup>3</sup> There is a poem preceding *Judas*, and belonging to the same series. See the first lines, &c., on p. vi.—W. W. S.]

perfect copies of these curious legends in existence. With respect to the history of this MS. volume before it was presented to King's College Library, I could gain no information, nor even the name of the donor. There are several names scribbled on the margins, but all of a late period, and of no importance.

The Romance has been printed, as nearly as possible, in exact accordance with the MS., and not the slightest liberty has been taken, either with the punctuation or the orthography. It is, in short, as near a fac-simile of the original as could be imitated by typography. But for the convenience of those unacquainted with the mode of contracting words in old MSS., a list of the abbreviations is placed at the end of these remarks. The Glossary has been compiled with much care, and rendered as comprehensive as possible, but with all due regard to avoid unnecessary prolixity. Only those words are illustrated which appeared absolutely to require it: it being deemed in other cases sufficient to mark the immediate derivation of the term.

The Editor, in conclusion, has to express his thanks to the Rev. George Thackeray, D.D., Provost of King's College, for his permission to copy the MS.; and also to Martin Thackeray, Esq., M.A., Vice Provost; John Heath, Esq., M.A., Dean; and George Crauford Heath, Esq., M.A., Bursar of the College, for their very obliging attentions during the residence made among them.

FREDERICK MADDEN.

*British Museum, January 6th, 1832.*

---

#### MARKS OF ABBREVIATION.

Ω, *con* or *com*, as Ωscil, Ωfort—[*conseil, comfort*].

ʔ, *er*, above the line, as pid'e, daung', man', s'ue, wint'res, p'e, gou'ne, v'aly—[*pidere, daunger, maner, serue, winterres, p'ere, gouerne, veraly*]. After p', *re*, as p'stely—[*prestely*].

ihc, *Ihesus*.\*

p, *per* or *par*, as pile, ptizes, spe—[*perile, partizes, spere*].

[\* See note to l. 692. W. W. S.]

Ɔ, *pro*, as Ɔfite, Ɔue—[*profite, prove*].

q, *quod*—[*quod*].

<sup>i</sup>, *ri*, above the line, as p<sup>i</sup>n<sup>i</sup>ce, c<sup>i</sup>ft—[*prince, crist*].

ˆ, *ra*, above the line, as f<sup>ˆ</sup>m, g<sup>ˆ</sup>ce, p<sup>ˆ</sup>y—[*fram, grace, pray*]—sometimes *a*, as Will<sup>ˆ</sup>m—[*William*]. \*

˜, *ur*, above the line, as ſ<sup>˜</sup>ſe, t<sup>˜</sup>ne, ō—[*murſe, turme, our*].

The simple stroke over a letter denotes the absence of *m* or *n*, as s<sup>ˆ</sup>u, h<sup>ˆ</sup>i, ho<sup>ˆ</sup>ud—[*sum, him, hound*].

## NOTE ON THE WORD "WERWOLF."

(Reprinted, with additions, from the edition of 1832.)

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

THIS term has the same meaning, and is compounded of the same elements, as the *λυκ-ανθρωπος* of the Greeks. From the high antiquity of the tradition respecting werewolves, and its having been current among the Celtic as well as Gothic nations, we find the expression in most of the dialects formed from each of the parent languages, and all corresponding to the signification above affixed of *man-wolf*, i. e. a wolf partaking of the nature of man, or, in other words, a man changed, by magical art, into the temporary form of a wolf. All the northern lexicographers agree in this interpretation, as applied to the Su.-G. *warulf*, Teut. *werwolf*, *währwolf*, Sax. *werewulf*, Dan. *varulf*, Belg. *waer wolf*, *wer wolf*, Scotch, *warwolf*, *werwouf*, &c., but as the very learned and ingenious author of the Letter addressed to Lord Cawdor on the subject of Werewolves, prefixed to the present poem, [i. e. in the edition of 1832,] has called their united opinion in question, it may be worth while to discuss more fully the truth of the usual derivation. It is true, that the hypothesis of Mr Herbert, which deduces the first part of the phrase from the Teutonic *wer*, bellum, (whence the French *guerre*, and the Dutch *were* have been formed) may be, in some measure, countenanced by the similar compounds of *wer-boda*, a herald, *were-man*, a soldier, *were-wall*, a defence in war, &c., as well as by the instance of a warlike machine made by King Edward the First, called *war-wolf*, and rightly interpreted by Matthew of Westminster *lupus belli*, p. 449, the *ludgare* or *loup de guerre* of Peter Langtoft, vol. ii. 326. But in conceding thus much, it

[\* The mark really is a roughly written *a*, and means an abbreviation wherein *a* occurs, commonly *ra* or *ia*.—W. W. S.]

must be remarked, that all these latter terms are used in a military sense, and could not otherwise be interpreted. They bear no analogy whatever to the *were-wolf* of our Poem, which, supposing we receive it in the sense contended for by the author of the Letter, viz. a *wolf of war*, conveys no distinct or very intelligible meaning. On the other hand, the plain, obvious signification of man-wolf is consonant to the fabulous tradition of the phrase, and to the genius of the languages in which it has been adopted. Only one example of this word in Anglo-Saxon has been found. It occurs in the ecclesiastical laws of King Canute, ap. Wilkins, p. 133, § 26, where, after describing the duties of Pastors of the Church, the text proceeds: "thæt syndon biseopas and mæssepreostas, the godeunde heorda bewarian and bewerian sceolan, mid wislican laran, thæt *se wodfreca were wulf* to swithe ne slyte, ne to fela ne abite of godeuudre heorde," i. e. "Such are the bishops and priests, who shall guard and defend the holy flock with their wise doctrine, that the furious were-wolf may not too greatly tear or lacerate the members of it." Here the term is applied to the Devil, not, as Wachter remarks, "quod Diabolus sit *lycanthropos*, sed quod homines rapiat et occidat;" and the metaphor is evidently drawn from the story of the metamorphosis of a man into a wolf, and subsequent attacks on his own race. The derivation from *wer*, or *wera*, a man, does not, as the author of the Letter supposes, rest on slight authority. One glance at Lye, who has nearly three columns filled with instances, would satisfy him in this respect. It is the Gothic *wair* (Luke viii. 27, ix. 14), Su.-Goth. *wär*, Isl. *ver*, Tent. *wer*, Francic *uara*, Celtic *Gur*, *Gur*, or *Ur*, Irish *fuir*, *fear*, Latin *vür*, Barb. Lat. *bar-o*, Span. *var-on*, and French *bar-on*; all of which may be referred to a primitive root, expressive of existence. But an unquestionable evidence in the case before us is that of Gervase of Tilbury, who wrote in the reign of Henry II., when the Saxon language had suffered no very material change, and who, assuredly, must be allowed to know the meaning of his own maternal tongue. He writes thus: "Vidimus enim frequenter in Anglia per lunationes homines in lupos mutari, quod hominum genus *Gerulfos* Galli uominant, Angli vero *werewulf* dicunt; *were* enim Anglicè virum sonat, *wlf*, lupum." *Otia Imp. ap. Scriptt. Brunsv.* p. 895. The modern French express the term by *louppgarou*, concerning which it is truly said by Wachter, "mire nugantur eruditi." The sum of these *nugæ* may be found collected in Menage, and the Dictionnaire de Trevoux; to which may be added the conjectures noticed in the *Cælum Astronomico-Poeticum* of Cæsius, p. 295. But the etymology of the Saxon, Teutonic, and Suio-Gothic phrase will here equally well apply. One of the Lays of Marie, an Anglo-Norman poetess, who wrote about the middle of the thirteenth century, is founded on a Breton fable of a werwolf, and she thus alludes to the appellation:

" *Bisclaueret* ad nun en Bretan,  
*Garwaf*, l'apelent li Norman ;

Iadis le poeit hume oir,  
 E souent suleit auenir,  
 Humes plusurs *garual* deuindrent,  
 E es hocages meisun tindrent ;  
*Garualf* cet beste saluage," &c.

MS. Harl. 978. f. 152. b.<sup>1</sup>

Roquefort (who has taken some liberties in printing this passage) justly observes, that the Norman *Garualf* or *Garual* is derived from, and the same with, the Saxon and Teutonic term. It may, indeed, have been brought by the Normans from Scandinavia, for in Verelius I find "*Vargulfur*, Brett. Str. [*Bretta Streinglekr Roberti Abbatis*] *Biselaretzliod*, *Lycantropos*. Som löperwarg." *Index Scytho-Scand.* fol. 1691. Whence he has derived the second term, is not clear, nor is it elsewhere explained, but it appears the same with the *Bisclaveret* of Marie (whose writings could not have been known to Verelius), which is supposed by Ritson, *Metr. Rom.* iii. 331, to be a corruption of *Bleiz-garv*, loup sauvage, for which, in more modern times, the natives of Brittany used *Den-bleiz*, homme-loup. See Rostrenen and Pelletier. *Garv* or *Garv*, is explained in these writers, *âpre*, *cruel*, yet there is great reason to doubt whether when coupled with *bleiz* it has not, like the Norman *garou*, *guaroul*, been borrowed from a Gothic source. That *loup* is superfluous, and that *garou* of itself expresses *man-wolf* is evident from the passages in Gervase of Tilbury and Marie, and may be confirmed by the following authorities. "*Warou*, loup-garou." *Diet. Roman*, *Walon*, &c. 4to. Bouillon, 1777. "*Warou*, *warous*, *warrou*, *Garou*, espèce de loup." *Roquefort*. So, in a MS. Life of the Virgin, quoted by Charpentier, in his Supplement to Du Cange,

"De culuevre nous font anguile,  
 Aignel de *Waroul* & de leu."

And in the life of St Bernard, *Opp.* 2, p. 1288. "Transiens autem per quandam villam audivit ab incolis ejusdem loci, duas feras immanissimas, quæ *uugo varol-i* [appelabantur], in nemore proxime desævire." In the same manner the Scotch have formed their *Wurl*, *Wrout*, and *Worlin*, as appears from Jamieson. Roquefort also gives us the term in another shape, "*Loup-beroux*," but this again is nothing more than the Teut. *Bærwolf*, homo-lupus, from *bar*, vir, which is only a dialectical variation of *Wer*. A similar instance of retaining a pleonastic interpretation is presented in the word *luke-warm*, where *warm* is an adjunct of no real utility, since *luke* means warm by itself, and was anciently so used. For more minute details respecting the etymology here adopted, the philologist is referred to Ihre, Wachter, Kilian, and Jamieson.

Mr Herbert has remarked, at p. 42 of his letter, that "among the Erse or Gael of Erin, the notion of lycanthropy was prevalent ; we

<sup>1</sup> In Thoms's "*Lays and Legends*," 1834, is a translation of this *Lai de Bisclaveret*.

read of their voracious cannibalism on the ocular and undeniable testimony of St Jerome, and another author pretends that a certain Abbot in the district of Ossory had obtained from heaven a decree that two persons of that district (a married couple) should every seven years be compelled to leave the country in the shape of wolves, but, at the end of those years, they might if yet living return to their homes and native shape, and two other persons were condemned in their place to the like penalty for another seven years. J. Brompton, Chron. p. 1078." In the Latin Poem "de rebus Hibernie admirandis," of the 12th or 13th century, preserved in the Cotton MS. Titus D. xxiv (and printed in the *Reliquie Antiquæ*, ii. 103), are some lines descriptive of the werwolf, from which we learn that at that period there were men in Ireland who could change themselves into wolves and worry sheep, leaving their real bodies behind them; and (as in the traditions of other countries), if they happened to be wounded, the injury would also appear on their bodies.<sup>1</sup>

Allusion is also made to a similar story in Malory's *Morte d'Arthure*, where mention is made of "Sir Marrok the good knyghte, that was bitrayed with his wyf, for she made hym seuen yere a *werwolf*." *Morte d'Arthure*, lib. xix. c. xi. ; ed. Southey, ii. 385.

In the "Maister of Game," a treatise on Hunting, composed for Henry the Fifth, then Prince (I quote from MS. Sloane 60), is the following passage.

<sup>1</sup> Sunt homines quidam Scottorum gentis habentes  
 Miram naturam, majorum ab origine ductam,  
 Qua cito quando volunt ipsos se vertere possunt  
 Nequiter in formas lacerantum dente luporum,  
 Unde videntur oves occidere sæpe gementes ;  
 Sed cum clamor eos hominum, seu cursus eorum  
 Fustibus aut armis terret, fugiendo recurrunt.  
 Cum tamen hoc faciunt, sua corpora vera relinquunt,  
 Atque suis mandant ne quisquam moverit illa.  
 Si sic eveniat, nec ad illa redire valebunt.  
 Si quid eos lædat, penetrent si vulnera quæque,  
 Vere in corporibus semper cernuntur eorum ;  
 Sic caro cruda hærens in veri corporis ore  
 Cernitur a sociis, quod nos miramur et omnes. (*Rel. Ant.* ii. 105.)

Cf. *Spenser*, View of the State of Ireland, ed. Todd, p. 522 (Moxon, 1856); and *O'Brien*, Round Towers of Ireland, p. 468.

Speaking of the Wolf—(fol. 43)—

"And somme ther ben . . . that eten children and men, and eten non other fleische from that tyme that thei ben acharmmed with mannes fleisch. For rather thei wolden be deed. And thai ben cleped *werewolves*, for that men schulden be *war* of hem.<sup>1</sup> And thei ben so cawtelous, that whenne thei sailen a man, thei haue an holding vpon hem or the man se hem. And 3it, if men se hem, thei wol come vpon him gynnously, that he ne be take and slayn. For thei can wonder wel kepe hem from any harneyse that any man bereth," &c.<sup>2</sup>

---

## INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER."

§ 1. THE fragment of the *Romance of Alisaunder* at the end of this volume is now printed for the first time from MS. Greaves 60 (in the Bodleian Library), where it was discovered by Sir Frederick Madden. There are no less than *four* MSS. containing fragments *in*

<sup>1</sup> An odd etymology! This sentence is quoted by Halliwell, in his Dictionary of Archaisms, s. v. *A-charmed*, from MS. Bodley, 546.

<sup>2</sup> It seems unnecessary to enter into further details concerning this curious superstition; for the reader may consult Mr Herbert's Letter (which is too diffuse to be reprinted here); or, if that be not easily accessible, may refer to "The Book of Were-wolves," by S. Baring-Gould, M.A., which the author defines as being "a monograph on a peculiar form of popular superstition, prevalent among all nations, and in all ages." The following references to a few of the most interesting passages may be useful. *Herodotus*, bk. iv. c. 105 (in which the Neurians are said to change themselves into wolves once a year for a few days); *Virgil*, *Ecl.* viii. 95—99; *Ovid*, *Met.* i. 237 (where Lycaon, King of Areadia, is changed by Jupiter into a wolf); a story from *Petronius*, quoted at length both by Herbert (p. 7), and Baring-Gould (p. 11); *Olaus Magnus*, *Historia de Gent. Septent. Basil. lib.* xviii. c. 45; *Gervase of Tilbury*, *Otia Imperialia*, Dec. i. c. 15, p. 895; *Camden*, *Britannia*, vol. iv. p. 293, ed. 1806; *King James I.*, *Dæmonologie*, L. iii. p. 125; &c. See also Thorpe's *Northern Mythology*. In the present poem, the chief instrument of Alphonse's re-transformation is a *ring* (l. 4424). The following quotation (which I render into English from the German) may serve to illustrate this:—"By help of a magic girdle or *ring* men could change themselves and others into the forms of beasts; into *wolves*, bears, horses, cats, swans, geese, ravens, and crows. The most notorious and perhaps the oldest of these changes is that into the *Werwolf* or *loup-garou*. Even this might be classed amongst the instances of Rune-magic (*Runen-zaubers*), for runic characters may have been scratched upon the girdle or ring, or magic formularies may have been repeated whilst putting it on." *Karl Simrock*, *Handbuch der Deutschen Mythologie*; Bonn, 1855; p. 537. The latter method was the one adopted by Queen Braundins (l. 4433).—W. W. S.]

*alliterative verse* upon this subject, of which two are merely different copies of the same poem. The four fragments are these: A, that contained in MS. Greaves 60; B, that contained in MS. Bodley 264, which relates to Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists; C, that in MS. Ashmole 44; and D, a second copy of the *same* poem as C, in MS. Dublin. D. 4. 12, beginning at a later place, and ending at an earlier one. Of these, A, B, and C seem to be distinct from each other, and by different authors, the last bearing traces of a *northern*, the former two of a *western* dialect. The two latter are printed at length in "The Alliterative Romance [? Romances] of Alexander," ed. Rev. J. Stevenson, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 1849. They are, however, of different dates, for the Ashmolean MS. can hardly be older than about A.D. 1450, and "there seems no reason to conclude that the poem is anterior to the date of the MS. from which it is printed," as Mr Stevenson justly observes. Fragment B is probably older. It is bound up with the splendid French MS. of Alexander, one of the chief treasures of the Bodleian library. Sir F. Madden says of it,<sup>1</sup> that "the writing of this portion is of the reign of Henry the Sixth,<sup>2</sup> nor is there any reason to believe the poem itself very much earlier than the year 1400." It treats at length of Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists, and of the letters that passed between him and Dindimus, "lord of Bragmanus lond," a subject which is introduced much more briefly in Passus xviii. of fragment C. But fragment A, which is now only found in a copy evidently written in the sixteenth century (the original MS. having been lost), is not only older than both these, but may fairly claim to be the *oldest existing specimen* of English alliterative verse, unmingled with rime, and of the usual type, since the Conquest.<sup>3</sup> This point is, moreover, easily ascertained in the manner following.

§ 2. In the first place, it was conjectured by Sir F. Madden, from internal evidence, that it was written by the author of *William of Palerne*; and nothing can be stronger than the internal evidence, if

<sup>1</sup> See notes to Sir Gawayne, ed. Madden; Bannatyne Club, 1839; p. 304.

<sup>2</sup> May it not be even a little earlier?

<sup>3</sup> *Scinte Marherete*, written before A.D. 1200 in a more negligent metre, is here excepted.



it be weighed with sufficient care. The resemblance in the language, style, and method of versification is extraordinary; there is the same "run" upon certain words and phrases, and we even find (what we should hardly have expected to find), lines almost identical in their expression in the two poems. If we find in *William of Palerne* (which poem I shall briefly denote by *Werwolf*) the phrase,

"pat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here riȝttes" (l. 4906),

we can match this from *Alisaunder*, l. 980, by the phrase,

"As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-riȝtes;"

and it would be difficult to discover two lines more closely related than are these:—

"It betid in a time · tidly thereafter" (*Alis.* 974), and,

"But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after" (*Werw.* 1416).

But even such coincidences as these are less convincing than the peculiar recurrence of certain phrases, such as *to waite at a window* (see note to *Alis.* l. 760), *doluen and ded* (see note to *Alis.* l. 1026), *nied þe niȝt* (see note to *Alis.* l. 817), *liuand lud* (see note to *Alis.* l. 992), and the like; and also the curious, yet evidently unintentional, resemblance in such lines as,

"He wend to haue lauȝt þat ladi · loueli in armes"

(*Werw.* 671); and

"As that Lulie, with loue · too lachen in armes" (*Alis.* 199);

or again, in

"But lete him in his blisse · & his burde also,

& touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres" (*Werw.* 5396); and,

"But lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,

Of þe rich emperour of rome · redeliche to telle" (*Werw.* 5466);

as compared with—

"Now let wee þis lued · lengen in bliss,

And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale" (*Alis.* 44).

Indeed, it seems useless to adduce many further proofs; for, if any reader has any lingering doubts upon the subject, he may convince himself by trying to rewrite a portion of the glossary; for, in construct-

ing this, the language of the poems is at once found to be identical, as far as the subject-matter permits it. It may be noted, too, that the dialect is the same; e. g. one curious characteristic of the "Werwolf" is the plural imperative in *-es*, which reappears in *kares* = *carē ye* (Alis. 563), and in *kairus* = *kaires* = *go ye* (Alis. 623); also present participles both in *-and* and *-ing* are found in both poems.<sup>1</sup> Assuming then that these poems are by the same author—and, consequently, that our poet, known to us only by the name of *William*, has the credit of being the earliest writer (as far as we know at present) in the usual alliterative metre—the question still remains, which poem did he write first? On this point I have, myself, no doubt, feeling sure that the "Alisaunder" is the older poem. It is very curious to remark how often it presents fuller inflexions and older forms, and this, too, *in spite of* the fact that we have only a late sixteenth-century copy of it, whilst of the other poem we have a MS. two centuries older. Most noticeable among these are the infinitives in *-en*, such as *lachen*, *thinken*, &c., and in many other cases we find *-en* where in the other poem we more commonly find *-e*.<sup>2</sup> The numerous cases where in the "Alisaunder," the final *-e* is omitted, can be accounted for by the fact of the MS. being a late copy. And this is the right account to give; for the preservation of the *-en* ending shews that the final *-e's* should have been preserved also. Besides this, the spelling of the MS. presents one very curious mark of antiquity, viz., the use of the letter Ð or Ɔ to represent *Th* or *th*; see note to l. 33 on page 236. I know of no instance of the use of this letter in a verse composition

<sup>1</sup> A comparison of the *metre* of the poems affords a test of much subtlety, and requiring much care and patience. The details are tedious; I can only say here that I have considered this, and believe their general structure of versification to be identical, and to have, at the same time, some peculiarities that are *not* common to all alliterative poems. They differ, e. g., from *Piers Plowman*, though that too was written by a *William*, and not long afterwards.

Hence also the reason for printing the two poems together, viz. because of their common authorship, is at once apparent; and both poems gain by it. The language of the "Werwolf" is often well illustrated by that of the "Alisaunder," whilst, on the other hand, an editor can never be so well fitted to edit the latter poem accurately as at a time when he happens to know hundreds of lines of the former by heart.

<sup>2</sup> The only instance of *i-* used as a prefix to a verb in the infinitive, occurs in Alis. l. 607.

(excepting here) later than about A.D. 1300, in MS. C.C.C. 444, containing the "Story of Genesis and Exodus," edited by Mr Morris for the E. E. T. S. in 1865. There is yet another point which may have some weight, viz., that our author must surely have produced *something* of importance before he was selected by the Earl of Hereford to translate a poem of such length as "Guillaume de Palerne;" and that something was really expected of him, from his known reputation, seems to be implied by his apology for himself and his versification at the end of the latter work (*Werwolf*, ll. 5521—5526). If this be thought likely, if his skill in translation was a known fact, it may have been that his reputation was due to his "Alisaunder," as to the *length* of which, in its original condition, we know nothing more than this, viz., that the 1249 lines still preserved represent but a *very small* fraction of the whole story.

§ 3. It is necessary to describe the MS. Greaves 60 somewhat further. It is a small and shabby-looking MS., about 8 in. by 6, apparently bought to be used as a note-book or exercise-book, as it contains notes upon Virgil's *Æneid*, Terence's *Andria*, &c.; and the English romance was afterwards copied out wherever there was a blank space for it, which accounts for there being only three lines of the text on fol. 7. The English occupies fol. 1 *b*—6 *a*, part of fol. 7, fol. 7 *b*—8 *b*, fol. 11 *a*, part of fol. 11 *b*, fol. 12 *a*—16 *a*, fol. 16 *b*—20 *a* (which portion is scored at the side, as being out of place), and fol. 21 *a*—24 *b*. The last two portions require to be transposed, and then 20 *a* comes last, fol. 20 *b* being blank. Even when this is done, a portion is lost between fol. 24 *b* and fol. 16 *b* (which I have supplied from a French prose text), and another portion (probably a large one) is lost at the end. On the fly-leaf is, besides other things, "Ye schoole of Rhetorik, or Ye skylk too speake well: deuised and made by H. G." This and a title about a "compendium of Virgil's *Æneid*," are scratched through, and the following written below in the same hand—"Radulphus de Sto Albano eiusdem fani Albani monachus et Abbas ex pompeio, Trogo, Origine, Josepho, Isidoro, Beda, et alijs hanc historiam de Rebus gestis Alexandri Macedonis edidit; obiit anno domini MCLI, in eodem cœnobio sepultus, sub stephano Anglorum rege. Balæus." Assuming, for convenience, that H. G. are the scribe's own

initials, we see that H. G. has merely copied the above title from Bale, and that there is not any necessary connection between it and the poem which he partly copied out. Nevertheless, the clue was worth following up, and I found that a MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 219, has for its title—"Incipit hystoria regis Macedonum, Philippi filii<sup>que</sup> eius Alexandri Magni excepta (*sic*) de libris pompeii, trogi, orosii, iosephi, ieronimi, solini, augustini, bede, & ysodori." It is a Latin MS., beautifully written in a hand of the fourteenth century, containing the history of Alexander in four books, and followed by the letters of Alexander to Dindimus, and of Dindimus to Alexander. That our poet made use of this compilation is very probable; he says (*Alis.* l. 458) that he translates from Latin books, and the principal of these seem to have been, (1) the compilation of Radulphus; (2) the history of Orosius; and (3) the "*Historia Alexandri de præliis.*" The two former supplied him with the more historical part of his story, such as the particulars about Eurydice, Philip, Byzantium, &c.; the latter supplied him with the legendary portion. He seems to have considered them all equally veritable, and to have turned from one to the other at pleasure, as I have pointed out in the notes. Of the various Latin forms of the legend, the "*Historia de præliis,*" as it may conveniently be called for distinctness,<sup>1</sup> is evidently the one he has most closely followed. It is also evident that the writer of the poem preserved in MS. Ashmole 44 followed the very same original, and it is interesting to compare the two translations, and to observe how far the exigencies of the metre have caused them to vary. Returning to "H. G." after this digression, a few remarks must be made upon his method of copying the poem. He seems to have done it upon the whole very carefully, though he has sometimes misread his original (writing *kīpen* for *kīpen*, *ferkerd* for *ferked*, and the like), and, in particular, has left out a large number of the final *-e's*, besides occasionally omitting whole lines. In several cases, he has modernized or modified the spelling, and in many instances has given us *both* the forms, as, e. g. in l. 767, where we have *liche* with *ke* over the *che*, thus rightly

<sup>1</sup> It may be known by the initial words—"Sapientissimi egiptii scientes mensuram terre," &c. I have used the printed copy of 1490.

explaining *liche* as meaning *like*. All the variations of importance are noticed in the foot-notes. The handwriting is peculiar, but not uncertain, though he at times used a straight horizontal stroke like a hyphen to denote an *m* or an *n*, joining it on to the letter following. Over many of the long vowels he has made a circumflex, writing "sôule" in l. 41, "fône" in l. 83, "gôse" in l. 409. As this seemed to be a mere freak of his own (for it is sometimes wrongly introduced), I have not noticed it. The only other point of interest is that he marked all the harder words by underscoring them, evidently with the view of finding out their meaning. The list of these has some importance, for we may conclude that such words were so far *obsolete* about the time of James I. as to be unintelligible to a man interested in our older literature. It is on this account that I subjoin the list, in alphabetical order, referring the reader to the Glossarial Index for further information. It is as follows, omitting a few which seem to have been marked for some other reason. *Alosed, Bed, Bern* (l. 219), *Beurde, Chees, Coftly, Deraine, Derie, Fele, Fole, Foude, Frotus, Gamus* (read *Gainus*), *Gist, Gome, Graithes, Grathly, Grempe, Hende, Hendely, Hote, Kôpe, Kith, Lache, Laught* or *Lauht, Lelich, Menskfull, Of-souhte, Pris, Purlich, Queme, Rigge, Rink* or *Renk, Rode, Segges, Spedly, Stightlich, Swipe, Trie, To-rihtes, pristliche, prolifiche, Ungome, Walte, Woves, Wus, Yeeme*. Nearly all of these were certainly as unintelligible to most men two hundred and fifty years ago as they are now, though some may exist in provincial dialects. Several of them may have been unintelligible even a century earlier.

#### § 4. THE STORY OF "ALISAUNDER."

The contents of the fragment may be briefly described thus. It commences with a mention of Amyntas, and his sons Alexander and Philip. Philip ascends the throne of Macedonia, conquers Larissa and Thessalonica, weds Olympias, sister of the King of Molossis, takes Methone, and helps the Thebans against the Phocians; all of which is from Radulphus, Orosius, and like sources. This portion includes ll. 1—451. Then begins the legend, from the "Historia de preliis," occupying the portion in ll. 452—899; and telling how Nectanabus, King of Egypt, fled in disguise from his own country

for fear of the Persians, and, coming to Macedonia, beguiled Queen Olympias by his magic arts, and, personating the god Ammon,<sup>1</sup> became the father of Alexander. He also appeared before Philip's army in the guise of a dragon, and, fighting for him, greatly discomfited the Lacedaemonians and Phocians. Next, after an historical account (ll. 900—954) of the occupation of the Pass of Thermopylae by the Athenians, and of Philip's treachery and cruelty towards the Thebans, we return to the legend (ll. 955—1201) and learn how Philip greeted Olympias, how Nectanabus appeared once more as a dragon at a feast given by Philip, and how Philip was one day surprised to find that a bird had laid an egg in his lap, out of which issued a serpent which, after awhile, tried to re-enter the egg-shell, but died before it could do so; an omen that Alexander would die before he could return to his own land. Next Alexander is born, and carefully educated. One evening he goes out with Nectanabus to view the stars, and, hearing the magician say that he feared he would die by the hand of his own son, drowns him in a ditch to prove him a liar; but the drowning man cries out that he has told *the truth*. Next follows the story of the taming of Bucephalus, which bears some points of resemblance to the story of the taming of King Ebrouns' horse by William of Palerne (see p. 107). In the last paragraph the poet returns to historical details, and begins to narrate the siege of Byzantium by Philip, at which point the poem abruptly ends.

§ 5. This is not the place to discuss the long and difficult question of the "Alexander Romances." Roughly speaking, the form of the story here adopted—I speak of the legendary portion—is derived from the Greek text known as the *Pseudo-callisthenes*, of which the best MS. is the one now numbered 1711 in the Imperial Library at Paris, beginning—"Οἱ σοφώτατοι Διγύπτιοι θεῶν ἀπόγονοι, κ.τ.λ. "; but I have referred in the notes to another MS. (Supplem. No. 113) in the same collection, as a portion of this latter one has been printed.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "A dragon's fiery form belied the god;  
Sublime on radiant spires he rode,  
When he to fair Olympia prest," &c.

Dryden; *Alexander's Feast*.

<sup>1</sup> See notice on p. 236.

The three principal Latin versions hence derived are (1) that by Julius Valerius ; (2) the “ *Itinerarium Alexandri* ” (relating to Alexander’s wars) ; and (3) that by the Archpresbyter Leo, which is also known as the “ *Historia de preliis.* ” With the *second* of these we have *here* nothing to do. The *first* begins—“ *Ægypti sapientes, sati genere divino,* ” &c. ; the *third* begins—“ *Sapientissimi Egyptii, scientes mensuram terræ,* ” &c. The portion supplied to complete the story at p. 209 is from a French version, as contained in MS. 7517 in the Imperial library. I have already said that our text follows the *third* rather than the *first* of these Latin versions.

For further information, see Zacher, *Pseudo-callisthenes*, Halle, 1867 ; the editions of Julius Valerius by Angelo Mai (Milan, 1817), and Karl Müller (Paris, 1846) ; the Old High German version edited by H. Weismann (Frankfort-on-the-Main, 1850), the second volume of which, in particular, contains much information ; the introduction to Kyng Alisaunder in Weber’s *Metrical Romances*, &c. The edition called “ *Li Romans d’Alixandre, par Lambert li Tors et Alixandre de Bernay,* ” ed. H. Michelant, and published by the Literary Society of Stuttgart in 1846, has not much to do with our present poem, as it declares Nectanabus *not* to have been Alexander’s father. I have already enumerated the alliterative romances extant in English. Besides these there are, in rimed metre, the “ *Kyng Alysaunder* ” printed by Weber, and other poems referring, not to the infancy of Alexander, but to his acts and death, such as, e. g., “ *The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great,* ” printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1831, being a reprint from *The Romaunce of Alexander*, containing the *Furray of Gaderis*, first printed at the same place by A. Arbuthnot in 1580. There is also a fragment about the death of Alexander in “ *Ancient Metrical Romances from the Auchinleck MS.* ” ; Abbotsford Club, 1836 ; and there may be others, for I have not thought it necessary to make further search.

#### § 6. ON THE DIALECT OF THE POEMS.

The spelling of the “ *Alisaunder* ” being uncertain owing to the lateness of the MS., it is not necessary to say more about its dialect

than has been said already. The following remarks refer, therefore, to the "Werwolf."<sup>1</sup>

The plurals of nouns generally end in *-es*, but there are several plurals in *-us*, such as *dedus*; in *-is*, as *bestis* (l. 181), and *talis*; in *-ys*, as *buschys* (21); in *-en*, as *stepchilderen*, *eizyen* (eyne, eyes); and even in *-esse*, as *bodiesse*, *lordesse* (4539), *heizresse* (4778), with which should be compared the curious spelling *antresse* for *antres* or *aunteres* = she ventures. The plural of *hors* is the same as the singular; the plural of *fo* is both *fon* (or *fone*) and *fos*. Also *ken*, *kin*, and *kyn* occur for *kine*. The genitive singular ends commonly in *-es*, but sometimes in *-is*, as in *godis* (266), *goddis* (254); cf. *goddes* (340). We also find the genitive forms *fader*, *moder*, *dou3ter*, *William*, *Marie*, *sonne*.

As regards adjectives, we may note the comparatives *herre*, *nerre* (higher, nearer), and the superlatives *frelokest* and *manlokest*, the former of which is used adverbially. The endings *-ly* and *-liche* are used both for adverbs and adjectives, and without any distinction. *Eche a* is used for *each*; *selue* sometimes has the sense of *very* (1149); whilst *wiche a* answers to the German *was für*, what sort of a, as in l. 3354. *þe* and *þa* are used sometimes for *þat*; *þis* as well as *þise* is used to mean *these*; *þo* to mean *those*; *þilke* is used in the plural, and *swiche* is used to mean *such*. For *I*, the forms are *i*, *y*, *ich*; for *thou*, we have *þou*, *þow*, *þou3*; pl. *3e* in the nominative, *3ow*, *3ou3*, *ow* (l. 106) in the dat. and accusative. The third personal pronoun is *he*, gen. *his*, *is*, or *hise*; dat. and acc. *hym*, *him*; feminine, *sche*, *che*, *3he* (and *hue* in the "Alisaunder"); gen. dat. and acc. *her*, *hir*, *here*, *hire*; neuter, *hit*, *it*; acc. *hit*, *it*. Plural nom. *þei*, *þai*, *þey*; gen. *here*, *her*; dat. *hem* (and once *þaim*); acc. *hem*. *Min* is a possessive pronoun, as *min hert*, *min avowe*. The pronoun of the second person is often joined on to the verb, as in *artow*, *knowestow*, *bestow*, *seidestow*, *schaltow* or *schalstow*, *findestow*, *witow* or *wittow*;

<sup>1</sup> I apologize for the slip-shod name here given to the poem, and which is here, and elsewhere throughout the volume, used for brevity's sake, and because it cannot be mistaken. It is an abbreviation of "William and the Werwolf," the title used by Sir F. Madden in the former edition. Strictly, however, the true title is—*William of Palerne*.



and often also to the word *pat*, as *patou* or *patow*. *Ho* is used for *who*, *ho-so* for *who-so*, *whos* for *whose*, *wham* for *whom*.

But the most noticeable and distinctive endings are found amongst the verbs, and I pass on to them as being of more interest. The infinitive ends in *-en* or *-e*, but occasionally also in *-y* or *-ye*, as *deseuy*, *wonye*; cf. *derie* in *Alis*. 1240. In the present tense, 2nd person, we find both *-est* and *-es*; the former occurring frequently, as in *kupest* (603), *konest* (330); examples of the latter are *trestes* (970), *knowes* (1174). They seem to be used indifferently, for *tellest* and *trestes* occur in the same line, and *hast* in l. 604 is followed by *pow has* two lines lower. In the same way, we find *grettes* and *menschfulles* written for *grettest* and *menschfullest*, showing that the pronunciation of the *t* was very slight. Besides which, the vowel may have been pronounced thickly or indistinctly, thus accounting for such a form as *clepus* (249). In the 3rd person singular, we find *-es*, as in *lenges* (961); *-is*, as in *hentis* (907); and *-us*, as in *sittus* (446); as well as *-eþ*, as in *knoweþ* (559). In the 3rd person pl. we have *-un*, as in *clepun*; *-en*, as in *þurlen*; *-e*, as in *singe*; *-us*, as in *tellus* (198); *-es*, as in *calles* (239), *longes* (360). The following are examples of the past tense singular; strong verbs, *gaf*, *zald*, *founde*, *seize*, *lad*, *dede*, *kom*, *rod*, *lep*, *aros*, &c.; weak verbs, *grette*, *lerle*, *pleide*, *clipte*, *praide*, *clepud*, &c. The plural generally ends in *-en* or *-e*, but the *-e* is occasionally dropped. Examples are *blesseden*, *gretten*, *sewede*, *come*, *told* (1366). But we should especially observe the endings of the imperative mood plural, which besides the ending *-eth*, as in *preieth* (164), *sendeþ* (2068), *witeþ* (2069), *troveþ* (2112), frequently takes the ending *-es*, as in *listenes*, *gretes*, *mornes*, *standes*, *awakes*, *fodes*, *leses*, *leues*, &c. It is worth notice, further, that the very same word takes both forms; for we find both *preieth* and *preizes* (which, however, is written *preized*, 5529), *listenes* and *lusteneþ*, and *gretes* in l. 355 is followed by *greteþ* in l. 359.<sup>1</sup> We should also especially note the forms of the present participle, which ends in *-and*, as *deland*, *wepand*, *glimerand*, *liand*, *ligand*, *lourande*, *liuand*; in *-end*, as *touchend*, *heriend*, *lastend*, *slepend*, *hotend*, *braundissende*; occasionally in *-inde*, as *lorkinde*, *sikinde*,

<sup>1</sup> So also *lengþes*, 4348; *lengþeþ*, 4353.

*gapind*; and sometimes in *-ing*. Here again, the same word takes all the forms; for we find *sikande*, *sikand*, *sikende*, *sikinde*, and *siking*. The more usual form seems to be in *-and*, but the pronunciation of the *a* seems to have been obscure, and we may consider the usual ending to be *'nd*; for if we throw the accent on the first syllable, it is not easy to enunciate the unaccented vowel very clearly. Examples of past participles are *slawe*, *sleie*, *slayn*, *schapen*, *bi-hold*, *portreide*, *gluded*, *maked*, *take*, *arise* (1297), *lore* (1360), *bore*, *seie*, *seizen*, *y-charged*, *y-cleped*. The ending *-e* in the infinitive is sometimes dropped. For the forms of the auxiliary and anomalous verbs, see the glossary; s.v. *Ben*, *Can*, *Dar*, *Mot*, *Mow*, *Out*, *Schal*, *Thort*, *Wite*, *Wol*. Here also numerous forms occur; e. g. the present plural of *to be* is *ben*, *bene*, *buþ*, *aru*, and *aren*.

The word *ne* often coalesces with the verb following; hence *nis* (*ne is*), *nas* (*ne was*), *nerre* (*ne were*), *nath* (*ne hath*), *nadde* (*ne hadde*), *nel* (*ne wil*), *nold* (*ne wold*), *not* (*ne wot*), *nist* (*ne wist*).

A few peculiarities of spelling may be noted. The *sh* sound is denoted both by *sch* and *ch*; hence *chumly*, *chold*, *chortly*, are put for *schanly*, *schold*, *schortly*. Also *scheche* is written for *seche*. *C* sometimes takes the place of *s*, as in *plece*, *sece*, *wice*. *Wh* is written for *w*, as in *whar* (*were*), and *whieȝs*. *Th* is sometimes used where we should expect *t*, as in the *Romans of Partenay*; thus *wizthli* is put for *wiztli*, *mizth* is used to mean (*I*) *might*. *V* is sometimes found for a final *u*, as in *nor*, *hor*, *mor*. *H* occurs at the beginning of words where it should not, as in *hordere*, *hende* (*end*), *held* (*eld*, *old age*). *N* is prefixed to *eiȝ*, *ones*, *oper*, &c., thus forming *neiȝ*, *nones*, *noper*, in places where it really belongs to the word preceding. *þe* is joined sometimes to the word following, as in *þemperour*, *þerþe*, *þende*. For the careful and exact manner (exact, probably, because the scribe did it without thinking and as a matter of course), in which *nay* is distinguished from *no*, and *ȝe* from *ȝis*, see the Glossarial Index. For the distinction between *þou* and *ȝe*, see p. xli.

In what part of England, then, was the poem written? The forms seem to be mainly West Midland, with admixture both of Northern and of Southern ones. The frequency of the imperatives in *-es*, and other indications, lead Mr Morris to call it a specimen of

Shropshire dialect,<sup>1</sup> whilst Sir F. Madden subscribes to the opinion of Bryant, that it may belong to Gloucestershire ; and, indeed, Gloucester is the only place which is mentioned in it. There is also, perhaps, some significance in the fact that the MS. contains, besides "William of Palerne," some poems that have been attributed to Robert of Gloucester. In either case, we are sure of the locality within the compass of a county or two, and may, I think, call it West Midland without error, though the exact border between the West Midland and Southern cannot be expected to be very clearly defined. It may be remarked that both Gloucester and Wheatenhurst (where Sir Humphrey de Bohun's mansion was situated) lie close to the important river Severn, and it is possible that the dialect of that part of Gloucestershire may have been affected by that circumstance, just as we often trace the influence of the Danish element near our sea-coasts. The real difficulty consists in this, that it is hard to account for the use of the Northumbrian plural-ending *-es* at a place situated so far to the South. A comparison of the vocabulary with the glossary of Shropshire words in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua* shewed less resemblance than I had expected to find ; yet it may be useful to mention that his list contains (and sometimes illustrates) the following words in particular, viz. :—*Bell* (vb.), *Chall* (= *Chaul*), *Clip*, *Clout*, *Cratch*, *Delue*, *Dever*, *Eam* (*Eme*), *Gain* (cf. *Gaynest*), *Haws*, *Heps* (*Hepus*), *Hye* (to hasten), *Lap* (vb.), *Learn* (to teach), *Litherly* (*Luperly*), *Muse*, *Pill* (vb.), *Rin*, *Shaws*, *Sike*, *Stire*, *Thirl*, *Twinne*, *War*.

### § 7. ON THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN "THOU" AND "YE."

The distinction between the use of *thou* and *ye* (with their accompanying *singular* and *plural* verbs) is so well kept up throughout

<sup>1</sup> Compare Audelay's poems (in the Shropshire dialect), ed. J. O. Halliwell, for the Percy Society. It may be said that, if the scribe of "William of Palerne" lived in Gloucestershire, he may yet have been a Shropshire man ; but this argument loses in force if it has to be often appealed to in cases of difficulty. We must first try to reconcile the evidence we possess, before rejecting any portion of it. In the present instance, the MS. is a very good one. It may be confidently expected, however, that something tolerably definite may be known about English dialects at no very distant period, and the present question may be then more easily decided.

these poems that it would not be well to lose so good an opportunity of pointing it out. It was one of those niceties of speech which it was the poet's especial business to observe. The clearest way of pointing out the distinction is to tabulate the best examples of it.

P. 13. The child, addressing the emperor, uses *ye, you, &c.*  
 P. 14. Emperor to child—*thou*; child to his (supposed) father—*ye*; emperor to cowherd—*thou*. P. 16. Cowherd to child—*thou*. P. 29. Alexandrine to Melior—*ye*; Melior to Alexandrine—*thou*. P. 30. Melior to William—*thou*. Pp. 37—39. Alexandrine to William, and William to Alexandrine—*thou*. P. 43. William to emperor, and lords to emperor—*ye*. P. 50. Messengers to Melior—*ye*. P. 57. Melior to William, *after betrothal*—*ye*. P. 73. One emperor to another—*thou*. P. 80. Melior to William, *in excitement*—*thou*. P. 81. Melior to William, *in submission*—*ye*. P. 92. Melior to William, *after escaping peril*—*thou*. P. 96. Priest to queen—*ye*. P. 104. Queen to her handmaid—*thou*; handmaid to queen—*ye*. P. 105. Queen to William, begins with *ye* in the *conventional* phrase "3e me saye," but otherwise uses *thou*, until she has virtually abdicated in William's favour, after which she uses *ye*, p. 113, and especially note ll. 3954, 3955. P. 126. William, now of high rank, to his prisoner, a king—*thou*. P. 129. The captive king to the queen—*ye*. P. 134. King to William (asking)—*ye*; William to the king (granting)—*thou*. P. 136. Messengers to the Queen of Spain—*ye*; but in relating *William's* message, containing rebukes and violent threats, they change to *thou*. P. 142. Queen to her step-son—*thou*; but in putting a polite question—*3e* (l. 4460). P. 144. Alphouns to William, uses the *conventional* phrase "cris mot 3ou saue"—but otherwise uses *thou*. He is answered by William with *ye*, expressing the *utmost deference*, and asking him who he is. This is sufficient to show that *thou* is the language of a lord to a servant, of an equal to an equal, and expresses also companionship, love, permission, defiance, scorn, threatening; whilst *ye* is the language of a servant to a lord, and of compliment, and further expresses honour, submission, entreaty. *Thou* is used with singular verbs, and the possessive pronoun *thine*; but *ye* requires plural verbs, and the possessive *your*. In the "Alisaunder" we find the same usages. The Prince of Persia

calls the King of Egypt—*ye* ; the king scornfully replies with *thou*. The same Nectanabus, who “speaks lordly,” and is too proud to call Queen Olympias *Madam*, and will only call her *Lady*, audaciously addresses her as *thou*, but there are in one or two places exceptions which shew a corruptness in the text. She replies with *thou*, as a lady should who would preserve her dignity. As for Alexander, he coolly uses *thou* to everybody, and especially to his father, l. 1198, and his mother, l. 1103. Besides the insight we thus get into our forefathers’ ways of speech, this investigation may serve to remind us editors that we are not to mistake *you* for *pou*, as in some MSS. is easily done, and that the frequent interchange of the forms is the result, not of confusion, but of design and orderly use.

In the present edition, every variation of spelling has had its own references assigned to it in the Glossary, at the cost of no small amount of labour ; I hope this may prove of use to the student of our old English orthoëpy.

---

### CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

The only misprints of importance (of which I am aware) are these three :

*William of Palerne*, l. 2160. For *zifter-neue read* *zister-neue*.

„ „ „ l. 4054. For *Karpe read* *Karpe*.

„ „ „ l. 4827. For *þempour read* *þemperour*.

A few misprints occur of a more trivial nature, of which the principal are these :

*William of Palerne*, l. 46. For *a baye read* *a-baye*. L. 143. Insert a hyphen in “*man-kynne*.” 219. The metrical dot should precede “*miȝt*,” instead of following it. 225. Insert a comma after “*fair*.” 787. Fol. 16 begins with this line, not with the next. 1004. Insert a hyphen in “*middel-erpe*.” 1418. The MS. has “*sofoū*,” not “*sofou*.” 1576. No comma at the end of this line.

1597. The metrical dot should *precede* "reken." 1624. There should be a full stop at the end of the line. 1860. Insert a comma at the end of the line. 2100. *For* on-liue *read* on liue. 2204. This is correctly printed, according to the MS. But I propose to read, "*but* the witti werwolf, &c." 2430, 2560. Insert a hyphen in "bere-felles." 2580. Insert a comma after "rist." 3116. The metrical dot should *precede* "riht." 3995. Insert a hyphen in "per-tille." 4068. Insert quotation-marks at the end of the line. 4263 (*note*). *For* 3622 *read* 3623. Page 220, l. 6. *For* Altera *read* altera.

Lines 5346, 5347, 5348 of *William of Palerne* rime together. This was, no doubt, unintentional.

In l. 396 of *Alisaunder*, the reading *hem* is necessary to the alliteration.

In the Glossary, the word *Hastely* is said to occur in l. 233. This should be corrected to 323.

By an unfortunate mistake on my part, the following notes by Sir F. Madden reached me too late for insertion in the Glossary.

"*Nones*. See Glossarial Remarks on *Lazamon*, v. 17304, vol. iii. p. 492; and the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Nonez*.

"*Peter*. See the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Peter*, where other instances are given."

## ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

---

SINCE ‘William of Palerne’ was printed in 1867, the whole of the French poem, mentioned at p. iii, § 3, has been edited by M. Michelant, and can now be compared with the English version.

In my preface to ‘Alexander and Dindimus,’ p. xi, I have shewn that it has been proved by Dr. Trautmann that my former view as to the authorship of the fragment of Alisaunder, printed in the present volume, is incorrect. The ‘Alisaunder’ fragment is *not* by the same author as William of Palerne; whilst, on the other hand, it *is* by the same author as the fragment called ‘Alexander and Dindimus.’ See further in the same preface.

### CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

If the reader will kindly turn to p. xliii, he will find a short list of ‘Corrections and Emendations.’

Besides these, I have a few further corrections to make, as follows.

Page ii, l. 26. *For* alogether *read* altogether.

P. xxix. See also *Werwolf* in Nares’ Glossary, and the numerous references to *lycanthropia* in Burton, Anatomy of Melancholy, Part I, sect. 1, mem. 1, subsect. 4.

P. xxxiii, l. 3 from bottom. *For* Macedonis, *read* Macedonis.

P. 6, l. 3. The word indistinctly printed should be *fast*.

P. 42, l. 1069. Restore the MS. reading “wip ouer-gart gret ost,” &c. Dr. Morris points out that *ouergart* occurs as a substantive, meaning *arrogance*, in Sainte Marharete, ed. Cockayne, p. 16, l. 13. See also Castle of Love, ed. Weymouth, l. 993, and Ormulum, l. 8163. *Ouer-gart* also occurs as an adjective, meaning arrogant or overweening. “For tho God seiþ that the world was so *ouer-gart*,” i. e. for when God saw that the world was so overweening; Political Songs,

ed. Wright, p. 341, l. 391. Hence *ouergurt gret* may well mean overweeningly or excessively great, very large. See Mr. Cockayne's note at p. 106 of *Seinte Marharete*.

P. 58, l. 1624. Add a full stop at the end of the line.

P. 66, first side-note. The mark " should precede *I would*.

P. 84, l. 2520. Mr. Wedgwood explains *cayreden* by *turned*, i. e. *charred*, and thinks that we here have the etymology of *to char*. But *cayreden* cannot well mean charred in this passage, but only 'carried.' The use of *cayren* for *carien*, to carry, is curious, but not without authority. See P. *Plowman*, B. ii. 161, where most MSS. have *kairen*, but two MSS. have *carien*; and all the MSS. have *carien* in the same, A. ii. 132.

P. 112. Note 4 should be called note 1.

P. 154, l. 4827. For *þempour read þemp[er]our*.

P. 168, third side-note. For *Melior read Florence*.

P. 203, l. 837. For *has te read haste*.

P. 207, l. 967. For *ilt read gilt*.

P. 238, note to l. 234. For *Seleden read Seseden*.

#### GLOSSARY.

*For-lete*. Read—*pp.* forlete, †679.

*Halde*. Add—*pp.* hold, 902, 2006, 3243, 5242; holden, †217.

*Half*. Add—*behalf*, 4831; *pl.* halues, sides, †344.

*Hap*. Add—*pl.* happes, †107, †385.

*Hastely*. In the references, for 233 read 323. Add—*Hauntes*, *pr. s.* F. practises, †815.

*Malskrid*.—We find also, in the very old glossary (8th century) printed in Wright's *Vocabularies*, vol. ii, p. 108, the entry—'Fescinatio, malscrung'; where *Fescinatio* appears to be an error for *fascinatio*, a bewitching.

*Stined* means simply 'stiffened'; and is wholly unconnected with Swed. *stufva*, &c., cited under the word.

*Won*. This signifies a quantity or abundance, as stated. See *wân* in *Stratmann*. It is *not* the same word as A.S. *winn*, but it may, perhaps, be from the same verb *winnan*.

*March, 1881.*



## William of Palerne ;

or

## William and the Werwolf.

[Three leaves being lost at the beginning of the MS., their place is here supplied from the French Text.]

[Nus ne se doit celer ne taire,  
sil set chose qui doie plaire,  
kil ne le desponde en apert ;  
car bien repont son sens et pert,  
qui nel despont apertement  
en la presence de la gent.  
por ce ne voel mon sens repondre,  
que tot li mauvais puissent fondre ;  
et cil qui me vaurront entendre,  
i puissent sens et bien aprendre. 10  
car sens celes qui nest ois,  
est autresi, ce mest avis,  
com maint tresor enferme sont,  
qui nului bien ne preu ne font ;  
tant comme il soient si enclos,  
autresi est de sens repos ;  
por ce ne voel le mien celer.  
ancois me plaist a raconter  
selonc mon sens et mon memoire.  
le fait dune ancienne estoire, 20

[No one should keep it to himself or be  
silent,  
If he knows something that will please,  
But should declare it openly :  
For he hides and loses his knowledge  
Who does not declare it openly.  
In the presence of people  
Wherefore I will not hide my knowledge  
That all the wicked may come to naught :  
And that those who would fain hear me  
May be able to learn knowledge and what  
is good.  
For knowledge hidden and unheard  
Is just like, in my opinion,  
Many treasures that are shut up,  
Which do good or advantage to no one ;  
Just as they are when thus enclosed,  
So is it with concealed knowledge ;  
Wherefore I will not conceal mine.  
Thus it pleases me to recount  
According to my knowledge and memory  
The event of an ancient story,

qui en Puille jadis avint  
a .i. roi qui la terre tint.

**L**i rois embrons fu apeles ;  
mult par fu grans sa poestes ;  
bien tint em pais sa region,  
et mult par fu de grant renon.  
moilher avoit gente roine,  
gentix dame de franche orine ;  
et fille a riche empereor,  
qui de Gresse tenoit lounor.  
Felise avoit a non la dame ;  
mult fu amee en son roiaime.  
navoient eun tot seul enfant,  
petit tousel, ne gaires grant.  
de .iiii. ans ert li damoisiax,  
qui a merveilles estoit biax.  
Guilliaumes ot lenfes a non,  
mais la roine tout par non  
lot a .ii. dames commande,  
quele amena de son regne.  
Gloriande est lune noumee,  
Acelone ert lautre apelee.  
celes le commanda a garder,  
a enseigner et doctriner,  
moustrer et enseigner la loi,  
comme on doit faire fil a roi.  
en eles sest assuree,  
mais traie est et enganee,  
et deceue laidement ;  
mult porres bien oir comment.

**L**i rois Embrons .i. frere avoit,  
La cui li regnes escaoit ;  
et cil donna tant et promist,  
et tant porchaea et tant fist  
as gardes qui lenfant garloient,  
que dit li ont quil loerrioient,

That happened once in Apulia  
To a king who ruled the land.  
The king was named Embrons ;  
Very exceeding great was his power ;  
He governed well his country in peace,  
And was of exceeding great renown.  
He had to wife a beauteous queen,  
A gracious dame of noble origin ;  
And who was daughter to a rich emperor,  
Who ruled the dominion of Greece.  
Felice was the lady's name ;  
She was much loved in her kingdom.  
They had but one only child,  
A little lad, not very tall.  
The prince was four years old,  
And was marvellously fair.  
William was the child's name,  
But the queen very specially (?)  
Has entrusted him to two ladies  
Whom she brought from her own country.  
One is named Gloriande,  
The other was called Acelone.  
To these she entrusts him, to keep him,  
To teach and instruct him,  
To shew and instruct him the law,  
As one ought to teach a king's son.  
In them she confided,  
But was betrayed and defrauded  
And deceived shamefully ;  
You shall very soon hear how.  
King Embrons had one brother,  
To whom the kingdom would fall ;  
And he bribed and promised so much,  
And so contrived and managed  
With the guardians who kept the child,  
That they have told him they would kill it,

et le roi meisme ensemment.  
 ja ont porquis lenherbement  
 doit il andoi mort recevront,  
 se Diex nel fait, li rois del mont. 60

**E**n Palerne orent sejourne,  
 un mois entier en la cite,  
 entre le roi et la roine.  
 desous le maistre tor marbrine,  
 ot .i. vergier merveilles gent,  
 tot clos de mur et de cyment ;  
 si ot mainte sauvage beste.  
 .i. jor par une haute feste  
 i vint esbanoier li rois,  
 si chevalier et si borjois ;  
 et maint baron i ot venu,  
 la roine meisme i fu.  
 celes qui lenfant ont en garde,  
 (cui male flambe et maus fus arde !)  
 lont mene avoec lautre gent ;  
 mais por ce ne le font noient  
 que sel seussent la dolour,  
 qui de lenfant avint le jor.

**P**ar le vergier li rois ombroie,  
 et la roine, a mult grant joie. 80  
 mais ne sevent com lor grans dex  
 lor est presens devant lor ex.  
 lenfes floriertes va cuellant,  
 de lune a lautre va jouant.  
 atant esgardent la ramee,  
 saut un grans leus, goule bae,  
 a fendant vient comme tempeste ;  
 tuit se destornent por la beste ;  
 devant le roi, demainement,  
 son fil travers sa goule prent, 90  
 atant sen va ; mais la crie  
 fu apres lui mult tost levee.

And the king himself at the same time.  
 They have already provided the poison  
 From which they will both receive death,  
 If God, king of the world, permits it.  
 In Palermo they have dwelt,  
 A whole month in the city,  
 With the king and the queen.  
 Beneath the chief marble tower  
 Was an orchard wondrously fair,  
 All enclosed with walls and mortar ;  
 There was many a wild beast there.  
 One day, on a high festival,  
 The king came there to divert himself,  
 70 His chevaliers and his burgesses ;  
 And many a baron had come there,  
 The queen herself was there.  
 Those who have the child in charge,  
 (Whom evil flame and evil fire burn !)  
 Have brought him along with the rest ;  
 But they would have done nothing of the  
 kind,  
 Had they but known the sorrow  
 That happened that day because of the  
 child.  
 In the orchard the king shades himself,  
 80 And the queen, with very great joy.  
 But they know not how their great grief  
 Is present to them, before their eyes.  
 The child goes gathering flowers,  
 And playing from one to the other.  
 Just then they look at the bushes,  
 A huge wolf, with mouth open, leaps in,  
 Comes in at the opening like a tempest ;  
 All turn aside to avoid the beast ;  
 Before the king, noiselessly,  
 90 He takes his son across his mouth,  
 And then makes off ; but the cry  
 Was very soon raised after him.

lieve li dels, lieve li cris  
 del fil le roi qui est trais.  
 la roine souvent seserie,  
 "aidies, aidies, Sainte Marie !  
 maisnie au roi, que faites vos ?  
 ja me morrai sil nest rescous !"

**L**i rois demande ses chevax,  
 et fait monter tous ses vassax. 100

toute la vile si esmuet,  
 cascuns i keurt plus tost quil puet.

li rois le siut a esperon,  
 le gart acaingnent environ ;  
 mais li leus ert fors saillis,  
 a la campagne sestoit mis ;  
 lenfes souvent seserie et brait,  
 li rois lentent qui apres vait.

garde sel voit monter .i. mont,  
 de tost aler sa gent semont,  
 donques se par efforcent tuit,  
 li leus a tout lenfant sen fuit.

fuit sen li leus, et cil apres,  
 qui del ataindre sont engres.  
 desi au far le vont chacant,  
 il saut en leve a tout lenfant.

le far trespasse, perdus lont  
 li rois et cil qui o lui sont ;  
 ensi sen va en tel maniere  
 a tout lenfant la beste fiere. 110

li rois arriere sen retourne,  
 mult a le cuer et triste et morne,  
 de son enfant qua si perdu ;  
 a la cite sont revenu.

**L**a roine maine tel duel,  
 morte voudroit estre, son vuel ;  
 pleure sovent, et crie, et brait,  
 a la beste son fil retrait.

The plaint arises, the cry arises  
 Of the son of the king that is borne away.

The queen oftentimes exclaims,  
 "Aid me, aid me, Holy Mary !

Ye household of the king, what do ye ?  
 Now I shall die if he be not rescued !"

The king calls for his horses,  
 And makes all his vassals mount.

All the town is in commotion,  
 Every one runs as quickly as he can.

The king follows the wolf on the spur,  
 Watches him, encircling (him) around.

But the wolf had leapt far away,  
 And betaken himself to the plain ;

The child oft cries out and wails ;  
 The king, who goes after him, hears him.

He looks and sees him mount a hill,  
 110 Summons his men to come quickly.

Then all hasten on very fast,  
 The wolf flees away with the child.

The wolf flees away, and they after him,  
 Who are very desirous of reaching him.

Unto the Far [Straits of Messina] they chase  
 him,  
 He leaps into the water with the child.

He crosses the Far, they have lost him,  
 The king and they who are with him ;

Thus in such a manner, flees away

120 The wild beast with the child.

The king returns back,  
 Very sorrowful and sad at heart,

For his child whom he has st ;  
 To the city have all returned.

The queen makes such a mourning,  
 She would fain be dead, had she her will ;

She weeps often, and cries and wails,  
 And demands back her child from the beast.

“fix, dous amis,” fait la roine,  
 “tendre bouche, coulor rosine, 130  
 chose devine, espritex,  
 qui cuidast que beste ne leus  
 vos devorast ! dix, quel eur !  
 lasse ! por coi vif tant ne dur ?  
 fix, ou sont ore ti bel oel,  
 li bel, li simple, sans orguel ?  
 tes frons li gens, et ti bel crin,  
 qui tuit sambloient fait dor fin ?  
 ta tendre face, et tes elers vis ?  
 ha cuers ! por coi ne me partis ? 140  
 quest devenue ta biautes,  
 et tes gens cors, et ta clartes ?  
 tes nes, ta bouche, et tes mentons,  
 et ta figure, et ta facons,  
 et ti bel brac, et tes mains blanches,  
 tes rains beles, et tes hanches,  
 tes beles jambes, et ti pie ;  
 lasse ! quel duel et quel pechie !  
 ja devoies tu estre fais  
 por devises et por sourhais ! 150  
 or es a leu-garoul penture,  
 li miens enfes, quele aventure !  
 mais je ne cuit, por nule chose,  
 beste sauvage soit si ose,  
 qui ton gent cors ost adamer,  
 plaier, sanc faire, ne navrer ;  
 ne cuit que ja dame dieu place,  
 ne que tel cruaute en face !”

**E**nsi la dame se demente,  
 ensi por son fil se gaimente, 160  
 ensi le ploure, ensi le plaint.  
 mais tant le castoie et constraint  
 li rois, que tout laisser li fait  
 la dolor quele maine et fait ;

“Son, sweet love,” saith the queen,  
 “Tender mouth, rosy colour,  
 Thing divine and spiritual,  
 Who could believe that beast or wolf  
 Could devour you ? O God ! what fortune !  
 Alas ! wherefore live I or last so long ?  
 Son, where are now thy beautiful eyes,  
 So beautiful, so innocent, without pride ?  
 Thy fair forehead, and thy lovely hair,  
 Which seemed all made of fine gold ?  
 Thy tender face, and thy clear looks ?  
 Oh heart ! wherefore hast thou not left me ?  
 What is become of thy beauty,  
 Thy sweet body, and thy fairness ?  
 Thy nose, thy mouth, and thy chin,  
 And thy form and fashion,  
 And thy fair arm, and thy white hands,  
 Thy fair reins and thy thighs,  
 Thy fair legs, and thy feet ;  
 Alas ! what sorrow and what fault !  
 Thou oughtest only to have been made  
 For pleasures and for desires !  
 Now art thou food for the werwolf,  
 My child ! what a mischance !  
 But I cannot believe, on any account,  
 A wild beast would be so daring  
 As to hurt thy tender body,  
 To wound it, make it bleed, or tear it :  
 I cannot believe that it would please our  
 Lord God,  
 Or that He would do such cruelty to it.”  
 Thus the lady is in despair,  
 Thus she laments for her son,  
 Thus she weeps, thus she complains for him.  
 But the king so corrects and restrains her,  
 That he makes her altogether leave off  
 The grief which she was continuing and  
 making ;

ensi la dame se rapaie.  
 mais or est drois que vos retraie  
 del leu qui o lenfant senfuit ;  
 tant la porte et jor et nuit,  
 et taute terre trespassee,  
 que pres de Roume en la contree 170  
 en une grant forest sarreste,  
 ou ôt mainte sauvage beste.  
 la se repose .viii. jors entiers ;  
 lenfant de quanques fu mestiers  
 li a porquis la beste franche,  
 conques de rien not mesestance.  
 en terre a une fosse faite,  
 et dedens herbe mise et traite,  
 et la feuchiere et la lihue,  
 que par dedens a espandue. 180  
 la nuit le couche joste soi ;  
 li leus-garous le fil le roi  
 lacole de ses .iiii. pies.  
 si est de lui aprivoisies,  
 li fix le roi, que tot li plaist  
 ce que la beste de lui fait ;]

[Fol. 4.]  
 The child is  
 pleased and  
 obedient.

þat it apertly was apayed · for profite þat he feld,  
 & [wrouzt]<sup>1</sup> buxumly by þe bestes wille · in wise as it  
 couþe.

An old cowherd  
 dwelt in the  
 forest,

who kept men's  
 kine there.

He came by  
 chance to the  
 burrow where the  
 child was.

**H**it bi-fel in þat forest · þere fast by-side,  
 þer woned a wel old cherl · þat was a couherde, 4  
 þat fele winterres in þat forest · fayre had kepud  
 Mennes ken of þe cuntre · as a comen herde ;  
 & þus it bitide þat time · as tellen oure bokes,  
 þis cowherd comes on a time · to kepen is bestes. 8  
 Fast by-side þe borwz · þere þe barn was inne.  
 þe herd had wiþ him an hound · his hert to lizt,

<sup>1</sup> A verb is evidently wanting to complete the sense. Perhaps we should read, "And wrouzt buxumly by the bestes wille, &c."—M.

Thus the lady becomes tranquillized.  
 But now it is right for me to tell you  
 About the wolf that fled with the child ;  
 So far he carries it both day and night,  
 And traverses so much ground,  
 That in the country near Rome,  
 In a great forest, he stops ;  
 Where was many a wild beast.  
 There he rests for eight whole days ;  
 Whatever the child had need of,  
 The noble beast provided for it,  
 So that it had discomfort in nothing.  
 In the ground he has made a trench,  
 And in it placed and put grass,  
 And also fern and herbs (?)  
 180 Which within it he has spread.  
 At night, he lies down near him ;  
 The werwolf embraces the king's son  
 With his four feet.  
 And so familiar with him  
 Is the king's son, that all pleases him,  
 Whatever the beast does for him ;]

- forto bayte on his bestes · wanne þai to brode went.  
 þe herd sat þan wiþ hound · azene þe hote sunne, 12 He sat with his  
 Nouȝt fully a furlong · fro þat fayre child, dog, and clouted  
 clouȝtand kyndely his schon · as to <sup>1</sup> here craft falles. his shoes.  
 þat while was þe werwolf · went a-boute his praye,  
 what behoued to þe barn · to bring as he miȝt. 16  
 þe child þan darked in his den · dernly him one, The child lay hid  
 & was a big bold barn · & breme of his age, in the den.  
 For spakly speke it couþe tho · & spedeliche to-wawe.  
 Louely lay it a-long · in his lonely denne, 20  
 & buskede him out of þe buschys · þat were blowed  
 grene,  
 & leued ful louely · þat lent grete schade,  
 & briddes ful bremely · on þe bowes singe.  
 what for melodye þat þei made · in þe mey sesoun, 24 Lured by the  
 þat litel child listely · lorked out of his caue, birds and by the  
 Faire floures forto fecche · þat he bi-fore him seye, fair flowers,  
 & to gadere of þe gras · þat grene were & fayre.  
 & whan it was out went · so wel hit him liked, 28 he came out and  
 þe sauor of þe swete sesoun · & song of þe briddes, gathered flowers,  
 þat [he]<sup>2</sup> ferde fast a-boute · floures to gadere, and played  
 & layked him long while · to lesten þat merþe. about.  
 þe couherdes hound þat time · as happe by-tidde, 32 The dog tracked  
 feld foute of þe child · and fast þider fulwes ; him, and began to  
 & sone as he it seiȝ · soþe forto telle, bark  
 he gan to berke on þat barn · and to baie it hold,  
 þat it wax neiȝ of his witt · wod for fere, 36  
 and comsed þan to crye · so kenly and schille,  
 & wepte so wonder fast wite þou for sothe,  
 þat þe son of þe cry com · to þe cowherde euene,  
 þat he wist witerly it was · þe voys of a childe. 40  
 þan ros he vp radely · & ran þider swiþe,  
 & drow him toward þe den · bi his dogges noyce.  
 bi þat time was þe barn · for bere of þat hounde, The cowherd  
 followed the child  
 to the den,

<sup>1</sup> MS. "aſto."<sup>2</sup> Read, "that *it* ferde," or "*he* ferde."—M.

- drawe him in to his den · & darked þer stille, 44  
 & wept euere as it wolde · a-wede for fere ;  
 & euere þe dogge at þe hole · held it at a baye.  
 ana looked in. & whan þe kouherd com þid[er]e<sup>1</sup> · he koured lowe  
 to bi-hold in at þe hole · whi his hound berkyd. 48  
 þanne of-saw he ful sone · þat semliche child,  
 þat so loueliche lay & wep · in þat lopli caue,  
 He saw the child  
 lying there in  
 clothes of gold. cloþed ful komly · for ani kud kinges sone,  
 In gode elopes of gold · a-greped ful riehe, 52  
 wiþ perrey & pellure · pertelyche to þe riȝttes.  
 þe cherl wondred of þat chaunce · & chastised his dogge,  
 He rebuked his  
 dog, and enticed  
 the child to come  
 to him. bad him blinne of his berking · & to þe barn talked,  
 acoyed it to come to him · & elepud hit oft, 56  
 & foded it wiþ floures · & wiþ faire by-hest,  
 & hiȝt it hastely to haue · what it wold ȝerne,  
 appeles & alle þinges · þat echildern after wilnen.  
 The child came  
 out, and he took  
 it in his arms, so, forto seiȝ al þe soþe · so faire þe cherl glosed, 60  
 þat þe echild com of þe caue · & his crynge stint.  
 þe cherl ful cherli þat echild · tok in his armes,  
 & kest hit & clipped · and oft crist þonkes,  
 þat hade him sent þo sonde · swiche prey to finde. 64  
 and took it home  
 to his wife. wiȝtliche wiþ þe child · he went to his house,  
 and bi-tok it to his wif · tiȝtly to kepe.  
 a gladere wommon vnder god · no miȝt go on erþe,  
 She asked the  
 child its name,  
 and it said,  
 "William." þan was þe wif wiþ þe child · witow for soþe. 68  
 sche kolled it ful kindly · and askes is name,  
 & it answered ful sone · & seiðe, "william y hiȝt."  
 þan was þe godwif glad · and gan it faire kepe,  
 þat it wanted nouȝt · þat it wold haue, 72  
 þat þei ne fond him as faire · as for here state longed,  
 & þe beter, be ye sure · for barn ne had þei none  
 brouȝt forþ of here bodies ; · here bale was þe more.  
 They had no  
 children of their  
 own, but soþly þai seiðe þe child · schuld weld al here godis,  
 so agreed to  
 adopt it. Loudes & ludes as eyer · after here lif dawes. 77  
 but from þe cherl & þe child · nov chaunge we oure tale,

<sup>1</sup> Read "thidere."—M.



For i wol of þe werwolf · a wile nov speke.

- W**hanne þis werwolf was come · to his woluk<sup>1</sup> denne,      When the  
 & hade brouzt bilfoder · for þe barnes mete,      81      werwolf returned,  
 þat he hade wonne with wo · wide wher a-boute,      he found the *nest*,  
 þan fond he nest & no neiȝ · for nouȝt nas þer leued.      but no *eggs* in it.  
 & whan þe best þe barn missed · so balfully he g[r]inneþ,<sup>2</sup>  
 þat alle men vpon molde · no miȝt telle his sorwe.      85  
 For reuliche gan he rore · & rente al his hide,      He roared, rent  
 & fret oft of þe erpe · & fel down on swowe,      his hide, and  
 & made þe most dool · þat man miȝt diuise.      88      swooned.  
 & as þe best in his bale · þer a-boute wente,  
 he fond þe feute al fresh · where forþ þe herde      Scen he found the  
 hadde bore þan barn · beter it to ȝeme.      cowherd's track,  
 wiziȝtly þe werwolf · þan went bi nose      92  
 euene to þe herdes house · & hastely was þare.  
 þere walked he a-boute þe walles · to winne in siȝt ;  
 & at þe last lelly · a litel hole he findes.  
 þere pried he in prinely · and pertiliche bi-holdes      96      Looking through  
 hov hertily þe herdes wif · hules þat child,      a hole, he saw  
 & hov fayre it fedde · & fetisliche it baþede,      how well the  
 & wrouȝt wiþ it as wel · as ȝif it were hire owne.      child was being  
 þaune was þe best bliþe i-nov · for þe barnes sake,      100      tendeu,  
 For he wist it schold be warded · wel þanne at þe best.  
 & hertily for þat hap · to-heuene-ward he loked,      and thanked God,  
 & þroliche þonked god · mani þousand siþes,      and went his way.  
 & seþþen went on is way · whider as him liked ;      104  
 but whiderward wot i neuer · witow for soþe.  
 ak nowþe ȝe þat arn hende · haldes ow stille,      Listen and hear  
 & how þat best þerwe bale · was brouzt out of kinde,      how he became a  
 I wol ȝou telle as swiþe · trewly þe soþe.      108      werwolf.

**W**erwolf was he non · wox of kinde,  
 ac komen was he of kun · þat kud was ful nobul ;  
 For þe kud king of spayne · was kindly his fader.

[Fol. 5 b.]  
 He was of noble  
 birth, for his  
 father was King  
 of Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Sic in MS ; read woluk ? Cf. ll. 468, 1634.

<sup>2</sup> See note.

- he gat him, as god gaf grace · on his ferst wyue, 112  
 & at þe burþ of þat barn · þe bold lady deyde.  
 siphþen þat kuol king so · bi his conseyl wrouþ,  
 another wif þat he wedded · a worchipful ladi,  
 þe princes douȝter of portingale · to *proue* þe soþe. 116  
 but lelliche þat ladi in zouþe · hadde lerned miche  
 schame,  
 For al þe werk of wiccheecraft · wel y-nouȝ che couȝþe,  
 nede naddre ȝhe namore · of nigramaunce to lere.  
 of coninge of wicche-craft · wel y-nouȝ ȝhe couȝde, 120  
 & braunde was þat bold quene · of burnes y-clepuð.  
 þe kinges furst child was fostered · fayre as it ouȝt,  
 & had lordes & ladies · it louely to kepe,  
 & fast gan þat frely barn · fayre forto wexe. 124  
 þe quene his moder on a time · as a mix þouȝt,  
 how faire & how fetis it was · & freliche schapen.  
 & þis þanne þouȝt sche þroly · þat it no schuld neuer  
 kuere to be king þer · as þe kinde eyre, 128  
 whille þe kinges ferst sone · were þer a-liue.  
 þan studied sche stifly · as stepmoderes wol alle,  
 to do dernly a despit · to here stepchilderen ;  
 Feþli a-mong foure schore · vneþe findestow on gode.  
 but truly tiȝt hadde þat quene · take hire to rede 133  
 to bring þat barn in bale · botles for euer,  
 þat he ne schuld wiztli in þis world · neuer weld reaume.  
 a noynement anon sche made · of so grete strengþe, 136  
 bi enchaumens of charmes · þat euel chaunche hire tide,  
 þat whan þat womman þer-wiȝt · hadde þat worli child  
 ones wel an-oynted þe child · wel al a-bowte,  
 he wex to a werwolf · wiztly þer-after, 140  
 al þe making of man · so mysse hadde ȝhe schaped.  
 ac his witt welt he after · as wel as to-fore,  
 but lelly oþer likenes · þat longeþ to man kynne,  
 but a wilde werwolf · ne walt he neuer after. 144  
 & whanne þis witty werwolf · wiste him so schaped,  
 he knew it was bi þe craft · of his kursed stepmoder,

- & þouzt or he went a-way · he wold 3if he miȝt  
 wayte hire *sum* wicked torn · what bi-tidde after. 148  
 & as bliue, boute bod · he braydes to þe quene,  
 & hent hire so hetterly · to haue hire a-strangeled,  
 þat hire deth was neiȝ diȝt · to deme þe soþe.  
 but carfuli gan sche erie · so kenely and lowde, 152  
 þat maydenes & miȝthi men · manliche to hire come,  
 & wolden brusten þe best · nad he be þe liȝttere,  
 & fled a-way þe faster · in-to ferre londes,  
 so þat *pertely* in-to poyle · he passed þat time, 156  
 as þis fortune bi-fel · þat i told of bi-fore ;  
 þus was þis witty best · werwolf ferst maked.  
 but now wol i stint a stounde · of þis sterne best,  
 & tale of þe tidy child · þat y of told ere. 160
- þus passed is þe first pas · of þis pris tale,  
 & 3e þat louen & lyken · to listen a-ni more,  
 alle wiȝth on hol hert · to þe heiȝ king of heuene  
 preieth a pater noster · priuely þis time 164  
 for þe hend erl of herford · sir humfray de bowne,  
 þe king edwardes newe · at glouseter þat ligges.  
 For he of frensche þis fayre tale · ferst dede *translate*,  
 In ese of englysch men · in englysch speche ; 168  
 & god graunt hem his blis · þat godly so prayen !
- Here sought to  
 avenge himself,  
 and tried to  
 strangle her.  
 She eried out, and  
 he fled,  
 and went to  
 Apulia.  
 We now return to  
 the child.  
 Here ends the  
 first Passus.  
 Pray for Sir  
 Humphrey de  
 Bohun, earl of  
 Hereford, who  
 caused this tale  
 to be translated.

- L eue lordes, now listenes · of þis litel barn,  
 þat þe kinde kowherde-wif · keped so fayre.  
 3he wist it as wel or bet · as 3if it were hire owne, 172  
 til hit big was & bold · to buschen on felde,  
 & couþe ful craftily · kepe alle here bestes,  
 & bring hem in þe best lese · whan hem bi-stode nede,  
 & wited hem so wisly · þat wanted him *neuer* one. 176  
 a bowe al-so þat bold barn · bi-gat him þat time,  
 & so to schote vnder þe schawes · scharplyche he lerned,  
 þat briddes & smale bestes · wiȝ his bow he quelles
- The cowherd's  
 wife took eare of  
 William,  
 who grew up as a  
 herdsman.  
 He learnt to  
 shoot well,

so plenteusliche in his play · þat, pertly to telle, 180  
 whanne he went hom eche niȝt · wiȝ is droue of bestis,  
 he com him-self y-charged · wiȝ conyng & hares,  
 wiȝ fesauus & feldfares · and oþer foules grete ;  
 þat þe herde & his hende wif · & al his hole meyne 184  
 þat bold barn wiȝ his bowe · by þat time fedde.  
 & ȝit hadde fele felawes · in þe forest eche day,  
 ȝong bold barnes · þat bestes al-so keped.  
 & bliþe was eche a barn · ho best miȝt him plese, 188  
 & folwe him for his fredom · & for his faire þewes.  
 for what þing willam wan · a-day wiȝ his bowe,  
 were it feþered foul · or foure-foted best,  
 ne wold þis william neuer on · wiȝ-hold to him-selue,  
 til alle his felawes were ferst · feffed to here paie. 193  
 so kynde & so corteys · comsed he þere,  
 þat alle ledes him louede · þat loked on him ones ;  
 & blesseden þat him bare · & bronȝt in-to þis worlde,  
 so moche manhed & murþe · schewed þat child euere.

One day, the  
 emperor of Rome  
 rode out to hunt,

**H**it tidde after on a time · as tellus oure bokes, 198  
 as þis bold barn his bestes · blyþeliche keped,  
 þe riche emperour of rome · rod out for to hunte  
 In þat faire forest · feipely for to telle,  
 wiȝ alle his menskful meyne · þat moche was & nobul.  
 þan fel it hap þat þei founde · ful sone a grete bor,  
 & huntyng wiȝ hound & horn · harde alle sewede. 204  
 þe emperowr entred in a wey · euene to attele  
 to haue bruttonet þat bor · & þe abaie seppen ;  
 but missely marked he is way · & so manly he rides,  
 þat alle his wies were went · ne wist he neuer whider.  
 so serforþ fram his men · feþly for to telle, 209  
 þat of horn ne of hound · ne miȝt he here sowne,  
 &, bout euy liuing lud · left was he one.

and found a  
 great boar.

The emperor lost  
 his way in the  
 forest.

Riding along, he  
 saw a werwolf  
 chasing a hart.

þemperour on his stif stede · a sty forþ þanne takes 212  
 to herken after his houndes · oþer horn schille ;  
 so komes þer a werwolf · riȝt bi þat way þenne,

grimly after a gret hert · as þat god wold,  
 & chased him þurth chauce · þere þe child pleide, 216  
 þat kept þe kowherdes bestes · i carped of bi-fore. [Fol. 7.]  
 þemperour þanne hastely · þat huge best folwed He followed  
 as stiffuly as is stede miȝt · strecche on to renne ; them, but lost  
 but by-þan he com by þat barn · & a-boute loked, 220 sight of both.  
 þe werwolf & þe wilde hert · were a-weye boþe,  
 þat he ne wist in þis world · were þei were bi-come,  
 ne whiderward he schuld seche · to se of hem more.  
 but þanne bi-held he a-boute · & þat barn of-seye, 224 Then he behel I  
 hov fair how fetys it was · & freliche schapen ; William, and  
 so fair a siȝt of seg · ne sawe he neuer are, wondered at his  
 of lere ne of lykame · lik him nas none, fairness,  
 ne of so sad a semblant · þat euer he say wiþ eiȝyen. 228  
 þemperour wend witerly · for wonder of þat child, thinking him of  
 þat feizþely it were of feyrye · for fairenes þat it welt, fairy birth.  
 & for þe curteys euntenaunce · þat it kudde þere.

**R**iȝtly þenne þemperour · wendes him euene tille, 232 William greets  
 þe child comes him agayn · & curtesliche him gretes. the emperor,  
 In hast þemperour hendely · his gretyng him ȝeldes,  
 and a-non riȝttes after · askes his name, who asks him his  
 & of what kin he were kome · komanded him telle. 236 name and  
 þe child þanne soberliche seide · “ sir, at ȝoure wille kindred.  
 I wol ȝow telle as tyt · trewely alle þe soþe.  
 william, sire, wel y wot · wiȝes me calles ; “ William is my  
 I was bore here fast bi · by þis wodes side. 240 name.  
 a kowherde, sire, of þis kontrey · is my kynde fader,  
 and my menskful moder · is his meke wiue.  
 þei han me fostered & fed · faire to þis time,  
 & here i kepe is kyn · as y kan on dayes ; 244 A cowherd is my  
 but, sire, by *cris*t, of my kin · know i no more.” father.  
 whan þemperour<sup>1</sup> hade herd · holly his wordes,  
 he wondered of his wis speche · as he wel miȝt,  
 & seide, “ þow bold barn · biliue i þe praye, 248 I know no more  
of my kindred.”

<sup>1</sup> Read “themperour.” The bar across the *p* is deficient.—M.

"Go, call the cowherd," said the emperor.

"Nay, sir, it may turn to his hurt."

[Fol 7 b.]

"Rather, it may turn to his profit."

"I will trust your word for that."

William tells the cowherd that a great lord would speak with him.

"Did you tell him I was here?"

"He promised your safety."

The emperor asks the cowherd if he has ever seen the emperor.

Go calle to me þe cowherde · þow elepus þi fadere,  
For y wold talk [wiþ] him<sup>1</sup> · tipinges to frayne."

"Nay, sire, bi god," quap þe barn, "be 3e riȝt sure,  
bi crist, þat is krowned · heye king of heuen, 252

For me non harm schal he haue · neuer in his line!"

"ac þeraventure þurth goddis [grace]<sup>2</sup> · to gode may it  
turne,

For-þi bring him hider · faire barn, y preye." 255

"I schal, sire," seide þe child · "for sauflieche y hope<sup>3</sup>  
I may worche on 3our word · to wite him fro harm."

"3a, saflieche," seide þemperour · "so god 3if me ioie!"  
þe child witley þanne wende · wiþ-oute ani more,

comes to þe couherdes hows · & elepud him sone; 260

For he feiȝliche wen[d]<sup>4</sup> · þat he his fader where;

& seide þan, "swete sir · s[o] 3ou criste help!

Goþ yond to a gret lord · þat gayly is tyred,

& on þe feirest frek · for soþe þat i haue seie; 264

and he wilnes witzli · wiþ 3ou to speke;

For godis loue goþ til him swipe · lest he agreued wex."

"what? sone," seide þe couherde · "seidestow i was  
here?" 267

"3a, sire, sertes," seide þe child · "but he swor formest  
þat 3e schuld haue no harm · but hendely for gode

he praide 3ou com speke wiþ him · & passe a-3ein sone."

þe cherl grocching forþ goþ · wiþ þe gode child,

& euene to þemperour · þei etteleden sone. 272

þemperour a-non riȝt · as he him of-seie,

elepud to him þe couherde · & curteysly seide;

"now telle me, felawe, be þi feiȝþ · for no þing ne  
woude,

sei þou ener þemperour · so þe crist help?" 276

<sup>1</sup> The sense and cadence of the line seem to require "with" before "him."—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read "thurth goddis *grace*."—M.

<sup>3</sup> MS. for y sauflieche y hope, *where there seems to be a y too much*.

<sup>4</sup> See note.

- “nay, sire, bi crist,” quap þe couherde · “þat king is  
of heuen,
- I nas neuer zet so hardi · to neȝh him so hende  
þere i schuld haue him seie · so me wel tyme.” 279
- “sertes,” þan seide þemperour · “þe soþe forto knowe,  
þat y am þat ilk weizh · i wol wel þou wite ;  
al þe regal of rome · to riztleche y weld.
- þefore, couherde, i þe coniuere · & comande att alle,  
bi vertu of þing þat þou most · in þis world louest, 284  
þatow telle me tiztly · truly þe soþe,  
wheþer þis bold barn · be lelly þin owne,  
oþer comen of oþer kin · so þe crist help !”  
þe couherd comsed to quake · for kare & for drede 288  
whanne he wist witerly · þat he was his lorde,  
& biliue in his hert be-þout · ȝif he him gun lye,  
he wold prestely perceyue · pertiliche him þout.  
þerfore trewly as tyt · he told him þe soþe, 292  
how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,  
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges sone,  
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge,  
& how faire he hade him fed · & fostered vij winter.  
“bi crist,” seide þemperour · “y con þe gret þonke, 297  
þat þou hast [seide] <sup>1</sup> me þe soþe · of þis semly childe,  
& tine schalt þou nouȝt þi trawayle · y trow, at þe  
last !
- ac wend schal it wiþ me · witow for soþe, 300  
Min hert so harde wilnes · to haue þis barne,  
þat i wol in no wise · þou wite it no lenger.”  
whan þemperour so sayde · soþe forto telle,  
þe couherde was in care · i can him no-þing white. 304  
ac witerly dorst he nouȝt werne · þe wille of his lord,  
but graunted him goddeli · on godis holy name,  
Forto worchen his wille · as lord wiþ his owne.  
whan william þis worþi child · wist þe soþe, 308  
and knew þat þe cowherde · nas nouȝt his kinde fader,

“Nay, sir, at no  
time.”

“ Know that I  
am he ;

and I command  
you to tell me the  
truth.

Is this child ·  
yours ? ”

[Fol. 8.]  
The cowherd  
began to quake,

and told him all  
the truth.

“ I thank you for  
telling me true ;

the child shall go  
with me.”

The cowherd  
grieved, but dared  
not refuse.

<sup>1</sup> Read “ thou hast seide me the sothe.”—M.

William began  
to lament sorely,  
and said,

he was witzliche a-wondered · & gan to wepe sore,  
& seide saddely to him-self · sone þer-after,  
“a ! gracious gode god ! · þouȝ grettest of alle ! 312

“I know not my  
birth nor my  
destiny, and am  
much beholden to  
this man and his  
wife.”

Moch is þi merey & þi miȝt · þi menske, & þi grace !  
now wot i neuer in þis world · of wham y am come,  
ne what destene me is diȝt · but god do his wille !  
ae wel y wot witerly · wiȝ-oute ani faile, 316  
to þis man & his meke wif · most y am holde ;

“Cease from thy  
sorrow,” said the  
emperour,

For þei ful faire han me fostered · & fed a long time,  
þat god for his grete miȝt · al here god hem ȝeld. 319  
but not y neuer what to done · to wende þus hem fro,  
þat han al kindenes me kyd · & y ne kan hem ȝelde !”

[Fol. 8 b.]  
“thou shalt  
requite thy  
friends.”

“bi stille, barn,” quap þemperour · “blinne of þi sorwe,  
For y hope þat hal þi kin · hastely here-after, 323  
ȝif þou wolt ȝeue þe to gode · swiche grace may þe falle,  
þat alle þi frendes fordedes · faire schalstow quite.”

“ȝa, sire,” quap þe couherde, “ȝif crist wol · þat cas  
may tyde,  
& god lene him grace · to god man to worþe.”

The cowherd then  
counselled  
William

& þan as tit to þe child · he tauȝt þis lore, 328  
& seide, “þou swete sone · seȝþe þou schalt hennes  
wende,

to be no teller of  
tales,

whanne þou komest to kourt · among þe kete lordes,  
& knowest alle þe kupþes · þat to kourt langes,  
bere þe boxumly & bonure · þat ich burn þe loue. 332

to take the part  
of poor men,

be meke & mesurabul · nouȝt of many wordes,  
be no tellere of talis · but trewe to þi lord,  
& prestely for pore men · profer þe euer,  
For hem to rekene wiȝ þe riche · in riȝt & in skille. 336

and to be faithful  
and of fair  
speech;

be feiȝtful & fre · & euer of faire speche,  
& seruissabul to þe simple · so as to þe riche,  
& felawe in faire manere · as falles for þi state ;  
so schaltow gete goddes loue · & alle gode mennes. 340

a lesson which  
the cowherd had  
learnt from his  
father.

Leue sone, þis lessoun · me lerde my fader,  
þat knew of kourt þe þewes · for kourteour was he long,  
& hald it in þi hert · now i þe haue it kenned ;



þe bet may þe bi-falle · þe worse bestow neuere." 344

þe child weped al-way · wonderliche fast,  
 but þemperour had god game · of þat gomes lore, The emperor tells  
 the cowherd to  
 set William on  
 his horse,  
 & comande<sup>1</sup> þe couherde · curteysli and fayre, 347  
 to heue vp þat hende child · bi-hinde him on his stede.  
 & he so dede deliuerly · þough him del þouzt,  
 & bi-kenned him to crist · þat on croice was peyned.  
 þanne þat barn as biliue · by-gan for to glade and the child was  
 pleased to think  
 he should ride  
 royally.  
 þat he so realy schuld ride · & redeli as swiþe 352  
 Ful curteisle of þe couherde · he caces his leue,  
 & seþþen seyde, "swete sire · i bes[e]che<sup>2</sup> zou nowþe, William bids the  
 cowherd farewell,  
 For godes loue, gretes ofte · my godelyche moder,  
 þat so faire haþ me fed · & fostered till nowþe. 356 and sends a  
 message to his  
 foster-mother,  
 & lellyche, 3if our lord wol · þat i liif haue,  
 sche ne schal nouzt tyne hire trauayle · treuly for soþe.  
 & gode sire, for godes loue · also greteþ wel oft  
 alle my freyliche felawes · þat to þis forest longes, 360 and to his old  
 playmates,  
 [Fol. 9.]  
 Hugonet,  
 and Huet, Abelot,  
 Martynet, and  
 Akarin,  
 han pertilyche in many places · pleide wiþ ofte,  
 hugonet, & huet · þat hende litel dwerþ,<sup>3</sup>  
 & abelot, & martynet · hugones gaie sone ;  
 & þe cristen akarin · þat was mi kyn fere, 364  
 & þe trewe kinnesman · þe payenes sone,  
 & alle oþer frely felawes · þat þou faire knowes,  
 þat god mak hem gode men · for his mochel grace."  
 of þe names þat he nemned · þemperour nam hede, 368  
 & had gaynliche god game · for he so grette alle  
 of his compers þat he knew · so curteysliche & faire.  
 & þan be-kenned he þe kouherde · to crist & to hal The emperor then  
 rides away.  
 alwes,  
 & busked forþ wiþ þat barn · bliue on his gate. 372  
 þe kouherde kayred to his house · karful in hert,  
 & nei3 to-barst he for bale · for þe barnes sake.  
 & whan his wiif wist · wittow for soþe,

<sup>1</sup> In l. 236 we have "komanded;" but see the note.

<sup>2</sup> MS. "befche." Read "beseche."—M. <sup>3</sup> See note.

and his wife  
weeps most  
bitterly.

how þat child from here warde · was wente for euer-more,  
þer nis man on þis mold · þat miȝt half telle 377  
þe wo & þe weping · þat womman made.  
sche wold haue sleie hire-self þere · soply, as bliue,  
ne hade þe kind kouherde · confortet here þe betere,  
& pult hire in hope to haue · gret help þer-of after. 381

No more of them  
now.

but trewely of hem at þis time · þe tale y lete,  
of þemperour & þe bold barn · to bigynne to speke.

The emperor  
finds his men,

Lordes, lusteneþ her-to · ȝif ȝou lef þinkes ! 384  
þemperour bliþe of þe barn · on his blonk rides  
Fast til þe forest, til he fond · al his fre ferd,  
þat hadde take þat time · moche trye game,  
boþe bores & beres · fele hors charge, 388  
hertes & hindes · & oþer bestes manye.

and the spoil  
which they had  
taken.

& whan þe loueli ludes · seie here lord come,  
þei were geinliche glad · & gretten him faire,  
but alle a-wondered þei were · of þe barn him bi-hinde,  
so faire & so fetyse it was · & freliche schapen ; 393  
& freyned faire of þemperour · whar he it founde hadde.  
he gaf hem answe-re a-gayn · þat god it him sent,  
oþer-wise wist non · where he it founde. 396

All wondered at  
seeing the child,

[Fol. 9 b.] þan rod he forþ wiþ þat rowte · in-to rome euene,  
He rides to Rome,  
and alights at his  
palace.

& euer þat bold barn · by-hinde him sat stille.  
so passed he to þe paleys · and presteliche a-liȝt, 399  
& william þat choys child · in-to his chaumber ledde.

Now the emperor  
had a dear  
daughter

a dere damisele to douȝter · þis emperour hadde þanne,  
of alle fasoun þe fairest · þat euer freke seiȝe,  
& witerly william & ȝhe · were of on held, 404  
as euene as ani wiȝt · schuld attely bi siȝt.

of the same age  
as William,  
named Melior.

& þat mensful mayde · melior was hoten,  
a more curteyse creature · ne eunnyn-gere of hire age,  
was nouȝt þanne in þis world · þat ani wiȝt knewe.  
þemperour to þat mayde · mekliche wendeþ, 408  
& william þat worþi child · wiþ him he ladde,  
and seide, “dere douȝter · y do þe to wite,

To her care the  
emperor com-  
mends William,

- I haue a pris present · to plese wiþ þi hert.  
 haue here þis bold barn · & be til him meke, 412 saying he has brought her a rich present ;  
 & do him kepe clenly · for kome he his of gode ;  
 I hent þis at hunting · swiche hap god me sent ;”  
 & told here þanne as tit · treweli al þe soþe,  
 how he hade missed is mayne · & malskrid a-boute, 416 relating to her the whole story about the werwolf,  
 & how þe werwolf wan him bi · wiþ a wilde hert,  
 & how sadly he him sewed · to haue slayn þat dere,  
 til þei hadde brouzt him þere · þat barn bestes kept, his meeting with the child,  
 & how sone of his seigt · þe bestes seþþen ware ; 420  
 & how þe couherde com him to · & was a-knowe þe soþe,  
 how he him fond in þat forest · ferst, þat faire child,  
 & how komeliche y-cloped · for ani kinges sone ;  
 & how þe kouherde for kare · cumsed to sorwe, 424 the cowherd's grief,  
 whanne he wold wiþ þe child · wende him fromme ;  
 & how boldely þat barn · bad þe couherde þanne and William's messages to his step-mother and comrades.  
 to grete wel his gode wiif · & gamely þer-after  
 alle his freliche felawes · bi-forn as i told. 428  
 “ & þer-fore, my dere douzter ” · þemperour seide,  
 “ For mi lof loke him wel · for lelly me þinkes, “ Love him well, for I suspect he is of noble kin ;  
 bi his menskful maneres · & his man-hede,  
 þat he is kome of god kin · to crist y hope ; 432

[*The next folio (Fol. 10) being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text.*]

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| [car mult par est et biax, et gens,   | For he is very fair and handsome             |
| de cors, de vis, et de faiture.       | In body, in face, and in fashion.            |
| encor orrons, par aventure,           | We shall yet hear, peradventure,             |
| de quex gens est estrais et nes.      | Of what kin he is descended and born.        |
| ma douce fille, or retenes            | My sweet daughter, now take care of          |
| lenfant que je vos amain ei.”         | The child whom I here bring you.”            |
| “ ce soit la vostre grant merci,”     | “ Great thanks are due to you for this.”     |
| dist meliors, “ biau sire chiers,     | Said Melior, “ fair father dear ;            |
| je le retieng mult volentiers.”       | I take care of him very willingly.”          |
| puis prent lenfant et si lenmaine, 10 | Then she takes the child and leads him away. |
| en la soie chambre demaine,           | Brings him into her chamber.                 |

uns dras li a fait apoter,  
sel fait vester et conreer.

Quant des dras fu apareillies,  
et a sa guise fu chaucies,  
or fu si gens et si tres biax  
et si apers li damoisiax,  
con ne recourast son pareil,  
desos la clarte du soleil,  
de sa biaute, de sa semblance.  
et meliors, qui tant ert francee,  
li a fait par .i. sien sergant  
apoter le mangier devant.  
et cil manga qui fain avoit,  
or revient auques a son droit.  
por cou se il est fix de Roi,  
nest desonors, si com ie croi,  
sil sert a cort dempereor,  
et pucele de tel valor  
com meliors estoit la bele.  
ensi remest o la pucele  
Guilliaumes, com poes oir ;  
mult se paine de li servir  
et des autres tous ensement.  
mult si acointe belement,  
si com li hom qui nestoit mie  
norris en cort nentre maisnie,  
mais auques le prueve nature,  
et il sor tote creature  
sentente et tot son cuer velt metre 40  
a quanque se doit entremetre.  
nus damoisiax de nul service  
a cort si haute ni si riche.

Tant i a lenfes son cuer mis,  
et tant entendu et apri,  
quancois que fust passes li ans,  
fu il si prex et si sachans,

Has a robe brought for him,  
And has him clothed and well cared for,  
When he was dressed in the robes,  
And fittingly provided with shoes,  
So gracious and so very fair  
And so frank was the boy,  
That his equal could not be met with  
Beneath the light of the sun,

20 For his beauty, for his appearance.

And Melior, who was so bountiful,  
Caused one of her servants  
To carry a repast before him.  
And he, being hungry, ate it,  
And returned then to his duty.  
Wherefore if he is a king's son  
'Tis no dishonour, as I believe,  
If he serves at the emperor's court  
And (serves) a damsel of such worth

30 As was Melior the beautiful.

Thus remained with the damsel  
William, as you may hear ;  
Much pains he takes to serve her  
And all the others likewise.

Very excellently he demeans himself,  
Like, indeed, a man who had never been  
Nourished in court or household,  
But nature also proves him,  
And he, above every creature,

40 Gives attention and puts his whole heart

To whatever he ought to undertake.  
There was no youth, in any service,  
So high and so rich at court.

The child so gave his attention there,  
And understood and learnt so much,  
That before the year was passed,  
He was so prudent and so wise,

quil nest hom qui le puist reprendre, That no one could reprove him  
 tant i sache garder, nentendre (So well can he take care), nor perceive  
 de riens nule que veoir sace, 50 For anything that he could see,  
 que riens mesprenge ne mefface. That he mistook or misdid anything.  
 oi aves pieca retraire, Ye have long ago heard say  
 que li oisiax de gentil aire That the bird of gentle breed  
 safaute meisme aparlui, Learns even by himself,  
 tot sans chastiemet dautrui ; Without correction by another :  
 comme vos ci oir poes, Even as ye here may hear,  
 sest si *Guilliaumes* doctrines. William thus taught himself.  
**E**nsi *Guilliaumes* est a cort, Thus William lives at the court,  
 a tos desert que on lounort, He deserves that all should honour him,  
 ne fait riens qui doie desplaire. 60 And does nothing to displease.  
 mult par est frans et debonnaire, He is very frank and amiable,  
 servicables, cortois, et prons, Serviceable, courteous, and prudent.  
 et mult se fait amer a tous, And makes himself much loved by all,  
 et larges de quanquavoir puet. And (he is) bounteous as far as he is able.  
 et sachiez bien, pas ne lestuet And know well, there is no need  
 a chastoier de ses paroles, To correct him for his words,  
 queles soient laides ne foles, Which are neither rude nor silly,  
 mais asises et delitables. But staid and pleasing.  
 si set plus desches et de tables, He knew more of chess and tables,  
 doisiax, de bois, de chacherie, 70 Of hawking, of the woods, of the chase,  
 que nus qui soit en Lombardie, Than any one in Lombardy,  
 nen toute la terre de Rome ; Or in all the territory of Rome ;  
 nia vallet, fil a haut home, There is no lad, son to a great man,  
 na riche princee natural— Nor rich princee by birth  
 quant *Guilliaumes* siet a cheval, (When William sits on his horse,  
 lescu au col, el poing la lance— Shield on his neck, lance in his fist),  
 tant par soit de fiere semblance, Can be of such fiere appearance.  
 si gens, ne si amanevis ; So gracious, nor so dexterous :  
 ne sai que plus vos en devis ; I know not that I can tell you more about it  
 que tuit samblent a lui vilain, 80 So that all seem plebeian beside him,  
 et li lombart et li romain. Both Lombard and Roman.  
 bien samble a tos estre lor sire He seems to be the lord of them all  
 en tot le regne nen lempire. In all the kingdom and empire.

ni a .i. seul, ne bas ne haut,  
 a cui il soit, de ce me vant(!),  
 des biens, de lui que la gens conte ;  
 chascuns en fable et raconte.  
 tous li pueples, communement,  
 et lempereeres ensement  
 li porte honor, aime, et tient chier 90  
 comme le fil de sa moillier ;  
 et quant il va en esbanoi,  
 toudis maine *Guill'aume* o soi ;  
 en grant afaire ou en besoing  
 tos jors iva, soit pres ou loing.  
 et cil del regne deuviron,  
 li grant signor et li baron,  
 por lamor a lempereor,  
 laiment et portent grant honor,  
 et plus encor por sa franchise, 100  
 dont chascuns tant le loe et prise.  
 et ke diroie des puchieles,  
 des dames et des damoisieles ?  
 certes, et se diex me doinst joie,  
 ne cuit que nule qui le voie  
 ne qui son los oie retraire,  
 tant par i soit de haut afaire,  
 bele, cortoise, ne prisie,  
 nestraite de haute lignie,  
 ne sage, orgueilleuse, ne cointe,  
 qui ne vausist estre sa-cointe !  
**M**ult a boin los par la contree,  
 par tot en va sa renoumee.  
 si fut a cort .iii. ans tos plains  
*Guilliaumes* entre les Romains,  
 com vos dire maves oi,  
 forment crut et bien enbarni ;  
 et devint gens li damoisiax,  
 et fors et aformes et biax ;

There is no one, low or high,  
 Who possesses—whereof I boast(?)—  
 The virtues, which people relate of him ;  
 Every one speaks of them and tells them.  
 All the people, in common (honour him),  
 And the emperor, in like manner,  
 Honours, loves, and holds him dear  
 As the son of his own wife ;  
 And when he goes out for amusement,  
 He always takes William with him ;  
 In great affairs, or in ease of need,  
 Always he goes there, whether near or far.  
 And those of the country round about,  
 The great lords and barons,  
 For love of the emperor,  
 Love and greatly honour him,  
 100 And still more for his bounty,  
 For which every one praises and esteems him.  
 And what can I say of the maidens,  
 Of the ladies and the damsels ?  
 Certes, so God give me joy,  
 I believe there is none who sees him  
 Or hears his praise told,  
 Of however great consideration she may be.  
 However fair, courteous, and estimable,  
 However noble by birth,  
 110 However wise, proud, or clever,  
 But she wishes to be his love !  
 He has great good praise in the country,  
 Everywhere spreads his renown.  
 Thus at the court three full years  
 Was William, among the Romans,  
 As ye have heard me tell,  
 Well grown and of good stature :  
 And the youth became gracious,  
 And strong and of fine form and fair :

de la chambre est merveilles bien ; 120 In the chamber he is very admirable ;  
 les puceles sur tote rien, The maidens above everything,  
 por sa franchise et sa valor, For his frankness and his valour,  
 li portent mult tres grant honor. Accord him very great honour.  
 Quant meliors la debonaire When Melior the amiable  
 Qot del vallet le los retraire, Hears the praise of the lad told,  
 et les grans biens qui en lui sont, And the great goodness that is in him,  
 et voit quil na si bel el mont, And sees there is none in the world so fair,  
 ne damoisel de sa valor, No youth of his worth,  
 fil de roi ne dempereoer, (Whether) son of king or of emperor,  
 ne de si boine renoumee, 130 Nor any of such good renown,  
 trestot son cuer et sa pensee Soon her heart and her thought  
 tot maintenant vers lui atorne. Very quickly turns she towards him.  
 or est si tres pensive et morne Then she is so very sad and sorrowful,  
 quele nentent a autre chose. That she minds nothing else.  
 son cuer reprent et blasme et chose, She reproves and blames and rebukes her  
 et dist sovent, "cuers ! que as tu ? heart,  
 quas tu esgarde ne veu, And says often, "Heart, what hast thou ?  
 que tout mi oel moustre ne fait, What hast thou beheld or seen—  
 qui mas embatue en cest plait ? For mine eye shews or tells me nothing—  
 que je ne sai que puisse avoir, 140 That has cast me into this debate ?  
 ne quel error me fait doloir, So that I know not what is the matter,  
 ne plaindre plus que je ne suel, Nor what fault makes me grieve,  
 Diex ! quex maus est dont tant me Or God ! what evil is it I thus grieve for,  
 . . . . . duel, That makes me thus move restlessly ?  
 qui si me fait estendillier ?]  
 & seþþe sike i & sing · samen to-gedere, [Fol. 11.]  
 & melt neiþh for mournyng · & moche ioie make. I sigh and sing  
 Min hert hol i haue now · for al þat hard y fele, together.  
 saue a fers feintise · folwes me oft, 436 A faintness often  
 & takes me so tenefully · to telle al þe soþe, seizes me.  
 þat i mase al marred · for mournyng neiþh hondes,  
 but redeliche in þat res · þe recuuerere þat me falles,  
 as whan i haue ani hap · to here of þat barne, 440 I recover when I  
 For wham myn hert is so hampered · & aldes so hear of that  
 nobul,

flower of  
mankind.

þat flour is of alle frekes · of fairnes and miȝt.  
prince is non his pere · ne in paradizs non aungel,  
as he semes in mi siȝt · so faire is þat burne. 444

I have portrayed  
him within my  
heart,

I haue him portreide an paynted · in mi hert wiþ-  
inne,

þat he sittus in mi siȝt · me þinkes euer-more.  
& faire so <sup>1</sup> his figure · is festened in mi ȝout,<sup>2</sup>

and would not  
scrape out his  
portrait for all the  
world.

þat wiþ no coyntise ne craft · ne can y it out scrape. 448  
& be marie, þouȝh i miȝt · to mengge al þe soþe,  
I ne wold nouȝt for al þis world · so wel it me likes,  
þeiȝh i winne wiþ mi werk · þe worse euer-more!  
so gret liking & loue i haue · þat lud to bi-hold, 452  
þat i haue leuer þat loue · þan lac al mi harmes.

Since it is so, I  
am wrong to  
blame my heart.

Nou certes, seþþe it is so · to seie þe trewþe,  
þann haue y had gret wrong · myn [hert] so to blame,  
For eni werk þat he wrouȝt · seþþe i wol it hold, 456  
ne wold i it were non oþer · al þe world to haue.

I ought rather to  
blame my eyes.

whom schal i it wite · but mi wicked eyȝen,  
þat lad myn hert þrouȝ loking · þis langour to drye?  
nad þei [ben, i miȝt] · bonte<sup>3</sup> bale haue schaped; 460  
redeli bi resoun þerfore · hem rette i mai mi sorwe.”

Yet my eyes are  
my heart's  
subjects.

but þanne þouȝt che þat þrowe · in þis selue wise,  
“Min eyȝen sorly aren sogettes · to serue min hert,  
& buxum ben to his bidding · as boie to his master; 464  
eke wite i al þe wrong · þe werk of mi eyȝen,  
& þouȝh sertes, so may i nouȝt · by no soþe riȝt;  
For seþþe i knowe þat mi siȝt · is seruant to mi hert,  
& alle my noþer wolnk wittes · to wirchen his hest. 468

(Fol. 11 b.]

My sight can do  
no harm, unless  
my heart assent.

For þouȝh i sette my siȝt · sadly on a þing,  
be hit briztter oþer broun · beter oþer worse,  
Mi siȝt may in no maner · more harme wirche,  
but ȝif myn hauteyn hert · þe harde a-sente. 472  
eke soþly my siȝt · is soget to my hert,  
& doþ nouȝt but his deuer · as destine wol falle.

My sight only  
does his duty.

<sup>1</sup> so faire (?)

<sup>2</sup> þout (?)

<sup>3</sup> MS. “nad þei i am a bonte.” See note.



þan has my hasty hert · holly þe wrong,  
 him wol i blame & banne · but he my bales amende, 476 So I must still  
blame my heart.  
 þat haþ him so strangly set · in swiche strauunge burne,  
 þat wot neuer in þis world · whennes þat he come,  
 but as mi fader him fond · in þe forest an herde,  
 keping memnis kin · of þe kuntre a-boute. 480  
 what? fy! schold i a fundeling · for his fairenesse tak? Why should I  
esteem a found-  
ling for his  
fairness?  
 nay, my wille wol nouzt a-sent · to my wicked hert.  
 wel kud kinges & kaysers · krauen me i-now,  
 I nel leie mi loue so low · now at þis time; 484 I will not lay my  
love so low.”  
 desparaged were i disgisili · 3if i dede in þis wise,  
 I wol breke out fram þat baret · & blame my hert.”

Sche turned here þan tigtly · to haue slept a wile, 487 She tries to sleep  
in vain, and  
sighs, and says,  
 & seide sadly, of hire hert · sche wold seche amendis  
 For sche so wrongly had wrouzt · but wigtly þer-after,  
 sche seide sikinde to here-self · in þis selue wise.  
 “now witterly ich am vn-wis · & wonderliche nyce,  
 þus vn-hendly & hard · mi herte to blame. 492 “I am foolish to  
blame my heart  
so.  
 to whom miȝt i me mene · amendis of him to haue,  
 seþþe i am his souerayn · mi-self in alle þing?  
 nis he holly at my hest · in hard & in nesche?  
 & now, bi crist, i knowe wel · for al my care newe, 496  
 he wrouzt neuer bot my worchepe · ne wol nouzt, i leue.  
 I se wel he haþ set him-self · in so nobul a place,  
 þat perles of alle puple · is preised ouer alle,  
 of fairnesse of facioun · and frely þeuwes,<sup>1</sup> 500  
 For kurteysie, vnder krist · is king ne kud duk.  
 & þouȝh he as fundeling where founde · in þe forest wilde,  
 & kept wiþ þe kowherde kin · to karp þe soþe,  
 eche creature may know · he was kome of gode. 504 Though William  
were a foundling,  
surely he was of  
noble birth.  
 For first whan þe fre was in þe forest · founde in his  
 denne, [Fol. 12.]  
 In comely cloþes was he clad · for any kinges sone.  
 whan he kom first to þis kourt · bi kynde þan he schewde, His clothes and  
his manners  
proved it.

<sup>1</sup> A line lost here?

his maners were so meuskful · a-mende hem miȝt none.  
 & seþþe forsoþe til þis time · non vn-teteche he ne wrouȝt,  
 but haþ him bore so buxumly · þat ich burn him preyseþ,  
 & vch a burn of þis world · worchipeþ him one,  
 Kinges & kud dukes · kene kniȝtes and other, · 512  
 þouȝh he were komen of no ken · but of kende cherls,  
 as i wot witterly · so was he neuere !  
 ȝut wiþ worchepe i wene · i miȝt him wel loue.  
 & seþþe he so perles is preised · ouer princes & oþer, 516  
 & eche lord of þis lond · is lef him to plece  
 For most souereyn seg · & semlyest of þewes,  
 þanne haue i wited alle wrong · þe werk of myn herte,  
 For he has don his deuere · dignely as he out. 520  
 he het me most worþi · of wommen holde in erþe,  
 Kindely þurth kinrade · of cristen lawe ;  
 For-þi myn herte hendely · has wrouȝt in his dedes  
 to sette him-self so sadly · in þe soueraynest burne 524  
 þat leuis in ani lond · of alle ludes preised,  
 I ne wot neuere in þis world · what wise he miȝt betere  
 wirche for me in þis world · my worschipe to saue.  
 For ȝif eny man on mold · more worþi were, 528  
 Min hert is so hauteyn · þat herre he wold.  
 & for i so wrongely<sup>1</sup> haue wrouȝt · to wite him, me  
 greues ;  
 I giue me holly in his grace · as gilty for þat ilk,  
 & to mende my misse · i make myn a-vowe. 532  
 I wol here-after witerly · wiþ-oute more striue,  
 wirche holly mi hertes wille · to harde & to nesche,  
 & leye my loue on þat lud · lelly for euere.  
 to god here i gif a gift · it gete schal neuer oþer, 536  
 wile him lasteþ þe liif · my loue i him grante.”

And whan sche so was a-sented · sche seide sone after,  
 saddli sikand & sore · for sorwe atte here herte,  
 “ Allas ! i trowe þis bitter bale · botlesse wol hende ! 540

Alas ! I fear this  
 sorrow will have  
 no remedy ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. “ wrongely.”

- For i not in þis world<sup>1</sup> · how þat worþi child  
 schal euer wite of my wo · wiþ-oute me selue.  
 nay! sertes my-selue · schal him neuer telle;  
 For þat were swiche a woꝝh · þa neuer wolde be mended.  
 For he miȝt ful wel · for a fol me hold, 545  
 & do him loþe mi loue · ȝit haue y leuer deie!  
 nay! best beþ it nouȝt so · ȝif better miȝt bi-falle,  
 Ich mot worche oþer wise · ȝif i wol out-spede. 548  
 what, i suppose þe selue · ȝif it so bi-tidde  
 þat i wrouȝt so wodly · & wold to him speke,  
 þat were semlyest to seye · to saue my worchep?  
 ȝif i told him treuli · my tene and myn anger, 552  
 what liif for longyng of loue · i lede for his sake,  
 He wold wene i were wod · or witerly schorned,  
 or þat i dede for despit · to do him a schonde;  
 & þat were a schamly schenchip · to schende me euer.  
 what ȝif i saide him sadly · þat i sek were, 557  
 & told him al treuly · þe entecches of myn euele?  
 he knoweþ nouȝt of þat kraft · bi krist, as i trowe,  
 wherfore he ne schold in no wise · wite what i mente;  
 but whanne i hade al me mened · no more nold he seie  
 but “serteinly, swete damisele · þat me sore rewes.”  
 þanne wold mi wo · wex al newe,  
 & doubel is now mi duel · for i ne dar hit schewe. 564  
 allas! whi ne wist þat wiȝh · what wo þat me eyles,  
 what sorwes & sikingges · i suffer for his sake!  
 I sayle now in þe see · as schip boute mast,  
 boute anker or ore · or ani semlyche sayle; 568  
 but heȝh heuene king · to gode hauene me sende,  
 oþer laske mi liif daywes · wiþ-inne a litel terme.”  
 þus þat maiden meliors · in mornyng þa liuede,  
 & hit held hire so harde · i hete þe for soþe, 572  
 & schorttily wiþ-in seuenȝt · al hire slep sche leues,  
 here mete & al merthe · sche missed in a while,  
 & secceleled in a seknesse · þe soþe for to telle,  
 she sickened and pined,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “world þis;” instead of “þis world.”

þat þer nas leche in no lond · þat liif hire bihiȝt,<sup>1</sup> 576  
 ȝit couþe non by no craft · knowen hire sore ;  
 but duelfulli sche dwined a-waie · boþe dayes & niȝtes,  
 & al hire clere colour · comsed for to fade.

[Fol. 13.]

and her colour  
faded.

**Þ**anne hadde þis menskful melior · maydenes fele 580  
 a-segned hire to serue · & to seuwe hire a-boute ;  
 but among alle þe maidenen · most sche loued one  
 þat was a digne damisele · to deme al þe soþe,  
 & kome*n* of hire oune kin · h[er]e<sup>2</sup> kosin ful nere, 584  
 of lombardie a dukes douȝter · ful derworþ in wede,  
 & þat amiabul maide · alisaundrine a-hiȝt.

Melior's favourite  
maiden

was Alexandrine,  
daughter of the  
duke of  
Lombardy ;

who said to her,  
"Tell me the  
cause of your  
sickness ;

I may be able to  
help you."

"Dear cousin,"  
said Melior,  
"thou speakest  
comfort to me.

I will tell you all  
my grief.

& from þe time þat melior · gan morne so strong,  
 þat burde was euer hire bi · busy hire to plese, 588  
 More þan ani oþer damisele · so moche sche hire louede.  
 & whan sche seiȝ here so sek · sche seide on a time,  
 "Now for marie, madame · þe milde quene of heuene,  
 & for þat loue þat ȝe loue · leliest here in erþe, 592  
 Seiȝth me al ȝour seknesse · & what so sore ȝow greuis.  
 ȝe knowen icham ȝour kosyn · & bi krist of heuene,  
 ȝut bi cas of cunsail · ful wel can ich hele,  
 & be tristy and trew · to ȝow for euer-more, 596  
 and help ȝow hasteli at al · ȝoure hele to gete,  
 ȝif ȝe saie me ȝoure sores · & ich se what may gayne."  
 whan melior þat meke mayde · herd alisaundrines

wordes,

sche was gretly gladed · of hire gode bi-hest,<sup>3</sup> 600  
 & wiþ a sad sikyng · seide to hire þanne ;—  
 "a ! curteyse cosyne · crist mot þe it ȝelde  
 of þi kynde cumfort · þat þow me kuþest nowþe,  
 þow hast warsched me wel · wiþ þi mede wordes. 604  
 I ȝiue me al in þi grace · to gete me sum hele,  
 as þow me here has be-hiȝt · of mi harde peynes ;  
 now wol i telle þe my tene · wat so tide after.

<sup>1</sup> Here follows the catchword—"ȝit couþe."      <sup>2</sup> MS. "he."

<sup>3</sup> This line and the next are transposed in the MS.

- serteynly þis seknesse · þat so sore me greues 608  
 Is feller þan any frek · þat euer 3it hadde.  
 & ofter þan [ten]<sup>1</sup> times · hit takeþ me a-daye,  
 & [ix.]<sup>1</sup> times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse ;  
 and al comes of a þroly þouȝt · þat þirles min hert ; 612  
 I wold meng al mi mater · 3if i miȝt for schame.  
 ac wond wold ich nouȝt to þe · witow for soþe,  
 ay whan ich hent þe haches · þat so hard aren.  
 It komses of a kene þouȝt · þat ich haue in hert 616  
 of william þat bold barn · þat alle burnes praisen ;  
 nis no man vpon mold · þat more worchip winnes.  
 him so propirli haue i peinted · & portreide in herte,  
 þat me semes in my siȝt · he sittes euer meke. 620  
 what man so ich mete wiþ · or mele wiþ speche,  
 Me þinkes euerich þrowe · þat barn is þat oþer ;  
 & fele times haue ich fonded · to flitte it fro þouȝt,  
 but witerly al in wast · þan worche ich euer. 624  
 þer-for, curteise cosynes · for loue of crist in heuene,  
 Kipe nouȝ þi kindenes · & konseyle me þe best ;  
 For but ich haue bote of mi bale · bi a schort time,  
 I am ded as dore-nail · now do al þi wille !” 628
- þanne alisaundrine a-non · after þat ilk,  
 wax gretly a-wondered · & wel hire bi-þouȝt,  
 what were hire kuddest comfort · hire care to lisse ;  
 & seide þanne til hire softly · sone þer-after ; 632  
 “ a ! madame, for marie loue · mornes no lenger !  
 nis it no sekenes bote þat · so sore ȝouȝ eiles,  
 I schal þurth craft þat ich kan · keuer ȝou i hope,  
 Mow i geten a grece · þat i gaynli knowe ! 636  
 haue ȝe sleiliche<sup>2</sup> it seie · & a-saide ones,  
 & feled þe sauor & þe swetnesse · þat sittes in þe rote,  
 hit schal veraly þurth vertue · do vanisch ȝour soris !”  
 oþer-wise wold sche nouȝt · wissen here ladi 640  
 bi what maner che ment · last sche were a-greued.

[Fol. 13 b.]  
 It comes from a  
 heart-piercing  
 thought,

of a thought  
 about that  
 William, whom  
 all praise.

Every man I  
 speak to seems to  
 be William.

Counsel me,  
 cousin, or I am  
 as dead as a  
 door-nail.”

Alexandrine was  
 amazed, and said,

“ Mourn not, I  
 will heal you.

I know of a herb  
 whose virtue can  
 cure you.”

<sup>1</sup> See note.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “ ȝe it fleiliche it.”

- Melior thanked her, and prayed her to get it. þan þat melior ful mekeli · þat mayden zanked,  
& preide hire priueli · wiþ pitous wordes,  
to gete hire þat gode gras · as sone as sche miȝt. 644  
& alisaundrine a-non · answeres and saide,
- She said she would try. [Fol. 14.] “Madame, I wol do mi miȝt · wiþ-oute more speche.”  
þanne þis maiden melior · gan menden here chere,  
þus was ferst here sad sorwe · sesed þat time. 648
- Alexandrine planned how to let William know of this, alisaundrine algate þan · after [þat] þrowe  
bi-þouȝt hire ful busily · howe best were to werche,  
to do william to wite · þe wille of hire lady,  
properly vnparceyued · for reprove after. 652  
Ful conyng was sche & coynt · & couþe fele þinges,  
of charmes & of chau[n]temens · to schewe harde castis ;
- and, by her craft, as he lay asleep, So þurȝ þe craft þat sche couþe · to carpp þe soþe,  
as william þat worþi child · on a niȝt slept, 656  
boute burn in his bour · but him-self one,
- she made him dream a dream, a ful selcouþe sweuene · set sche him to mete ;  
þat melior, þat menskful may · mekli al-one  
com ful comliche clad · & kneled him bi-fore, 660  
al bi-weped for wo · wisly him þouȝt ;  
& sikand ful sadli · seide þus him tille—
- that Melior came to him, and said, “a ! loueliche lemman ! · loke on me nowþe !  
I am Meliors, neȝh marred · man, for þi sake. 664  
I meke me in þi merci · for þow me miȝt saue !
- “Oh take me, love, in thine arms !” Leue lord, mi lemman · lacche me in þi narmes,  
& wirche wiþ me þi wille · or witterli in hast  
Mi liif lelly is lorn · so loue now me hampris.” 668  
þus william þouȝt witterly · & witzly wiþ þat ilk,  
as a gome ful glad · for þat grace fallen,
- He tried to do so, but seized his pillow, He wend to haue lauzt þat ladi · loueli in armes ;  
& clipte to him a pulwere · & propirly it gretes, 672  
and welcomes hir worþli · for wisseli him þouȝt  
þat it was þe menskful mayde · melior his ladi !
- and awoke, kissing it. þat puluere clept he curteisly · & kust it ful ofte,  
& made þer-wiþ þe most merþe · þat ani man schold ;  
but þan in his saddest solas · softili he a-waked. 677

ak so liked him his layk · wiþ þe ladi to pleie,  
 þat after he was a-waked · a ful long þrowe,  
 he wende ful witerly · sche were in is armes ; 680 She was gone ; it  
 ac peter ! it nas but is puluere · to proue þe soþe. was only his  
 but whan he witterly was a-waked · he wayted a-boute, [Fol. 14 b.]  
 to haue bi-hold þat burde · his blis to encrese.  
 þanne *perceyued* he þe puluere · pertely in his armes,  
 oþer wist was non · wiþ-inne þat chambur.<sup>1</sup> 685  
 þan brayde he vp of his bed · as burn neiþ amased,  
 & loked after þat ladi · for lelli he wende He looked for her  
 þat sche here had hed in sunn hurne · in þat ilk time, in every corner in  
 to greue him in hire game · as þeiþ he gyled were, vain, and sighed,  
 but whan he wist it was wast · al þat he souþt, and said,  
 he gan to sike & sorwe · & seide in þis wise :—  
 “a ! ihesu crist, iustise · now iugge þouþ þe riþt, 692  
 how falsly has fortune · founde me nowþe.  
 nas mi menskful ladi · meliors h[er]e-inne,<sup>2</sup> “ Was not my  
 & lowed hire to be mi lemman · & lai in myn armes, lady Melior here ?  
 oþer elles soþli, sche seide · þat sche dei schuld ? 696  
 ʒis, i-wisse, was it sche · y wot wel þe soþe ;  
 Metyng<sup>3</sup> miþt it be non · in no maner wise ; It could not have  
 so louely lay þat ladi & ich · layking to-gaderes. been a dream.  
 & soþly, soþ it is · a selecouþe, me þinkes, 700  
 whider þat lady is went · and wold no lenger dwelle.”  
 þanne lep he vp lizteli · & loked al a-boute,  
 but feztly al was fanteme · & al was in wast.  
 þaune seide he to him-self · sikinde ful soft :— 704  
 “ For soþe, ich am a mad man · now wel ich may knowe, Yet I must be  
 Forto wene in þis wise · þis wrong metyng soþe. mad to think it  
 Min hert is to hauteyn · so hyeþ to climbe, could be true,  
 so to leue þat ladi · wold louwe hire so moche, 708  
 þat is an emperours eir · and euene his pere,  
 to come to swiche a caytif · nay, crist it for-bede  
 þat ich more of þat matere · so misseliche þenke !  
 for she is an  
 emperor's heiress.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “chanbur.”

<sup>2</sup> MS. “he inne.” Read “*here* inne.”—M.   <sup>3</sup> MS. “Metynt.”

- For þer nys lord in no lond · þat þe liif weldes, 712  
 emperour ne kud king · knowen so riche,  
 þat soþli nere simple i-nouȝ · þat semly to haue.  
 ek witterli am i wod · to wene swiche a þing,  
 þurth a mys metyng · þat swiche a maide wold 716  
 Leye hire loue so lowe · lemman me to weld.  
 nay, ich haue wrouȝt al in wast · ac i nel na more  
 Leie mi loue so heize · mi ladi for to wilne,  
 þouȝh it nere for nouȝ[t] elles · but for non in erþe 720  
 no wot i neuer wisseli · of whom i am come.  
 Mi-self knowe ich nouȝt mi ken · ne mi kontre noiþer,  
 For-þi me [bi-]houes<sup>1</sup> · þe buxunlier me bere,  
 Oþer-wise þan a wiȝh · þat were wiþ his frendes. 724  
 For ȝif ich wrouȝt oþer-wise · & it were parceyued,  
 & knowe were in þis kourt · mi kare were þe more.  
 for feiþli, frend haue ich non · þat [for]<sup>2</sup> me wold speke,  
 ȝif þemperour were wiþ me wroþ · his wraþþe forto slake.  
 þer-for mi hauteyn hert · bi-houes me to chast, 729  
 & bere me debonureli · til better mow bi-tide.”
- Yet her image so dwelt in his heart,  
**L**o, in þis wise william · wende to haue schaped,  
 but certes þat semly · sat so in his hert, 732  
 for merþe of þat metyng · of melior þat schene,  
 þat heng heui in his hert · & so hard cleued  
 þat, to winne al þe world · a-wai wold it neuer.  
 but gan to studie stoundemele · so stifly þer-onne, 736  
 þat lelly be a litel while · his langure gan wex,  
 so þat he morned neiȝh mad · & his mete left,  
 & forwandreþ in wo · & wakeþ i-wisse on niȝtes,  
 swiche listes of loue · hadde lapped his hert, 740  
 þat he nist what bote · his bale best miȝt help.  
 but in his mochel morning · on a morwe he rises,  
 For kare þat kom to his hert · & cloþed him sone,  
 & whan he geinliche was greiþed · he gript his mantel,

I must be mad to think of such a thing.

[Fol. 15.]

I dare not lay my love so high.

I know neither my kin nor my country,

and I have no friend to speak for me.”

Yet her image so dwelt in his heart,

that it would not away.

He left his meat, and lay awake by night,

and arose in the morning, and wrapped him-self in his mantle,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “houes;” but see l. 729, and the note.

<sup>2</sup> Read “that for me.”—M.



- as a weizh woful · he wrapped him þer-inne, 745  
 For no man þat he met · his mornynge schuld knowe.  
 þat vnglad gom þan goþ · in-to a gardin euene, and went into a  
 þat was a perles place · for ani prince of erþe, 748 garden  
 & wynli wiþ heie wal<sup>1</sup> · was closed al a-boute.  
 þat preui pleyng place · to proue þe soþe,  
 Ioyned wel iustly · to meliors chamber, adjoining Melior's  
 þider went william euene · wittow for soþe, 752 chamber.  
 & vnder a tri appeltre · tok him tid<sup>2</sup> a sete, [Fol. 15 b.]  
 þat was braunched ful brode · & bar gret schadue, He sat beneath  
 & was euen vnder a windowe · of þat worþeis chaumber, her window under  
 For þat william for wo · was bounde so harde. 756 an apple-tree,  
 þat tre so fayre was floured · & so ful leued, so thick-leaved  
 þat no wizth miȝt william se · but ȝif he were þe nere. that he could not  
 ac will[i]am to þe window · witterli miȝt sene be seen.  
 ȝif meliors wiþ hire maydenes · in meling þere sete. 760  
 whan william vnder þat trie tre · hade taken his place, There watched he  
 he set his siȝt sadli · to þat windowe euene, from morning till  
 boue flecchinge or feyntise · from morwe til eue. eve.  
 but oft cumsed his care · and his colour chaunge[d], 764  
 so sore longed him to se · þa semly burde.  
 swiche a sorwe he suffred · a seue-niȝt fulle,  
 þat neuer mannes mete ne miȝt · in his bodi sinke,  
 but held him finliche i-fed · his fille to lokene 768  
 on þe mayde meliors chaumber · for wham he s[0] chamber.  
 morned.  
 euer whan it neizid niȝt · noȝzed was he sore,  
 þan wold he wend to his chamber<sup>3</sup> · & gret wo make ;  
 but no seg þat him serued · miȝt þe soþe wite 772  
 whi him was þanne so wo · ne where he was on dayes ; None knew why  
 non durst for drede · him dernly a-spie, he grieved, or  
 but lett him worche his wille · as wel as him liked. whither he went.  
 ac deliuerly was he diȝt · uch day at morwe, 776  
 & feipli boue felachipe · fond wold he walke, He went every  
 & go in-to þe gardyn · his greues for to slake, day to the garden,

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats "wal."<sup>2</sup> See note.<sup>3</sup> MS. "chanber."

looking towards  
Melior's window,

weytende to þe windowe · & his wo newene,  
& sike ful mani siþe · and sum time quake ; 780  
swiche drede & dol · drouȝ to his hert,  
lest he ne schold neuer in world · winne þat he ȝerned.

and suffered so  
that his colour  
faded.

þurth þe sorwes þat he sufred <sup>1</sup> · soþ forto telle,  
al his cler colour · eomsed forto fade. 784

[Fol. 16.]  
One day as he  
watched,

Febul wax he & faynt · for-waked a-niztes,  
ac no wizt of þis world · miȝt wite of his care.  
but þan tid on a time · as þis tale minges,  
þat william went til þis gardin · his wo fort<sup>2</sup> slake. 788  
& vnder his tri appeltre · turned to sitte,  
as weizh al for-waked · for wo vpon niztes.

he fell asleep.

and as he a-weited to þe windowe · wiztly þer-aft<sup>er</sup>,  
he slod slizli a-down · a-slepe ful harde, 792  
as a wo wery<sup>3</sup> weizh · for-waked to-fore.

Melior's grief had  
been as great as  
his,

but menge we now of meliors · þat morned þanne  
as saddli in hire sizt · or sorer ȝif sche miȝt,  
þe loue of loueli william · lay hire so nere. 796

and she asked  
Alexandrine if  
she had found the  
herb.

þanne asked sche þis of alisaundrine · as þe hap tidde,  
Riȝt as william woful · so was wox a-slepe,  
wher sche hade gete hire gras · þat schold hire grenes  
hele ?

"Not yet," she  
said, "but let us  
go into the  
garden."

"nay, madame, nouȝt ȝut" · seide þe maide þanne, 800  
"þouȝh haue i fele times fonded · to finde it ȝif i miȝt,  
but euer wrouȝt i in wast · þe wors hap me liked.

ac were it ȝour wille nowe · to worche bi mi rede,  
Go we to þe gardyn · to gode may it turne ; 804

For feire floures schal we finde · of foulen song here,  
& þurth cumfort may cacche · swiche happ mai falle,  
to haue þe better hele · at ȝoure hom-kome."

þarto þis menskful meliors · mekeliche hir graunted,  
Forto worche al hire wille · as sche wold deuise. 809

So they went  
down the steps  
into the garden,

þanne a-ros sche raddely · & romden riȝt in-ferre,  
& gan down bi a grece · in-to þe gardin euene,

<sup>1</sup> MS. "sufreded." See l. 1014.

<sup>2</sup> See note.

<sup>3</sup> Or, "wery."

- boute burde or barn · but hem-self tweyne. 812  
 for alisaundrine anon · atteled þat time,  
 & knewe wel bi hire craft · þat sche hade cast bi-fore,  
 þat þei witterli þanne schold · wiþ william mete.  
 & whan þe gaye gerles · were in-to þe gardin come, 816  
 Faire floures þei founde · of fele maner hewes,  
 þat swete<sup>1</sup> were of saour · & to þe siȝt gode ;  
 & eche busch ful of briddes · þat bliþeliche song,  
 boþe þe þrusch & þe þrustele · bi xxxi of boþe, 820  
 Meleden ful merye · in maner of here kinde.  
 & alle freliche foules · þat on þat friþ souge,  
 for merþe of þat may time · þei made moche noyce,  
 to glade wiþ uch gome · þat here gle herde. 824  
 ac meliors for al þat merþe · mornede so stronge,  
 so harde hacches of loue · here hert hadde þirled,  
 þat þer nas gle vnder god · þat hire glade miȝt,  
 but feiþli fo[r] febulnesse · feynt wax sche sone, 828  
 þat vnder a semli sikamour · sche sett hire to reste,  
 & þat burde hire by · þat al hir bale wiste.  
 þan gan Meliors munge · þe meschef þat hir eyled ;  
 þat oþer comsede to carp · of cumfort & ioie, 832  
 & eþer munged of þe mater · þat þai most louede.  
 but alisaundrine þer-after · a-non bi a wile,  
 pederward as william was · wayted wel ȝerne,  
 For sche wiste wel y-now · where þat he laye. 836  
 & þanne seide sche as swiþe · to þat semly mayde,  
 “Madame, melior, so dere · be Marie in heuene,  
 Me þinkeþ ich se a seg · a-slepe here bi-side.  
 wheþer he be kniȝt or bachiler · wot i neuer for soþe,  
 ac he semes bi semblant · in sekenes ful harde. 841  
 þer-for, lady, go we loke · wat seknes him eyles,  
 & what barn þat he be · þa in bale lenges.”  
 þe menskful mayde meliors · þan mekliche saide, 844  
 “a! madame, melior · now mendes ȝoure chere,  
 For y-wisse, ȝond is william · þat ȝe so wel loueþ,

where were fair  
flowers, and blithe  
birds,

[Fol. 16 b.]

that sang merrily  
for joy of the  
Maytime.

But nothing could  
gladden Melior,  
who sat down to  
rest under a  
sycamore.

But Alexandrine  
espied William,  
and said,

“Madame, there  
is some one asleep  
here,

who looks very  
ill; let us go and  
see.”

Then said Melior  
to herself,  
“Rejoice, Melior,  
for it is  
William!”

<sup>1</sup> MS. “sweto.”

sum hard hacche has he had · & hider com to pleize  
 Forto lissen his langour · & lyes here a-slope, 848  
 For þe swete sawour · of þise semly floures !”

Quickly she ran  
 towards him,

Þanne was þat menskful meliors · muchel y-gladed,  
 & gon þan to þat gome · a god pas al boþe.  
 & as tit as þei come him to · þe soþe for to telle, 852  
 þei sett hem down softly · þat semly be-fore.

and when she saw  
 his face,

& wanne þe mayde meliors · miȝt se his face,  
 sche þout þroly in herte · þat leuer hire were  
 haue welt him at wille · þan of þe world be quene ;  
 so fair of alle fetures · þe frek was, hire þouȝt. 857

[Fol 17.]

would fain have  
 kissed him, but  
 was afraid of  
 spies.

& fayn sche wold þan in feiþ · haue fold him in hire  
 armes,

to haue him clipped & kest · kenely þat tide,  
 ac sche dred it to done · for oþer derne a-spyes. 860

Then Alexandrine  
 caused William  
 to dream,

alysaundrine þan a-non · attlede here þouȝtes,  
 & wiztly wiþ here whiles · dede william to mete  
 þat þat time him þouȝt · þat melior þe hende  
 and alysaundrine al-one · com him þo tille, 864  
 & þe mayde melior · ful mekly him brouȝt

that Melior  
 brought him a  
 rose, which at  
 once cured him.

a ful real rose · and redly it him takes.  
 & whanne he in hond hit hade · hastely hit semede,  
 þat he was al sauf & sound · of alle his sor greues. 868  
 & for his langor was so lissed · swich likyng he hadde,  
 & so gretly was gladed · þat he gan a-wake.

He awoke, and in  
 amazement knelt  
 before her, and  
 greeted her.

& whan he seiȝ þat semly · sitte him bi-fore,  
 He was al a-wondred · and wiztly he vp-rises, 872  
 & kurteyslyche kneling · þat komli he grett,  
 & afterward alysaundrine · as he wel out.

“Our Lord give  
 thee joy, dear  
 love,” said Melior.

& þe mayde melior · ful mekly þan saide,  
 “Mi loueli swete lemman · oure lord ȝif þe ioye !” 876

He was  
 astonished to  
 hear her say

& william þan vnderstod · þe word þat sche saide ;  
 þat sche him called “leue lemman” · it liked so his hert,  
 þat witerly he couþe no word · long þer-after spek  
 but stared on here stilly · a-stoneyd for ioye, 880

þat he cast al his colour · and bi-com pale,  
and eft red as rose · in a litel while.

"dear love," and  
his colour went  
and came.

so witerly was þat word · wounde to hert,

þat he ferd as a mased man · an marred nei; honde, 884

so louely loue þat time · lent him an arewe  
hetterly þurth his hert · for þat hende mayde  
cald him "leue lemman" · he les al his miȝt.

Love had shot an  
arrow through  
his heart.

**B**ot alysaundrine wiste wel · what þat him eyled, 888

& seide to him soberly · þise selue words :—

"swete william, seie me now · what seknes þe greues ?

Alexandrine  
asked him what  
sickness ailed  
him.  
[Fol. 17 b.]

þi faire hewe is al fade · for þi moche sore ;

& ȝif ich miȝt in ani maner · þe amende, y wold." 892

þan william wiȝtly · in þis wise answered,

sikende ful sadly · for sor at his hert,

"Mi dere gode damisele · my deþ is al ȝare,

so a botteles bale · me byndeþ so harde,

896

nas neuer feller feuer · þat euer frek hadde.

for merthe & alle metes · it makes me to leue,

slepe sertes may [i] nouȝt<sup>1</sup> · so sore it me greues.

& al þis mochel meschef · a meting i wite,

900

þat me com on a niȝt · a-cursed be þat time !

for so hard haches · haue hold me seþþe,

þa i not in þe world · what is me to rede."

"now swete," seide alisaundrine · "seie me in what  
wise 904

"Tell me," she  
answered, "how  
the pain seizes  
you."

þat þat hache þe haldes · & how it þe takes ?"

"I-wisse," seide william · "i wol it nouȝt layne,

sum-time it hentis me wiþ hete · as hot as ani fure,

but quicliche so kene a cold · comes þer-after ;

908

sum time i sizh & singe · samen to-geder,

& þan so þroli þouȝtes · þurlen myn herte,

þat i ne wot in þe world · where it bi-comse,

For feiþli in my-self · y fele it nouȝt þanne."

912

þanne alisaundrine a-non · þer-after seide,

"It sometimes  
comes on as hot  
as fire, and then  
like a keen chill."

<sup>1</sup> Read "may i nouȝt."—M.

- “How was it all owing to a dream?”
- “william, i wold þe pray · þatow me woldest telle bi what eas al þi care · comsed bi a sweuene?”
- “nai sertes, sweting,” he seide · “þat schal i neuer, 916
- “That I will never tell you,” he replied.
- For no meschef on molde · þat me may falle!  
I haue leuer it layne · & þis langour þole,  
þeþh i for drezing of þis duel · deie at þe last ;  
þer schal [no] wizth of þe world · wite whi it comsed !”
- “Your sickness is perilous,” said Alexandrine.
- þanne seide alisandrine · “auntrose is þin euel, 921  
ful wonderliche it þe weues · wel i wot þe soþe.”  
“3a i-wisse,” seide william · “wonderli me grenes,  
for my seknes wiþ my siztes · sumtime slakes, 924  
& mani times doþ me mourne · mor þan to-fore.”
- Then said Melior to herself, [Fol. 18.]
- Melior þat milde mayde · in þe mene tyme þouzt,  
& seide softly to hire-self · þise selue wordes,  
“a ! gracious god · grettest of us alle, 928
- “God help us twain; my sickness seems like his.
- tak hede to þin hond-werk · & help now vs tweyne !  
For sertes, þis same sekenes · mi-self it holdes  
In alle wise as it doþ william · & wors, as ich wene.  
& þouh ich se þat is sekenes · sore hit him baldes, 932  
for pitously he is a-peyred · þat perles was to sizt  
of fairnesse and of fasoun · þat ani frek schold haue—
- If he only knew what I suffer !”
- but weilaway ! þat he ne wist · what wo y drye,  
& haue do lelly for is loue · a wel long while ! 936  
& but he wiztly wite · y-wisse, y am done ;  
For y dar nouzt for schame · schewe him mi wille,  
but 3if he wold in ani wise · him-self schewe formest.”
- Alexandrine perceived all by their looks ;
- while Meliors in here maner · mened to hire-schue, 940  
alysaundrine a-non · attlede alle here þouztes,  
sche knewe wel bi kuntenaunce · of kastyng of lokes.  
þan wiztly to william · þise wordes sche sede,  
“I see wel be þi semblant · what seknesse þe eyles, 944
- and told William she felt sure he was in love.
- hele þou it neuer [so] hard<sup>1</sup> · al holliche y knowe,  
þat it ben lestes of loue · þat þe so hard hekden ;  
þou waltres al in a weih · & wel y vnderstande  
whider þe belauce bremliest · bouwes al-gate. 948

<sup>1</sup> Read “neuer so hard.”—M. See the next line.

and seþþe y se it is so · soþli y þe warne,

I wol a litel and litel · laskit in hast."

þan william wel vnderstod · sche wist what him eilede, Then was he sore  
afraid, and knelt  
to her, 952

he was a-drad to þe deþ · last sche him dere wold.

þan sette he him on knes · & soft seyde hire tillle,

"Mercy, menskful mayde · for Marie loue of heuene! and prayed her to  
help him.

I gif me al in þi grace · my greues to help, 956

For þou miȝt lengþe mi liif · zif þe likes sone."

þan alysaundrine a-non · answered & saide,

"how miȝt i þe help? · what haue i to þi bote?"

"I-wisse," þan seyde william · "i wol no lenger hele, "How can I help  
you?" she  
inquired. 960

My liif, my langor, & my deþ · lenges in þi warde ;

but i þe sunner haue socour · of þat swete mayde,

þe comliche creature · þat in þi keping dwelles, Fol. 18 b.]  
"Unless I have  
some comfort  
from you, sweet  
maid, I shall  
surely die." 964

alle the surgens of salerne · ne schul saue mi liue.

þer-for loueliche ladi · in þe lis al min hope,  
þou miȝt me spakly [saue]<sup>1</sup> oþer spille · zif þi-self likes."

Alysaundrine a-non · þanne answered & sayde,

"now i-wisse, william · witow for soþe, "Since you have  
told me the truth  
and trust me, I  
were to blame not  
to help you. 968

Seþþe þou sadli hast me said · þe soþe of þi cunsaile,

& tellest me treuly · þou trestes to my help,

zif i miȝt in ani maner · mende þi sorwe,

but i were busi þer a-boute · to blame i were. 972

þer-for certes, be þou sur · seþ it may be no oþer,

holliche al min help · þou schalt haue sone." You shall have all  
my help."

þan william was gretliche glad · & loueliche hire þonked.

þan alisaundrine a-non · as sche wel couþe, 976

clepud þat mayde meliors · mekeliche hir tillle,

& seide, "a mercy, madame · on þis man here,

þat neȝh is driue to þe deþ · al for youre sake!"

"how so for my sake?" · seide melior þanne ; 980

"I wraped him neuer þat i wot · in word ne in dede."

"no sertes, madame, þat is soþ" · saide þat oþer,

Then Alexandrine  
called Melior to  
ber, saying, "Pity  
this man, who is  
near death for  
thy sake ;

<sup>1</sup> Read "spakly saue other spille."—M.

who has  
languished for  
thy love a long  
while.

“ac he has langured for 3our loue · a ful long while ;  
& but 3e graunt him 3our grace · him greiþli to help,  
& late him be 3our lemman · lelly for euer, 985  
his liif nel nouzt for langour · last til to-morwe.

Take him for thy  
love.”

þerfor, comeliche creature · for crist þat þe made,  
les nouzt is liif 3ut · for a litel wille. 988

“ I would rather  
save a man's life  
than kill him,”  
said Melior.

seþþe he so lelly þe loues · to lemman him þou take.”  
þan meliors ful mekliche · to þat mayde carped,  
and seide ful soburli · smyland a litel,  
“ nou bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule, 992

[Fol. 19.]

“ To save his life,  
I wil grant him  
my love.”

I kepe 3ut for no creature · manquellere be clepud,  
ac leuer me were lelly · a manes liif to saue.  
seþþe he for me is so marred · & has misfare long,  
ful prestely for þi praire · & for þe perile als, 996

Then William  
thanked God  
heartily,

þat i se him set inne · and to saue his liue,  
h[er]e i graunt him greþli · on godis holi name,  
lelliche mi loue for euer · al mi lif time,  
& gif a gift here to god · & to his gode moder, 1000

and he and Melior  
were pledged to  
each other.

þat oþer lud, whil i liue · schal i loue neuer !”  
whan william herd þise wordes · i hete þe forsoþe,  
he kneled quikli on knes · & oft god þonked, 1003

Then they clasped  
and kissed each  
other, and told  
each other of their  
sufferings.

& seide, “ god ! þat madest man · & al middel erþe,  
a mi3ti miracle for me · hastow wrouzt noþe.”

Alexandrine  
thought she  
would not be  
missed,

þan meked he him to meliors · on alle maner wise,  
as þe gladdest gom · þat euer god wrouzt.  
& sche sertes bi hire side · þe same him graunted, 1008  
to worche wiþ hire al his wille · as he wel liked.

þan eiþer hent oþer · hastely in armes,  
& wiþ kene kosses · kuppþed hem to-gidere, 1011  
so þat no mure upon mold · no mi3t hem bet haue lyked.  
& tit þanne told eche til oþer · here tenes & here sorwe,  
þat sadly for eiþers sake · hadden suffred long.

þanne alisaundrine anon · attlede þe soþe,  
þat hire maistres & þat man · no schuld hire nouzt  
nisse, 1016

þe3h sche walked a while · wide from here si3t,



- for sche trowed trewly · to talke þe soþe,  
 were sche out of þe weye · þat william wold fonde  
 for to pleie in þat place · þe priue loue game, 1020  
 & to hete here þan<sup>1</sup> to layke · here likyng þat time.  
 sche goþ a-boute in-to þe gardyn · for to gader floures,  
 & to wayte þat no weizh · walked þer-inne,  
 for drede of descueryng · of þat was do þere. 1024  
 william wel wiþ meliors · his wille þan dede,  
 & layked þere at lyking · al þe long daye,  
 til þe sunne was neizh set · soþli, to reste.  
 þanne alisaundrine at arst · þan antresse hem tille, 1028  
 & mekly to meliors · “madame,” þan sche seide,  
 “haue 3e geten þe gras · þat i 3ou geynliche hiȝt ?  
 I trowe trewli be þis time · 3our sorwe be passed ;  
 eiper of 3ou, as y leue · is god leche til oper,  
 alle þe surgyens of salerne · so sone ne coupen  
 haue 3our langoures a-legget · i leue for soþe.”  
 þan william wax wigtly · wonderli a-schamed,  
 & he & meliors mercy · mekly hire criede 1036  
 to kuuere wel here counseile · for eas in þis erþe,  
 & þroli hire þonked · moni þousand sipes ;  
 “For sche hade brouȝt hem of bale · boþe,” þei seide,  
 “& i-lengþed here lif · mani long 3ere.” 1040
- A** lisaundrine anon · after þat ilke  
 bad meliors manly · here merþe þan stinte,  
 & seide, “it is so neizh niȝt · þat nedes mote ye parte ;  
 I drede me of descuering · for 3e haue dwelled long.”  
 “allas ! þis mochel meschef” · saide melior þanne, 1045  
 “þis day is schorter to siȝt · þan it semed euere !”  
 & william seide þe same · soþli þat time.  
 but alisaundrine anon · answerede & seide, 1048  
 “Make 3e no mourning · for 3e may mete eft  
 demli hennes-forþ eche day · whan 3ou dere likes ;  
 for-þi hasteli boþe · heiȝe 3ou a-sunder.”

and had better  
 withdraw.

She went away  
 to gather flowers,  
 and to watch that  
 no one came  
 there.

Just before sun-  
 set, Alexandrine  
 returned.

[Fol. 19 b.]

and asked them if  
 they both felt  
 they were cured.

They prayed her  
 to keep their  
 counsel, and  
 thanked her  
 often.

She warned  
 Melior that it  
 was near night,

who lamented the  
 shortness of the  
 day.

She reminded  
 them that they  
 might meet again.

<sup>1</sup> Read “& to-gedere þan” (?). But see note.

- þanne seiz þei no socour · but sunder þanne þei moste ;  
 wiþ clipping & kessing · þei kauzt here leue, 1053  
 & eiper tok tit is way · to his owne chaumber,  
 blisful for þei were botned · of here bales strong,  
 seþpen hastely were þei hol · & haden alle here wille.  
 wiþ alle listes of loue · alle longe zeres 1057  
 priueli vnperceyued · þei pleyed to-gedere,  
 þat no seg vnder sunne · souched no gile.  
 so wel was william bi-loued · wiþ riche & wiþ pore, 1060  
 so fre to feffe alle frekes · wiþ ful faire ziftes,  
 þat þemperour soþli him-self · soueraynli him loued,  
 & seþpe alle oþer seges · þat seizen him wiþ eizen ;  
 & algate alisaundrine · at alle poyntes hem serued 1064  
 so slizliche, þat no seg · souched non euele,  
 but alle gauen god word · to gomes þat hem plesede.
- So they kissed, and took leave of each other, and returned happy,  
 for they were quite cured.
- William was beloved both by rich and poor, and especially by the emperor.
- [Fol. 20.]  
 Alexandrine kept their counsel well.
- Now it befell that the Duke of Saxony made war on the emperor of Rome.
- H**it tidde after bi time · as þe tale minges,  
 þe douzti duk of saxoyne · drow to þat londe 1068  
 wiþ ouer-gret<sup>1</sup> ost · godmen of armes,  
 wrongly forto werre · wiþ þemperour þat time.  
 & wiþ bobaunce & wiþ bost · brent fele tounes,  
 no strengþe him wiþ-stod · of sad stonen walles, 1072  
 but het a-doun burwes · & brutned moche peple,  
 so þat duel was to deme · þe duresse þat he wrouzt.  
 whanne þese tyding were told · to þemperour of rome,  
 he was gretly a-greued<sup>2</sup> · no gome þort him blame, 1076  
 þat eni weizh of þe world · schuld werre on his lond.  
 his sondes þanne he sente · swiþe al a-boute  
 to alle þe lordes of his land · to lasse & to more,  
 þat ouzten him omage · or ani seute elles, 1080  
 & warned hem werfore · he wiztly hem of-sent,  
 & het hem alle hiþe þider · as harde as þei miht,  
 wel warnished for þe werre · wiþ clene hors & armes.  
 whanne þemperours komaundment · was kud al a-  
 boute, 1084
- No stone walls withstood his assaults.
- The emperor was greatly grieved,  
 and sent messengers to all his lords  
 to come to him fully arrayed.

<sup>1</sup> MS. "ouer gart gret ;" see note.<sup>2</sup> MS. "a-greucs."

Mani was þat bold barn · þat busked þider sone,  
 kinges & kud dukes · & kniȝtes ful gode,  
 & oþer bold burnes · a-boute sexti þousand,  
 alle bouz to batayle · in ful briȝt armes. 1088  
 and riȝt in-to rome · alle þe rinkes drowe,  
 to wite þemperours wille · how he wirche þouȝt.

Kings, dukes,  
 knights, and men  
 came to him,  
 60,000 in all; and  
 all ready for  
 battle.

Whanne william þat worþi child · wist of þat fare,  
 was no glader gom · þat euer god made, 1092  
 he went euen to þemperour · & enys him sayde,  
 knelyng on his kne · curteysli & faire,

When William  
 heard of it, he  
 was very glad,

“Gode sir, for goddis loue · grant me a bone ;  
 ȝif me þe orlur of kniȝt · to go to þis dedus, 1096  
 & i hope to heuene king · mi help schal nouȝt fayle,  
 þat i nel manly wiþ mi miȝt · meynthe[ne] ȝour riȝt.”

[Fol. 20 b ]  
 and prayed the  
 emperor to grant  
 him a boon, viz.  
 to knight him.

þemperour was gretly glad · & graunted his wille,  
 & made him kniȝt on the morwe · & mo for his sake.  
 of proude princes sones · douȝti men toward, 1101  
 Fulle foure schore · for williames loue,

The emperor  
 gladly knighted  
 both him and 80  
 others, making  
 William their  
 warden.

& ȝaf hem hors & armes · as an hend lord schold,  
 & made william here wardeyn · as he wel miȝt, 1104  
 to gye & to gouerne · þe gay yong kniȝtes.

& whanne þempe[r]ours ost · was holli a-sembled,  
 he told to-fore þe grete · his tene & his harmes,

The emperor tells  
 his men what  
 harm the king of  
 Saxony has done,

how þe duk of saxoyne · dede him gret wrong, 1108  
 brent his nobul burwes · & his burnes quelled,  
 & komande hem kendely · here counseile to ȝeue,

and asks their  
 advice.

In what wise were best · to wreke him þanne.  
 & alle seide at o sawe · “sire, we ȝou rede, 1112  
 strecches forþ wiþ ȝour ost · stinteþ no lenger,  
 & fonde to do þe duk · what duresse ȝe may.

They advise him  
 to pursue the  
 duke to some city  
 and shut him up  
 there.

hampres him so harde · to sum cost þat be drawe,  
 sewes him to sum cite · & a-sege him þere, 1116  
 til ȝe wiþ fin fors · þe freke haue wonne.”

Whanne þemperour wist wel · þ[e] wille of his coun-  
 sayle,

They set out,  
 well furnished  
 with provisions.

- he dȳt him deliuerly · & dede him on gate  
holly wiþ al his herde · þat he hade a-sembled. 1120  
& wel þei were warnestured · of vitayles i-now,  
plentiuosly for al peple · to passe where þei wold.  
& so harde þei hiȳed þan · i hote þe for soþe,  
þat al þe clene cunpanye · com to þe place 1124  
neiz þere as þe douȳti duk · duresse so wrouȳt.  
to þe duk was it told tit · trewli þe soþe,  
how þemperour wiþ ost<sup>1</sup> · þider was come,  
to a-wreke him of þe wrong · þat þan was wrouȳt þere,  
& swiþe for bobauunce & bost · burnes he sent 1129  
enuiously to þemperour · & egged him swiþe  
bi a certayne day · bataile to a-bide,  
and challenge the  
emperor. or elles, he sent him to say · schortely he wold 1132  
bruttene alle hise burnes · & brenne his londes.  
þise tyding were told · to þemperour sone,  
The emperor tells  
William of this  
challenge. & wȳtly whan he þanne wist · william he calle[d],<sup>2</sup>  
þat ȳong bold bachiler · & bliue him told 1136  
how despitously þe duk · of þat dede him warned,  
to be boun be a certayne day · batayle to holde.  
sir william ful wisly · þise wordes þanne seide,  
William says he  
hopes they will  
abate the duke's  
pride. “sir, god for his grace · graunt ȳou wel to spede, 1140  
to a-bate þe bost · of þat breme duke.  
& so hope i wel, sire · we schal atte best.”  
ful menskfully to þe messangeres · þemperour þan seide,  
he wold be boun bleþeli · þe bold batayle to hold, 1144  
& þei bliue dude hem forþ · & þe duk tolde.  
þan boþe partiȳes prestly · a-paraylde hem þat time  
of alle tristy a-tir · þat to batayle longed,  
& made hem alle merie · in þe mene while, 1148  
til þe selue day þat was set · soþly was come,  
& boþe partȳes here place · perȳiliche hade chosen  
In a ful fayre feld · feiþly to telle.  
þanne busked þei here batayles · on þe best wise, 1152

<sup>1</sup> MS. has a blank space between “ost” and “þider;” see note.

<sup>2</sup> Read “called.” M.

- & whanne þe renkes were arayed · redly as þei wold,  
bugles & bemes · men gun blowe fast,  
& alle maner menstracie · þere was mad þanne,  
for to hardien þe hertes · of here heiȝh burnes. 1156  
þanne bi-gan þe batayle · breme for þe nones ;  
Mani strok in litel stounde · sternely was þer ȝeuen,  
& mani a bold burne · some brouȝt of liue,  
but schortly for to telle · þe schap of þis tale, 1160  
þe duk hade þe douȝtiere men · to deme þe soþe,  
& mani mo þan þemperour · & þei so manly fouȝten,  
þat balfully þe ferst batayle · þei brutned to deþe,  
& þai ful fast for fere · gunne fle þan þat miȝt ; . 1164  
but þe almauns seweden sadly · & slowe down riȝtes.  
whan þemperour say þat siȝt · his men so i-quelled,  
him was wonderli wo · witow for soþe.  
ful pitousli þan preiede he · to þe prince of heuene 1168  
for to giif him grace · his gomes to saue,  
& seide, “ heiȝh king of heuene · for þi holy name,  
ne fauore nouȝt so my [fo] <sup>1</sup> · þat falsly me so marres.  
for god what <sup>2</sup>, i na gult him neuer · to gif him enche-  
souu 1172  
for to wirch me no wrong · ne werre on my londe.  
& lord ! he is my lege man · lelly þou knowes,  
for holly þe londes þat he has · he holdes of mi-selue,  
þer-for þe wronger he wirches · al þe world may know.  
for-þi a mynde on me, lord · for þi moder loue, 1177  
help me haue þe herre hand · her-after in my riȝt !”

The bugles and trumpets are blown.

The battle begins.

The duke's men were most numerous.

[Fol. 21 b.]  
The Almayns prevail against the Romans.

The emperor prays to God, pleading the justice of his cause,

and that the duke is the wrongdoer.

- William þe ȝong kniȝt · was so neiȝh be-side,  
þat he herd þe pytous pleint · þat þemperour made,  
& siked for sorwe þer-of · sore wiþ-alle. 1181  
but quiely clepud he · þe ȝong kniȝtes alle,  
& seide, “ leue lordinges · lestenes to mi sawe ;  
nouȝ go we kiþe oure kniȝthod · for cristes loue of  
heuene, 1184  
that it is time to prove their knighthood.

William hears him, and calls to his men

that it is time to prove their knighthood.

<sup>1</sup> Read “my foe that falsly.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Sic. Read “wot.”

- Lo, oure folk ginneþ to falle · for defaute of help.  
 lettes nouȝt for ȝoure liues · ȝour lord forto socoure,  
 hasteli wiþ god hert nouȝ · hiȝes ȝou to þe dede, 1187  
 & ho-so faileþ for feyntyce · wild fur him for-brenne !”
- William's fierce onset.  
 þan wiztly boute mo wordes · william ginnes ride,  
 fresly toward here fos · as frek out of witte ;  
 þere þe pres was perelouste · he þrked in formest,  
 & blessed so wiþ his briȝt bront · a-boute in eche side,  
 þat what rink so he rauȝt · he ros neuer after. 1193  
 & soþli forto seie · wiþ-inne a schort while,  
 william wiþ his owne hond · so wiztliche pleide,  
 þat he slow six of þe grettes[t] · soþ forto telle, 1196  
 & þat douȝtiest were of dede · of þe dukes ost.
- He slays six of the greatest with his own hand,  
 þat on was his neuwe · a nobul kniȝt of armes,  
 þat oþer was his stiward · þat stiȝtled al his meyne.  
 þe oþer were lordes of þat lond · lelly of þe best. 1200  
 & whanne þe duk was war · how william him demeyned,  
 & how balfully he brutned · his burnes to deþe,  
 & naneliche for his newe · þat nam he most to herte,
- including the duke's nephew and his steward.  
 [Fol. 22.]  
 he wax neiȝ ouȝt of his witte · for wrap & for anger,  
 & clepud on his kniȝtes · þat kene were & nobul, 1205  
 & seide, “lordinges for my loue · no lenger ne stintes,  
 but chases þat kene kniȝt · þat þis kare vs werches.  
 Loo, how luþerly þat lud · leyes on oure burnes, 1208  
 non may is sterne strok · wiþstande þat he hittes.”  
 þus despitusly þe duk · drayed him þanne,
- The duke is mad with wrath, and points out William to his men.  
 þat his kniȝtes swiþe swore · what [so] it bi-tidde,  
 þei wold winne william wiztly · oþer quik or dede. 1212  
 þan ride to-gedere a gret route · of rinkes ful nobul,  
 & went euen to sir william · & wonderli him bi-sette ;  
 ac he wiþ douȝti dentes · defended him long,
- They rush off to attack William.  
 but, soþliche for to telle · so was he ouer-mached, 1216  
 þat þei wiþ fyn force · for-barred his strokes,  
 & wouȝdede him wikkedly · & wonne him of his stede,  
 & bounden him as bliue · him bale to wirche,  
 & drowen him toward þe duk · his dom forto here.
- who is at last overpowered and captured.

- but *william* whizes · þat wɪztly of-seizyen, 1221 But William's  
& demened hem douztili · dintes te dele, men come to his  
þe ʒong kene kniʒtes · so kudden here strengþe, rescue,  
þat þei wonne hem wɪztly · weyes ful large, 1224  
til þei hadde perced þe pres · pertily to here maister,  
& rescuede him rediliche · for<sup>1</sup> rinkes þat him ladden. and release and  
þan þei him vnbound bliue · & brouʒt him his stede, unbind him.  
& triliche was he a-tired · in ful trusty armes ; 1228  
his scheld on his schulder · a sharp swerd in honde.  
& whan þis *william* was ʒare · he waited him a-boute, Fierce as a lion,  
leþerly as a lyoun · he lepes in-to þe prese, William renews  
prestly þer as þe pres · of peple was þikkeſt. 1232 the attack,  
þanne lente he swiche leuere · to ledes þat he of-  
rauʒt,  
þat þe lif some he les · þat lauʒt ani dint,  
& euer þan drow he to þe duk · deland swiche paye. [Fol. 22 b.]  
& as sone as he him seiz · he sesed a spere, 1236 cutting his way  
& dressed him to þe duk · presteli to iuste. through to the  
& whan þe duk was war · þat he wold come, duke.  
boute feyntice of feuer<sup>2</sup> · he festned his spere, The duke  
& grimly wiþ gret cours · eiʒþer gerdeþ oþer. 1240 encounters him  
& *william* wiþ god wille · so wel þe duk hitt, fiercely.  
þat þurth scheld & scholder · þe scharpe spere grint,  
& hetterly boþe hors & man · he hurled to þe grounde, William hurls  
þanne liʒtly lep he a-down · & lauʒt out his brond, 1244 him to the  
& deliuerliche to þe duk · deuoteliche he seide, ground.  
“sire, þou seidest me ʒer-while · þou schuldest me do William tells the  
quelle, duke he is thank-  
ful for his own  
escape,  
& madest þi men me binde · meschef to þole ;  
but gretly y þonk god · þat gart me a-chape, 1248  
& dede þe wante þi wille · for þou wrong þoutest.  
hut, sire, in þe same seute · sett artow nouʒ,  
& y am prest as þi prisoun · to paye þe my ransom !  
ʒeld þe to me ʒeþly · or ʒerne þou schalt deie, 1252 and it is now for  
For alle þe men vpon mold · ne mow it now lette.” him to crave  
mercy.

<sup>1</sup> Read “fro.”<sup>2</sup> Read “boute feyntice, on feuter” (f.)

The duke yields up his sword, and asks for mercy.

The duke þan was in drede · & wend to deie sone,  
 & lelly, þouzh him loþ þouzt · no lenger to striue,  
 swiþe he zald vp his swerd · to saue þanne his liue, 1256  
 & seide, “man, for þi mensk · haue mercy on me nouþe,  
 lette me nouzt lese þe liif zut · lord, y þe bi-cheche.”  
 þanne william wityly · as a wizh hende,  
 receyued of þat riche duk · realy his swerde, 1260  
 & euen to þemperour · wiþ him þan he hiþed.  
 wanne þemperour seiþh william come · & wiþ him þe  
 duke,  
 he was on þe gladdest gome · þat miþt go on erþe ;  
 & william þanne to welcome · he wendes him azeynes,  
 & clipte him kindeli · & kest fele sipes. 1265  
 þan william wityly · as he wel couþe,  
 profered him þat prisoner · prestely at his wille  
 to do þan wiþ þe duk · what him dere þouzt. 1268  
 þemperour þat worþi william · wel oft þan þonked  
 of þe grete grace þat god · godliche þere schewede,  
 & strokes was þer delt na mo · fram þe duk was take.  
 For al his folk þan gunne fle · as fast as þei miþt, 1272  
 & he þat hadde best hors · þan held him best saued.  
 but þemperours men manly · made þe chace,  
 & slown down bi eche side · wham þei of-take miþt,  
 but zif þei manly hem meked · mercy to erie. 1276  
 & euer william so wityly · went hem a-mong  
 to þe boldest burnes · as he bi-fore hadde,  
 þat soþly dar y seie · þurth his socour þanne,  
 Riþt fewe went a-vey · vn-woundet or take. 1280  
 ac hadde þe day last lenger · lelli to seye,  
 no wity a-wei hadde schaped · i wot wel þe soþe.  
 but þe niþt was so neiþh · þat non miþt sen oþer  
 þe furþe del of a furlong · from him þat time. 1284  
 & in þat derk þe dukes [men]<sup>1</sup> · wiþ-drow hem manie,  
 & ho-so hardest miþt hiþe · held him nouzt bi-giled.  
 þemperour<sup>2</sup> wiþ moche merþe · his men þan meled ;

William takes his sword, and takes him to the emperor.

who embraces and kisses William for joy.  
 Then William delivered the duke to the emperor.

[Fol. 23.]

The duke's men fled away as fast as they could

The Romans pursued them, slaying and taking prisoners.

so that very few of them got away.

Night fell, and it grew very dark,

and some got away in the darkness.

<sup>1</sup> Read “the dukes *men*.” —M.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “þempour.”



- & whanne þei samen were a-ssembled · soþ for to telle,  
 þei hadde take þat time · of trie grete lordes 1289  
 Fulle fiue hundreded · of ful nobul prisouns,  
 wiþ-oute alle þe burnes · þat in batayle deide. Five hundred had  
 been taken, and  
 many slain.
- þan was þemperour greteli glad · & ofte god þonked,  
 & williams werk · þat he so wel hadde spedde. 1293
- & holliche þanne wiþ his host · hizede to here tentes The Romans  
 retire to their  
 tents.
- wiþ merþe of alle menstraye · & made hem attese,  
 & turned to rest at time · til erliche a morwe. 1296
- & wanne þei were a-rise · þei remewed to cherehe,  
 & herden holly here masse · & afterward sone Next morning,  
 they go to church  
 and hear mass.
- þemperour al holliche · his cunseyle dede clepe,  
 & sone bi here a-sent · at þat selue time, 1300
- Riȝt as william wold · þat wisly him radde,  
 alle þe douȝthi lordes · of þe dukis were take ;
- he dede fecche hem him bi-fore · & freyned hem swiþe,  
 ȝif þei wold of him holly · halde alle here londes. 1304 The prisoners are  
 brought, and  
 asked if they will  
 submit to the  
 emperor.
- & þei graunted godli · ful glad of þat sawe, [Fol. 23 b.]
- & alle anon riȝtes · þere omage him dede, They gladly do  
 him homage, and  
 are released.
- & þemperour wel loueliche · deliuered he[m] þenne,  
 & sente wiþ hem sondes · to saxoyne þat time, 1308
- & nomen omage in his name · nouȝt forto layne,  
 Forto riȝtleche þat reaume real · of riche & of pore.
- whanne þat dede was do · dernly at wille,  
 and alle lele lawes · in þat lond sette, 1312 All being thus  
 settled as  
 regarded Saxony,
- & alle þe peple held hem payed · pes forto haue ;
- whanne þemperour it wist · he was wel a-payed,  
 & loueliche wiþ alle his lordes · to lombardie fares, the emperor  
 marched to  
 Lombardy.
- wiþ alle þe merþe vpon molde · þat man miȝt diuise ;
- but feiþli his felachipe · forþ wiþ him he hadde. 1317
- þe douȝty duk of saxoyne · þe duel þat he made,  
 for his peple was slayn · & to prison take, The duke of  
 Saxony felt such  
 grief for the  
 wrong he had  
 done,
- & wist þan he hade wrongly · wrouȝt þurȝth his pride ;
- & swiche duel drow to hert · for his dedus ille, 1321
- þat he deide on þe fiȝte day · to talke þe soþe. that he died on  
 the fifth day.
- whanne þemperour þat wist · wiȝtly he comanded,

- He is buried honourably. to burye him as out to be · swiche a burne nobul,  
wip alle worchipe & wele ; · so was he sone.<sup>1</sup> 1325
- The emperor returns to Rome, þan remued þemperour · toward rome euene,  
& wigtly william wip him · þat was wounded sore ;  
but lelly nobul leches · loked to his woundes, 1328  
þat seide he schuld be sauf · & sweteliche heled.
- sending mes-  
sengers before  
him to his  
daughter. messangers ful manly · þemperour þanne sente,  
by-fore to his dere douzter · to do hire to wite  
þat he come wip his companie · as<sup>2</sup> crist wold, al saf.  
þe messangeres ful manly · to meliors þanne spedde,  
& gretten hire godli · whan þei þat gode seie, 1334  
& mynged here message · to þat mayde hende,  
how hir fader in helpe · hom wold come  
feipli wip-inne þe fourtene-nigt · wip his frekes bold.  
Gret merþe to þe messangeres · meliors þan made, 1338  
for þe tidy tidinges · þat tigtly were seide.
- [Fol. 24.]  
Melior asks if the  
enemy gave  
them much  
trouble, “ nou3, faire frendes, be 3our feip · fond 3e ani lette  
of segges of þe oþer side · þat sette 3ou a-geynes ? ”  
“ o madame ! ” seide þe messangeres · “ what mele 3e  
nouþe ?  
seþþe crist deide on þe croyce · mankinde to saue,  
3e ne herde neuer, y hope · of so hard a cunter, 1344  
ne of so fele burnes · at on batayle slayne ! ”  
“ telles how 3ou tidde ” · seide meliors þanne.  
“ Madame,” seide þe messangeres · “ be marie in heuen,  
þe duk hadde so gret an host · of gode men of armes,  
þat sopli al oure side · sone slayn hadde bene, 1349  
nadde þe socour of o seg · þat in oure side dwelleþ,  
þat haþ lengþed al oure [lines]<sup>3</sup> · leue 3e forsoþe,  
þurth þe douzti dedes · þat he haþ do þere.” 1352
- and they say, it  
was a very sharp  
encounter. “ swete sire, what is he ? ” · þat seide meliors sone.  
“ I-wisse,” he seide, “ it is william · þat is newe knizted,  
he may lelly be hold a lord · & ledere of peples,  
Forto weld al þe world · to wisse & to rede, 1356
- The duke's  
numerous host  
would have  
prevailed, but for  
the succour of a  
certain knight, i. e. William, the  
one but newly  
knighted.

<sup>1</sup> This line and the preceding one are transposed in the MS.<sup>2</sup> MS. “ al.”<sup>3</sup> Read “ al oure *liues*.”—M. Cf. l. 1360.

for þer nis king vnder crist · þat he ouer-com nolde.

I-wisse, nade his werk be · we mow nouȝt for-sake,  
þi fader and al his folk · so misfaren hadde,  
þat alle here liues in a stounde · hadde be lore.” 1360

But for him, the  
battle would have  
been lost.

þanne told þei hire tigtly · al þe trewe soþe,  
at how miche meschef · here men were formest,  
& seþþe how wigtly william · went to here foos,  
& dede deliuerly nym þe duk · to talke þus formest ;  
& seþþe þe grettes[t] lordes · he garte here liif tme, 1365

But William  
attacked and took  
the duke.

& also þei told trewli · how he was take him-selue,  
& reddely wiþ his owne rinkes · rescued after ;<sup>1</sup>  
& seþþe what dedes he dede · he tok þe selue duk, 1368  
and brouȝt þurth is bolde dedes · þe batayle to hende ;

He was once  
taken himself,  
but his men  
rescued him.

& seþen how þe duk for duel · deyde in here ward,  
& how al saxoyne was set · wiþ wel sadde lawes,  
to wirche here faderes wille · þurȝth william dedes.  
& whan þis tale was told · meliors tyt seide, 1373

The duke had  
died of pure grief

“ leue lordinges, for my loue · lelly me telles,  
comes þat william wiþ my fader · & weldes his hele ? ”  
“ ȝe sertes, madame,” seide þei · “ he sewes ȝour fader ;  
but wel weldes he nouȝt his hele · for wonded was he  
sore, 1377

[Fol. 24 b.]  
She asks if  
William was  
coming home  
with her fatier.

þat greuen him gretly · but god may do bote.”  
“ For mary loue,” seide meliors · “ mai he be heled ? ”  
“ ȝa certes, madame · he is so sounde nowþe, 1380  
þat he may redly ride & rome · whan þat him likes.”

They said he was  
coming, sound  
and well, though  
he had been  
wounded.

Meliors to þe messageris · þan made gret ioye,  
for þe tyding þat þei told · touchend hire fader.  
but i hote þe, in hert · sche hade swiche blisse, 1384  
þat neuer womman in þis world · miȝt weld more,  
for hire louely lemman · hade swiche los wonne,  
to bere him best in þat batayle · wiþ so breme dedus.  
þanne made þei hem [merie]<sup>2</sup> · to make schort tale, 1388

Melior was very  
glad to hear of  
William's doughty  
deeds.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. has “rescued him after” ; but either *wiþ* or *him* must be struck out.

<sup>2</sup> The alliteration would lead us to supply *merie*.—M. See l. 1409.

- After a week, the emperor arrives, soþly al þat seueniȝt ; · & so, atte last,  
þemperour & alle peple · to his palays come ;  
Receyued was he of romaynes · realy as lord.
- Melior goes out to meet him, þanne meliors ful mekly · wiþ maydenes fele, 1392  
ferde out a-ȝens hire fader · & faire him gret,  
& hire louely lemman · lelly next after,  
& made hem as moche ioie · as miȝt any burde ;
- kissing her father, and William afterwards, Kyndeliche clipping · and kessing hire fader, 1396  
& wiþ a curteise cuntenaunce · william next after,  
for no seg þat it seye · schuld schoche but gode.
- She whispered to William to come to her chamber, but priueli un-perceyued · sche praide william þanne,  
to seche softly to hire chaumber · as sone as he miȝt.  
& he bi quinte contenance · to come he granted, 1401  
for he ne durst openly · for ouer-trowe of gile ;  
but wel sche knew þurth konnyng · at þat cas his wille.
- The Romans make great joy, only lament for their friends slain, to long mater most it be · to myng al þe ioie, 1404  
& þe real romayns array · for here lordes sake,  
& þe mochel mornyng · þei made for here frendes,  
whanne þei wist witterly · whiche in batayle deyde.  
but confort for þe conquest · þei cauȝt sone after, 1408  
& made hem as mery · as ani men couþe.<sup>1</sup>
- [Fol. 25.] William went to Melior when he saw opportunity, & william went to meliors · whan he seiȝ time,  
& layked him at likyng · wiþ þat faire burde  
pleyes of paramours · vn-parceyued longe time, 1412  
so sliche, þat no seg · scouched non ille.
- Alexandrine kept their counsel well, but algate alysaundrine · atte wille hem serued,  
þat non knew here cunseile · but þei þre one.
- One Easter-tide, the emperor summons all his lords and ladies, **B**ut þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after, 1416  
þemperour erded stille in rome · at þe ester tide,  
& for þat solempne sesoun<sup>2</sup> · dede somoun alle þe grete,  
of lordes & ladies · þat to þat lond partened.  
and alle to his comandement · comen ful sone, 1420  
& derly at þat day · wiþ deynteyes were þei serued.  
as þei were meriest at mete · to minge al þe soþe,

<sup>1</sup> Catchword—" & william."<sup>2</sup> MS. "sofou."

xxx busy burnes · barounes ful bolde,  
 comen in manly message · fro þemperour of grece, 1424  
 & bi kinde of kostant-noble · keper was þanne.  
 þe messageres riȝt realy · were arayde, for soþe,  
 al in glimerand gold · greþand<sup>1</sup> to riȝtes,  
 It were tor for to telle · al here atyr riche. 1428  
 but euer to þemperour · alle þei ȝede in-fere,  
 & kurtesliche vpon here knes · þei komsed him grete  
 Godli fro þemperour of grece · & fro his gode sone.  
 & þemperour ful semly · seide to hem þanne, 1432  
 “he þat made man mest · ȝour liues mot saue,  
 & alle ȝoure clene companie · crist ȝif hem ioye  
 for þe menskfulles[t] messageres · þat euer to me come !”

As they feasted,  
 30 men came from  
 the emperor of  
 Greece,

all richly attired  
 in gold.

The emperor  
 greets them, and  
 asks their  
 message.

On of þe barons bold · bi-gunne to schewe here nedes,  
 þat was a gret lord in grece · roachas he hiȝt, 1437  
 & seide soberly to þemperour · in þis selue wise,  
 “Leue lord & ludes · lesten to mi sawes !  
 þe gode emperour of grece · þe grettest of us alle, 1440  
 whas messageres we be mad · to munge ȝou his wille,  
 sendes you to seie · he has a sone dere,  
 on þe triest man to-ward · of alle douȝti dedes,  
 þat any man vpon molde · may of here, 1444  
 þat schal be emperour after him · of heritage bi kynde.  
 & he haþ oft herde sayd · of ȝoure semly douȝter,  
 how fair, how fetis sche is · how freli schapen ; 1447  
 & for þe loos on hire is leide · & lone of ȝour-selue,  
 he prayeth, lord, vowche-sauf · þat his sone hire wedde.  
 Grucche nouȝt þer-a-gayn · but godli, i rede,  
 Graunte þis faire forward · fulfillen in haste.  
 & ȝif ye so doþ, i dar seie · & soþliche do proue, 1452  
 sche schal weld at wille · more gold þan ȝe siluer ;  
 & haue mo solempe cites · and semliche casteles,  
 þan ȝe treuly han smale tounes · o[r] vntydi houses ,  
 & herof, sire, wiȝtly · ȝour wille wold we knowe. 1456

A great lord,  
 named Roachas,  
 replies

that the emperor  
 of Greece has a  
 dear son

[Fol. 25 b.]  
 who is to be  
 emperor after  
 him,

who wishes to  
 marry Melior.

She is to have  
 more gold than ye  
 have silver.

<sup>1</sup> We ought probably to read *greithed*.—M.

- As the emperor's lords are all there,  
he can give his answer at once.
- þe grete lordes of 3our land · þeþ lenged now here,  
3e mow wíztly now wite · 3our wille & 3our rede,  
& wíztly do vs to wite · what answeze 3ou likes." 1459  
þemperour calde his counseil · for to knowe here wille,
- He and his lords assent.
- & godli bouthe grucching · alle graunted sone,  
& setten a serteyne day · þat solempte to holde ;  
& sad seurte was sikered · on boþe sides þanne,
- The marriage is to be made at Midsummer.
- þat menskful mariage to make · at midesomer after. 1464  
sone were þe messagers made · mildli at ese,  
while hem liked lende · & lelly, whan þei wente,  
Grete 3iftes were giue · & of gold & of seluer,
- The messengers return to Greece, loaded with gifts.
- & þei wíztly went hom · wíþ ioye & wíþ merþe. 1468  
þe answeze of here herend · þemperour þei tolde ;  
Gret merþe was mad · for þat message in rome,
- The report of the marriage is spread through Rome.
- & þe word went wide · how þe mayde was 3eue  
rifliche þurth-out rome · & eehe a rynk was bliþe 1472  
þat þe milde meliors · so mariede scholde bene  
to þemperours eir of grece · & euerich man wíþ ioye  
teld it forþ til oþer · tíztli al a-boute.
- William heard of it as he was at play,
- but þe worþi william · þer-of wist he nouzt, 1476  
For he was atte a bourdes · þer bachilers pleide.  
whanne þe tiding<sup>1</sup> was þer told · witow forsobe,  
out of þat faire felachip · ferde he þan sone
- [Fol. 26.]
- as mekeli as he mizt · lest eni mysse trowede ; 1480  
but whan he was passed þe pres · he þríkede as swíþe  
as he mizt híze his hors · for hurtyng of spors ;  
neízh wod of witte · for woo of þat sawe,  
for he schold lese his lemman · his liif þan he hated. 1484  
wíþ care was he ouer-come · bi þat he com to his inne,
- and rode home, feeling well-nigh mad.
- þat he for bale as bliue · to his bed went,  
& siked þanne so sore · þe soþe forto telle, 1487  
þat uch wízh þat it wist · wend he ne schuld keuer.
- He went to bed and fell sick.
- & whan hit was wist in rome · þat william was sek,  
mochel was he mened · of more & of lasse ;  
for a beter bi-loued barn · was neuer born in erþe,
- All who heard of it were much grieved.

- þan he was wiþ ich wiȝt · wil he woned in rome. 1492
- þe tidings þan were tiȝtly · to þemperour i-told,  
 & he þan swoned for sorwe · & swelt neiȝhonde ;  
 but kniȝtes him vp cauȝt · & comfort him beter.  
 & whan he þurth comfort · was comen of his care, 1496
- he went wiȝtli to william · to wite how he ferde,  
 & kniȝtes folwed him forþ · fine oþer sixe.  
 anon as he com him to · he asked how he ferd.  
 “sire!” þan seide he softly · “certes, so ille. 1500
- þat i leue my lif · last nouȝt til to morwe.  
 but god, sire, for his grete miȝt · graunt ȝou ioie,  
 for þe worchipe þat ȝe · han wruȝt to me ȝore.”  
 whan þemperour hade herd · holly his wordes, 1504
- & seie him so sekly · þat he ded semed,  
 swiche sorwe sank to his hert · þat miȝt he nouȝt suffre  
 þer to be, bot he miȝt · his bale haue slaked ;  
 of him wiȝtly he tok his leue · & went hom a-ȝeine,  
 weping as he wold wide · for wo & for sorwe, 1509
- & deliuerli to his douȝter · his del þan he made,  
 how william hire worþi nory · was neiȝe atte deþe.  
 & sche hire fader cumfort · fast as sche miȝt, 1512
- but worse was neuer woman · for wo at hire herte.  
 as fast as hire fader · was faren of þe weie,  
 sche wept & weiled · as sche wold haue storue,  
 & swoned ofte siþe · her sche sese miȝt. 1516
- but alisandrine anon · þat al hire cunseile wist,  
 comfort hire as sche couþe · wiþ alle kinde speches,  
 & bad hire wiȝtly wende · to wite how he ferde.  
 “& sopliche, madame · so may hit bi-tide, 1520
- ȝour comfort mai him keure · & his sorwe slake.”  
 þan meliors mekly · hire maydenes dede calle,  
 & many of hire meyne · for drede of missespeche,  
 & went ful wiȝtly · to will[i]ams inne, 1524
- as nouȝt were bot [to] wite · how þat he ferde.  
 & whan sche drow to his chaumber · sche dede ful  
 sone

The emperor  
hears William is  
ill, and swoons  
for sorrow.

He goes with five  
or six knights to  
ask him how he  
fares.

William thanks  
him for his  
kindness.

The emperor sees  
he is almost dead,

and returns home,  
and tells Melior.

When her father  
had left her, she  
wept and wailed.

[Fol. 26 b.]

Alexandrine  
comforts her, and  
advises to go and  
see William.

Melior, with  
many of her  
maidens, goes to  
William's abode.

here maydenes & oper meyne · mekeli a-stente,  
 al but alisaundrine · alone þei tweyne. 1528  
 She and Alexandrine go into his chamber.  
 þei went in-to william · wiþ-oute any more,  
 & busked hem euen to his bed · & bi him gunne sitte,  
 & seide some softly · “ my swete lemman dere,  
 allone but alisaundrine · am i come to þe 1532  
 forto wite of þi wo · & what þat þe eiles.  
 Mi perles paramours<sup>1</sup> · my pleye & my ioye,  
 spek to me spakli · or i spille sone.”

William tiztly him turned · & of hire tok hede, 1536  
 & seide aswiþe · “ sweting, wel-come !  
 He greets her lovingly,  
 Mi derworþe derling · an my dere hert,  
 Mi blis & mi bale · þat botelesse wol ende !  
 but comliche creature · for cristes loue of heuene, 1540  
 and asks why she has forsaken him.  
 for what maner misgelt · hastow me forsake,  
 þat lelly haue þe loued · & wile i liue þenke ?  
 feiþli boutte feintyse · þou me failest nouþe,  
 þat hast turned þin entent · forto take a-noþer. 1544  
 Gret wrong hastou wrouzt · & wel gret sinne,  
 to do me swiche duresse · to deye for þi sake.  
 but loueliche lemman · oure lord mot þe zeld  
 Yet he thanks her for coming to see him now.  
 þat þi worþi wille was · to come to me nouþe ; 1548  
 for þow hast lengþed my lif · & my langour schortet  
 [Fol. 27.] þurth þe solas & þe sizt · of þe, my swete hert !”  
 & whan melior hadde herd · holly al his wille,  
 Melior sighs sadly and weeps,  
 sche siked sadly for sorwe · & wel sore wepte, 1552  
 & seide, “ loueliche lemman · leue þou for soþe,  
 alle men vpon molde · no schuld my liif saue,  
 zif þou wendest of þis world · þat i ne wende after !  
 and assures him he has not lost her, for she will not perform her father's will.  
 ne, lemman, lore hastow me nouzt · leue þow forsoþe,  
 for þouzh mi fader folliche · haue forwardes maked, 1557  
 wenestow þat i wold · his wille now parfourme ?  
 nay, bi god þat me gaf · þe gost and þe soule,  
 al þat trauaile he has tynt · what euer tyde after ! 1560

<sup>1</sup> MS. “ paramours.”



- for þere nis man vpon mokle · þat euer schal me haue  
 but ȝe, loueliche lemman · leue me for trewe,  
 In feiþ þei y schold þerfore · be fordon as swiþe,  
 doluen dep quic on erþe · to-drawe or on-honged!" 1564  
 "ȝe, wist y þat," seide william · "witterly to speke,  
 of alle harnes were ich hol · hastely riȝt nouþe!"  
 "ȝis, be marie," seide meliors · "misdrede ȝow neuer ;  
 I wil fulfille alle forwardes · feiþli in dede !" 1568  
 þan was william ful glad<sup>1</sup> · witow for soþe,  
 & eiþer kindeli clipped oþer · and kest wel ofte,  
 & wrount elles here wille · whil hem god liked.  
 & treuly whan<sup>2</sup> time com · þat þei twynne scholde, 1572  
 Meliors wiþ hire meyne · mekeliche hom wente ;  
 william a stounde stinte stille · at his owne inne,  
 of alle his harde haches · heled atte best.  
 alle þe surgens of salerne · so sone ne coþen, 1576  
 haue lesed his langour · and his liif sauēd,  
 as þe maide meliors · in a mile wei dede.  
 þe word wide went sone · þat william was heled,  
 & vche gome was glad · and oft god þonked, 1580  
 & william on þe morwe · wel him a-tyred  
 Gayli in cloþes of gold<sup>3</sup> · & oþer gode harnes,  
 & komes euen to kourt · as kniȝt hol & fere,  
 heriend heiliche god · þat his liif sauēd. 1584  
 & soþli as sone as þemperour · say him wiþ eiȝen,  
 he hiȝed him hastely · & hent him in his armes,  
 & clupte him & keste · kyndeliche ful ofte,  
 & þus þei left in likyng · a god while after. 1588
- B**ut now more to minge · of þe messagers of grece.  
 as tyt as þei had told · trewli to here lord,  
 how realy þei were reseceyued · in rome þe riche,  
 & þe gracious graunt · þei gaten of here herande, 1592  
 þemperour of grece gretly · was gladed in herte.  
 swiþe sent he sondes · to somoun þat time

None shall ever  
 have her but  
 William,

though she were  
 buried alive,  
 drawn, or hanged.

She will never  
 break her pledge.

Then they kissed  
 and comforted  
 each other.

Melior went  
 home, and  
 William was  
 healed.

It is soon known  
 that he is healed,  
 and all men  
 thank God.

[Fol. 27 b.]  
 The emperor is  
 very glad, and  
 embraces him.

The messengers  
 from Greece  
 return, and report  
 how well they  
 were received.

<sup>1</sup> MS. "gald."

<sup>2</sup> MS. "wahan."

<sup>3</sup> MS. "glod."

- The emperor of Greece summons his lords, alle þe grete of grece · and oþer gaie pepul,  
þat no mon vpon mold · miȝt ayme þe noumber ; 1596  
al þat real aray reken · schold men nener,  
ne purueaunce þat prest was · to pepul a-greiped.  
but soþ atte þe day set · wiþ solempne merþe,  
þis gaye genge of grece · to rome guzne ride, 1600  
anþ they set off to ride to Rome,  
& riden in real aray · to-ward rome euene.  
forto reken al þe arai · in rome þat time,  
alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt hit deuce,  
so wel in alle wise · was hit arayed, 1604  
& plente of alle purueaunce · purueyed to riȝttes.  
When they draw near Rome, whan þemperour of grece · neiyed neiȝh rome,  
wiþ alle his bolde burnes · a-boute þre mile,  
the Roman emperor comes to meet them. þemperour of rome redeli · romed him a-ȝens, 1608  
wiþ þe clenest cumpanye · þat euer king ladde.  
& whan þe clene cumpanyes · comen to-gadere,  
þe siȝt was ful semly · and louely for to se,  
The emperors embrace and greet each other. whan eiþer of þemperoures · er þei wold stint, 1612  
eiþer oþer keste · kindeliche þat time,  
& seþþe þe same wiþ þe sone · also he wrouȝt ;  
þe murþe of þat metyng · no man may telle.  
All ride to Rome, where they find flowers strewn, and rich hangings, Into rome al þat route · riden forþ in-fere, 1616  
& eche a strete was striked · & strawed wiþ floures,  
& realy railed · wiþ wel riche cloþes,  
& alle maner menstracie · maked him a-ȝens ;  
[Fol. 2s.] and also daunces disgisi · redi diȝt were, 1620  
and hear minstrels and songs. & selcouþ songes · to solas here hertes ;  
so þat soþli to say · þeiȝh i sete euer,  
I schuld nouȝt telle þe merþe · þat maked was þere ;  
forþi to miȝge of þat matere · no more i ne þenk 1624  
The Greeks are harboured in tents outside the city, but alle þe genge of grece · was gayli resseyued,  
& herbarwed hastely · ich hete þe for soþe,  
In a place, þer were piȝt · paulounns & tentes,  
bi o side of þe cite · for swiþe moche pepul ; 1628  
for þei þat scie it forsoþe · saiden þe truþe,  
þe place of þe paulons · & of þe price tentes

semede as moche to sijt · as þe cite of rome.  
 þemperour & eueri man · were esed to rizttes, 1632 the tents  
 & haden wiztly at wille · what þei wolde 3erne. much ground as  
 but now a while wol i stinte · of þis wlonke murþe,<sup>1</sup> did Rome itself.  
 & munge now of meliors · þat blisful burde, But I must return  
 & of þe worþi william · þat was here lemman dere, to William and  
 & telle þe tale lelly · what hem bitidde after. 1637 Melior.

Whan þese pepul was inned · wel at here hese,  
 william wel wiztli · wiþ-oute any fere, William goes to  
 Mornung out mesure · to melior he wendes, 1640 Melior, and  
 & siked ful saddli · and seide to hire sone, sighing says,  
 “a ! worþiliche wizt · wel wo is me nouþe !  
 þurȝth destine my deþ is diȝt · dere, for þi sake !  
 I may banne þat i was born · to a-bide þis time, 1644  
 forto lese þe lef · þat al mi liif weldes.  
 foule þow me fodest · wiþ þi faire wordes,  
 elles had i deide for duel · many dai seþþe,  
 & so god for his grace · goue y hadde !” 1648 and I would I  
 Meliors seide mekli · “whi so, mi dere hert ? were dead  
 forwardes þat i haue fest · ful wel schal i hold, indeed !”  
 I hope to þe heizh king · þat al heuen weldes. Melior assures  
 þer-for stint of þi striif · & stodie we a-noþer, 1652 him she will keep  
 what wise we mow best · buske of þis lond.” her troth, and  
 whan he [wist] þese wordes · william wel liked, they must devise  
 seide, “mi hony, mi hert · al hol þou me makest, a plan of escape.  
 wiþ þi kinde cumfort · of alle mi kares kold.” 1656  
 þan studied þei a gret stounde · stifli to-gadere,  
 bi what wise þei miȝt best · buske of þat þede,  
 priueli vnperceyued · for peynes þat hem tidde ;  
 al in wast þei wrouȝt · here witte wold nouȝt serue.  
 alisaundrine to cunseile · þei clepud sone þanne, 1661 They therefore  
 & telden hire trewli · what tent þei were inne, ask Alexandrine  
 zif þei wist in what wise · to wende of þat londe, her advice.  
 & preyed hire par charite · and for profites loue, 1664

<sup>1</sup> MS. “murþe.”

- to kenne hem *sum* coyntice · 3if sche any couþe,  
to wisse hem forto wend · a-wey vnperceyued.
- She answers,  
weeping, that she  
can think of no  
way at all;
- alisaundrine a-non · answered þan and seide,  
wepand wonderli fast · for þei wende wold, 1668  
“ bi þat blisful barn · þat bouzt us on þe rode,  
I kan bi no coyntyse · knowe nou3 þe best,  
how 3e mowe un-hent · or harmles a-schape.  
for be hit witerly wist · þat [3e]<sup>1</sup> a-went bene, 1672  
eche a kuntre worþ kept · wiþ kud men i-nouze,  
eche brug, eche payþe<sup>2</sup> · eche brode weye,  
þat noþer clerk nor kni3t · nor of cuntre cherle  
schal passe vnperceyued · & pertiliche of-souzt. 1676  
& 3ef 3e were disgised · & di3t on any wise,  
I wot wel witerli · 3e wold be aspied.  
seþþe no noþer nel be · but nedes to wende,  
craftier skil kan i non · þan i wol kuþe. 1680  
In þe kechene wel i knowe · arn crafti men manye,  
þat fast fonden alday · to flen wilde bestes,  
hyndes & hertes · wiþ hydes wel fayre,  
bukkes and beris · and oþer bestes wilde, 1684  
of alle fair venorye · þat falles to metes.  
ac þe bremest best · þe beres me semen,  
þe gon most grisli · to eche gomes si3t ;  
Mi3t we by coyntise · com bi tvo skynnes, 1688  
of þe breme beres · & bi-sowe 3ou þer-inne,  
þer is no liuand lud · i-liue 3ou knowe schold,  
but hold 3ou ouzt of heie gates · for happes, i rede.  
rediliche no better red · be resun i ne knowe, 1692  
þan to swiche a bold beste · best to be disgised,  
for þei be alle maners · arn man likkest.”  
þan william ful wiþtli · & his worþi burde  
ful þroly hire þonked · many þousand siþe 1696  
of hire crafty cunsayl · & kindliche hire bi-souzt,  
wi3tly wiþ *sum* wyl · winne hem tvo skynnes  
of þo breme bestes · þat beres ben called,

for the cry would  
soon be raised,  
and every pass  
guarded.

They would soon  
be found out if  
disgised ; the  
only way is this.

The men in the  
kitchen are  
always flaying  
beasts.

Of all beasts,  
bears seem the  
most grisly.

[Fol. 29.]  
None would know  
them if they  
were wrapped up  
in white bears'  
skins.

They thank her  
for her counsel,  
and beg her to  
get the skins.

<sup>1</sup> Read “ that ze a went bene.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Or “ paþþe.”

- pryuely vnperceyued · for peril þat may falle. 1700  
 & alisaundrine a-non · as an hende mayde,  
 seide sche wold deliuerly · do þer-to hire miȝt,  
 Forto saue hem fro sorwe · hir-self forto deye.
- W<sup>i</sup>ȝtly bouthe mo wordes · sche went fo[r]þ stille, 1704  
 & bliue in a bourde · borwed boiȝes cloþes,  
 & talliche hire a-tyred · tiȝtli þer-inne,  
 & bogeysliche as a boye · busked to þe kychene,  
 þer as burnes were busy · bestes to hulde ; 1708  
 & manly sche melled hire · þo men forto help,  
 til sche say tidi time · hire prey for to take.  
 sche a-wayted wel · þe white bere skinnes,  
 þat loneli were & large · to lappen inne hire frendes,  
 & went wiȝtly a-wei · wel vnperceyued, 1713  
 & lepeþ þer-wiþ to hire lady · & hire lemman dere,  
 seide softly, “now seþ · how sone i haue spedde!”  
 & þei ful glad of þe gere · gretly here þonked, 1716  
 & preiede here ful presteli · to put hem þer-inne,  
 so semli þat no seg · miȝt se here cloþes.  
 & sche melled hire meliors · ferst to greiþe,  
 & festened hire in þat fel · wiþ ful gode þonges 1720  
 aboute hire trie a-tir · to talke þe soþe,  
 þat no man vpon mold · miȝt oþer perceyue  
 but sche a bere were · to baite at a stake ;  
 so iustislich eche liþ ioyned · bi ihesu of heuen. 1724  
 whan schē in þat tyr · was tiffed as sche schold,  
 Meliors in here merþe · to hire maiden seide,  
 “Leue alisaundrine, for mi loue · how likes þe nowþe ?  
 am i nouȝt a bold best “a bere wel to seme ?” 1728  
 “ȝis, madame,” seide þe mayde · “be marie of heuene,  
 ȝe arn so grisli a gost · a gom on to loke,  
 þat i nold for al þe god · þat euer god made,  
 abide ȝou in a brod weie · bi a large mile ; 1732  
 so breme a wilde bere · ȝe bi-seme nowþe.”  
 alisaundrine þanne anon · after þat ilk,

She says she will try.

She dresses herself in boy's clothes,

and helps the men in the kitchen.

She makes off with the two skins, and goes to William and Melior.

They beg her to sew them up.

She fastens Melior up in one with good things, clothes and all.

[Fo'. 29 v.]  
Melior asks her if she does not make a bold bear?

“Yes, madame, you are a grisly ghost enough, and look furious.”

- Then she laces up  
William in the  
other skin; In þat oþer bere-skyn · be-wrapped william þanne,  
& laced wel eche leme · wiþ lastend þonges, 1736  
craftili a-bone his cloþes · þat comly were & riche.  
& whan he was sowed · as he schold bene,  
william ful merili · to meliors þan he seide,  
“sei me, loueli lemman · how likes þe me nowþe?” 1740  
“bi marie, sire,” seide meliors · “þe milde quen of  
heuene,  
so breme a bere ȝe be-seme · a burn on to loke,  
þat icham a-grise · bi god þat me made,  
to se so hidous a siȝt · of youre semli face !” 1744  
þan seide william wiȝtli · “my derworþe herte,  
to heiȝ vs hastily henne · ich hope be þe best,  
euenly þis euen while · or men to mochel walk.”  
& ȝhe to worche as he wold · wiȝtli þan graunted. 1748  
alisaundrine sone · as sche saw hem founding,  
wept as sche wold a-wede · for wo & for sorwe,  
but napeles as bliue · sche brouȝt hem on weie  
priuely be þe posterne · of þat perles erber, 1752  
þat was to meliors chaumber · choisli a-ioyned.  
& alisaundrine as sone · as þei schuld de-parte,  
swoned fele siþe · & seȝþen whan sche miȝt,  
preide ful pitnosli · to þe prince of heuene 1756  
to loke fro alle langour · þo louely makes,  
þat put hem for paramours · in periles so grete ;  
& soþli forto say · a-sunder þann þei went.  
alisaundrine anon · attelede to hire boure, 1760  
& morned neiȝh for mad · for meliors hire ladi.  
More to telle of hire þis time · trewly i leue,  
telle i wil of þe beres · what hem tidde after.
- [Fol. 30.]
- 1 must now tell  
you about the two  
white bears. **W**illiam & þe mayde · þat were white beres, 1764  
gon forþ þurȝth þe gardin · a wel god spede,  
Fersly on here foure fet · as fel for swiche bestes.  
þan ȝede a grom of greece · in þe gardyn to pleie,  
to bi-hold þe estres · & þe herberes so faire, 1768
- As they went  
through the  
garden on all  
fours,  
a Greek, who had  
come there for  
amusement.

- &, or he wiste, he was war · of þe white beres,  
 þei went a-wai a wallop · as þei wod semed. perceved them  
galloping along.
- & neiȝ wod of his witt · he wax neiȝ for drede,  
 & fled as fast homward · as fet miȝt drie, 1772 He fled home in  
extreme fear.
- for he wend witterly · þei wold him haue sewed,  
 to haue mad of him mete · & murþered him to deþe.  
 whanne he his felawes founde · of his fare þei wondred, His fellows asked  
him what ailed  
him.
- whi he was in þat wise · wexen so maat, 1776
- & he hem told tiȝtly · whiche tvo white beres  
 hadde gon in þe gardyn · & him agast maked,  
 for he wende witerli · þei wold him haue slawe,  
 “but þei seie me nouȝt · soþli i hope, 1780
- to me tended þei nouȝt · but tok forþ here wey  
 wilfulli to sum wildernesse · where as þei bredde.”  
 þanne were his felawes fain · for he was adradde,  
 & lauȝeden of þat gode layk ; · of hem ich leve nouȝe,  
 to telle forþ what tidde · of þe beres after. 1785
- nouȝ fro þe gardin · þei gon a god spede  
 toward a fair forest · fast þer bi-side. The two bears  
went to a fair  
forest,
- whilum þei went on alle four · as doþ wilde bestes,  
 & whan þei wery were · þei went vp-riȝttes. 1789
- so went þei in þat wilderness · al þat long niȝt,  
 til it dawed to day · & sunne to vp-rise, going on all night  
till the sun rose.
- þei drow hem to a dern den · for drede to be seiȝen,  
 & hedde hem vnder an holw hok · was an huge denne,  
 as it fel a faire hap · þei fond þer-on to rest. In the day time  
they hid them-  
selves in a den.
- Fer it was fro weiȝes · & of wode so þikke, [Fol. 30 b.]
- þat no wiȝt of þe world · wold hem þere seche, 1796
- & þei for-waked were weri · wittow for soþe.  
 & hiȝliche þei heriede god · of þat hap fallen,  
 þat had hem diȝt swiche a den · dernly on to rest.
- þen seide william soberli · to meliors so hende, 1800
- “a ! my loueliche lemman · our lord now vs help,  
 he þat was in bedleem born · & bouȝt vs on þe rode,  
 schilde us fram schenchip · & schame in þis erþe,  
 & wisse vs in what wise · to winne vs sum mete ; 1804
- They were very  
weary, and praised  
God for their good  
fortune.
- Then said  
William, “ God  
preserve us, and  
teach us how to  
get some meat.”

- For, dere lef, i drede · we schul deie for hunger."  
 Melior says they can easily live on love,  
 soburli seide meliors · "sire, leues youre wordes,  
 we schul liue bi oure loue · lelli atte best ;  
 & þurȝth þe grace of god · gete vs sumwat elles, 1808
- and bullaces and blackberries,  
 bolaces & blake-beries · þat on breres growen,  
 so þat for hunger i hope · harm schul we neuer ;  
 hawes, hepus, & hakernes · & þe hasel-notes,  
 & oþer frut to þe fulle · þat in forest growen ; 1812
- and haws, hips, acorns, and hazel-nuts.  
 I seie ȝou, sire, bi mi liif · þis liif so me likes."  
 "nay, i-wisse," seid william · " mi worþliche herte,  
 better be-houis it to be · or baleful were þi happes ;  
 For here-to-fore of hardnesse · hadestow neuer, 1816
- William says she is not used to such hard fare.  
 but were brouȝt forþ in blisse · as swiche a burde ouȝt,  
 wiþ alle maner gode metes ; · & to misse hem nowþe,  
 It were a botles bale · but beter haue i ment.  
 I wol wend to sum weie · onwhar here nere, 1820
- He had better go and see if he can find any churl or child with meat or drink.  
 & waite ȝif any weizh · comes wending alone,  
 oþer cherl oþer child · fro chepinge or feyre,  
 þat beris out him a-boute · bred oþer drinke,  
 & redeli i wol it reue · & come a-ȝein swiþe, 1824
- "Nay," said she, "for the loser will raise the cry, and tell it in Rome."  
 oþer coyntyse know i non · to kepe wiþ our liues."  
 "nay, sire," sche seide · "so schul ȝe nouȝt worche ;  
 For þei þat misseden here mete · wold make gret noyse,  
 & record it redeli · in rome al a-boute, 1828
- [Fol. 31.] Better to live upon fruit."  
 so þat we miȝt þurȝth hap · haue harm in þat wise.  
 þer-for is fairer we be stille · & bi frut to liue,  
 þat we finde in wodes · as we wende a-boute."  
 & boþe þan as bliue · a-sented bi a stounde, 1832
- They rested in the len all that day.  
 & kindeli eche oþer clipt · and kessed ful oft,  
 & darkeden þere in þat den · al þat day longe,  
 slepten wel swetly · samli to-gadere,  
 & wrouȝt elles here wille ;— · leef we now here, 1836
- must now tell about the werwolf.  
 & a while to þe werwolf · i wol a-ȝen turne,  
 þat þe tale toucheþ · as telleþ þis soþe.  
 þe self niȝt þat william · went wiþ his leef dere,  
 þe werwolf, as god wold · wist alle here happes, 1840



- & þe fortune þat wold falle · for here dedes after.  
whan þei went in þat wise · wíztli he hem folwes,  
Ful bliue hem bi-hinde · but þei nouzt wist.  
& whan þe werwolf wist · where þei wold rest, 1844  
he herd how hard · for hunger þei hem pleynd,  
& goþ him to a gret heiȝ-waye · a wel god spede,  
ȝif he miȝt mete any man · mete of to winne.  
þan fel þe chauce þat a cherl · fro cheping-ward com,  
& bar bred in a bagge · and fair bouf wel sode. 1849  
þe werwolf ful wíztli · went to him euene,  
wíþ a rude roring · as he him rende wold,  
& braid him douȝ be þe brest · bolstrauȝt to þe erþe.<sup>1</sup>  
þe cherl wende ful wel · haue went to deþe, 1853  
& harde wíþ herte · to god þanne he prayde,  
to a-schape schaples · fram þat schamful best.  
he brak vp fro þat beste · & bi-gan to flene 1856  
as hard has he miȝt · his liif for to saue.  
his bag wíþ his bilfodur · wíþ þe best he lafte,  
glad was, he was gon · wíþ-oute gretter harmes.  
þe werwolf was glad · he hade wonne mete 1860  
& went wíztli þer-wíþ · þer as william rested,  
be-fore him & his burde · þe bagge þer he leide,  
& busked him bliue a-ȝein · boute more wordes,  
For he wist ful wel · of what þei nede hadde. 1864
- He knew all their fortunes, and followed them all the way.  
Knowing their hunger, he goes to a highway,  
where he saw a man with some bread in a bag and some boiled beef.  
He rushes on him, roaring, and frightens the man terribly,  
who broke away and fled for his life, glad to get off.  
The werwolf goes off with the meat, and lays it before William, and runs away.
- [Fol. 31 b.]  
William opens the bag, and finds the bread and beef, saying,  
“See what grace God has shewu us!”  
Such a wonder was never seen.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. “þe þerþe.”

- to herien god heiȝli · alden ar we boȝe.”  
 “bi marie,” seid meliors · “ze mingep þe soȝe ; 1876  
 our work werec  
 undone,” said  
 Melior.  
 for al þe world i nold · our werk were vndone.”  
 william wel mekli · þe mete out takes,  
 seid, “lemman, lef liif · of þat our lord vs sendes,  
 Make we vs merie · for mete haue we at wille.” 1880
- They ate it gladly  
 without any salt  
 or sauce.  
 þei ete at here ese · as þei miȝt þanne,  
 bouȝe salt oȝer sauce · or any semli drynk,  
 hunger hadde hem hold · þei held hem a-paied.
- But the werwolf  
 knew what more  
 they wanted.  
 but white wel, þe werwolf · wist what hem failed ; 1884  
 he went to an heiȝ weie · to whayte sum happes.  
 þan bi-tid þat time · to telle þe soȝe,  
 þat a clerk of þe cuntre · com toward rome  
 wiȝ tvo flaketes ful · of ful fine wynes, 1888  
 bouȝt were for a burgeis · of a borwe bi-side.  
 þe werwolf him awayted · & went to him euene,  
 bellyng as a hole · þat burnes wold spille.
- He finds a man  
 with two flagons  
 of wine.  
 whan þe clerk saw him come · for care & for drede,<sup>1</sup>  
 þe flagetes he let falle · & gan to fle ȝerne, 1893  
 þe liȝtliere to lepe · his liif for to saue.  
 þe werwolf of þe clerkes werk · was wonder bliȝe,
- The werwolf  
 seizes them and  
 [Fol. 32.]  
 takes them to  
 William, and  
 goes off.  
 & flei to þe flagetes · & swiȝe hem vp hentes, 1896  
 & wendes euen to william · a wel god spede,  
 & to meliors his make · and mildeliche þanne  
 þe flagetes hem bi-for · faire down he settes,  
 & went wiȝtli a-wei · wiȝ-out eni more. 1900
- William and  
 Melior are  
 bliȝe because of  
 the beast's help.  
 william & his worȝi wenche · þan were bliȝe  
 of þe help þat þei hade · of þis wild best,  
 & preid þei ful priueli · to þe priñce of heuene,  
 saue þe best fro sorwe · þat so wel hem helped. 1904  
 þei made hem þan mirie · on alle maner wise,
- They ate and  
 drank their fill,  
 eten at al here ese · & afterward dronken,  
 & solaced hem samen · til hem slepe lust.  
 þan eiȝer lapped oȝer · ful loueli in armes, 1908  
 & here drede & here doel · deliuerli for-ȝeten,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “dredre.” See l. 1909.

- & slepten so swetli · in here semly denne,  
 til it wax so neiȝh niȝt · þat nerre it no niȝt.  
 þan a-waked þei wiȝtli · & went on here gate, 1912  
 faire on þer tvo fet · þei ferde vp-on niȝtes,  
 but whan it drow to þe dai · þei ferde as bestes,  
 ferd on here foure fet · in fourme of tvo beres ;  
 and euer þe werwolf · ful wiȝtly hem folwed, 1916  
 þat william ne wist · hendeli hem bi-hinde ;  
 but whan þei were loged · where hem best liked,  
 Mete & al maner þing · þat hem mister neded,  
 þe werwolf hem wan · & wiȝtli hem brouȝt. 1920  
 þan þei lade þis liif · a ful long while,  
 cairende ouer cuntreis · as here cas ferde.  
 Leue we now þis lesson · & here we a-noþer ;  
 to hem aȝeyn can i turne · whan it time falles. 1924  
 I wol minge of a mater · i mennede of bi-fore,  
 of þe reaute a-raied · in rome for here sake,  
 & of þe worþi wedding · was bi-fore graunted  
 bi-twene þe meyde meliors · & þe prince of grece ; 1928  
 now listenes, lef lordes · þis lessoun þus i ginne.
- M**anly, on þe morwe · þat mariage schuld bene,  
 þe real emperours a-risen · & richeli hem greiþed,  
 wiþ alle worþi wedes · þat wiȝhes were schold. 1932  
 no man vpon molde · schuld mow deuise  
 men richlier a-raid · to rekene alle þinges,  
 þan eche rink was in rome · to richesse þat þei hadde ;  
 þe grete after here degre · in þe gaiest wise, 1936  
 & menere men as þei niȝt · to minge þe soþe.  
 þe sesoun was semly · þe sunne schined faire ;  
 þemperour of grece · & alle his gomes riche  
 hiȝed hem to here hors · hastili and sone ; 1940  
 but for [to] telle þe a-tiryng · of þat child þat time,  
 þat al þat real route · were araied fore,  
 he þat wende haue be wedded · to meliors þat time,  
 It wold lengeþ þis lessoun · a ful long while. 1944

and then slept  
till night-time.

By night they  
went on two feet,  
but by day on all  
fours,

the werwolf  
following,

who procured  
them all they  
wanted.

I must now tell  
of the wedding  
that was to have  
been between  
Melior and the  
prince of Greece.  
[Fol. 32 b.]

The emperors  
put on their  
richest clothes.

All were arrayed  
in the gayest  
wise.

The Greek  
emperor and his  
men mounted  
their horses.

The attire of his  
son would take  
too long to  
describe.

	but soþli for to scie · so wel <sup>1</sup> was he greiþed, þat amendid in no maner · ne miȝt it haue bene. & whan þe gomes of grece · were alle to horse, araied wel redi, of romayns · to rekkene þe nombre, treuli twenti þousand · a-tired atte best, 1949 alle on stalworþ stedes · stoutliche i-horsed. alle maner of menstracye · maked was sone,
The Roman knights numbered 20,000.	& alle merþe þat any man · euer miȝt devise ; 1952 and alle real reueles · rinkes rif bi-gunne, Ridende þurth rome · to rekene þe soþe, Riȝt to þe chef cherch · þat chosen is ȝutte, & clepud þurth cristendom · þe cherche of seynt petyr. þe p[rope] <sup>2</sup> wiþ many prelates · was purueyd to riȝtes, wiþ cardenales & bishopus · & abbotes fele, 1958 alle richeli reuested · þat reaute to holde, wiþ worchep of þat wedding · þat þei wende haue. þe gryffouns þan gayli · gonne stint atte cherche, þe briȝt burde meliors · to abide þere. 1962 þemperour of rome þanne · was rede ȝare, & alle þe best barounes · & boldest of his reaueme. þemperour wax a-wondred · wite ȝe for soþe, 1965 whi his douȝter þat day · dwelled so longe, seþþe þe gomes of grece · were gon to cherche. þan bad he a baroun · buske to hire chaumber, 1968 to hiȝen hire hastily · to him for to come, & wiȝtli he wendes · wite ȝe for soþe. he fond þere burde no barn · in þat bour þanne, for no coyntise þat he couþe · to carp him aȝens ; 1972 & he liȝtli aȝen lepes · & þe lord so telles. þemperour whan he it wist · wod wax he nere, & went him-self in wraþe · to þat worþies chaumber, & driues in at þat dore · as a deucl of helle. 1976 he gan to clepe & crie · & gan to kurse fast ;— “where dwelle ȝe, a deucl wai · ȝe damiseles, so long ?”
The minstrelsy and revels begin.	
All go to St Peter's church, where the pope, cardinals, and bishops were ready.	
[Fol. 33.]	
They wait for Melior.	
The Roman emperor wondered where his daughter was.	
He sends a baron to her chamber, who finds no one there.	
The emperor, at hearing this, goes himself, drives at the door like a devil, and shouts out.	

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats “wel.”<sup>2</sup> This word is *purposely* erased ; part of the *p* can be traced.

- alisaundrine as sone · as sche him þere herde,  
 was delfulli a-drad · þe deþ for to suffre, 1980 Alexandrine is  
 æc bi a coynt *compacement* · caste sche sone, terrified, and  
 how bold 3he miȝt hire bere · hire best to excuse, casts about for an  
 þat þemperour ne schuld souche · þa 3he at sent were, excuse.  
 þat his douȝter wiþ william · was went away þanne.  
 boldli wiþ milde mod · 3he buskes of hire chaumber,  
 & kom ketly to þemperour · & kurteisly him gret, 1986 She hastens to  
 & what þat his wille were · wiztly þan asked, him, greets him,  
 & he seide ful sone · “sertes, ich haue wonder and asks his will.  
 where my douȝter to-day · dwelles þus longe? He wants to  
 for al þe pepul is parayled · & passed to cherche. 1990 know where his  
 I haue sent hire to seche · seþþe a gret while, daughter is.  
 ac no frek mai hire finde · þer-fore i am tened.”  
 alisaundrine a-non · answered þanne & seide,  
 “to blame, sire, ar þo burnes · þat so bleþeli gabbe ; She says she is  
 For my lady lis 3it a-slape · lelly, as i trowe.” 1995 still asleep.  
 “Go wiztly,” seide þemperour · “and a-wake hire 3erne, [Fol. 33 b.]  
 bid hire busk of hire bed · & bliue be a-tyrid.” “Wake her, then,  
 “I dar nouȝt, for soþe” · seide alisaundrine þanne ; and tell her to  
 “wiþ me sche is wroþ · god wot, for litel gilt.” 1999 why.”  
 “whi so ?” saide þemperour · “saie me nouȝ bline !” She says she dares  
 “Ful gladli, sire,” sche seide · “bi god þat me made, not, and he asks  
 3if 3e no wold be wroþ · whan 3e þe soþe wist.” why.  
 “nay, certes,” seide þemperour · “þer-fore seie on sone.”  
 alisaundrine þan anon · after þat ilke, 2004 She says, “Melior  
 seide ful soberli · sore a-drad in herte, made me watch  
 “sire, for soþe, i am hold · to saie 3ou þe treuþe ; all night with  
 Mi ladi made me to-niȝt · long wiþ hire to wake her,  
 boutte burde or barn · bot our selue tweie. 2008  
 þanne told sche me a tidung · told was hire to-fore, and told me  
 of on þat knew þe kostome · of þe cuntre of grece, she had heard it  
 þat euerich gome of grece · as of grete lordes, was a custom in  
 whan þei wedded a wiif · were 3he neuer so nobul, 2012 Greece  
 of emperours or kinges come · & come into grece,  
 sche chold sone be bi-schet · here-selue al-one,

- to shut up a bride  
in a tower by  
herself. In a ful tristye tour · timbred for þe nones,  
& liue þer in langour · al hire lif-time, 2016  
neuer to weld of worldes merþe · þe worþ of a mite.  
þer-fore for soþe · gret sorwe sche made,  
þer-fore for soþe · gret sorwe sche made,  
& swor for þat sake · to suffur alle peynes,  
Wherefore she  
declared she  
would never be  
married to a  
Greek. to be honget on heiz · or wiþ horse to-drawe, 2020  
sche wold neuer be wedded · to no wiþ of grece.  
hire were leuer be weded · to a wel simplere,  
þere sche miȝt lede hire lif · in liking & murþe.  
þere sche miȝt lede hire lif · in liking & murþe.
- She also told me  
another tale that  
sorely grieved me. & also, sire, sertaynly · to seie þe treuþe, 2024  
sche told me a-noþer tale · þat me tened sarre,  
wher-fore i wan hire wrap · er we departed.”  
[Fol. 31.] “warfore?” seide þemperour · “seye me now ȝerne.”  
“For soþe, sire,” quap alisaundrine · “to saue ȝour  
mensk, 2028  
I wol ȝow telle tiztly · what turn sche as wrouȝt.  
sche clepud me to counseil · whan sche þis case wist  
þat sche schold be wedded · & seide me þanne,  
She said she had  
given her love to  
another, who was  
very bold and  
fair, sche hadde leid hire loue · þer hire beter liked, 2032  
on on þe boldest barn · þat euer bi-strod stede,  
& þe fairest on face · and i freyned is name.  
& sche me seide chortly · þe soþe to knowe,  
& sche me seide chortly · þe soþe to knowe,
- that worthy  
William who  
fought so well  
for you. It was þat worþi william · þat wiȝes so louen, 2036  
& þat brouȝt ȝou out of bale · wiþ his eler strengþe.  
& whan i wist of þis werk · wite ȝe for soþe,  
& whan i wist of þis werk · wite ȝe for soþe,  
It mislikede me mochel · miȝt no man me blame,  
& manly in my maner · missaide hire as i dorst, 2040  
& manly in my maner · missaide hire as i dorst,
- I told her I should  
tell you of it. & warned hire wiztly · wiþ-oute disseyte,  
I wold alle hire werk · do ȝou wite sone.  
& whan sche þat wist · for wrap al so ȝern,  
& whan sche þat wist · for wrap al so ȝern,
- She sent me out  
of her chamber,  
and I have not  
seen her since. sche dede me deliuerly · denoyde þer hire chaumber,  
& het me neuer so hardi be · in hire sizt to come. 2045  
& het me neuer so hardi be · in hire sizt to come.  
& i busked of hire bour · sche barred hit sone,  
& i busked of hire bour · sche barred hit sone,  
& seþþe saw i hire nouȝt · sire, bi my treuþe.
- I dare not go to  
her again.” I ne dar for drede · no more to hire drawe, 2048  
þer-fore, sire, ȝour-self · softili hire a-wakes,

& fodes hire wiþ faire wordes · for 3our owne menske,  
til þis mariage be mad · & wiþ murþe ended."

- W**han þemperour had herd · holly þise wordes, 2052 The emperor at  
he wax neiþh out of wit · for wrap þat time, this was mad  
& for dol a-dotep · & doþ him to hire chaumber, with grief,  
& busked euene to hire bed · but <sup>1</sup> noþing he no fond, and went to  
wiþ-inne hire comly cortynes · but hire cloþes warme. Melior's bed, but  
wiþtly as a wod man · þe windowe he opened, 2057 found only the  
& souzt sadli al a-boute · his semliche douzter, warm bed-clothes.  
but al wrouzt in wast · for went was þat mayde. [Fol. 34 b.]  
& whanne he mizt in no manere · meliors þer finde, Finding her no-  
he deraied him as a deuel · & dede him out a-zeine, where, he asks  
& asked of alisaundrine · anon after þanne, 2062 Alexandrine  
"þou damisele, deliuerli · do telle me now 3erne, where she is gone  
whider is mi douzter went · 3he nis nouzt in bedde." to.  
alisaundrine for þat cas · was sorwful in herte, 2065 "Sire," she says,  
& seide, "sire, i seiþ hire nouzt · seþ hieþ midniht, "I have not seen  
I wene sche went to william · for wrap of my sawe, her since mid-  
sendeþ swifteli þedir · to scheche hire at is inne. 2068 night; perhaps  
& 3if william be nouzt went · witeþ 3e forsoþe, she is with  
Mi ladi for ani lore · lengeþ in þis cite 3ut. William.  
& 3if william be went · neuer leue 3e oþer, If he is not gone,  
Mi ladi lengeþ him wiþ · for lif or for dede." 2072 she is there; but  
þemperour for treie & tene · as a tyraunt ferde, if he is gone, be  
wax ney wod of his witte · & wroþliche seide, sure Melior is  
"a ! has þat vntrewe treytour · traysted me nouþe, with him."  
For þe welþe & welfare · i haue him wrouzt fore, 2076 "Ah !" said the  
& fostered fro a fundeling · to þe worþiest of mi lond ? emperor, "has  
& for his dedes to-day · i am vndo for euer ; that traitor  
eche frek for þis fare · false wol me hold, deceived me ?  
& þe grewes for gremþe · ginneþ on me werre, 2080 The Greeks will  
& eche weiþh schal wite · þat þe wrong is myne. make war upon  
þer-fore bi grete god · þat gart me be fourmed, me.  
& bitterly wiþ his blod · bouzt me on þe rode,

<sup>1</sup> MS. "bud."

- alle men vpon molde · ne schuld mak it oþer, 2084  
 If he is taken, he  
 shall be hanged  
 and drawn in  
 pieces,"  
 zif þat traytour now be take · to-day, er i ete,  
 he schal be honged heie · & wiþ horse to-drawe !"  
 þemperour ful kenely · dede kalle kniȝttes fele,  
 and oþer semly seriauns · sixti wel armed, 2088  
 Sixty sergeants  
 are sent to look  
 for William.  
 het hem wiȝtli to wende · to williams inne,  
 & zif þei found out þat freke · for out þat bi-tidde,  
 to bring him bliue · bounde fast him to-fore,  
 þai durste non oþer do · but dede hem on gate, 2092  
 þai souȝte him wiþ sore hertes · so wel þei him louede.  
 feiȝpli when þei founde him nouȝt · fayn were þei alle,  
 & turned aȝein to þemperour · & told he was a-weie.  
 þan brayde he brayn-wod · & alle his bakkes rente, 2096  
 his berde & his briȝt fax · for bale he to-twiȝt ;  
 & swowned sixe siȝe · for sorwe & for schame,  
 þat fals he schold be founde · ful ofte he seide "allas,"  
 & banned bitterli þe time · þat he was on-liue. 2100  
 þanne kinges & kud dukes · confortid him beter,  
 bede him sese of his sorwe · & swiftili wende,  
 & telle þemperour of grece · treuli þe soþe,  
 & meke him [in]<sup>1</sup> his merci · for his misse-gilt. 2104  
 His lords advise  
 him to tell the  
 emperor of  
 Greece the whole  
 truth.  
 & he ketly for al kas · after counseyl wrouȝte,  
 & goþ to þemperour of grece · vnglad at his herte,  
 kneleþ to him karfully · & merey him krieþ,  
 and told him as titly · al þe treuþe sone, 2108  
 He does so, and  
 asks him how he  
 can best avenge  
 himself.  
 how his douȝter was went · wiþ on þat he fostred,  
 & preide him par charite · þat he him wold wisse,  
 In what wise þat he miȝt · best him a-wrek.  
 & whan þis tiding was told · troweþ þe soþe, 2112  
 In þat cite was sone · many a sori burne,  
 for missing of þat mariage · al muȝþe<sup>2</sup> was seced,  
 riuedliche þurth rome · & reuþe bi-gunne.  
 þe gode emperour of grece · was a-greued sore, 2116  
 The Greek  
 emperor, seeing  
 how he of Rome  
 was grieved,  
 of þat fortune bi-falle · but for he sei þat oþer  
 so meken in his mercy · for þat misgilt,

<sup>1</sup> MS. omits *in*. See l. 2118.<sup>2</sup> MS. "muȝþe."



- þe liȝtere he let þer-of · ac lourand he seide ;  
 “sire, be god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule, 2120  
 wist i now witerli · þis were wrouȝt for gile,  
 alle þe men vpon mold · no schuld make it oþer,  
 þat i nold brenne þi borwes · & þi burnes quelle,  
 & sece neuer til þi-self · were chamly destroyed. 2124  
 but i wene wiþ þi wille · was neuer wrouȝt þis gile,  
 þere-fore þe counseil þat y kan · i schal þe kiþe sone,  
 do quikliche erie þurth eche cuntre · of þi king-riche,  
 þat barouns, burgeys, & bonde · & alle oþer burnes,  
 þat mowe wirtly in any wise · walken a-boute, 2129  
 þat þei wende wirtly · as wide as þi reaume,  
 þurth wodes & wastes · & alle maner weies,  
 forto seche þat seg · þat he haþ so bitraied ; 2132  
 & þat mayde him mide · Meliores þi douȝter.  
 & to make eche man · þe more beter wilned,  
 bi-hote hoo-so hem findes · to haue so gret mede,  
 Riche to be & reale · redly al his liue time. 2136  
 & ho-so hastely nouȝt him hiez · þis hest to worche,  
 do him in hast be honged · & wiþ horse to-drawe.  
 & loke þat hirde-men wel kepe · þe komune passage,  
 & eche brugge þer a-boute · þat burnes ouer wende,  
 & to seche eche cite · and alle smale þropes, 2141  
 & vnparceyued passe þei nouȝt · ȝif þi puple be treuwe.”

says, that had it  
 been done in  
 gile, he would  
 have burnt all his  
 towns ;

but as it is not  
 so, he will give  
 him his counsel.

[Fol. 35 b.]  
 “Proclaim  
 through all your  
 lands that every  
 man shall seek  
 everywhere,

till they find  
 William and  
 Melior.

Whoever finds  
 them is to be  
 richly rewarded,  
 and whoever is  
 remiss is to be  
 hanged.

Passes and  
 bridges should be  
 guarded.”

- þe real emperour of rome · þanne redli him thonked  
 of þat konyng counseyl · & his kynde wille. 2144  
 & bliue þan bi eche side · þat bode let he sende ;  
 as hastyli as men miȝt hiȝe · his hest was wrouȝt,  
 & sone was sembled swiche an host · to take hem tweie,  
 þat neuer burn to no bataile · brouȝt swiche a puple.  
 þei souȝt alle so serliche · þurh cites & smale townes,  
 In wodes & alle weies · þat was þer a-boute, 2150  
 þat no seg for no sleiþe · no schuld haue schapit.  
 but ȝit as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,  
 þere þei leye louely a-slepe · lapped in arnes. 2153

The emperor  
 sends the  
 message every-  
 where, and all  
 men set out to  
 hunt them.

They sought in  
 every wood and  
 path, but  
 fortunately did  
 not find them.

- but whan þis bode was brouzt · to þemperour[s] boþe,  
 þat no wîzt in no wise · ne miȝt william finde,  
 ne þe maide Meliors · in no maner wise, 2156  
 þer stod a gome of grece · þat god gif him sorwe !  
 he þat of þe white beres · so bremli was a-fraied,  
 he seide sone to þemperours · “sires, wol ȝe here ?  
 I sai a selkouþe siȝt · mi-self ȝîfter-neue, 2160  
 wel wiþ-inne niȝt · as i went in the gardyn ;  
 tvo þe bremest white beres · þat euer burn on loked,  
 & semede þe most to siȝt · þat euer ȝut i sawe.  
 I wende deliuerli for drede · þe deþ to haue suffred,  
 but treuly þe beres · to me tok no hede, 2165  
 but passeden out priueli · at þe posterne gate,  
 ac whiderward þei went · wot i no more.”  
 “be god,” quap þemperour of grece · “þat gart me be  
 fourmed, 2168  
 I der leye mi lif · hit was þe liþer treytour  
 went a-wey in þat wise · for he ne wold be knowen.  
 Lete wite swiþe at þe kichen · weþer þei misse any  
 skinnes. 2171  
 whan men kome to þe koke · he was be-knowe sone,  
 þat sum burn a-wei had bore · tvo white beres skynnes.  
 þan was it kenly komanded · a kri to make newe,  
 þat eche burn schuld bisily · tvo white beres seke,  
 his trauayle schold nouȝt tyne · þat tittest hem founde.  
 þan hastely hiȝed eche wîzt · on hors & on fote, 2177  
 huntyng wîzt houndes · alle heie wodes,  
 til þei neyȝþed so neizh · to nympe þe soþe,  
 þere william & his worþi lef · were liand i-fere, 2180  
 þat busily were thei a bowe schote · out of þe burnes siȝt.  
 but whan þe witthi werwolf · wist hem so nere,  
 & seiȝe blod-houndes bold · so busili seehe,  
 he þouȝt, wil his lif last · leten he nolde, 2184  
 forto saue and serue · þo tvo semli beres ;  
 & prestly þan putte him out · in peril of deþe,  
 bi-fore þo herty houndes · hauteyn of cryes,

When it was told  
that they could  
not be found,

the Greek who  
had seen the  
bears told his  
adventure,  
[Fol. 36.]

and how the  
bears had not  
noticed him, but  
went away by the  
postern-gate.

The Greek  
emperor says it  
will be best to  
send to the  
kitchen and see if  
any skins are  
missed.

Two white bears'  
skins are  
missing.

All set out again,  
with hounds, to  
hunt the bears,

and some came  
close to their  
hiding-place.

The werwolf  
determined to  
save them,

and to get the  
hounds away.

- to winne hem alle a-weiwardes · fro þe white beres.  
whan þe houndes hadde feute · of þe hende best, 2189  
þei sesed al here sechyng · & sewed him fast,  
ouer mounytaynes & mires · many myle þennes.  
alle men þat mut herde · of þe muri houndes, 2192  
seweden after ful swiþe · to se þat mury chase,  
& left þe loueli white beres · ligge in here rest,  
þat wisten no-þing of þis werk · þat was hem a-boute.  
þe puple þanne porsewed forþ · & of here prey þei  
missed, 2196  
as god gaf þe werwolf *grace* · to go a-wei so ȝerne,  
þat horse ne hounde for non hast · ne miȝt him of-take.  
whan þemperour was warned · in wast þat þei ȝede,  
alle gergeis for grame · gonne take here leue, 2200  
& cayred to þaire cuntre · carful and tened.  
but ward was þer set · wide wher a-boute,  
of bold burnes of armes · þe beres forto seche,  
þat þe witti werwolf · so wel þanne hem helped, 2204  
þat no wiȝt for wile · miȝt wite where þei lenged ;  
& hastili whan þei hade nede · halp hem of mete,  
& wissed hem wel þe weiȝes · to wende a-wei bi niȝt ;  
& whan it drouȝ to þe dai · ful dernli he hem tauȝt,  
bi contenance wel thei kneu · where þei rest schold  
take. 2209  
& busily him-self · wold buske in eche side,  
to help hem fro harm · ȝif any hap bi-tidde.  
þus þat witty werwolf · þe weyes hem kenned ; 2212  
lorkinde þurth londes bi niȝt · so lombardie þei passed,  
& comen into þe marches · of þe kingdam of poyle.  
The hounds followed him many miles over mountains and mires, and left the bears lying there.  
[Fol. 36 b.]  
The chase being all in vain, all the Greeks go home.  
Watches are set everywhere.  
But the werwolf found them food, and was their guide.  
Thus they passed Lombardy, and came to Apulia.
- H**it bi-tidde þat time · þei trauailed al a niȝt,  
out of forest & friþes · & alle faire wodes ; 2216  
no couert miȝt þei kacche · þe cuntre was so playne.  
& as it dawed liȝt day · to mene þe soþe,  
þai hadde a semli siȝt · of a cite nobul,  
enclosed comeliche a-boute · wiþ fyn castel-werk ; 2220  
They could find no covert there.  
They see a castellated city, named Benevento.

bonuent þat riche borwe · burnes 3ut clepun.  
 whan william þer-of war was · he wax a-drad sore,  
 lest eny segges of þat cite · hem of-se schuld,  
 & mekly seide to meliors · “myn owne swete herte,  
 our lord, 3if his liking be · oure liues now saue! 2225  
 for i no wot in þis world · where we mowe vs hide.  
 þe perles prince of heuen · for his pite & his grace,  
 saue vs for his pite · þat we ne slayn bene!” 2228  
 “amen, sire,” seide meliors · “Marie þat vs graunt,<sup>1</sup>  
 for þat blessed barnes loue · þat in hire bodi rest!”<sup>2</sup>  
 þanne wiztly wiþ-inne a while · as þei waited a-boute,  
 þei saie a litel hem bi-side · a semliche quarrere, 2232  
 vnder an heiȝ hel · al holwe newe diked ;  
 deliuerli þei hiezed hem þider · for drede out of doute,  
 & crepten in-to a caue · whanne þei þeder come,  
 al very for-walked · & wold take here reste. 2236  
 In armes louely eche lauzt oþer · & leide hem to slepe,  
 al bonden in þe bere skynnes · bi-fore as þei ȝede.  
 & þat witty werwolf · went ay bi-side,  
 & kouchid him vnder a kragge · to kepe þis tvo beris.  
 ac þei ne hadde redly rested · but a litel while, 2241  
 þat werkmen forto worche · ne wonne þidere sone,  
 stifly wiþ strong tol · ston stifly to digge,<sup>3</sup>  
 & as þei come to þe caue · to comse to wirche, 2244  
 on of hem sone of-sei · þo semliche white beres,  
 loueli ligand to-gadir · lapped in armes.  
 but feiþli as fast · to his felawes he seide,  
 “herkenes nowe, hende sires · ȝe han herd ofte, 2248  
 wich a cri has be cried · þurth cuntres fele,  
 þurth hest of þemperour · þat haþ rome to kepe,  
 þat what man vpon molde · miȝt onwar finde,  
 tvo breme wite beres · þe bane is so maked, 2252  
 he schold winne his wareson · to weld for euere,

William is afraid  
they will be seen.

There is nowhere  
to hide.

[Fol. 37.]  
At last they found  
a quarry under a  
hill,

and crept into a  
cave there, and  
lay down there to  
sleep.

The werwolf kept  
watch.

Some workmen  
came there to  
dig.

One of them saw  
the bears,

and bid his  
fellows remember  
the cry that had  
been raised about  
them,

<sup>1</sup> MS. graunt; but the *u* has a *crooked* line over it (the contraction for *ra* or *a*) instead of a *straight* one.

<sup>2</sup> Catchword—“þanne wiztly.” <sup>3</sup> Read “ston for to digge”(?)

- þurth þe grete god of gold · þat him bi ȝiue schold." and how great  
 "ȝa, forsoþe," seide his felawes · "ful wel þat we was the reward  
 knowe ; offered for finding  
 them.
- but wharbi seistow so · so þe god help?" 2256
- "þe soþe, felawes, ful sone · ȝe schol it wite,  
 ȝif ȝe tentifly take kepe · & trewe be to-gadere ; He will shew  
 them how to get  
 the reward.
- I wol winne our warisun · for i wot where þei are." 2260
- "ȝis, certes," seide þei · "so trewe wol we bene, 2260  
 þat no fote schal we fle · for nouȝt bi-tides."
- "ek, sires," seide þat oþer · "so ȝouȝ crist rede,  
 standes alle a stounde stille · in þis ilk place, They must watch  
 there while he  
 goes to Benevento
- I wil busk to bonenent · of þe beris telle, 2264 [Fol. 37 b.]  
 to þe prouost & oþer puple · & hem preie in hast to tell the  
 provost.
- to come hider & hem cacche · for in caue þei lyen,  
 & slepen samen y-fere · y saw hem riȝt nowe." They watch  
 while he runs off.
- þenne were his felawes ful fayn · & fast bad him renne, 2269  
 & þei wold a-bide boldly · þe beres þere to kepe. 2269  
 þat oþer [went],<sup>1</sup> wiztly þenne · to warne þe prouost  
 lelliche hou he hade seye · in þe harde quarrer,  
 þe tvo white beris · & bad him-self ȝerne 2272  
 to come wiþ gret pouwer · & cacche hem in haste.
- "wostou wel," seyede þe prouost · "þat þei are þere He tells the  
 provost the bears  
 are found,  
 ȝete?"
- "ȝe, certes," seide he · "y saw hem riȝt now boþe ;  
 & fiue of my felawes · ful faste þere hem wayten, 2276 and fiue of his  
 fellows are  
 watching them.
- þat þei no wende a-way · wil y hider sterte."

- þe prouost þan prestely · þe pepul dede warne, The provost  
 gathers all the  
 people of the  
 town,
- as þei nold lese here lif · here londes & here godes, 2280  
 þat alle hieȝden hastily · on hors & on fote,  
 & bi-set sone saddeli · þe quarrer al a-boute,  
 tiȝtli for to take · þe tvo white beres, to take the two  
 white bears.
- þat þemperour comanded crie · in cuntre al a-boute.  
 sone eche man þat miȝt · ful manliche him armed, 2284  
 & heȝeden hastely to hors · þo þat hade any, All get ready, on  
 horse and on foot,

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps we should read "That other went wiztly."—M.

- and frekes on fote · hizede hem fast after,  
 so þat þe cuntre þurth þat eri · was al bi-cast sone,  
 & quikliche a-boute þe quarrer · were kene men of  
 armes, 2288
- 2200 men in all. twenty hundered & tvo · trewli in numbre,  
 to take as bliue þe beres · but god now hem help,  
 slayn worþ þei slepend · æ seleouþ now heres.  
 as þo bold beres · so neiþ here bale slepten, 2292
- Just then, Melior had a dream, which she tells to William. Meliors þurth a metyng · was marred neiþ for fere,  
 & þurth þat sorwful sweuene · swiþe sche a-waked,  
 & wiztly to william · þese wordes sche sede,  
 “ a ! louely lemman · lestene now my sawe, 2296  
 I am ney marred & mad · þis morwe for a sweuene.
- “ I thought that bears, apes, bulls, [Fol. 35.] and badgers beset our caue, led on by a lion. for me þout þat þer com · to þis caue nouþe  
 wilde beris & apes · bores, boles, and baucynes,  
 a brem numbre of bestes · þat a lyoun ladde, 2300  
 þat his kene komandment · kidden wel to wirche,  
 to haue taken vs tvo · to-gader in þis denne.
- The lion's cub was with them; þan was þer a litel lyoun · of þe lederes bi-zete,  
 come wiþ þat companye · þis case to bi-holde. 2304  
 & riht as þe breme bestes · vs boþe schuld haue take,  
 our wurþi werwolf · þat euer wel vs helpeþ,  
 com wiþ a gret kours · & for alle þe kene bestes,  
 & lauht vp þe zong lyoun · listly in his mouþe, 2308  
 & went wiþ him a-wei · whedir as him liked.
- and our werwolf came and caught up the cub, and ran off with it, & alle þe breme bestes · þat a-boute vs were,  
 for-lete vs & folwed him forþ · for þe zong lyouns sake ;  
 & certes, sire, of þat sweuen · riht so y a-waked, 2312  
 & am a-drad to þe deþ · for destine þat wol falle.”
- William says it is but a fancy. “ Nay, loueli lef,” seide william · “ leue al þat sorwe,  
 forsoþe it is but fanteme · þat ze fore-telle ;  
 we mowe reste vs redili · riht sauf here at wille.” 2316  
 æ soþli, as che had seide · riht wiþ þat ilke,  
 þei herd an huge route of horse · þat hel al a-boute,  
 & herd þat quarrere vmbe-cast · & al þe cuntre wide.
- But then they hear the sound of many horsemen,

- william ful wíztly · wayted out at an hole, 2320  
 & seie breme burnes busi · in ful briȝt armes,  
 brandissende wíȝ gret bost · & of þe beres speke, and William sees  
 In what wise þei wold wirche <sup>1</sup> · wíztly hem to take. men-in-arms,  
 þe prouost wíȝ al þe puple · presed forþ formast, 2324 speak of the  
 & many mizti man manliche · medled þat time, bears.  
 & soþliche for to seie · swiche grace god lente,  
 þat þe prouost sone · a semli ȝong barne, The provost's son  
 was brout þider wíȝ burnes · þe beres to bi-holde, 2328 was in the  
 for þe selcoupe siȝt to se · how þei schuld be take. company.  
 whan william was war · þei were so neiȝh nome,  
 to meliors wíȝ mornýng · mekliche he sayde,  
 “allas ! my loueliche lemman · þat euer y lif hadde, William laments  
 to be for al our bale · brouȝt to swiche an hende ! 2333 their hard fate.  
 [Fol. 38 b.]  
 allas ! lemman, þat our loue · þus luperly schal departe,  
 þat we now dulfulli schul deye · ac do now, god, þi  
 grace,  
 & late me haue al þe harm · heizeliche i beseche ; 2336 He says he ought  
 for i haue wrouȝt al þis wo · & worþi am þer-tille. to have all the  
 for meliors, my dere hert · be marie in heuene, harm.  
 holly al þis harde · þow hast al for my gelt ;  
 þer-fore, ȝif godes wille were · i wold haue al þe payne,  
 to mede ȝe were fro þis quarrere · quitly a-schaped. 2341  
 & dere hert, deliuerli · do as ich þe rede,  
 dof bliue þis bere-skyn · & be stille in þi cloþes, He advises  
 & as sone as þou art seie · þou schalt sone be knowe, Melior to dof her  
 þan worþ þi liif lengeyd <sup>2</sup> · for loue of þi fader ; 2345 bearskin, and  
 so miztow be saued · for soþe, neuer elles ; reveal herself.  
 & þouhȝ þei murþer me þanne · i no make no strengþe. No matter if  
 but god for his grete grace · gof i hadde now here 2348 they murder *him* ;  
 horse & alle harneys · þat be-houes to werre, yet he wishes he  
 I wold wend hem tille · wíȝ-oute ani stint, had a horse and  
 & do what i do mizt · or ich þe deth soffred ; 2351 armour,  
 summe þat bere hem now brag · schuld blede or euen. and he would do  
 what he could.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “wirthe.”<sup>2</sup> Or “lengeþd,” *miswritten for lengþed* (?). Cf. ll. 1040, 1944.

ac botles is now þis bale · but be hit a goddes wille,  
 & buske þe of þis bere fel · bi-liue, i þe rede,  
 & wende listly hennes · & late me worþ after ; 2355  
 swiþe saue þi-self · for so is þe best.”  
 Meliors wepande wonder sore · to william þan seide,  
 “ what ? leuestow, leue lemman · þat i þe leue wold  
 for deþ or for duresse · þat men do me miȝt ? 2359  
 nay, bi him þat wiþ his blod · bouȝt vs on þe rode,  
 þe beres fel schal neuer fro my bac · siker be þer-fore.  
 al þis world to winne · i no wold be aliue,  
 soþli after i seie ȝou · suffere þe deþe ;  
 wiþ god wille take we þe grace · þat god wol us  
 sende.” 2364

The provost  
 advances to take  
 the bears,

[Fol. 39.]

but the werwolf  
 attacks them,

snatches up the  
 provost's son,

and runs off,  
 roaring loudly.

The provost cries  
 out for help.

All begin to chase  
 the werwolf,

Whan þat sawe was seid · soþ for to telle,  
 þe prouost bad bold burnes · þe beres go take,  
 & þei hastily at his hest · hized inward atte roche. 2368  
 but godli, as god wold · swiche grace bi-tidde,  
 þe werwolf was war · & wist of here tene,  
 & be-þout how best wore · þe beres to saue ;  
 & wiȝtly as a wod best · went hem a-ȝens,  
 Gapand ful grimli · & goþ þanne ful euene 2372  
 to þe semli prouost sone · & swiþe him vp-cauȝt  
 be þe middel in his mouþe · þat muche was & large,  
 & ran <sup>1</sup> forþ for al þat route · wiþ so rude a noyse,  
 as he wold þat barn · bliue haue for-frete. 2376  
 whan þe prouost þat perceyued · to þe puple he cried,  
 “ helpes hastily, hende men · i hote, vp ȝour liues !  
 ho wol winne his wareson · now wiȝtly him spede  
 forto saue my sone · or for sorwe i deye !” 2380  
 ful sone after þat sawe · se þere men miȝt  
 Many a hold burn · after þat best prike,  
 & oþer frekes on fote · as fast as þei miȝt,  
 so holliehe to þat hunting · i hote þe forsoþe, 2384  
 þat noiþer burde ne barn · bi-laft at þe quarrer,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “ þan.” Both sense and alliteration require “ ran.”



- but went after þe werwolf · & wayned from þe beres,  
hotend out wiþ hornes · & wiþ huge cries,  
& sewed him sadly · wiþ so selkouþ noyse, 2388  
þat alle men vpon molde · miȝt be a-wondred.  
euer when þe werwolf · was out to-fore  
þe mountaunce of half a myle · or more ȝif it were,  
lest þe segges wold haue sesed · here seute to folwe, 2392  
he wold abide wiþ þe barn · þe bliþer hem to make,  
In hope þei schuld of him · hent þe litel knaue.  
but whan þei were ouȝt him neiȝ · nouȝt he nold abide,  
but dede him deliuerli away · as he dede bi-fore, 2396  
& þus lelly he hem ladde · alle þe longe daie,  
þat neuer man vpon molde · miȝt him of-take ;  
& schete durst þei nouȝt, for drede · þe child to hurte,  
but folwed him so forþ · as fast as þei miȝt. 2400  
whanne þe wite beres wist · þat were in þe quarrer,  
þat al þe puple was passed · to pursue þe best,  
of þat witti werwolf · to winne þe child,  
& sei wel for here sake · he suffred þo peines 2404  
to socour hem & saue · fram alle sory deþes,  
& boþe bliue for þat best · bi-gunne to preie  
þat god for his grete miȝt · schuld gete him fro harm ;  
witterli þei wist wel · þat þei nere bot dede, 2408  
nere goddes grete miȝt · & þe gode bestes help.  
& whan þei boþe had so bede · þei be-þout after,  
It were best as bliue · to buske hem of þat caue.  
& william þese wordes wiztly · to meliors seide, 2412  
“ Mi swete wizt, soþ to seie · me semeth<sup>1</sup> it þe best,  
to buske<sup>2</sup> vs of þe bere felles · to be þe lasse knowe.  
for eche wizh wol more a-weite · after þe white beres,  
þan þei wol after any wizt · þat walkeþ i-cloped, 2416  
þerfor wiztly in oure owne wedes · wende we hennes.”  
Mekli seide meliors, “ sire · be marie in heuen,  
to do holli as ȝe han seide · i hope be þe best.” 2419  
as bliue þe bere schinnes · from here bodi þei hent,  
They rend off the skins, and are

with horns and  
loud cries.

Every time the  
werwolf was half  
a mile away,

he waited for  
them to come up,

and so led them  
on all day long.

[Fol. 39 b.]  
The white bears,  
finding that all  
their pursuers had  
gone away,

prayed for the  
werwolf's safety,

and began to  
think they had  
better make off.

William says they  
had better take  
off the skins,

and go away in  
their own clothes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “semeht.”

<sup>2</sup> MS. “buskes.”

glad to see one  
another once  
more.

& wíztly wrapped hem to-gadere · wittow for soþe,  
& bliþe were þei boþe þanne · to bi-hold on oþer ;  
for feiþli a fourtenízt · non hadde seie oþeres face.  
þanne elipt þei & kest · for al here cares colde, 2424

William looks  
out, but can see  
no one near.

& william ful wíztly · waitid out of þe caue,  
& bi-huld ful busili · a-boute on eche a side,  
3if eny wízt were walkende · but he non seie. 2427

They take the  
skins with them,  
þeing loath to  
part with them

he lau3t loueli Meliors · & ladde hire bi þe honde ;  
cloþed in here cloþes · out of þe caue þei went,  
wíþ hem boþe bere felles · þei here in here armes,  
so loþ hem was þo to lese · or leue hem bi-hinde ;  
& deden hem deliuerly · ouer dales and helles, 2432  
ferrest fro alle weies · þer any folk walkes.

They were in  
much dread, but  
[Fol. 40.]  
happily met with  
no one.

dolfulli þei were adrad · dar no mon hem wite,  
last þei schuld mete any man · þat mi3t hem be-wrie ;  
but þan as god wold · or eny man hem seye, 2436

After going three  
miles, they find a  
forest.

þei hade walked in þat wise · wel a þre myle,  
& founden þan a fayr forest · floriched ful þik,  
& þider wíztly þei went · wel vnpareeyued.  
what of here hard heí3ing · & of þe hote weder, 2440

Melior is so tired,  
she can go no  
farther.

Meliors was al mat · sche ne mi3t no furþer,  
& prestly in a picke place · of þat pris wode,  
wel out from alle weyes · for-wery þei hem rested,  
& þonked god gretliche · þat so godliche hem saued ;  
& seþþen softli to slepe · samen þei hem leide, 2445  
as þei þat were wery · for-waked to-fore.

So they rest in  
the forest, and  
fall asleep.

Nou3 leue we of hem a while · & speke we a-noþer ;  
For of þe witti werwolf · a while wol i telle. 2448

The provost and  
his men chased  
the werwolf till  
sunset.

So long þat ferli folk · folwed him after,  
to haue be-nom him þe barn · þat he nam þat time,  
huntyng holliehe þat day · on hors & on fote,  
till þe semli sunne · was setled to reste. 2452

The werwolf  
thought there  
was no need to  
go farther ;

& whan it was so nei3 ni3t · to neuen þe soþe,  
þe werwolf wist wel · it was no more nede  
to bere þat [barn] no forþer<sup>1</sup> · for þe beres sake.

<sup>1</sup> Read "to bere that barn."—M. See l. 2459.

- þei hadde folwed him so fer · þat forsoþe he wist, 2456  
 þat no seg þat hade sewed · no schuld hom winne,  
 hized þei neuer so hard · of al þa long niȝt.  
 & þanne as bliue þat barn · þe best a-down sette,  
 wiȝ-oute eny maner wem · þe worse it to greue, 2460  
 for non schold in þat barnes bodi · o brusure finde  
 as of þat bold best · but bold it was & faire.  
 & as sone as he hade · sette it a-downe,  
 he went wiȝtly a-weie · wiȝ-oute eny more, 2464  
 deliuerli as he nadde þat day · gon half a myle.  
 when þe prouost & þe puple · parceyued þat ilk,  
 þat þe best hade left þe barn · bliȝe were þei þanne.  
 þe prouost bi-fore þe puple · priked þider formest, 2468  
 & hent it vp in hast · ful hendli in his armes,  
 and clipt it & kest · oft & many siȝes ;  
 bi-huld a-boute on his bodi · ȝif it blenched were ;  
 whan he saw it al sound · so glad was he þanne, 2472  
 þat na gref vnder god · gayned to his ioȝe.  
 al þe puple prestly · þat him porsewed hadde,  
 gretliche þonked god · of þat grace bi-falle,  
 & tiȝtli al here tene · was turned in-to ioȝe, 2476  
 & as bliue wiȝ blisse · þei busked hem homward,  
 wiȝ al þe murȝe vpon molde · þat men miȝt diuise.  
 but eche man al niȝt · inned him where he miȝt,  
 & whan hit dawed, deliuerli · dede hem homward. 2480  
 & wiȝtli whan þei hom come · wittow for soȝe,  
 þe prouost ful prestli · al þat puple warned,  
 to buske bliue to þe quarrer · þe beres to take.  
 þei went wiȝ god wille · but wan þei þider come, 2484  
 þei founde al awei fare · bi-fore þat þer wore.  
 þo ne wist þei in þe world · whider hem to seche,  
 but hized hem homward · fast as þei miȝt,  
 & token redli here rest · at here owne wille. 2488  
 þe prouost dede pertli · profer al a-boute,  
 what man vpon mold · miȝt þe beres take,  
 he schuld gete of gold · garissoun for euer.

so he put the  
provost's son  
down, quite  
unharm'd,

and went off as  
nimble as if he  
had but gone  
half a mile.

The provost rides  
up, recovers his  
son,  
[Fol. 40 b.]  
and looks to see  
if he is harmed,

and is glad to find  
him whole.

The people's  
sorrow is turned  
into joy.

They rested all  
night where they  
could,

and repaired next  
day to the quarry.

Finding nothing  
there, they  
return home.

The provost pro-  
claims a reward  
for taking the  
bears ;

- and many men  
looked for them,  
but none found  
them.      Many man by his miȝt · medled him þer-after,      2492  
a-boute bi eche side · þo bestes for to seche.  
but as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,  
so happiliche þei hem hidde · þei hadde swiche grace.  
& forto telle what tidde · of þat tide werwolf,      2496
- The werwolf  
returned to  
William and his  
mate,      þat miȝt þat hadde · þe prouost sone for-left,  
he wan a-ȝen to william · & to his worþ make,
- well charged with  
wine and meats.      wel i-charged wiþ wyn · & wiþ gode metes,  
þat he wan bi þe weie · as he þider went.      2500
- He then goes  
away again, to  
thir great  
wonder,  
[Fol. 41.]      & bliue þat he bar · be-fore william hit leide,  
& went him wiȝtly · a-wei fro hem sone.  
þerof was william a-wondred · & meliors else,      2504
- They feel sure the  
beast is of man's  
nature.      why þe best nold abide · þat so wel hem helped,  
& seide eiper til oþer · “ now sertes, for soþe,  
þis best has mannes kynde · it may be non oþer.  
se what sorwe he suffres · to saue vs tweine !
- He never fails  
them at need.      & namli, when we han nede · neuer he ne fayleþ,      2508  
þat he ne bringeþ wher we ben · þat to vs bi-houes.  
he þat suffred for our sake · sore wondes fue,  
he our buxum best saue · & hald vs his liue.”  
“ amen, sire,” seide meliors · “ marie þat graunt !      2512  
nade his help hende ben · we hade be ded ȝore.”
- They eat and  
drink, and rest a  
day and a night.      þei made hem þan merye · wiþ mete þat þei hadde,  
& eten at here ese · for þei were for-hungred,  
& rested þere redeli · al þat longe day,      2516  
& al þe niȝt next after · to neuen þe soþe,  
for meliors was so wery · þat sche ne walk miȝt.
- Early next  
morning, some  
colliers come near  
their hiding-place.      & erliche on þe morwe · er þe sunne gan schine,  
eholiers þat cayreden col · come þere bi-side,      2520  
& oþer wiȝes þat were wont · wode forto fecche,  
fast þer william was · & his worþ burde.
- The colliers begin  
to talk, and one  
says if the white  
bears were there,  
nothing should  
save them ;      þe kolieres bi-komsed to karpe · kenely i-fere ;  
on of hem seide sadli · þise selue wordes :      2524  
“ wold god þe white beres · were here nowþe,  
alle þe men on mold · ne schuld here liues saue,  
for wiȝtly wold ich wende · and warne þe prouost,

- & titliche schuld þei be take · & moche tene suffre ;  
 for breme beres [be] <sup>1</sup> þei none · as þei be-semen, 2529 that they are not really bears, but  
 It is þemp<sup>er</sup>ours douzter · þat so digised wendeþ, the emperor's  
 wiþ a [comliche] kniȝt <sup>2</sup> · þat kauȝt haþ hire loue. daughter and a  
 þer-fore þese cries ben · so kenliche naked, 2532 knight.  
 what man on molde · mow hem first fynde,  
 he mai gete so moche gold · þat pore worþ he neuer.  
 wonderli a werwolf · ȝesterday hem saued, A werwolf had  
 þa pertly þe prouost barn · bar a-way from alle ; 2536 yesterday,  
 while men hunted after hem · þai han a-wai schaped. [Fol. 41 b.]  
 bi him þat me bouȝt · were þei boþe here,  
 þei schuld wicche wel · ȝif þei a-wei went,  
 þouȝh þer were werwolfs · wiþ hem foure schore !” but fourscore  
 þen was meliors neiȝ mad · al-most for fere, 2541 werwolves should  
 lest þat foule felþe · schold haue hem founde þere, not save them to-  
 & darked stille in hire den · for drede, boute noyse. day.  
 wiȝtly a-noþer werkman · þat was þer be-side 2544 Melior was very  
 gan flite wiþ þat felþe · þat formest hadde spoke, frightened, and  
 seide, “do þi deuer · þat þow hast to done. lay quite still.  
 what were þe þe beter nouȝ · þeiȝh þe beris were here, saying that the  
 to do hem any duresse? · þei misdede þe neuer. 2548 white bears were  
 Mani hard hape · han þei a-schapet, nothing to him.  
 & so i hope þei schal ȝit · for al þi sori wille.  
 god for his grete miȝt · fram greues hem saue,  
 & bring hem boþe wiþ blis · þere þei be wold. 2552 “May God  
 do we þat we haue to done · & diȝt we vs henne, preserve them!  
 sum seluer for our semes<sup>3</sup> · in þe cite to gete.” and, as for us,  
 þei hadde bliue here burþenes · & bi-gunne to wende, let us go about our  
 william ne is swete wiȝt · seie hem na more ; 2556 business.”  
 but holliche had herd · al here huge speche. So they returned  
 þan seide william wiȝtly · þese selue wordes, to the city.  
 “Meliors, my swete hert · now mow we no more  
 In þise breme bere felles · a-boute here walke, 2560 William says the  
 of no more use to  
 them.

<sup>1</sup> Read “beres *be* thei none.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read “With a *komli* kniȝt,” or something similar.—M. See l. 2637.

<sup>3</sup> See note.

- 3if we wist in what wise · how to worche beter.”  
 Melior says that “certes, sire, þat is soþ” · seide meliors þan,  
 any one who “3if we walken in þes wedes · i wot wel for soþe,  
 meets them in “& al þe cuntre knoweþ · what cas we ben inne, 2564  
 their own clothes will know them. & what man so vs metes · may vs sone knowe.  
 I ne wot in wat wise · to worche be best.”  
 What is to be done? “nor ich, i-wisse,” seide william · “but worþe god wiþ  
 alle.”
- While þe tvo derlinges · talked to-gadere, 2568  
 þe werwolf an huge hert · hade hunted riȝt þider,  
 Just then, the werwolf killed a huge hart and a hind, and left them.  
 & riȝt be-fore hem boþe · brouȝt hit to deþe ;  
 & hastilyche þan hiȝed · & an hinde brouȝt,  
 [Fol. 42.] serued it in þe same wise · as þe hert bi-fore, 2572  
 & went wiȝtly a-wei · wit-oute any more.
- William perceived þan wist william wel · bi þe bestes wille,  
 that the werwolf meant them to use the skins, and to leave the bearskins. þat he þe hert & þe hinde · hade þere slayne,  
 him & his loueliche lemman · to lappe in þe skinnes,  
 & bileue þere þe beres felles · þat so busili were a-spied.  
 & mekli þan to meliors · he munged what he þouȝt,  
 & seide, “se wich a selcouþ · þis semliche best worcheþ,  
 They pray that the werwolf may never come to harm. for-þi crist crowned king · kepe him fro sorwe, 2580  
 & late man neuer haue miȝt · him to misdone.”  
 “þat graunt god,” seide meliors · “for his swete miȝt ;  
 for nere þe help of heuen king · & þe hende best,  
 oure liues hadde be lore · many a day seþþe.” 2584
- Said William, “Let us slay these beasts, and array ourselves in the skins.” “3a, i-wisse,” seide william · “my derworþ herte ;  
 for-þi at oure bestes wille · worche we nouþe.  
 hastili hulde we · þe hides of þise bestes,  
 Greiþe we vs in þat gere · to go ferþer hennes.” 2588
- William slays the hart, and Melior the hind. william hent hastili þe hert · & meliors þe hinde,  
 & a[s] smartli as þei couþe · þe skiunes of-turned.  
 eiþer gamliche gan greiþe oþer · gailiche þer-inne,  
 They sew each other up in the skins. þat þe skinnes sat saddeli · sowed to hem boþe, 2592  
 as hit hade ben · on þe beste þat hit growed.  
 & better þei semed þan to siȝt · semliche hertes,

þan þei semed be-fore · beres whan þei were, 2595  
so iustili on eþer of hem · were ioyned þe skinnes.

And whan þei were greiþed · gayli in þat gere,  
þei seten in here solas · til summe ȝede to rest.  
whan it neizet niȝt, þei nold · no lenger a-bide, 2599  
but went forþ on here weie · for wel list hem gone,  
& here semli werwolf · sewed fast after,  
þat wittily tauȝt hem þe weies · whider þei wende  
scholde,

At night-time  
they set out  
again,

the werwolf  
following,  
[Fol. 42 b.]  
who guided them  
towards Sicily.

sechande towarde cisile · þe sotilest weyes.  
& namliche on þe morwe · many men hem souȝt 2604  
In wodes & wildernesse · wide where a-boute,  
& as þei walked in wodes · wiþ ful gode houndes,  
þei founde þe beres skinnes · & þe bestes flayne.  
þat it was an hert & an hinde · hastili þei knewen,  
& wist wel þat þei went · wrapped in þe skinnes, 2609  
þei þat bi-fore had be · as tvo white beres,  
& wist þat þai in wast · wrouȝt þer to-fore  
for al þe hard huntyng · þat þei hadde made. 2612

Next day some  
men found the  
bearskins, and the  
flayed beasts,

and knew that  
they were now  
dressed as a hart  
and a hind.

& folwe hem durst þei no ferre · for a gret werre,  
þat was wonderli hard · in þe next londe,  
& þo þe seute sesed · after þe swete bestes.  
Munge mai [i]<sup>1</sup> no more · of noman þat hem folwed,  
ac of þe hert & þe hinde · herkenes now ferþer. 2617

But they dared  
not pursue them,  
because of a great  
war that was in  
the next land.

þei went fast on here way · þe werwolf hem ladde  
ouer mures & muntaynes · & many faire pleynes ;  
but alwei as þei went · wasted þei it founde. 2620  
for burwes & bold tounes · al for-brent were,  
but ȝit were þei wiþ walles · warchet a-boute.  
& al was william landes · wittow wel for soþe,  
he þat þere was an hert ; · heres þenchesoun, 2624  
whi þe wer & þat wo · þo was in þat londe.  
ȝe han herd here bi-fore · as ich vnderstonde,

The werwolf led  
them over country  
that was all laid  
waste, the towns  
being burnt.

It was William's  
own country.

<sup>1</sup> Read "mai i no more."—M.

- For Ebrouns,  
William's father,  
was king of  
Apulia, Sicily,  
Palerino, and  
Calabria, and was  
dead. of ebrouns þe kud king · þat þat kingdom out  
of poyle & of eisile · of pallerne & calabre, 2628  
& was williams fader · þat went þere as an hert,  
& ded was & doluen · mani a day bi-fore.  
& his comeliche quene · as god wold, zit liuede,
- William's mother  
was still alive.  
[Fol. 43.] þat was williams moder · & was a menskful lady. 2632  
sche had a derworþe douzter · to deme þe soþe,  
on þe fairest on face · and frelokest i-schapen,  
þat euere man vpon molde · miȝt [on] diuise ;<sup>1</sup>
- William's sister,  
younger than  
himself by three  
years, sche was zonger þan william · bi fulle þre zeres. 2636  
& þe kud king of spayne · hade a cemliche sone,  
þat was a kud kniȝt · and kene man of armes ;  
for him, was þe werwolf · so wickedli for-schaped  
þurth malice of his stepmoder · as ȝe mow here after ;  
ac breþer were þei boþe · as bi on fader. 2641
- had been sought  
in marriage by the  
king of Spain's  
son, the werwolf's  
half-brother. þe kud king of spayne · coueyted for his sone  
þat worþi mayden · þat was williams suster ;  
ac þe quen for no cas no wold · þat wedding graunt ;  
for-þi þe king & his sone · swiche werre a-rered. 2645
- On her refusal,  
the king of Spain  
had invaded the  
land, for þei hadde luperli here lond · brend and destrued,  
brent bold borwes, & burnes · bruttene to deþe,  
& of-sette hire so harde · þe soþe for to telle, 2648  
þat prestli to hire puple · to palerne sche ferde ;
- and besieged the  
queen in Palerino. & þe king bi-seget þe cite · selcoupli harde,  
& mani a sad sauȝt · his sone þer-to made,  
ac douȝti men deliuerli · defended it wiþ-inne ; 2652  
but sertenli on boþe sides · was slayn muche puple,  
& þat lasted so longe · leue me for soþe,
- Its defenders  
advised the queen  
to surrender, þei of þat cite · of þo segges al sad were,  
& come ofte to þe quen · & counseiled hire ȝerne 2656  
to acorde wiþ þe king · & graunte his wille,  
for þei no lenger in no maner · miȝt meyntene þat sege,  
for moche folk of here fon · fel algate newe,  
& here men flebled<sup>2</sup> fast · & faileden of here mete, 2660  
þat þei miȝt in no maner · meyntene þe sege.

<sup>1</sup> See l. 4436.<sup>2</sup> Read "febled" (?)



- þanne þat comliche quen · curteyseliche seide, but she exhorts  
 “lordinges, 3e ben my lege men · þat gode ben & them to be brave,  
 trewe, and hold out,
- bold burnes of bodies · batailles big to gye ; 2664
- but þat 3e grettli aren a-greued · gaynli i knowe,  
 for þise tenful trauayles · but titli, i hope,  
 al it worþ wel amended · for þis 3e witen alle, [Fol. 43 b.]
- þat i haue sent after socour · to my senly fader, 2668 for she has sent  
 þat grece haþ godli to gye · as emperour & sire. for succour to her  
 & i wot witterli · wiþ-oute eni faile, father, the  
 þat socur he wol me sende · or elles com him-selue. emperor of  
 Greece,
- It is so fer to þat cuntre · 3e knowe wel þe soþe, 2672 who would  
 þat he may nouȝt saile · swiftli as he wold. require some  
 for-þi alle my bolde burnes · i beseche & preie, time for the  
 fo[r] loue þat 3e owe to þe lord · þat let 3ou be journey.
- fourmed,
- Meyntenes 3it 3oure manchip · manli a while, 2676 So she prays them  
 til god of his grete miȝt · god tyding vs sende.” to hold out a  
 & bad þo tvo bold barouns · bliue forþ wende little longer.
- to þe king of spayne · & curtesly him seie,
- þat sche preied *par* charite · *in* pes to late hire lengþe She asks the king  
 fulle a fourtenizt · for-oute alle greues 2681 of Spain to grant  
 of sauȝtes to þe cite · or any sorwe elles. a truce of 14 days,
- & but hire fader com · bi þe fourteniztes hende,  
 or sende hire *sum* socour · bi þe same time, 2684 and if her father  
 sche wold wiþ god wille · wiþ-oute more lette did not come  
 Meke hire in his merci · on þise *maner* wise, then, she would  
 to giue him boute grueching · al þat gode, submit,
- so þat sche miȝt sauflī · wiþ hire senli douȝter 2688 on condition that  
 wende wiȝtli a-wei · whider hire god liked. she and her  
 þe messegeres manli · in here weye went, daughter might  
 spacli to þe king of spayne · þis speche þei tolde. have free passage  
 anywhere.
- but he swor his oþ · þat he a-sent nold, 2692 The king of Spain  
 for no man vpon molde · but he most haue hire refuses.  
 douȝter ;
- & þei titli turned aȝen · & told so þe quene.

& whan sche wist witerli · þe wille of þe king,  
 as a woful womman · sche went to hir chamber, 2696  
 & preyed ful pitousli · to þe prince of heuene,  
 for marie his moder loue · to mayntene hire & help,  
 þat hire foos for no cas · wiþ fors hire conquerede,  
 to winne azens hire wille · hire worliche douzter. 2700  
 [Fol. 44.] “no madame,”<sup>1</sup> seide hire douzter · “marie þat graunt,  
 for þe blissful barnes loue · þat hire brestes souked !”  
 þus þei dwelled in duel · niȝtes and daies,  
 boþe þat corteys quen · & hire comliche douzter. 2704  
 had þei wist witterli · whiche help god hem sente,  
 al hire gref in-to game · gaynli schold haue turned.  
 now sece we of þe segges · þat þe sege holden,  
 & of þe selcouþ a-santes · þat þei samen ȝolde, 2708  
 & of þe douzthi defens · of wieȝs þer wiþ-inne.  
 & listenes now a litel · of þe tvo leue bestes,  
 þat as an hert & an hinde · holden here weye,  
 as þe witty werwolf · wold hem euer lede. 2712

The queen retires to her chamber, praying to Christ and Mary for help.

She and her daughter are in great grief.

No more of the defenders of the city, and the assaults on it,

but hear about the hart and the hind, and the werwolf.

The werwolf guided them till they came to the city of Reggio,

where they would have to cross the straits.

They lay hid near the harbour till night,

**O**f þis hert & þis hinde · hende now listenes.  
 so long þei caired ouer cuntres · as þat crist wold,  
 ouer dales & downes · & disgesye weyes,  
 as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat was here hole frend,  
 þan þei samen souȝt · to þe riche cite of rise, 2717  
 þat set is ful semli · vpon þe see bonke.  
 a gret number of naueye · to þat hauen longet,  
 & þere þe buxum bestes · bi-houed ouer passe. 2720  
 & so brod was þe see · þat sayle hem bihoued  
 holliche al a niȝt · & vp happe, wel more.  
 al day þe bestes darked · in here den stille  
 In a ragged roche · niȝt be þe hauen side, 2724  
 til it was wiþ-inne niȝt · & alle wiȝes slepten.  
 þan hiȝed þei hem to þe hauen · hastily & sone,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “made.” Read “madame.” The word in the text is called by Bryant a provincialism, but without reason.—M. The same error occurs in l. 3184, but it is corrected in l. 3191.

- as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat was al here gye,  
 & stalkeden ful stilly · þer stoden fele schippes. 2728 when they went  
 þe werwolf waited wiztly · which schip was 3arest, down to the ships.  
 to fare forþ at þat flod · & fond on sone,  
 þat was gayly greyt · to go to þe seile,  
 & feipliche frauht · ful of fine wines. 2732 The werwolf  
 þe werwolf went þer-to · to wite ho were þere ; found a ship  
 þe segges were a-slepe þan · þat it schuld 3eme, ready to sail.  
 al but þe mest maister · to munge þe soþe. The men were all  
 þei were turned to towne · to pleie þer whiles, 2736 asleep.  
 In murþe til þe mone arise · arst miht þei nouht passe. [Fol. 44 b.]  
 & whan þe werwolf wist · þat alle slept fast,  
 to þe hert & þe hinde · he turned him a-3eine,  
 & bi certeyn signes · sone he hem tauht, 2740 The we wolf led  
 & þei folwed him fayre · fayn for þat grace, the hart and hind  
 & he ful listli hem ledes · to þat loueli schippe, to the ship,  
 & tauht bi-hinde tunnes · hem to hude þere. and they all hid  
 þe maistres, whan þe mone a-ros · manli in come, 2744 themselves  
 & faire at þe fulle flod · þei ferdn to sayle, behind tuns of  
 & hadde wind at wille · to wende whan hem liked. wine.  
 þe werewolf wist wel · þei were neiȝ ouer, The men came on  
 & bi-þout how were best · þe bestes to help, 2748 board, and set  
 þat þei miht scapeles · schape of þat schip. sail.  
 whan þe ludes where neiȝ lond · he leped ouer borde, When they were  
 sadli in al here siȝt · for þei him sew schold— nearly over,  
 whil þe hert & þe hinde scaped— · to hunte him the werwolf leapt  
 a-boute. 2752 overboard.  
 sone as þe schipmen · seie him out lepen, The shipmen,  
 hastili hent eche man · a spret or an ore, seeing him,  
 & launcced luperly after him · his lif to haue reued. seized sprits and  
 on so hetterli him hitte · as he lep in þe water, 2756 oars,  
 þat he for dul of þe dent · diued to þe grounde, and one of them  
 & hade neiȝ lost is lif · but, as our lord wold, hit him so hard  
 for al þat sterne strok · stifli he vp-keuerede, that he diued to  
 & swan swiftili awei · þat þei seȝen alle, 2760 the bottom,  
 & lauht listli þe lond · a litel hem bi-side. yet he swam  
 away to land.

- & þei, as folk þat were fayn · to forfare þat best,  
 saileden swiþe to londe · & sewed him after.  
 þe werwolf was wily · & went so soft, 2764  
 þe schipmen wend wel · at wille him take,  
 & him alle seweden · þat to þe schip longede,  
 but a barlegged bold boie · þat to þe barge 3emed.  
 whan þe schipmen wiþ þe wolf · were wel passed, 2768  
 þe hert & þe hinde · þan hoped wel to schape,  
 & busked hem boþe sone · a-boue þe hacches.  
 but whan þe boie of þe barge · þe bestes of-seie,  
 he was neiþ wod of his witt · witow, for fere, 2772  
 & be-þonzt him þere · þe bestes for to quelle.  
 & happili to þe hinde · he hit þanne formest,  
 & set hire a sal strok · so sore in þe necke,  
 þat sche top ouer tail · tumbled ouer þe hacches. 2776  
 but þe hert ful hastili · hent hire vp in armes,  
 & bare hire forþ ouer-bord · on a brod planke,  
 & nas bold wiþ þe boye · no debate make,  
 but fayn was a-way to fle · for fere of mo gestes, 2780  
 fer away fro þe see · or he stynt wold.  
 & whan he wist þat he was · wel out of siȝt,  
 he be-hilde ȝif þe hinde · euel hurt were,  
 & fond sche nas but a-frizt · for fere of þat dint. 2784  
 þan saide þe hert to þe hinde · hendly & faire,  
 “a ! worþili wiȝt · wonder ar þine happes,  
 þatow hentest al þe harm · þat i haue deserued !  
 wold god for his grace · & his grete miȝt, 2788  
 þat i hade here · þat to werre falles,  
 þe boye þat þe barge 3emes · a-beye schold sore ;  
 for þe dint he þe dalt · his deþ were marked.”  
 “Nay,” said Melior, “let us rather thank God for our escape.”  
 “Creue þe nouzt, for goddes loue · þat gart þe be fourned,  
 þat we so scaþli ar a-schaped · god mowe [we]<sup>1</sup> þonk,  
 & oure worþi werwolf · þat wel him by-tyde !  
 dere god, for deth · he dreizh for vs alle, 2796

<sup>1</sup> Read “mowe we thank.”—M. Cf. l. 2559.

late no seg miȝt haue · to sle our gode best !  
 nere his wit & his werk · we were schent boȝe.”  
 “sertes, sweting, þat is soȝ” · seide william þanne,  
 “Go we on oure gate · for goddes loue, bliue, 2800  
 to recuuer sum resset · þere we vs rest miȝt.”  
 ful mekli seide meliors · wiȝ-oute any fare,  
 “Go we now on goddes halue ;” · þan went þei god spede,  
 cleppende comely eiȝer oȝer · to karpe þe soȝe. 2804

May no one harm  
or slay our  
werwolf!”

William proposes  
that they should  
seek a hiding-  
place to rest in,  
[Fol. 45 b.]  
and Melior  
assents.

Whan þe hert & þe hind · were of so harde a-chaped,  
 þe boye þat þe barge ȝemed · of þe bestes hade  
 wonder,  
 þat on bar of þe barge · so boldeli þat oȝer,  
 wiȝ so comely contenaunce · clippend in armes, 2808  
 & ferden ferst on foure fet · & seȝþe vp tweyne.  
 & wiȝtly after þe werwolf · was wel a-schaped,  
 fram alle þe sory cliȝmen · þat sewed him to quelle,  
 but treuli non him take · to tene namore ; 2812  
 & to þe hert & þe hinde · heȝed him faste.  
 & whan þe hert & þe hinde · had siȝt of here best,  
 þei were gretli glad · & oft god þonked ;  
 þat he sauf was & sou[n]d<sup>1</sup> · fro þe men a-schaped. 2816  
 þan ferde þei alle forȝ i-fere · fayn of here liues.  
 þe cliȝmen þat þe worwolf · so sadly hade chased,  
 buskeden aȝen to here barge · & þe boye hem tolde  
 wiche an hert & an hinde · hadde þer-out schaped, 2820  
 wiȝtli wen þei went · þe wolf for to sewe ;  
 & how he hitte þe hinde · also he told,  
 & how þe hert hire hent · & hiȝed ouer-borde,  
 & wiȝ how coynte cuntenaunce · he cuered hire after,  
 & went wiȝtly a-wey · but whider wist he neuer. 2825  
 þer-of were þei a-wondred · but wist þei no bote,  
 whederward forto fare · to finde þe bestes ;  
 but lefte þei in lisse · now listenes of þes bestes, 2828  
 þurth wildernesse hou þei went · & wat hem tidde after.

The barge-boy  
was astonished to  
see them go first  
on four feet, and  
then on two.

The werwolf,  
having escaped  
safely, went after  
the hart and  
hind.

The shipmen  
returned to the  
barge, and the  
boy told them his  
story.

how the hart  
caught up the  
hind, and hid  
overboard.

<sup>1</sup> Read “sound.”—M.

The hart and hind found all the country laid waste.

Whiderward as þei went · al wast þei it founde,  
bolde burwes for-brent · a-boute on eche side,  
& euer as þe witty werwolf · wold hem lede, 2832  
faire þei him folwed · as here frend holde.

The werwolf led them to a rich and fair town, named Palermo, [Fol. 46.]

& so longe he hem ladde · as he him-self þouzt,  
he brouzt hem to a borw3 · þat bold was & riche,  
& fairest of alle fason · for eny riche holde, 2836  
þat euer man vpon mold · mizt on loke.  
perles was þe paleis · and palerne it hiȝt.

the very place whence the werwolf took away William at first.

þe werwolf wan william · ferst fro þat place,  
whan he was in childhod · as þe chaunce be-fore told.  
& treuli, riȝt þat time · to telle al þe soþe, 2841

William's mother is in a hard strait, being besieged by the king of Spain.

williams moder in meschef · wiȝ moche folk þere lenged ;  
for þe king of spayne · bi-seged hire harde,  
In maner as þe mater · was minged bi-fore. 2844

Near her palace was a park,

a pris place was vnder þe paleys · a park as it were,  
þat whilom wiȝ wilde bestes · was wel restored ;  
but þe segges þat held þe sege · had it al destruyt.

where the hart and hind hid themselves.

þe hert & þe hinde þere · þanne hem hed sone, 2848  
as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat ay was here gye,  
vnder a coynte crag · fast bi þe quenes chamber,  
& al þat day in þat den · þei darked, & þe niȝt ;

The werwolf got meat and drink for them.

þe werwolf went wiȝtly · & whan hem mete & drink,  
so þat þei mad hem as murie · as þei miȝt þat time. 2853  
now of þe buxum bestes · be we a while stille,  
& carpe we of þe curteys quen · þat in þe castel lenged.

So hard was sche be-seged · soþ for to telle, 2856  
& so harde sautes · to þe cite were zeuen,

The battlements of the city were broken by the war-engines, and many men were slain.

þat þe komli kerneles · were to-clatered wiȝ engines,  
& mani of here miȝthi men · murdred to deþe.  
þerfor þe quen was carful · & oft to crist preyed, 2860  
to sende hire sum socour · þat sche saued were,  
for marie his moder loue · þat is of mercy welle.

It was all because of the queen's daughter.

I[n] swiche lif hade sche liued · a long time to-fore,  
& al duel þat sche drey · was for hire douȝter sake. 2864

- but seþþe on þe selue niȝt · þe soþe forto telle,  
þat þe hert & þe hinde · & here þridde fere  
vnder þe castel in a crag · cauȝt here rest,  
þe quen was very for-wept · & went to bedde. 2868  
a selcoþe sweuen sone · in hire bed sche mette ;  
hire þouȝt þat sche & hire [louȝter] · on a dai al-one  
weren passed priueli þe paleys · bi a posterne ȝate  
to pleie hem priueli in þe park · þat to þe paleis longed.  
hire þouȝt an hundered  $\bar{M}$ . · were hire a-boute 2873  
of lebardes & beres · & alle bestes boute number,  
Grinli gapaunde to greue · hire & hire douȝter ;  
& riȝt as þo breme bestes · hem boþe schold haue take,  
here þouȝt, a wiȝt werwolf · & to white beres 2877  
hieȝeden harde hem to help · in þat ilk nede ;  
& whanne þo two white beres · were com hem nere,  
þei semde to hire siȝt · tvo semli hertes ; 2880  
& eiþer of hem a faire figure · in here for-hed hadde.  
þe huger hert in his hed · had, as hire semede,  
þe fasoun & þe forme · of a fair kniȝt in feld, 2883  
& semde hire owne sone · þat sche long hade missed.  
þat oþer hert, as hire þouȝt · þe schap hade of a mayde,  
fairest of alle fetures · þat sche to-for hadde seie,  
& eiþer hert on his hed · hadde, as hire þout,  
a gret kroune of gold · ful of gode stones, 2888  
þat semli was to siȝt · & schined ful wide.  
þan þouȝt hire þe werwolf · & þe maide bi-laft ;  
& þe huge hert him-self · hastili þat time,  
aȝens alle þe bestes · bliue went al-one, 2892  
& bar down bi eche side · ay þe boldest formast ;  
was non so stef him wiþ-stod · so sternli he wrouȝt.  
þe grettest of þe grim bestes · he gat to prison sone ;  
a lyon & a lybard · þat lederes were of alle, 2896  
hire þouȝt, þat huge hert · hastili hade take,  
& putte hem in hire prisoun · to peyne hem at hire  
wille.  
þe stoutest & þe sternest · he stiȝtled sone after,

Whilst the hart  
and hind slept,  
the queen went  
to bed,

and dreamt that  
she and her  
[Fol. 46 b.]  
daughter were in  
the park,

when 100,000  
leopards and  
bears attacked  
them,

but a werwolf  
and two white  
bears came to  
her assistance.

The bears  
changed into  
harts as they  
came nearer.

The larger hart  
had on his fore-  
head the figure of  
a knight like her  
own son.

The other had  
the shape of a  
maid.

Crowns were on  
their heads.

The hart bore  
down all the  
beasts,

taking the largest  
ones prisoners.

þat he ga[r]te <sup>1</sup> þe grettest · to hire prison louzte ; 2900  
 & redli al þo remuant · of þe rude bestes  
 for fere be-gunne to fle · as fast as þei miȝt,  
 ouer dales & dounes · for drede of the hert.  
 sone as þe hende hert · hire hade deliuered,<sup>2</sup> 2904  
 & put here fram alle peril · fro þe perilous bestes,  
 here þouȝt, sche went wiȝtli · a-ȝen to þe castel,  
 & turned vp to þe heiȝest tour · to bi-hold a-boute.  
 þan þout hire, þat hire riȝt arm · last ouer rome, 2908  
 & lelli hire left arm · lai al ouer spayne,  
 & boþe þo komly kingdomes · komen to hire wille,  
 forto herken al hire hest · & hire wille worche.  
 here-of was sche al a-wondred · & a-waked sone, 2912  
 & for drede of hire drem · deulfulli quaked,  
 & wepud wonder sore · & wiȝtli hire cloþed,  
 & romed þan redli · al redles to hure chapel,  
 & godly be-souȝt god · to gode turne hire sweuen. 2916

She had a priest  
 named Moses,  
 to whom she told  
 her dream.

**Þ**at comli quen hade a prest · a konyng man of lore,  
 þat moche coupe of many · & moyses he hiȝt,  
 to consaile sche him clepnd · & þe cas him told,  
 soþliche al þe sweuen · þat hire a-niȝt mette. 2920  
 & as tit as sche had told · þe prest tok his bokes,  
 & sey sone of þat sweuen · hou it schuld turne.  
 he loked on þat comeli quen · & curtesli seide,  
 “Madame, mourne ȝe namore · ȝe mow wel seie 2924  
 þat þe prince of heuen · ȝou haþ prestli in mynde,  
 & socor sendeþ ȝou sone · bi þis sweuen i knowe.  
 þe bestes þat bi-sett ȝou so · & ȝour semli douȝter,  
 & duelfulli to deþe · wold haue ȝou don boþe, 2928  
 þo ar soþli þo segges · þat hard ȝou bi-sege,  
 & don hard here miȝt · to destruye ȝou here.  
 wite ȝe of þe white beres · þat waxen seþþe hertes,  
 & haue þe fourme in here hed · of tvo faire chi[l]deren,<sup>3</sup>

He said, “Monrn  
 not, it betokens  
 succour.

The beasts that  
 beset you are the  
 men who besiege  
 you.

As for the white  
 bears or harts  
 with crowns,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “gate.” See l. 1365.    <sup>2</sup> Catchword—“& put hire.”

<sup>3</sup> Read “childeren.”—M.



- & gode crownes of gold · on here hedes graiþed, 2933  
 þe hert þat 3ou helped · so hastili wiþ strengþe,  
 þe lyon & þe lebard · to 3our prisoun ladde,  
 & alle þe bremest bestes · brou3t [to]<sup>1</sup> 3our wille, 2936  
 what þat it tokeneþ · telle wol ich sone. I will tell you all.
- It is a ful kud kni3t · schal come 3ou to help,  
 & þu[r]th<sup>2</sup> his dou3thi dedes · destruye þis werre,  
 & cacche þe king of spayne · þurth his cler strengþe,  
 & seþþe after is sone · þat al þe sorwe is fore, 2941  
 & put hem in 3our prison · þe proddest of hem alle  
 schul be buxum at 3our wille · & blinne al þis fare,  
 & meke hem to 3our merci · þat now be misseproude.  
 & þat ilke kud kni3t · þat schal þe kome to help, 2945 And whether he  
is to wed you or  
not, he will be  
king of this realm.  
 I not where he schal · 3ou to wiue welde,  
 but i wot wisli he worþ · king of þis reaume.  
 also þat werwolf · þat wiþ þe hertes comes, 2948  
 he is a kud kni3t · & schal be kud wide,  
 & þurth him, soþli, i se · þe king schal be deliuered,  
 & put out of prisoun · & god pes be maked.  
 his sone & alle oþer · schul be 3our hole frendes, 2952  
 & schul restore riuedli · þe reddour þat was maked.  
 þurth þilke werwolf · 3e schul wite of 3oure sone Through him you  
shall hear of your  
son.  
 þat 3e long haue for-lore · leue me for soþe,  
 & him winne a-3en at wille · wiþ-inne a schort time.  
 & redli, of 3our ri3t arm · þat ouer rome streyt, 2957  
 I se wel þe signifiante · þis schal þer-of falle ;  
 þi sone schal wedde swiche a wif · to weld wiþ al  
 rome, Your son shall  
govern also all  
Rome.
- as kind keper & king · i knowe wel þe soþe. 2960  
 & lelli, of þi lift arm · þat ouer spaine lay,  
 þat bi-tokeneþ treuli · as telleþ my bokes,  
 þat þi dou3ti sone · schal þi dere dou3ter 3iuen 2963 and your daughter  
shall be queen of  
Spain."  
 þe kinges sone of spayne · when þe a-cord is maked ;  
 þat sche be ladi of þat lond · þi left arm bi-tokeneþ.

<sup>1</sup> Read "brou3t to 3our wille."—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read "thurth."—M. See next line.

now haue i said of 3our sweuen · sopli as wol falle,  
 & treuly al þis schal be-falle · wiþ-inne a schort terme.”

The queen, on  
 hearing this,  
 weeps for joy,

Whan þat loueli ladi · hade listened his wordes, 2968  
 & herd seie þat sche schold · hire some a-zen  
 winne,

wonderli for ioie · sche wept for þo wordes,  
 & sorwfuliche sche sizt · last out schold it lett ;  
 Lest any fals fortune · for-dede him þurth sinne. 2972

[Fol. 48.]  
 and prays the  
 priest to say a  
 mass to make  
 her dream come  
 true.

but buxumli þat brizt lady · þan busked to hire chapel,  
 & praied hire prest *par* charite · a masse to singe,  
 of þe trinite in trone, to *turne* · hire sweuen to ioie.  
 deliuerli he it dede · denouteliche & faire, 2976

She looks from  
 her chamber  
 towards the  
 park,

& seppen þat comli ladi · cayres to hire chamber,  
 & weued vp a window · þat was toward þe place  
 þere as þe hert & þe hinde · hadde take here reste.  
 þere þat semli ladi hire set · out forto loke, 2980

and as she  
 watched, she sees  
 the hart and hind  
 embracing each  
 other joyfully.

& strek in-to a styf studie · of hire sterne sweuen,  
 waytend out at window · while sche so þouzt.  
 & vnder a louely lorel tre · in a grene place,  
 sche saw þe hert & þe hinde · lye collinge in-fere, 2984

She could not  
 hear what they  
 said, but she  
 watched them a  
 long while,

Makende þe most ioie · þat man mizt deuise,  
 wiþ alle comli *contenance* · þat þei kipe mizt ;  
 haden here priue pleyes · of *paramoures* wordes,  
 but sopli, of nouzt þat þei seide · mizt þe quen here.

till night came on.

but of here selcoupe solas · samen þat þei made, 2989  
 so gret wonder walt þe quen · of þe worþ bestes  
 but lenede þer þe long day · to lok out at þe windowe,  
 to se þe selcouþ signes · of þe semli bestes, 2992

After supper,  
 her knights  
 bewailed their  
 evil case,

til þe day him wiþ-drow · in-to þe derk mizt,  
 þat þe lady no lenger · mizt loke on þe bestes.  
 þan tiffed sche hire treuli · & turned in-to halle,  
 Made a-mong hire meyne · as mirie as sche couþe. 2996  
 whan þei samen hade souped · & seppen whasche after,  
 here<sup>1</sup> kniþtes & hire euþseile · kome hire vntille,

<sup>1</sup> “Here” would be more uniform if it were written “hire,”  
 but this change may be observed in a few other passages—M.

Munged newe her meschef · how neiȝ þei misferde ;  
 how here walles were broke · wiþ engynes strong, 3000  
 here bretages al a-boute · for-brent & destroyed,  
 þat þei miȝt no more · meintene þe sege.  
 how the walls and battlements were broken.

þan þat comli quene · ful curtesly saide,  
 “ lordinges, ȝe ar my lege men · þe lasse & þe more,  
 & sworn eche bi his side · to saue mi riȝt, 3005  
 & manliche men ben · beter mow non liue.

þer-fore, lordinges, for his loue · þat let vs be fourmed,  
 & for ȝour owne worchipe · witeþ me fro schaþe 3008  
 ȝut from þise wicked men · þat wold me spille.

& but god of his grace · sum god help vs sende,  
 I wol worche al ȝour wille · wiþ-out ani faile,  
 wheþer i merci schul craue · or meyntene þis werre.  
 Unless God sends help soon, she will surrender.

treuli, ȝif me bitide · þis tene to a-schape, 3013  
 wiþ richesse i wol ȝou reward · forto riche for euer,  
 so þat treuli ȝour trauail · nouȝt schul ȝe tine.”

& alle here gomes were glad · of hire gode speche, 3016  
 & seden at o sent · “ wat so tide wold after,

þei wold manli bi here miȝt · meyntene hire wille,  
 so long as here lif lasted · to ȝelden hem neuer.”  
 Her knights swear never to yield.

þan þat comly quen · ful curtesli hem þonked, 3020  
 & þusked hem þat time · bliþe to bedde,

& redly token here rest · til riȝt on þe morwe.  
 She thanks them, and retires.

þan þat comli quen · ketli vp rises,  
 biddande bisili hire bedes · buskes to hire chapel, 3024  
 & made hire prest moyses · sone a masse to sing,  
 & prestli þat while preiȝed · to þe king of heuen,  
 Next day, she asks Moses to sing another mass,

& to his milde moder · þat alle men helpeþ.  
 & to his milde moder · þat alle men helpeþ.

þat þei hire socour sende · sone bi time. 3028

whan þe masse was don · sche went to hire chamber,  
 weited at þe windowe · wer sche þe bestes seie,  
 and afterwards watches from her chamber-window.

& seie hem in þe same place · þer as [þei]<sup>1</sup> were ere,

& hendli eiþer oþer · þan colled in armes. 3032

<sup>1</sup> Read “ þer as þei were ere.”—M.

- The hot sun had cracked the hides of the hart and hind, and the queen sees their clothes. þe hote sunne hade so hard · þe hides stiued,  
þat here comli cloþing · þat keuered hem þer-vnder  
þe quen saw as sche sat · out bi þe sides sene,  
& wex a-wondred þer-of · wittow for soþe. 3036  
to counseil sche elepud hir prest · þe comli quen sone,  
& schewed him þe siȝt · of þe semli bestes ;  
& sone so he hem sey · he seide to þe quene,  
“ for mary loue, madame · desmaye zou no lenger, 3040  
for þe mater of þe [metyng] <sup>1</sup> · miȝtow here finde,  
as i descriued þis ender day · whan þow þi drem toldest.  
& ze han herd here-bi-fore · how it bi-tidde in rome,  
þemperours douȝter was zeue · þemperours <sup>2</sup> sone of  
grece, 3044  
but no man miȝt here make · þat mariage to holde ;  
for sche hade arst leide hure loue · on a better place,  
on on þe kuddest kniȝt · knowen in þis worlde,  
best of his bodi, boldest · & braggest in armes ; 3048  
& boþe þei busked of rome · in tvo beres skinnes,  
siþþe þei hent hertes skinnes · but hou, wot i neuer.  
but sauffly þis may [i] <sup>3</sup> seye · & þe soþe proue,  
þe zond is þat semly · and his selue make. 3052  
he schal wiȝtli þis werre · winne to an hende ;  
& bring þe from alle bales · to þi bote in hast,  
& deliuer þi londes a-zen · in lengþe & in brede.  
þer-for no more of þis mater · is to munge nouþe, 3056  
but bi-þenke how þe best · þo bestes to winne,  
þat þe kniȝt & þat komli · were come to zour chamber.”

þan þa komeli quen · kast in hire hert, 3059  
sche wold wirche in þis wise · wel to be sewed

- The queen thought she too would be sewed in a hind's skin. In an huge hindes hide · as þe oþer were,  
& busk out to þe bestes · & vnder a busk ligge,  
til sche wist what þei were · zif þei wold speke. 3063  
prestli þe prest þan · proueyed hire swiche an hide,

<sup>1</sup> Read “mater of the *metyng*.”—M.      <sup>2</sup> MS. *þemperours*.

<sup>3</sup> Read “may *i* seye.”—M.

- & driuen forþ þat day to niȝt · þan drouȝ þei to reste.  
 but þe quen er þe day · was diȝt wel to riȝtes  
 hendli in þat hinde-skyn · as swiche bestes were,  
 & bi a priue posterne · passad ouȝt er daie, 3068  
 & a-bod vnder a busk · þere þe bestes leye,  
 so priueli, but þe prest · non parceyue niȝt,  
 but on of hire burwȝ-maydenes · þat sche loued most.  
 þei stoden stille hire to a-bide · wiþ-inne a posterne  
 zate, 3072
- & whan þe sunne gan here schewe<sup>1</sup> · & to schine briȝt,  
 þe hende hert & hinde · bi-gunne to a-wake,  
 & maden in-fere þe mest murþe · þat man niȝt diuise,  
 wiþ clipping & kessing · and contenauȝe fele, 3076  
 & talkeden bi-twene · mani tidy wordes.  
 & william þan witerli · þise wordes seide,  
 “a ! loueli lemman · a long time me þinkiþ,  
 seþþen þat i saw · þi semli face bare ; 3080  
 sore me longes it to se · ȝif it niȝt so worþe.”  
 “bi marie,” seid meliors · “so dos me as sore,  
 ȝour briȝt ble to by-hold · but beter is ȝut a-bide.  
 we wol nouȝt krepe of þese skinnes · lest vs schaþe  
 tidde, 3084  
 til our buxum best · ȝif vs boþe leue.  
 for he be tokene whan time is · wol titli vs wisse,  
 what wise þat we schal · our owne wedes take.”  
 “treuli, sweting, þat is soþ” · seid william þanne, 3088  
 “a gret þrowe me þinkes · er þat time come ;  
 but wold god þe quen · wist what we were,  
 & wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,  
 I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092  
 & pult hire out of þis þeril · in pure litel while ;  
 but of vs wot sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.  
 nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne rouȝt ;  
 for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake.” 3096  
 “Meschef, sire,” saide meliors · “nay, munge þat no more ;

Arrayed in this,  
 she goes to the  
 park, and the  
 priest and a  
 bower-maiden  
 wait for her.

At sunrise, the  
 hart and hind  
 [Fol. 49 b.]  
 awake and  
 embrace.

William says he  
 longs to see  
 Melior's face.

Melior says they  
 must not creep  
 out of the skins  
 till the werwolf  
 gives the hint.

William wishes  
 the queen knew  
 who he was,  
 and would provide  
 him with a horse  
 and armour.

Melior says she is  
 well contented.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “schewed.” Read “schewe.”—M.

- for leuer me is þis lif to haue · to liue wiþ þe here,  
þan to winne al þe world · & want þe of siȝt.”  
þan elipt þei & keste · & of þat karping left, 3100  
& bi a busch lay þe quen · bi here-self one,  
& herde holli þe wordes · þat þei hade seide.  
& meliors in þe mene time · to william mekli saide,  
“swetyng, sore i was a-drad · of a sweuen ȝer-while ;  
Me þouȝt þanne an<sup>1</sup> ern · er euer i was ware, 3105  
hade vs vp take · in-to þat heiȝe toure ;  
wheþer it geyne to gode · or grame, wot i neuer.”  
“nay, i-wisse,” seide william · “i wot wel þe soþe, 3108  
þat it gayneþ but god · for god may vs help.”  
& as þei laykeden in here laike · þei lokede a-boute,  
& bleynte bi-hinde þe busch · & seiȝen as bliue,  
how an huge hinde · held hire þere at rest. 3112  
“bi marie,” seide meliors · “me þinkip þat best slepeþ,  
& semeþ nouȝt a-drad of vs · to deme þe soþe.”  
“no, i-wisse,” seide william · “i ne wot whi it schuld ;  
It weneþ þat we ben riȝt · swiche as it-silue ; 3116  
for we be so sotilieche · be-sewed in þise hides.  
but wist it wisli · whiche bestes we were,  
It wold fle our felaschip · for fere ful sone.”  
“Nay,” said the queen, “I know who ye are.”  
“nay, bi crist,” seide þe quen · “þat al maukinde  
schaped, 3120  
I nel fle ful fer · for fere of ȝouȝ tweyne.  
I wot wel what ȝe ar · & whennes ȝe come,  
al þe kas wel i knowe · þat ȝe arn komen inne.”  
William wonders, and Melior is frightened.  
william wex a-wondred · whan he þise wordes herd.  
& meliors þe meke · wex neiȝh mad for fere. 3125  
but william ful hastily · þus to þe hinde seide,  
“I coniuere þe, þurth crist · þat on croice was peyned,  
þatou titli me telle · & tarie nouȝ no lenger, 3128  
wheþer þow be a god gost · in goddis name þat spekest,  
oip̄er any foule fend · fourmed in þise wise,  
& ȝif we schul of þe hent · harme oþer gode.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. “Me þouȝt erþen ar ern, &c.”

- þ**an þat comli quen · ful curtesli saide, 3132  
 “I am swiche a best as 3e ben · bi him þat vs wrouȝt.  
 harm for me, i hope · schul 3e haue neuer ;  
 for as gost on goddis name · ich gaynli to 3ou speke,  
 of swiche kinde ar we kome · bi crist, as 3e aru. 3136  
 but oþer breme bestes · by maistrye & strengþe,  
 han me dulfulli driuen · fro my kinde lese.  
 þer-for i souȝt hider · socour of þe to haue,  
 & praiē þe *par* charite · & properliche for reuþe, 3140  
 deliuer me of duresse · & do me haue my lese,  
 & lelli þow schalt be lord þer-of · al þi lif time. [Fol. 50 b.]  
 & þat menskful maide · þat þere myd þe lies,  
 schal be mi lef lady · þis lordchip to weld. 3144  
 for þe real emperour of rome · is redeli hir <sup>1</sup> fader,  
 forþi wel i wot sche is worþi · to weld wel more,  
 I knowe al þe couyne · of cuntre how 3e went,  
 & 3e ben welcom to me · bi crist þat me made. 3148  
 & of sorwe i haue suffred · sone wol i telle.  
 þe proude king of spayne · wiþ pride me bi-segeþ,  
 & haþ luperli al mi lond · wiþ his ludes wasted,  
 & al þis duresse he me doþ · for my douȝter sake ; 3152  
 asent wold sche nouȝt his sone · to wif hire weld,  
 þer-for he worcheþ me wo · & wasteþ al my londes,  
 saue onliche in þis cite · where soiourne wot i neuer.  
 but help hope i in hast · to haue of þe one ; 3156  
 to amende my meschef · i meke me in þi grace,  
 & pleyn power i þe graunt · prestli also swiþe,  
 to lede al my lordchip · as þe lef likes ;  
 boute eny maner mene · mayster i þe make ; 3160  
 wiþ-þatow winne al my worchip · as i ere walt.”  
 þan was william gretli glad · & oft god þonked,  
 whan he wist it was þe quen · & wiztli he sayde,  
 “Madame, by þat menskful lord · þat vs alle made,  
 3if i þis time miȝt trust · treuli to 3our sawe, 3165  
 so þat 3e wold lelli my lemman · saue & loke,

The queen says  
she will never  
harm them,

that, in fact, she  
implores him to  
aid her, and he  
shall be king,

[Fol. 50 b.]

and she will  
make Melior his  
queen.

For the king of  
Spain had wasted  
her lands,

but she hopes to  
have William's  
help against him.

William rejoiced  
when he knew  
the queen,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “his,” altered to “hir” by a later hand.

- whil i busily buske a-boute · 3our bales to bete,  
 and promises to serve her faithfully. 3168  
 al my help holliche · 3e schul haue at nede ;  
 feiþli boute feyntise · 3ou faile schal ich neuer,  
 as long as any lif · me lastes, for soþe.”  
 Gretli was þe quen glad · & godli him þonked,  
 All three go together to the postern-gate. 3172  
 & loueli him & his lemman · lau3t bi þe handes,  
 & ferden forþ on here fet · feiþli to-gadere  
 priueli to þe posterne · & in passed sone.  
 The bower-woman, who was [Fol. 51.] waiting, was nearly mad with fear,  
 & 3it stod þe maide stille · þe quen to a-bide,  
 & whan sche saw þo þre bestes · so þroli come, 3176  
 so hidous in þo hides · as þei hertes were,  
 sche wex wod of hire wit · wittou, for fere ;  
 & rapli gan a-way renne · to reken þe soþe.  
 but the queen reassures her, 3180  
 but þat comli quen · called hire a-3ene,  
 & carful [sche]<sup>1</sup> com · whan sche hire clepe herde.  
 and asks if she does not know her again.  
 “ whi carestow,” sede þe quene · “ knew þow nou3t þe  
 soþe,  
 þat i was tiffed in a-tir · when i wend fro þe ? ”  
 “ 3is, madame,”<sup>2</sup> sede þe maide · “ but, bi marie of heuen,  
 She says she is frightened of the others. 3185  
 but i a-wede neiez of wit · for þo werder bestes,  
 þat folwe 3our felachip · so ferli þei are.”  
 “ þei wol do no duresse · bi dere god of heuen ;  
 for hem i went in þis wise · to win in-to þis place. 3188  
 but loke now, bi þi lif · þat no lud here-of wite,  
 how þei hider come · her-after neuer more.”  
 “ nay, bi marie, madame ” · þe maide þan seide,  
 “ þis dede schal i neuer deschuuer · þe deth forto suffer.”
- The queen takes them to a chamber in the tower. 3193  
 Þe comli quen þan takeþ · meliors by þe hande,  
 & bi-fore went william · & after-ward þe quene ;  
 brou3t hem to a choys chaumber · vnder þe chef toure,  
 þ[er]<sup>3</sup> were beddes busked · for eny burn riche. 3196  
 & tvo baþes were boun · by a litel while,
- Two baþes are soon made ready

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps better thus, “ carful *sche* com.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “ made ;” see ll. 2701, 3191.

<sup>3</sup> MS. “ þe.” Read “ there.”—M.



& a-tired tryli · to trusty trewe lordes.

sone þe quen kauzt a knif · & komli hire-selue

william & his worþi fere · swiftly vn-laced 3200 The queen with a  
knife unlaces the  
hides.

out of þe hidous hidus · & in a hirne hem cast.

& whan þei were cloþed · worþli in here wedes,

alle men vpon mold · miȝt sen a fair couplet  
þan was bi-twene william · & þis worþi mayde. 3204 William and  
Melior seem a  
fair couple.

þe quen hire clipt & kest · & gret comfort made,

& seþþen bliue dede hem baþe · boþe tvo wel faire,  
& greiþed hem gaili · in garnemens riche, 3207 [Fol. 51 b.]  
They bathe, and  
are richly dressed  
and go to meat.

& manli made hem atte hese · wiþ alle metes nobul,

& wiþ þe de[r]worþest<sup>1</sup> deintes · of drinkes þat were :

to munge more nis no ned · nouȝt missed þei þanne.

whan þei merili at mete · hade made hem at ese,

þat comli quen to william · curtesli saide, 3212 The queen asks  
William what  
cognisance he  
will have on his  
shield.

“swete sire, ȝe me saye · what signe is þe leuest

to haue schape in þi scheld · to schene armes ?”

“bi crist, madame,” sede þe kniȝt · “i coueyte nouȝt

elles

but þat i haue a god schel[d] · of gold graiþed elene,  
& wel & faire wiþ-inne · a werwolf depeynted, 3217 He replies—“ A  
werwolf on a  
shield of gold.”

þat be hidous & huge · to haue alle his riȝtes,

of þe couenablest colour · to knowe in þe feld ;

oper armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue.” 3220

þe quen þan dede comaunde · to carfti<sup>2</sup> men i-nowe,  
þat deuis him were diȝt · er þat day eue, 3224 The queen has it  
made for him.

to wende in-to werre · in world where him liked ;

þat was perles a-parrayl · to proue of alle gode. 3224

Also þat comli quen · as þat crist wold,

hade on þe sturnest stede · in hire stabul teiȝed,  
þat euer man vpon molde · miȝt of heren,  
& doutiest to alle dedes · þat any horse do schuld. 3228 She had in her  
stable a very  
spirited horse,  
that had been her  
husband's

þe king ebrouns it ouȝt · þat was hire lord bi-fore,

& fro þe day þat he deide · durst no man him neiȝhe,

<sup>1</sup> Read “derworthest.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read “crafti.”—M.

- Since Ebrouns' death, no one had dared to mount him.
- ne be so bold of his bodi · on his bak to come, 3231  
 but euer stod teied in þe stabul · wiþ stef irn cheynes ;  
 & queyntliche to his cracche · was corue swiche a weie,  
 þat men miȝt legge him mete · & wateren atte wille.  
 þe horse sone hade sauer · of þat hende kniȝt,  
 & wist, as god wold · it was is kinde lord. 3236
- [Fol. 52.]  
 The horse, knowing William, brake all his bands for joy, and neighed wondrously. And this is told to the queen.
- as bliue, al his bondes · he to-brak for ioye,  
 & so gan fare wiþ his fet · & ferliche neiȝede,  
 þat men wend he hade be wod · & warned þe quene,  
 how sternli in þe stabul · þe stede þan ferde, 3240  
 & had broke alle his bondes · no burn durst him  
 neiȝhe.
- William hears about it, and asks what sort of a horse it is.
- whan william herde þise wordes · he saide to þe quene,  
 “Madame,<sup>1</sup> what stede is þat · þat so sterne is hold?  
 Is he ouȝt douȝti to dedes · þat men don of armes?”  
 “ȝa, certes,” saide þe quen · “soþ for to telle, 3245  
 a worþier to þat werk · wot i non in erþe,  
 ȝif any man vpon mold · miȝt wiþ him dele.
- “It was Ebrouns' horse,” she says.
- he was mi lordes, wil he liuede · þat i so moche louede,  
 & for his loue sertenli · i do þis stede ȝeme.” 3249  
 “Madame,” sede william · “ȝif it were ȝour wille,  
 I wold preie par charite · & profit þat may falle,  
 þat i most haue þat horse · whan i schal haue to done.
- William asks for it.
- I wol to medis my-self · manliche him diȝt, 3253  
 sette vpon his sadel · & semli him greiþe.”
- She says he may have whatever he pleases; he thanks her.
- “certes,” sede þe quen · “i seie þe at onis,  
 holli of al þat i haue · here i make þe maister, 3256  
 to do þer-wiþ bi day & niȝt · as þe god þinkes.”  
 þer-of was william glad · & wiȝtli here þonkes,  
 þan asked þei þe win · & went to bedde after,  
 for it was forþ [to] niȝt<sup>2</sup> · faren bi þat time. 3260
- Next day, the steward of Spain
- D**eliuerli on þe morwe · er þe day gan dawe,  
 þe stiward of spayne · þat stern was & bold,  
 hadde bi-seged þat cite · seleconþeli hard

<sup>1</sup> MS. “Madama.”<sup>2</sup> See note.

- wip þre  $\overline{M}$ . of men · þat þro were to fiȝt. 3264 attacks the city  
with 3,000 men.  
& þo þe segges of þe cite · sone were ȝare,  
as douȝti men of dedes · defence for to make, [Fol. 52 b.]  
ȝerne schetten here ȝates · & ȝemed þe walles.  
for of þo wip-inne · non wold hem out aunter, 3268 The defenders  
dare not make  
so fele were of here fon · & so fewe wip-inne.  
þe cry rudli a-ros · þat reuþe it was to hure,  
for þei wip-inne þe toun · swiche meschef were inne.  
þat þei witterli wende · haue be wonne þat daye. 3272  
titli was þe tiding · told in þe paleys,  
how felli here fomen · gun fiȝt atte walles.  
whan william þat wiste · wiȝtli vp he stirte,  
as glad as any gome · þat euer god wrouȝt, 3276 William is glad  
at the news, and  
dons his armour,  
þat he miȝt his fille fiȝt · for þat fre quene.  
anon he was armed · at alle maner poyntes,  
& streiȝt him in-to the stabul · þere þe stede stod,  
& moche folk him folwed · þat ferli to bi-hold, 3280  
how sternli he & þe [stede]<sup>1</sup> · schold stiȝtli to-gadere.  
& as sone as þe kniȝt kud · kome to þe stabul,  
þat þe stede him of-saw · sone he vp-leped,  
& faire wip his fore fet · kneled down to grounde, 3284 The horse kneels  
to him on its  
fore legs, and is  
quite docile.  
& made him þe most ioye · þat [man] miȝt deuisse,<sup>2</sup>  
& alle frekes þat him folwed · gret ferli hade.  
þe stede stod ful stille · þough he sterne were,  
while þe kniȝt him sadeled · & clanli him greiþed ;  
& wan vp wiȝtli him-self · whan he was ȝare, 3289 The knight  
saddles him and  
mounts.  
& schuft his scheld on is schulder · a scharp spere on  
honde,  
& gerd him wip a god swerd · for any man in erþe.  
þe stede liked wel þe lode · his lord whan he felte, 3292 The steed likes  
his load.  
he wist him wiȝt of dede · & wel coude ride,  
& braundised so bremli · þat alle burnes wondred  
of þe comli euntenaunce · of þe kniȝt þat he bare.

Read "the stede schold stiztli."—M.

Read "that man mizt deuisse." A common phrase.—M. See  
ll. 2985, 3075.

- [Fol. 53.]  
All are blithe to  
behold the  
knight.
- so schene, he was to se · in his semli armes, 3296  
 þat alle burnes were bliþe · to bi-hold him one ;  
 for so semli a seg · had þei nouzt zore seie.  
 þat quen & hire douzter · & meliors þe schene  
 wayteden out at a windowe · wilfulli in-fere, 3300  
 how that komeli kniȝt · kunteyned on his stede.  
 þe quen & here douzter · deuised him so moche,  
 & preisede him *perles* · for eny prince in erþe,  
 & seiden, “wel is þat womman · þat he wold haue !  
 vnder crist, is no kniȝt · þat so kud semeþ!” 3305  
 Meliors al þis mater · what it ment herde,  
 & was a-drad to þe deth · þei deseuy here wold,  
 to winne william here fro · þat þei so wel *praysede*,  
 & seide softili to hire-self · þese selue wordes, 3309  
 “Lord, zif þe hade liked · leuer me hade bene  
 haue woned in wildernesse<sup>1</sup> · wiþ mi lemman swete,  
 þan wonye here in al þe welþ · of þe world riche, 3312  
 to lese mi lemman · þat al mi loue weldes.”  
 swiche mistrowe had meliors · for þei só moche him  
 preised.
- thinking she  
would rather  
have William  
than all the  
world's wealth  
without him.
- Melior is alarmed  
at this,
- William rides  
through the city,
- and comes to  
where the  
defenders held  
their council.
- They rejoice at  
his bold bearing.
- [Fol. 53 b.]
- N**ow william on his sterne stede · now stifli forþ rides,  
 so serreli þurth þe cite · al him-self one, 3316  
 þat eche weiȝh was a-wondred · þat seiȝ wiþ eizen,  
 so coraious a *contenance* · þat kud kniȝt hadde.  
 william *prestili* priked · þer þe puple was sembled,  
 & alle þe solempne segges · þat þe cite zemed, 3320  
 bold barounes & kniȝtes · & oþer segges<sup>2</sup> nobul.  
 & whan þei were war of william · wilfulli alle,  
 þe komyng of þe *kuntenaunce* · of þe kniȝt nobul  
 þei bi-helden hertly · & hadden gret ioye, 3324  
 þa so manli a man · wold mele in here side,  
 þe nobul blonk þat him bar · a[s]<sup>3</sup> bliue þei knewe,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “wirderneffe.” Read “wildernesse.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “segeges.” Read “segges.”—M.

<sup>3</sup> Read “as blue.”—M.

- but witterli what he was · wist non of alle.  
*william* streiȝt went hem to · & wiȝtli saide, 3328  
 “ leue lordes, for goddes loue · lestenes my sawe !  
 it semeth þat ȝe ar segges · selkouþely nobul,  
 & bold burnes to abide · in batayles harde,  
 & wel armed ȝe arn · at alle maner poyntes. 3332  
 whi lete ȝe foulli ȝour fon · for-barre ȝou her-inne,  
 & do ȝou alle þe duresse · þat þei deuise konne,  
 & ȝe do no defence · þat despyt to wreke,  
 but couwardli as caitifs · couren here in meuwe ? 3336  
 Men, for ȝoure manchipe · na more þat suffreþ,  
 but wendeþ ouȝt wiȝtli · & wiþ ȝour fon meteþ,  
 haueþ reward to ȝour riȝt · & redli chul ȝe spede ;  
 & ȝe wite þei do wrong · þe worse schul þei happe. 3340  
 ȝif ȝe manli wiþ hem mete · þe maistry worþ oure,  
 þeiȝh þei be fiue so fele · as we in-fere alle.  
 & ȝe þat wilne to wynne · worchipe in armes,  
 folweþ me, for in feiþ · þe ferst wil i bene, 3344  
 þat smertli schal smite · þe alderfirst dint” :—  
 & ȝerne opened þe ȝates · & ȝepli out rides.  
 whan þe bold kniȝtes hade herde · þat burnes wordes,  
 & sey him so fersli forþ fare · so bi-fore hem alle, 3348  
 þei wist he was a wiȝt man · & wold nouȝt faile<sup>1</sup>  
 but þat he schuld hem help · þei hoped for soþe.  
 & foure hundred fers men · folwed him after,  
 of koraious kniȝtes · & oþer kud kempes, 3352  
 þat for to liuen or deyen · litel hem rouȝt.  
 & whan *william* was war · wiche a route sewede,  
 he was gainli glad · no gom þurt him blame,  
 & a-bod til þe burnes · a-boute him were come. 3356  
 þe spaynolnes hem hade a-spiede · & spakli gun ride,  
 wiþ gret bobauȝce & bost · blowand here trompes ;  
 for þei seiȝ so fewe · out of þe cite come  
 aȝens hem þre .M̄. · þei ne tok non hede 3360  
 to reule hem of non array · but riȝt, for gret pride,

They know the horse, but not the man.

William harangues them.

asking them why they let their foes bar them in.

He exhorts them to make a sally.

and their courage will supply their lack of numbers.

He will go first, and strike the first blow.

He opens the gates, and rides out.

Four hundred bold men follow him.

[Fol. 54.]

The Spaniards attack them,

being 3,000 in number.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “falle.” Read “faile.”—M.

- eche burn bi-fore oþer · on his blonk prikede,  
to asayle þe segges · þat fro þe cite come.
- William exhorts  
his men to stand  
well together, and  
to yield no inch  
of ground. william seide to his whieȝs · wittili for soþe, 3364  
“ Lordinges & leue frendes · listenes to my sawes !  
þeȝh ȝe be ferd of ȝour fon · fleþ neuer þe sunner ;  
þe bolder ouȝt we be · þei ben out of araie.  
stonde we stifi to-gader · stifi in defens, 3368  
& ne leses no lond · lordinges, god for-bede !  
eche lud þenk on his lemman · & for hire loue so fiȝt,  
to winne worchip þer-wiþ · in worlde for euer-more.  
& in feiþ, þeȝh eft as fele · of our fomen were, 3372  
deliuerli þurth ȝour dedes · schul þei deie sone.”  
kniȝtes wiþ sire william · kauȝt [þanne] <sup>1</sup> god hert,  
& realiche were a-raized · in a litel while,  
In a ful styf strengþe · to stonde to fiȝt. 3376  
þer kom a kniȝt to-fore · þe companye of spayne,  
a stif man & a stern · þat was þe kinges stiward,  
& cheueteyn was chose · þat eschel to lede.  
& for boldnesse of his bodi · be-fore alle he went, 3380  
armed at alle poyntes · on a nobul stede.
- William perceives  
him coming. william was wiȝtly · whar of his come,  
& gamli to his gomes · gan for to seie,  
“ bi crist, ȝond kniȝt · þat komeþ here armed, 3384  
dredeþ litel oure dedes · what-euer he do þink.  
but bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule,  
I wol fonde be þe first · in feld him to mete ;  
but our on titly tumbel · trowe me neuer after.” 3388  
spacli boute speche · his spere þanne he hente,  
& euen to þat stiward · dede his stede renne,  
& manli as miȝti men · eiþer mette oþer,  
& spacli þe oþeres spere · in spelles þau wente. 3392  
ac williams was strong inow · wittow forsoþe,  
& he so sternli þe stiward · þat ilk time litte,  
þurth þe bold bodi · he bar him to þe erþe,  
as ded as dornayl · te deme þe soþe. 3396
- Let each man  
think of his lady-  
love !  
The Spanish  
king's steward  
leads the attack.
- They array  
themselves in  
good order.
- The Spanish  
king's steward  
leads the attack.
- William perceives  
him coming.
- [Fol. 54 b.]  
and says he will  
be the first to  
meet him.
- William  
encounters the  
steward,
- and bears him  
down to the  
earth, as dead as  
a doornail.

<sup>1</sup> See note.

"I-wis," þenne seide william · "i wot wel to wisse,  
 þow dost vs neuer after · no duresse in armes!"  
 ac spaely þe spaynoles · speized he was slayne,  
 þei were [wode]<sup>1</sup> of here witt · wittow for soþe, 3400  
 hastili hent vp his bodi · & to here tentes bere,  
 þat it were nouzt in þat fiȝt · wit here horse troden.  
 & as bliue boldli · þe burnes of spayne,  
 þouzt manli make wreche · here lorlde<sup>2</sup> to queme, 3404  
 for swiche a lorlde<sup>2</sup> of lederes · ne liued nouzt, þei held,  
 non so douzti of dedus · þer-for his deth a-wreke<sup>3</sup>  
 þei þouzt þroli þat time · what bi-falle after.

The Spaniards,  
seeing him slain,  
bear his body to  
their tents.

They resolve to  
avenge him.

A ful breme bataile · bi-gan þat ilk time, 3408  
 whan eiþer sides a-sembled · of þo segges sturne.  
 Mani a spere spacli · on peces were to-broke,  
 & many a schene scheld · schenered al to peces,  
 Many helmes to-hewe · þurth here huge strokes. 3412  
 & redili for to rekene · al þe riȝt soþe,  
 william & his wizes · so wonderli fouzten,  
 þat þei felden here fon · ful fast to grounde.  
 non miȝt here strok wiȝ-stond · in þat stounde þan, 3416  
 so wel for williams werkes · were þei þan herted.  
 þe stiward had a newe · but of ȝong age,  
 on þe manlokest man · þat men schold of heren,  
 & douztiest of dedes · þat men schuld do in armes. 3420  
 as swifthi as he wist · þat his em was slawe,  
 he þouzt duelfulli þa deth · þat day to a-wreke.  
 armed at alle poyntes · anon he þider went,  
 & presed in a-mang þe pepul · þer it was þikkest, 3424  
 & sone to hem of þe eite · a-sembled he þanne,  
 & fauȝt þan so ferscheli · for his emes sake,  
 he dude to dethe deliuerli · fiue gode kniȝtes,  
 and slays five  
good knights.

Then began a  
fierce battle.

Spears are  
broken, shields  
shivered, and  
helms hewn  
through.

William's men  
fight well.

[Fol. 55.]

The steward's  
nephew

resolves to avenge  
his uncle's death,

and slays five  
good knights.

<sup>1</sup> Read "were *wode* of here witt."—M.

<sup>2</sup> *Sic* in MS. See l. 3955.

<sup>3</sup> MS. "a wrekes." Read "a-wreke," or "a-wreken," in the infinitive.—M. Cf. l. 3422.

- þat bold were in bataile · to a-bide at nede. 3428  
 William forces  
 his way to him. whan william wist of þat werk · wittow forsoþe,  
 þer nas man vpon molde · þat him miȝt lette,  
 þat he ne perced þe pres · prestili þat time,  
 til he met wiþ þat man · þat miȝti was hold. 3432  
 The steward's  
 nephew knows  
 William by the  
 werwolf on his  
 shield. whan þe stiwardes newe · saw william come,  
 bi þe werwolf in his scheld · wel he him knewe,  
 þat þe same seg hade slawe · his em þer-to-fore.  
 & wiȝtli as a wod man · to william he priked, 3436  
 Their spears  
 break, and they  
 fight with swords. at þe a-coupyng þe kniȝtes [speres]<sup>1</sup> · eiþer brak on  
 oþer,  
 swiftli wiþ here swerdes · swinge þei to-geder,  
 & delten duelful dentes · deliuerli þat stounde. 3440  
 & william was þe wiȝtere · & wel sarre smot,  
 & set so hard a strok · sone after on þat oþer,  
 þurth helm & hed hastili · to þe brest it grint.  
 William's sword  
 grinds through  
 helm and head  
 down to the  
 breast, þe swerd swiftili swenged · þurth þe bode euen, 3444  
 þat tit ouer his hors-tail · he tumbled ded to grounde.  
 þat ilk stoute kniȝtes stede · & þe stiwardes also  
 and he sends his  
 foe's horse and  
 the steward's  
 horse to Melior  
 as a present. william sent sone · to his semli lemman,  
 wher-of sche was geinli glad · & oft god þonked, 3448  
 þa he so wel hade wrouȝt · in werre þat day.

[Fol. 55 b.]

- William<sup>2</sup> & his burnes · þan in bataile were,  
 so felly wiþ here fon · fouȝt þat ilke time,  
 bi a stounde was non so stef · þat hem wiþ-stonde miȝt,  
 The Spaniards  
 turn to flight. but were fayn for to fle · eche bi-fore oþer, 453  
 wel was him in þe world · þat swifliest miȝt hiȝe,  
 oþer on hors oþer on fote · for fere<sup>3</sup> of þe deþe.  
 William and his  
 men pursue them  
 5 miles, taking  
 many prisoners. & william & his whiȝes · went after sone, 3456  
 & maden manli þe chas · mo þan fiue mile,

<sup>1</sup> Read "the kniztes *speres*."—M.<sup>2</sup> The capital W is absent, but its place is marked by a very small w.<sup>3</sup> MS. "fore." Read "fere."—M.



- & grete prisons & gode · gotten þei þat time ;  
 þat meked hem nouȝt to mercy · manli þei slowe,  
 & whan þei time seie · turned hem hom a-ȝene, 3460  
 herizeden<sup>1</sup> heili god · þat þei wel had spedde.  
 but holli williams werkes · þei witteden it alle,  
 made his douȝthi dedes be · þei hade be dede alle ;  
 & louted to [him] as to lord · þe lasse & þe more, 3464  
 & eche a gom was gladdest · hoo gaynest him miȝt  
 ride.
- al þe sorwe þei hadde suffred · [so] lang to-fore,  
 þei sett it soþli at nouȝt · so glad were þei þan, 3467  
 for þe douȝthi kniȝtes dedus · þat þat day hem helped.  
 wiȝ al þe murthe vpon molde · þo miȝthi men in-ferre  
 passeden to þe paleys · proude of here dedes.  
 þe comly quen & here douȝter · com him a-ȝens,  
 & þe me[n]skful meliors · wiȝ maydenes fele, 3472  
 & welcomed william · as þei wel ouȝte,  
 wiȝ clipping & kessing · & alle kinde dedus.  
 þe quen him loueli ladde · riȝt to h[er]e chaumber,  
 vn-armed him anon · & afterward cloþed 3476  
 clenliche for eny [kniȝt] · þat vnder crist liuede.  
 þan sete þei þre · to solas hem at þe windowe,  
 euen ouer þe ioly place · þat to þat paleis longed,  
 þere as þe quen fond william · & his faire make. 3480  
 & as þei waited a-boute · wil þei of murthe speke,  
 williams werwolf · was comen þider þanne,  
 loked vpon þe ladies · & his loueli maister,  
 & held vp his foure-fet · in fourme to craue mercy, 3484  
 & louted to hem loueli · and lelly þer-after,  
 he went wiȝtly a-wei · whider him god liked.  
 þe quen þer-of was a-wondred · & to william seide,  
 “sire, saw ȝe þis selcoupe · of þis semli best ? 3488  
 wonder signes he wrouȝt · what mai hit tokene ?”  
 “ȝis, certes, madame” · seide william þanne,  
 “i sei þe signes mi-self · & soþli ich hope,

All are aware  
 that it was all  
 William's doing.

They forgot all  
 their former  
 sufferings.

The queen, her  
 daughter, and  
 Melior meet and  
 welcome them.

The queen  
 unarms and  
 clothes him.

She sits with him  
 and Melior at the  
 window looking  
 out on the park.

The werwolf  
 appears, and  
 [Fol. 56.]  
 holds up his  
 fore feet as in  
 supplication, and  
 goes his way.

The queen asks  
 what he means.

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps miswritten for “herizende.”

William says it is  
a good sign.

It bi-tokneþ gret god · þat greiþli schal vs falle." 3492  
"3e, 3if crīst wol," quod þe quen · "[þat]<sup>1</sup> on croyce  
deied ;

The queen tells  
her story—how  
she had a son  
named William,

but, sire, whan i se þat best · þat þo signes made,  
a sorwe sinkeþ to mi hert · i schal 3ou telle whi.  
sum time, sire, here-to-fore · a semli sone i hadde, 3496  
þat was hote william · i-wisse, as 3e arn.

who, when 4 years  
old, was playing  
in the park,

feiþli whan þat faire child · was of foure 3er eld,  
as my lord and i · and oþer ludes many,  
plei3ed vs her in þe park · in place þer i 3ou fond, 3500  
for al þe world swiche a wolf · as we here sei3en,  
It semeth ri3t þat selue · bi semblant & bi hewe.  
com gapind a gret pace · & cau3t vp mi sone,  
ri3t bi-fore his fader · and oþer frakes manye, 3504  
& went awey with him · so wonderli fast.

when a werwolf  
caught him up  
and ran off with  
him.

The king and  
his men pursued  
him over mires  
and mountains,  
but in vain.

My lord & many a-noþer · manliche him sewed  
ouer mires & muntaynes · & oþer wicked wei3es ;  
at þe last þei him left · for mi3th þat þei couþe. 3508  
forþ with my sone in-to þe see · þat scri best leped,  
so þat i herde hider-to · neuer of him more.  
& certes, sire, for þat sone · i hade gret sorwe,  
whan i þenk on þat sorwe · it þirles my hert." 3512

The werwolf leapt  
into the sea, and  
was seen no  
more.

William  
remembers how  
he was found by  
the cowherd,

**W**illiam was in a wer · þat it were him-selue.  
how þe couherd þe king told · it cam him in  
minde.

but reflects that  
the queen said  
her son was  
drowned.

[Fol. 56 b.]  
He tells her he  
will stand in her  
son's stead.

þat he him fond in þe forest · in faire riche cloþes. 3515  
but sche seide þat hire sone · was in þe see dronked,  
& þe wolf also · þat him a-wei bare,  
þe þroli þou3t þat him meued · þer-of þat ilk time  
sone he let ouer-slide · & seide to þe quene, 3519  
þat sche schuld make hire merie · hire meyne to glade,  
& he wold in hire sones stede · stand euer at nede.  
sche ful godli gan him þonke · & gaf him hol mi3th,  
to meyntene al hire god · as maister in his owne.

She thanks him,  
and gives him  
full powers.

<sup>1</sup> Read "the quen, that on croyce deied."—M.

- þan talked þei of oþer tales · til time were to soupe,  
 & were serued bi ese · as hem-self wold, 3525 They sup and  
make merry till  
nightfall.
- & so driuen forth þe day · til þe derke niȝt,  
 with al þe mirthe vpon mold · þat man miȝth deuise.  
 þis lessoun let we of hem · & lesten we a-noþer ; 3528
- of þe spaynolus wol i speke · how spacli þei fled ; The Spaniards  
who fled told the  
king of Spain and  
his son of  
William's  
prowess ;
- þilke þat went with þe lif · a-wei fro þat sthoure,  
 spakli to þe king of spayne · þei sped hem þat time,  
 & seide to him & his sone · þe cas þat was falle, 3532
- whiċh a kniȝt com hem a-ȝenis · *conquered alle oþer*,  
 so sterne he was & stoute · & swiche st[r]okes lent ;  
 was non so stif stelen wede · þat with-stod his wepen ;  
 & how he in þe stour · þe stoute stiward slow, 3536 and how he had  
slain the steward  
and his nephew,  
whom the king  
ought to avenge.
- and his nobul neuew · a-non riȝt þer-after ;  
 & bede wiȝtli hem awreke · of þe wicked harme,  
 or alle men vpon mold · miȝth hem schame speke ;  
 so fele of here frendes · in þe feld were slayne, 3540
- þat it was a sorful siȝt · to se how it ferde.  
 whan þe king & his *conseil* · herde of þis cas,  
 a selecouþ sorwe he made · & his sone als,  
 þat was a ful kud þniȝt · & kene man *in armes*. 3544 The king's son  
begs his father  
that he may lead  
a host to  
avenge  
themselves.
- he was wod of his wit · for wrapþe of þat dede,  
 & praiȝed prestili þis poynt · anon of his fader,  
 þat he most on þe morwe · with a miȝthi ost  
 wende to a-wrek hem · of þat wicked dede. 3548
- & ȝif he mette with þat kniȝt · þat is so miȝthi hold,  
 he swor sadli is oþ · as tit to his fader,  
 þat he fro þe bodi · [wold]<sup>1</sup> haue his hed sone,  
 oþer tit take him a-liue · no ȝain-torn schuld lette. 3552 He swears to  
have William's  
head, or to take  
him alive.
- þer-of þe king was geynli glad · & graunted his wille,  
 bad him worche whan he wold · & wend whan him  
 liked. [Fol. 57.]
- þe kinges sone aswiþe · let sembul miche puple,  
 & triȝed him to a tidi ost · of þe tideȝist burnes, 3556 He gets a host  
together,
- þat he miȝth *in* þe mene time · in any *maner* gadere.

<sup>1</sup> Read "fro the bodi wold haue."—M.

- Manli on þe morwe · he dede his men greiþe  
 Gaili as gomes miȝt be · in alle gode armes ;  
 and takes the field on the morrow. faire þan with his folk · to þe feld he went 3560  
 bi-fore boldli him-self · his batailes to araie.  
 alle his burnes bliue · in x batailes he sett,  
 as redili araized · as any rink þort wilne.
- He has 3,000 men. & iij.  $\bar{M}$ . þro men · in his eschel were, 3564  
 & alle bold burnes · in batailes strong & bigge.  
 þe kinges sone þan seide · to his segges bold,
- He asks his lords how he is to know William. “ Leue lordinges, for mi loue · lelli me telles, 3567  
 ȝif i encoultre with þis kniȝt · þat þis kare worcheþ,  
 how schal i him knowe · what konichauzs here he  
 bere ? ”
- A knight says he may know him either by his deeds, or by the werwolf on his shield. “ sertes, sere,” seide a kniȝt · “ so me wel time,  
 þat kud kniȝt is eth to knowe · by his kene dedes,  
 & bereth in his blasoun · of a brit hewe 3572  
 a wel huge werwolf · wonderli depeinted ;  
 þat man driues a-doun · to dethe, þat [he] hittes.”
- The king's son says it will soon be seen who is strongest. “ sone it schal be sene ” · seide þe kinges sone,  
 “ wheþer of vs be wiȝttere · to winne or to lese.” 3576
- William's men, on the morrow, are well arrayed. **N**ow wol i a while · of william here telle,  
 in what maner on þe morwe · is men were araid,  
 deliuerli at þe dai · diȝt þei were alle,  
 treuli in al atir · þat to werre longed. 3580
- He divides them into 6 companies. & william ful wiȝtthli · as he wel couþe,  
 set aȝe his segges · as þei schuld bene,  
 In sexe semli batailes · as þei schuld bene ;<sup>1</sup>  
 al be-fore in þe frond · he ferde þan him-selue. 3584
- His horse's name was Elrouns' Saundbruel. [Fol. 57 b.]  
 The prince's men point out William to him. ebrouzs saundbruel · so hiȝt his blouk nobul.  
 & as sone as þe kinges sone · saw him so come,  
 fast he freyned at his folk · what freke þat it were,  
 & þei seide ful sone · “ for soþe, it is þat kniȝt, 3588  
 þat haþ wrouȝt al þis wo · wel ouȝt we him hate ;

<sup>1</sup> The last half of this line is clearly copied from the line before.

- alle he drines to þe deth · þat his dint feles.”  
 þe kinges sone forsoþe · ne seide þo na more,  
 but gart his [stede]<sup>1</sup> goo · and streizet to him rides  
 with his spere on feuter · festened þat time. 3593  
 whan william was war · & wist of his come,  
 his men seiden sone · it was þe kinges sone,  
 & douzthi man & deliuer · in dedes of armes. 3596  
 “lat me worþ,” quap william · “þat schal i wite sone  
 In feiþ þouzh he hade fors · of foure swiche oþer.  
 I wol fond with him fiȝt · þouzh me tide þe worse.”  
 he dede þen his stef stede · stert a god spede, 3600  
 to þe kene kinges [sone]<sup>2</sup> · þat was a kniȝt nobul.  
 so kenli þei a-cuztred · at þe coupyng to-gadere,  
 þat þe kniȝt spere in speldes · alto-schiuered.  
 ac williams spere was stef · wittow for soþe, 3604  
 & mette þat oþer man · in þe midde scheld,  
 þat boþe him & his hors · he hurles to grounde ;  
 & neiȝ hade broke his bak · so his blonk him hirt.  
 william þan wiȝtli · be þe auentayle him hent, 3608  
 to haue with his swerd · swapped of his hed ;<sup>3</sup>  
 but þe segges of spayne · souȝt to him<sup>4</sup> ȝerne,  
 to haue holpen here lord · hastili ȝif þei miȝt ;  
 & williams wiȝes wiȝttli · went hem a-ȝens. 3612  
 þo bi-gan þat batayle · on boþe sides harde,  
 feller saw neuer frek · from adam to þis time ;  
 sone was mani bold barn · brouȝt þer to ground,  
 Mani scheldes schiuered · & mani helmes hewen, 3616  
 & many a stif stede · straizед in þere blode.  
 bold burnes of bodies · þere were on boþe sides,  
 þat fayn were forto fiȝt · & to fle hated.  
 but william so wonder wel · fauȝt þat ilke time, 3620

The prince rides  
at William,

who is told it is  
the prince who  
is coming.

William says he  
will fight him,—

and rides to  
meet him.

The prince's spear  
breaks,

but William's  
strikes the prince  
fairly, hurling  
horse and man to  
the ground.

William is going  
to “swap” off  
his head,

but the Spaniards  
come to the  
rescue.

A general battle  
ensues, very  
severe and deadly.

[Fol. 58.]

<sup>1</sup> Read “gart his stede goo.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read “the kene kinges sone that was.”—M.

<sup>3</sup> The MS. apparently has “heued,” altered to “heade.” See l. 3864.

<sup>4</sup> MS. “him to ȝerne;” and “to” is altered to “so” by a later hand.

William fights  
boldly, and  
prevents the  
resene of the  
prince,

þat no man þat he hit · miȝth him with-stonde,  
& euer kept þe kinges<sup>1</sup> sone · fram al his kene meyne,  
þat non miȝt him winne a-wei · for worse ne for beter.  
& were hem lef oþer loþ · william at last 3624

whom he drags  
out of the *mêlée*,

keuered with þe kinges sone · out of þe kene prese,  
& brouȝt him out on his blonk · of þat batayle sterne,  
& a-signed of citesens · segges i-nowe, 3627

and assigns to  
some citizens to  
keep.

to kepe wel þe kinges sone · til þei come to towne ;  
& þei were bliþe of þat bode · & bisiliche fondede  
fast to ferke him forþward · as þei faire miȝt.

The Spaniards  
again attempt a  
reseue, a fresh  
host coming out  
of ambush.

whan þe spaynols þat a-spied · spakli þei him folwed,  
and deden al þe duresse · þat þei do miȝt. 3632

a fersche ost hem to help · hastili þer come,  
þat was a-buschid þer bi-side · in a brent greue.

William keeps up  
his men's  
courage,

but whan william was war · & wist of here come,  
Manly he demeyned him · to make his men egre, 3636

bad hem alle be bold · & busiliche fiȝt,  
for here fon gun feynte · & felde were manye.  
þe kinde confort of þe kniȝt · to is folk þat he made,<sup>2</sup>  
were als fresch forto fiȝt · as þei were on morwe. 3640

but perceives that  
the enemles are  
too numerous ;

but william say þer oþer side · so fers & so breme,

þat his men miȝt nouȝt · meyntene here owne,  
prestli to hold party · to puple þat hem folwed.

wherefore he  
orders a retreat  
to the town.

for-þi he dede hem deliuerli · drawe toward towne, 3644

& kepten wel þe kinges [sone]<sup>3</sup> · for cas þat miȝt  
falle,

His men are  
successful in  
bringing the  
prince with them.

for ouȝt þat here<sup>4</sup> enimys · euer worche miȝt.

þei keuered with clene strengþe · with him to towne,  
& þe segges of þe cite · but þo þat slayn were. 3648

Yeomen shut the  
gates and man  
the walls.

& ȝepli ȝomen þan dede · þe ȝates schette,  
& wiȝttili þan went · þe walles forto fende,  
so þat feiþli of here fon · no fors þei ne leten.

<sup>1</sup> MS. "kenges." But see ll. 3591, 3601, 3625.

<sup>2</sup> A line lost (?)

<sup>3</sup> Read "the kinges sone for cas."—M. See ll. 3601, 3625.

<sup>4</sup> The MS. repeats the words þat here.

- W**illiam with his wiezes · is wiþ-in þe cite nobul,  
 haþ conquered wiþ elene strengþe · þe kinges sone  
 of spayne,
- & passeþ with him & his puple · to þe paleys euen,  
 with al mirth vpon molde · þat man miȝt deuise.  
 þe quen him mett mekli · wiþ maidenes fele, 3656  
 & meliors & here dere douȝter · to deme þe soþe,  
 wiþ alle worschip & wele · william þei receyued,  
 wiþ clipping & kesseng · & alle couþe dedes.  
 & william þan wiȝtly · wiþ-oute eny more, 3660 and delivers him  
 þe kinges sone of spayne · spokli to hire ȝalde, over to the queen.  
 to putte in hire prisoun · & peyne him as hire liked.  
 & curtesli to þat kniȝt · gan sche knele þanne,
- forto þonk him þroli · of þat faire ȝeft; 3664 The queen thanks  
 for he was man vpon molde · þat sche most hated, William heartily.  
 & hade hir do most duresse · for hire douȝter sake.  
 hastili in-to þe halle · wiþ hem þan sche went,  
 & ladde william as lord · loueli in londe; 3668
- & as bliue þe burdes · brouȝt him to hire chaumber,  
 & vn-armed him anon · & after-ward him cloped  
 as komly as any kniȝt · vnder crist þort bene.  
 seþen ȝede to sitte same · to solas & to pleie 3672  
 at a wid windowe · þat was in þe chaumber,  
 & gonne mekli to mene · of many gode wordes.  
 & as þei saddest in here solas · seten þat time,  
 þe quen hertli gan bi-hold · þe kene ȝonge kniȝt, 3676  
 & here þouȝt þat time · þat in þe world was neuer  
 a liuande lud · so lelli liche oþer,
- as þat komli kniȝt · to þe king ebrouns,  
 þat was lord whil he liued · & þat lor[d]chipe welte. 3680 the queen sees  
 & swiche a sorwe to hire sone · sank to herte, and she begins  
 þat wiȝtli gan sche wepe · wonderly sore. to weep.  
 whan william saw hire wepe · wroþli he seide, 3683  
 “for seynt mary loue, madame · whi make ȝe þis sorwe? William says she  
 ȝe schuld now make ȝow merie · ȝour mene to glade, ought rather to  
 þat feynt ar for-fouten · in feld & for-wounded. rejoice.”

since her enemies  
are beaten.

[Fol. 59.]

to summe schuld 3e 3if now · 3iftes ful gode,<sup>1</sup>  
& to summe by-hote · þe bliþer hem to make. 3688  
Mater now haue 3e · moche mirie to bene ;  
3e han now on in hold · þurth him haue 3e schulle  
wel 3our worchep a-3ein · as 3e walt euer."

The queen excuses  
herself,

"**F**orsoþe, sire," seide þe quen · " 3e seyn al þe treuþe ;  
3e make me mater i-now · mirye to bene. 3693

I wot for i so wept · i wrouzt nouzt þe best,  
but i miȝt nouzt þer-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe,  
so þroli a sori þouzt · þirled min hert,"— 3696

telling him the  
reason of her  
sorrow,

& soþli whi it was · þe encheson him seide,  
how hire þouzt he was liche · hire lord þe king þanne,  
& hou þe sorwe of hire sone · dede hire so to wepe.  
þan seide william wȝtli · þese wordes to hire-selue, 3700

William tells her  
to think no more  
of it, since both  
her husband and  
son are dead,

"Madame, of þat mater · no more now þinkes ;  
what be 3e now þe beter · so bitterli to wepe,  
seþþe boþe þi sire & þi sone · arn boþe dede ?  
þeiȝh 3e driȝen swiche duel · al 3our lif dawes, 3704

and will never  
come to life again.

3e gete hem neuer a-gayn · late god haue þe saules,  
& make 3our-self mirie · 3our mene forto glade."  
þan wax þe quen ful wo · wittow for soþe,  
þat william seide þat hire sone · schuld be dede, 3708

Still the queen's  
heart tells her he  
is her son.

for hire hert bar hire euer · þat he hire sone schuld bene,  
bi knowing of alle kontenaunce · þat þe king walt.  
but of þat mater no more · minged þei þat time,  
ac turned in-to oþer tales · þat touched to mirth. 3712  
& waitende<sup>2</sup> out at þe window · as þei in tales were,

Looking out, they  
see the werwolf,  
who kneels and  
bows, and goes  
his way.

þan þei seie þe werwolf · was com hem bi-fore,  
Kortesliche kneeling · as he in wise couþe,  
& louted to þe ladies · & to þe lord also, 3716  
buxumli as any best · bi any resoun schuld,  
& seþþen went his wei · whider him god liked.  
þe quen wȝtli to william · þese wordes seide,

<sup>1</sup> Catchword, " & to summe by."

<sup>2</sup> MS. "waidende." Read "waitende."—M.



"sire, a selcouþ siȝt it is · of þis semli best ;      372<sup>1</sup> The queen hopes  
 Ioo, how loueli it a-louted · lowe to vs twiȝes,  
 It bi-tokenes sum-what treuli · god turne it to gode !"      [Fol. 59 b.]  
 "ȝa, i-wisse," seide william · "wene ȝe non oþer,  
 for þat blessed best · neuer boded but gode.      372<sup>4</sup> William says it  
 he þat heried helle · fram harm him saue !"  
 "amen," seiden alle · þat þere with him seten.  
 þus driue þei forþ þe day · with diuerse mirthe,  
 & treuli whan it was time · turned to mete,      3728 They go to meat.  
 & serued were of serues · as hem-self liked ;  
 but speke we of þe spaynols · what hem tidde after.

Sone as þe kinges sone · was to þe cite take,  
 þat his miȝti men · miȝt no more him help,      3732 Great is the  
 þer was a selcouþ sorwe · a-mang þe segges maked,  
 & karfulli to þe king · þei kayred a-ȝayne,  
 & told him holli here tene · how his sone was take,  
 & how here segges were slayn · a selcouþ noumber. 3736  
 whan þe king wist · as man wod he ferde,  
 & wroþli to his wiȝes · þat þere were he seide,  
 "whi suffred ȝe my sone · so sone to be take ?  
 ȝe schul hastli be honged · & with hors to-drawe !"      3740 threatening to  
 & deraized him for þat dede · as alle deie schulde.  
 but kniȝtes of his cunseil · com til him sone,  
 & saide him soburli · so miȝt he nouȝt worehe,  
 for a kniȝt him *conquerede* · al with clene strengþe,  
 & hade him out of þe ost · mawgrey hem alle.      3745  
 "o kniȝt," quaf þe king · "what kemp is þat ilke,  
 þat wan so on my sone · is he so douȝti ?"  
 "ȝe forsoþe," seid on · "sire, with ȝour leue,      3748  
 þer mai no man vpon mold · aȝens þat man stond.  
 he driueþ to dethe · who-so his dent caccheþ,  
 his douȝti dedes vs doþ · more duresse þan alle oþer ;  
 he it is þat þe werwolf · weldes in his scheld."      3752  
 "I mak a vow," *quod* þe king · "to crist þat al weldes,  
 er i ete more mete · his miȝt wol i a-saie ;  
 The king vows he  
 will prove his  
 mettle ere he eats  
 meat.

& ȝif any egge tol wol entre · in-to his bodi,  
 I wol do him to þe deth · and more despit ouere ; 3756  
 he schal heiȝe be honged · riȝt bi-fore hire ȝate,  
 þat alle þe segges of þe cite · schulle him bi-hold,  
 & seȝpen wol i þat cite · setten al on fure,  
 & do bruten alle þe burnes · þat be now þer-inne ; 3760  
 schal no gom vnder god · oþer gate it make.”  
 þan komaunder þe king · to do krie as swiȝe,  
 þat alle his rinkes schuld be redi · riȝt erli on morwe,  
 armed at alle poyntes · as þei no wold be spilt, 3764  
 & hasteli was his hest · þan hendli fulfilled.

His men are to  
 be ready on the  
 morrow.

The Spaniards  
 are armed, and  
 come down to the  
 plain.

They find there  
 500 bodies of  
 their comrades.

The bodies are  
 borne away to  
 the tents, to be  
 buried later.

The king sets his  
 men in three  
 battalions,

of 2000 men each.

William and his  
 men issue out of  
 the city,

Ful manlich on þe morwe · were his men greiþed,  
 of bold memnis bodiessse · a ful breme ost.  
 Gailier greiþed · were neuer gomes seie, 3768  
 of alle maner armure · þat to werre longed.  
 þan passed þe spaynols · in-to a faire plaine,  
 þer as þe breme bataile · was on þe day bi-fore.  
 þere þan founde þei fele · of here frendes slayne, 3772  
 Mo þan fiue hundred · of nobul frekes holde.  
 þe king þan for þat kas · was karful in hert,  
 & moche sorwe was sone · for þat siȝt maked.  
 but þan bad þe king bliue · þe bodies take 3776  
 of alle þe gomes of gode · & greiþli hem bere  
 til þe tentis, til þei miȝt haue · tom hem to berie ;  
 & deliuerli in dede · was don al his hest.  
 þe king þan treuli · in þre batayles sturne 3780  
 faire dede sette his folk · fast as he miȝt,  
 In as real aray · as rink schold deuise.  
 þer were in eche bataile · of burnes tvo þousand,  
 armed at alle pointes · and auenantli horsed, 3784  
 In eche eschel stifi set · þer þei stonde schold.  
 now of william & his wiȝes · a-non wol i telle.  
 W illiam & his wiȝes · were armed wel sone,  
 as semli to siȝt · as any segges þurte, 3788

& softli Iced out of þe cite · whan þei seie time.  
 william went al bi-fore · as wis man & nobul, [Fol. 60 b.]  
 & ordeyned anon his ost · in þre grete parties, ordering his men  
 & sett of<sup>1</sup> bolde burnes · in eche bataile senene hundred, in three  
 of elene kniȝtes armed · & oþer kete burnes, 3793 companies, of  
 & spak spakli þese wordes · þe spaynols whan he seie :— 700 each.  
 “Lo, lordinges,” sede william · “wich a loueli siȝt  
 here bi-fore vs of our fon · of ferche men & bold! 3796  
 þer is holti al here ost · now beth of hertes gode,  
 & we schul wel þis day · þis werre bring to ende  
 onliche ȝourh<sup>2</sup> godes grace · & ȝour gode dede.  
 þouȝh þer be mani mo þan ȝe · dismaie ȝe nouȝt þerfore,  
 God wol vs ay rescue · & with þe riȝt stonde ; 3801 God will defend  
 Go we to hem on godes name · with a god wille. the right.  
 & i mow come bi þe king · bi crist, as ich hope,  
 he schal sone þer-after · to his sone wende, 3804 I will imprison  
 to soiorne in þe cite · þat he haȝ seged ȝore. the king with his  
 þer-for, frendes & felawes · for him þat ȝou bouȝt, soun.  
 doȝ ȝour dede to-day · as douȝti men schulle, Do doughty deeds  
 & gret worehipe schul ȝe winne · whil þis world lasteȝ.” to-day.”  
 In þis wise william · his wiȝes þan cumforted, 3809  
 þat þei hent swiche herte · as hardi men schuld.  
 þan aswiȝe þei sembled · [eiþer ost]<sup>3</sup> to-gader,  
 & alle maner menstracie · maked was sone 3812 Tabours and  
 of tabours & trumpes · non miȝt þe number telle. trumps are  
 & eiþer ost as swiȝe · fast aseried oþer, sounded.  
 & a-sembleden swiȝe sternli · eiþer ost to-gader, The hosts  
 Gretand oþer grimli · with scharpe grounde speres. 3816 encounter.  
 Mani a bold burn · was sone brouȝt of dawe,  
 & many a stef stede · stiked þere to dethe,  
 no man vpon mold · miȝt ayme þe number  
 of wiȝes þat in a while · were slayn on boþe side. 3820  
 but william as a wod man · was euer here & þere,  
 & leide on swiche liuere · leue me forsoȝe, William is here  
 and there.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “ob.”<sup>2</sup> *Sic.* Read “þurh;” see note.<sup>3</sup> See l. 3815.

þat his daies were don · þat of him hent a dent,  
 þe king of spaine & his kniȝtes · so kenli hem bere,  
 & so fresli gon fiȝte · þat at þe first a-saute, 3825  
 þat fele of williams frekes · gon to fle ȝerne.  
 whan william was war · wiȝtli he hem a-schriȝed,  
 & cumfort hem craftli · with his kinde speche, 3828  
 þat þei tit aȝen turned · to telle þe soþe,  
 & bere hem wel bete · þen þei bi-fore hade.

The king asks,  
 "Where is he  
 that bears the  
 wolf on his  
 shield?"

Þe king of spayne gan crie · keneli & schille,  
 "war be he þat þe wolf · weldes in his scheld, 3832  
 þat haþ murþered mi men · & swiche harm wrouȝt?  
 Miȝt i now haue hap · him ones to sene,

I will hunt him  
 as a honnd hunts  
 a werwolf.

I wold him hunte as hard · as euer houȝde in erthe  
 honted eny werwolf · but wel he his ware 3836  
 þat i so many hondes · haue on him vn-coupled,  
 þat he for alle his douȝti dedes · dar him nouȝt schewe.

Whoever brings  
 him to me shall  
 be my chief  
 steward."

but what man vpon molde · so may him me bring,  
 I schal riuedli him rewarde · to be riche for euer, 3840  
 & mak him my chef stiward · to stiȝtli alle my godes."

The son of the  
 constable of  
 Spain,

þan was þer a kul kniȝt · þe cumstables some of spayne,  
 come wel þre daies bi-fore · þe king for to help.  
 an .e. kene kniȝttes · in cumpanie he brouȝt, 3844  
 & him-self a bold burn · þe best of hem alle,

named Meliadus,

& meliadus of miȝti men · þe kniȝt was called.  
 whan he þe kinges cry · clenli hadde herde,

bursts into the  
 thick of the fight,

as bliue with his burnes · he braide in-to prese, 3848  
 & demened him douȝtli · with dentes ful<sup>1</sup> rude.

slaying six lords,  
 and wounding a  
 seventh.

he slow of þe citeȝens · in a schort while,  
 six grete lordes · and þe seuenþe nere.

William  
 encounters him.

whan william was war · of his douȝti dedes, 3852  
 deliuerly as a douȝti man · he drow to him euen,

Their spears fly  
 into splinters,  
 and they swing  
 their swords.

Grimli eiþer oþer gret · whan þei gonne mete,  
 so spakli here speres · al on speldes went.  
 & swiftli seþþe with swerdes · swonge þei to-gider, 3856

<sup>1</sup> Over *ful* (?) erased, *full* is written in a later hand.

- þat many were a-meruaild · of here douȝti dedes.  
 & þis miȝti meliadus · in þat meling while  
 a sturne strok set william · on his stelen helm,  
 & wounded him wickedli · wittow forsoþe. 3860  
 whan þis bold william · saw his blod so breme,  
 liȝt as a lyoun · he leide on al a-boute,  
 & marked þat meliadus · with mayn swiche a dint,  
 þat þurth þe helm & þe hed · hastili to þe gurdel 3864  
 his brond his bodi to-cleued · for alle his briȝt armes ;  
 & he tit ouer his hors tayl · tumbled ded to þerþe.  
 þer-of williams wiȝes · were wonderli gladde,  
 & as sori in þe oþer side · þe segges were of spaine,  
 for in þat meliadus miȝt · was here most hope, 3869  
 to haue conquered william · wiþ elene strengþe of armes.  
 but whan þei seie him ded · sone gun þei turne,  
 and to flen as fast · as þei faire miȝt. 3872  
 but william & his wiȝes · so wrouȝten þat time,  
 no rink þei miȝt of-reche · recuuered neuer after,  
 ne no man vpon mold · miȝt ayme þe number  
 of þe freliche folk · þat in þe feld lay slayn. 3876
- Whan þis tale was told · to þe king of spayne,  
 how þe miȝti meliadus · for alle men was slawe,  
 & bi-held how his burnes · bi-gonne to fiene,  
 & how william & his wiȝes · wiȝtli hem folwed, 3880  
 & duelfulli driuen down · to dethe þat þei of-toke,  
 also swiþe for sorwe · he swonede for fere.  
 & whan he wiȝtli a-wok · wodli he ferde,<sup>1</sup>  
 al to-tare his a-tir · þat he to-tere miȝt, 3884  
 & seide after anon · “ alas ! what to rede !  
 I se al mi folk fle · for [þat] frekes dedes ;  
 was neuer man vpon mold · þat swiche miȝt walt ;  
 It is sum deuel degised · þat doþ al þis harm.” 3888  
 bi þat saw he william · winne him ful nere,  
 & slouȝ down in his siȝt · his segges al a-boute.

[Fol. 61 b.]  
Meliadus wounds  
William in the  
head.

William, seeing  
his own blood,  
fights like a lion,

and cleaves  
Meliadus through  
helm and head  
to the girdle.

The Spaniards are  
disheartened,

and turn to flight,

very hotly  
pursued

The king, hearing  
that Meliadus is  
slain,

swoons for fear,

and, recovering,  
tears his attire,

thinking William  
must be a devil.

Seeing William  
come, he flees.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “forde.” Read “ferde.”—M.

- & saw it geyned no grip · to go him no nere ;  
 as bluiw with his baner · he gan awei flene. 3892
- whan william was war · howe he a-wei went,  
 prestili de-parted he þat pres · & priked him after,  
 & ful titli him of-tok · & stoutli him aschried,  
 bad him 3epli him 3eld · or 3erne he schul deie. 3896
- whan þe [king]<sup>1</sup> saw him com · he sede to his kni3tes,  
 “defende we vs dou3tli · or we dei3en soue ;  
 þer goþ non oþer grip · it geineþ nou3t to flene.  
 & more mensk it is · manliche to deie, 3900  
 þan for to fle couwar[d]li<sup>2</sup> · for ou3t þat mai falle.”  
 “certes, sire, þat [is]<sup>3</sup> soþ” · seide his men alle,  
 “þer-fore now in-dede · do we what we mowe.”  
 þan turned þei titli a3en · & trustili gon f3t, 3904  
 a[s]<sup>4</sup> fersli as þei nade · fou3t nou3t bi-fore.
- but william & his wi3es · were so breme,  
 & so sturnli in þat stour · stered hem þat time,  
 þat þei hade in a while · a hundred i-slayne, 3908  
 & taken of þe tidiest · mo þan ten schore.
- þe king saw his segges · were slawe him bi-fore,  
 & non mi3t þe werwolf · conquere in no wise,  
 & whas duelfulli a-drad · lest he deie schuld, 3912  
 & gan to fle fram þe ost · as hard as he mi3t ;  
 & hise men þat mi3t · manli gon to flene.
- but william perceyued · what pas þe king went,  
 & hastili hi3ed after · & him of-toke, 3916  
 & keneli to him kried · “sire king, 3eld þe swiþe,  
 oþer þi deth is i-di3t · deliuerli ri3t here.
- Meke to make a-mendis · for al þi mis-gilt  
 þatow hast reised in þis reauwe · & ri3t long meyn-  
 tened,  
 & al wrongli wrou3t · as wot al þis reauwe.” 3921

<sup>1</sup> Read “whan the *king* saw him com.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> The spelling *cowwardli* occurs in l. 3336.

<sup>3</sup> Read “that *is* soth.”—M.

<sup>4</sup> MS. “a.” Read “*as* fersli.”—M.

**P**o he seie no better · bote nede he most him zeld,  
 or al swiþe be slayn · þan sone he a-lizt,  
 & wiztli to william · his wepun vp to-zelde, 3924 The king yields  
 & forto wirche his wille · & wilned his mercy. his weapon,  
 & william, as kinde kniþt · as kortesie it wold, [Fol. 62 b.]  
 Godli graunted him griþ · & gruced no more,  
 but seide he schuld him meke · in merci to þe quene, and William says  
 & profer him to prison · prestli at hire wille. 3929 he must submit  
 & gaf him to alle hire grace · & with-sede no worde. to the queen.  
 as tit as þe king was take · to telle þe soþe,  
 eche a seg of his side · sone gan with-drawe, 3932 The king being  
 & faynest was eche a freke · þat fastest miþt hiþe ; taken, the  
 & þus was þat ferli fiþt · finched þat time. Spaniards retire  
 william went to þe cite · with his wizes bolde, in haste.  
 & þe king of spayne · in *companye* he ladde, 3936 William brings  
 with alle þe *marþe* vpon mold · þat men miþt of here ; the king to the  
 & passeden to þe paleise · prestili alle same[2]. queen's palace.  
 þe quen with hire *companye* · com him a-zens,  
 & resseyued as reali · as swiche rinkes ouþt, 3940 The queen  
 & þe king þepli dede · zelde him to hire prison, receiues him.  
 to wirche with him as sche wold · at hire oune wille ;  
 & treuli astit after him · tvo hundered & seuen,  
 þe realest rinkes of þe reaume · dede riþt þat ilke. 3944 The king and 207  
 þe quene to william · wiztli wold haue kneled, of his knights  
 bliþe sche was þat bataile · was brouþt to a nende, submit  
 & þonked william þer-for · mani a þousan siþe, themselves.  
 but william hent [hire] <sup>1</sup> vp · & harde hire blamed,  
 & sede, “madame, ze misdou · bi marie in heuen, 3949 The queen would  
 þat arn an emperours [douþter] <sup>2</sup> · & a quen þour-selue, have kneeled to  
 to swiche a simpul sowdiour · as icham, forto kuele ; thank William,  
 ze don a gret deshounour · wiþ þat to þour-selue.” 3952 but he catches  
 “nai, sire,” sede þe quen · “so me *cris*t help ! her up, saying an  
 I sette þou for no soudiour · but for souerayn lord, daughter must  
 to lede al þis lorldschip · as þou likes euer ; not kneel to a  
 simple soldier.

<sup>1</sup> Read “hent *hire* vp.”—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read “emperours *douþter* and a quen.”—M.

& blessed be þat burde · þat bar þe in þis erþe. 3956  
 since, but for him, she would have been bare of all bliss.  
 for made þe grace of god be · & þi gode dedes,  
 of blisse i hade be al bare · bi þis ilk time.  
 þer i balfulli here-bi-fore · was brout al bi-neþe,  
 þou hast me brouzt of bale · & bet al myn harmes ;  
 þer-for in al wise 3our worschipe · is wel þe more." 3961

All go to hall. **N**ow to touche of þis tale · what tidde after.  
 alle þe lordes a-non · vn-armed hem sone,  
 & with þe worþi quen · went in-to halle, 3964  
 Melior and the princess lead the king of Spain between them.  
 & þe menskful meliors · & þe quenes douzter.  
 curtesli þe king of spayne · bi-twene hem þei ladde,  
 & here meke maydenes · merili þat time  
 ladden þe oþer lordes · loueli hem bi-twene, 3968  
 & alle samen semeli · þei seten in þe halle.

The queen sets the king on one side of her, and William on the other.  
 þe quen set þe king · curtesli bi here side,  
 & william on þat oþer half · & with him his suster,  
 & þe menskful meliors · þat made moche ioie 3972  
 for þe loueli loos · þat here lemman wanne ;

The lords and burgesses, and the peers of Spain, all sit down together.  
 & alle þe lordes of þat lond · in þe halle that were,  
 & þe best burgeys · & oþer burnes fele,  
 & þe pers of spayne · þat were to prison take. 3976  
 þe king bi-souzt þe quene · 3if it were hire wille,  
 þat he most se his sone · to solace him þe more,  
 & sche ful godli granted · & gart him do fecche.  
 & sopli, as sone as he com · þe king seide him tille, 3980

The king asks to see his son.  
 " lo ! sone ! wich sorwe · we haue vs selue wrouzt,  
 þurh oure hautene hertes · a gret harm we gete,  
 to willne swiche willenyng · þat wol nouzt a-sente.  
 It is a botles bale · bi god þat me fourmed, 3984

and it is of no use to pursue a wayward woman.  
 t[o] willne after a wif · þat is a waywarde euere."  
 þan seide his sone · " forsoþe, sire, 3e knowe,  
 þat we hane wrongli wrouzt · nowe is it wel sene ;  
 we mot holde<sup>1</sup> to oure harmes · it helpes nouzt elles,  
 but giue vs geynli in þe grace · of þis gode lady, 3989



& late hire worche with vs · as hire god likes.”

þe king for his sones sawe · sore gan sike,

to þat comli quen · ful curtesli þus seide,

3992 The king is  
grieved, and  
sighs,

“Madame, for mari loue · þe milde quen of heuene,

Graunt me of 3our grace · 3if 3ou god þink,

3if 3oure konyng cunsayl · a-corde wol þer tille.

[Fol. 63 b.]  
and begs the  
queen to allow  
him to make  
amends,

let me make a-mendis · for al my mis-gelt,

3996

þat i so wrongli haue werred · & wasted 3our loudes.

as moche as any man · mow ordeyne bi ri3t,

I am redi to restore · & redeli, more-ouer,

promising to  
restore what is  
right,

al þe worchep þat i weld · i wol of 3ou hold,

4000

al þe londes & ledes · þat long to my reaume ;

and to hold his  
lands of her,

so dede i neuer til þis dai · but of god one.

& but 3our cunseil, madame · a-corde wol þer-tille,

wisses me at 3our owne wille · how 3e wol me binde,

& lelli i wol as 3ou likes · 3oure lore fulfille ;

4005

or offering to be  
bound in any way  
she liked,

ferþer forþ mai [i]<sup>1</sup> nou3t profer · for nou3t þat bi-tides.”

þe quen & here consail · þer-of were a-pai3ed,

þat he so him profered · to parfourme hire wille,

& gonne to mele of þat mater · how it best mi3t bene.

& as þei were talking · to trete of þat dede,

so hized in-to þe halle · ri3t to þe heize dese,

þat ilk witti werwolf · þat william hade holpe,

4012

& boldli, for alle þe burns · as him nou3t nere,

spachi to þe king of spaine · he spedde him on gate,

& fel down to his fet · & faire hem he keste,

The werwolf  
enters the hall,  
goes up to the  
king of Spain,  
and kisses his  
fet ;

& worchiped him in his wise · wonderli with-alle. 4016

& seþþe sone after · he saluede þe quene,

& after here, william · and his worþi make,

þe quenes dou3ter afterward · & dede him on gate

out hastili at þe halle dore · as fast as he mi3t,

4020

& went forþ on his wei · whider him god liked.

but sone sauage men · þat seten in þe halle

henten hastili in honde · what þei haue mi3t,

next he salutes  
the queen, and  
the rest, and goes  
his way.

Savage men who  
were there caught  
up weapons,

<sup>1</sup> Read “mai i.”—M.

- summe axes, summe swerdes · some speres long, 4024  
to wende him after · wīztli to quelle.
- but William swears that if any one dares hurt the werwolf, [Fol. 61.] but wan william þat wist · wodli he ferde,  
& swor swiftli his [oþe]<sup>1</sup> · bi al þat god wrouzt,  
3if any burn were so bold · þat best forto greue, 4028  
were he knīzt oþer clerk · knaue oþer kempe,  
he wold deliuerli him-self · do him to þe dethe,  
þat no man vpon mold · schuld oþer amendes ȝelde.  
þer nas hastili in þat halle · non so hardi burn, 4032  
þat durst folwe þat best · o fote for drede,  
so þei were of william · wonderli a-dredde.
- Yet all wondered what it meant, especially the king. but whi þe werwolf so wrouzt · wondred þei alle,  
& whi more with<sup>2</sup> þe king · þan with any oþer. 4036  
& þe king more wondred · þan any whīzt elles,  
& strek in-to a studie · stilliche þer-fore,  
what it bi-tokeneþ þat þe best · bowed so him tille,  
& wrouzt to him more worchipe · þan to any wīzt elles.
- The king remembers about the son he once had, In þat mene while þan · in his minde it com, 4041  
& þouzt on a semli sone · þat sum time he hadde,  
& how him treuli hadde be told · to-fore a long time,  
þat his wif with wichecraft · to a wolf him schaped.
- who had been drowned, according to his second wife's account. but sche of þat schlauder · exeused hire al-gate, 4045  
& seide þe child was in þe see · sunkun ful ȝore.  
þe king in þat carful þouzt · was cumbred ful long.
- William proclaims that no one is to hurt the werwolf. but william wīztli · as þe wolf was schaped, 4048  
he dede knīztes to comaunde · to do crie in þe cite,  
þat no burn nere so bold · as he nold be honged,  
to waite þe werwolf · no maner schape,  
but late him late & erli · where him liked wende ; 4052  
þat hest was wel hold · non so hardi was elles.
- The king is in great thought and study. **K**arpe we [now]<sup>3</sup> how þe king · was kast in gret þouzt ;  
he dared as doted man · for þe bestes dedes,  
& was so styf in a studie · þat non him stint mīzt. 4056

<sup>1</sup> Read "his *othe* bi al."—M.<sup>2</sup> MS. "wīht."<sup>3</sup> Perhaps it should be, "Karpe we *nou* how the king."—M.

- whan *william* was war · he went to him sone,  
 seide, “king, i þe *couiure* · in *cristes* holi name,  
 & bi alle þe kud *customes* · to kinghod þat longes,  
 þattow telle me tit · treuli þat soþe, 4060  
 3if þou knowest bi what cas · in any-skiues <sup>1</sup> wise,  
 whi þis *buxum* best · bowed to þe more  
 þan to alle þe wizes · þat were in þe halle?  
 It mai be in no maner · me þinkes, bi þou3tes, 4064  
 þattow wost in *sum* wise · what it bi-tokeneþ.  
 þerfor tel me tit · treuli whatow þoutes,  
 oþer i make a vow · to þe mi3ti king of heuen,  
 þou passest nou3t of *prison* · puniched at þe hardest.  
 þan siked þe king sore · & seide þese wordes, 4069  
 “sire, for drede of *duresse* · nor of deth in erþe,  
 nel i wonde in no wise · what i þou3t to seie.  
 sire, *sum* time here-bi-for · in my 3ong age, 4072  
 I wedded with al wele · a worschipful lady,  
 þat burde was of beuante · briztest in erþe,  
 & greter of alle godnesse · þan any gome mai telle.  
 þe kinges dou3ter of nauerne · was þat gode burde, 4076  
 & in þat seson gete we · samen to-gedere,  
 on þe fairest freke · þat euer seg on loked,  
 but mi wif, as god wold · & as we schul alle,  
 deied at þe *deliuerance* · of mi dere sone. 4080  
 & i fostered þat child · faire to þre winter,  
 with alle clene keping · as it ou3t to bene.  
 bi þat time was þat barn · ful breme of his age,  
 & semliest on to se · þat men schuld finde; 4084  
 alþouns his gode godfaderes · dede him þan calle  
 at kyrke for his kinde name · to kiþe þe soþe.  
 þan bitid þat time · i toke a-noþer wif,  
 a ful loueli lady · lettered at þe best, 4088  
 corteys & couenabul · & lettered at þe best,<sup>2</sup>  
 & comen was of gret kin · & koynt hire-selue.  
 þurth grace gat i on hire · as god almi3ti wold,

William conjures  
him to tell him

[Fol. 64 b.]  
why the beast  
bowed to him in  
particular?

“Tell me, or thou  
shalt never come  
out of prison.”

The king sighs,  
and tells his  
story.

“I once wedded  
a fair and good  
lady,

daughter of the  
king of Navarre.

We had a very  
fair son; but my  
wife died.

I fostered it till  
it was three years  
old.

His name was  
Alphonse.

I married again  
to a lady who was  
lovely, and who  
could read well.

<sup>1</sup> See note.

<sup>2</sup> This half line is repeated from above.

- Our son was the prince who is here now. a sone as 3e mow se · be-for 3ou selue here, 4092  
 wich 3e han put in prison · & puniched at 3our wille.  
 þis child was ceput<sup>1</sup> clenli · as it wel ou3t,  
 & it wax fetis & fair · & ful mochel loued.
- [Fol. 65.] My wife feared that the elder son would succeed me as heir, and considered how to get rid of him. but þan my wif wickedli · on þise wise þou3t, 4096  
 þat myn elder son · min eritage schul haue,  
 & kepe þe kingdom after me · as kinde skil it wold ;  
 & striued stiffli with hire-self · as stepmoderes wol alle,  
 bi what wise sche mi3t best · þat bold barn spille, 4100  
 to do so þat here sone · after mi desseece,  
 Mi3te reioische þat reaume · as ri3t eir bi kinde.  
 & as me hap be told · of trewe men of my reaume,  
 with charmes & enchantmens · sche chaunded<sup>2</sup> my sone  
 In-to a wilde werwolf ; · & wel now ich it leue, 4105  
 þat þis buxum best · be þat ilk selue  
 þat my wif with hire wiles · euer dede me leue,  
 (whan i hire touched swiche tales · as me told were),  
 þat it was fanteme & fals · & for hate saide ; 4109  
 & swor grimli gret oþes · bi al þat god wrou3t,  
 þat mi semli sone · was in þe see sonken,  
 as he passed out to pleie · priueli him one. 4112
- I believed her, but I now think this werwolf is my son. I leued hire þan lelly · & lett it ouer-pase,  
 but now witerli i wot · þis werwolf is my sone,  
 þa secheþ after socour · it semeþ bi hise dedus.  
 sire, soþli to seie · þis was my grete þout, 4116  
 for þe werwolf werkes · so me wel time,  
 & 3if i wrong seie any word · wo worþ me euer.”
- William says it seems to be the truth, William<sup>3</sup> þan ful wittili · þese wordes saide, 4119  
 “sire, it may ri3t wel be þus · be marie in heuene!  
 þat þe best secheþ socour · it semeþ att best.  
 for wel i wot witerli · & wel i haue it founde,  
 þat he has mannes munde · more þan we hoþe. 4123
- for the werwolf has a man's mind.

<sup>1</sup> *Sic* ; another spelling of “keput.”

<sup>2</sup> Read “chaunged” (¿) Cf. l. 4500.

<sup>3</sup> The MS. has a large M instead of W.

- for many [a day]<sup>1</sup> hade i be ded · & to dust roted,  
 nadde it be goddes grace · & help of þat best ;  
 he haþ me socoured & serued · in ful gret nede. " He has often  
 for-þi in feiþ, for al þe world · him nold i faile, helped me.  
 þat i schal loue him lelli · as my lege broþer ; 4128  
 & sire, bliþe ouzt ze [be]<sup>2</sup> · bi him þat vs wrouzt ! You ought to be  
 þat he þus happili is here · þat haþ so lang be missed. bliþe to find him  
 & 3if he mizt in maner · be makend man azeine, again.  
 of al þe welþe of þe world · wilned i no more. 4132 [Fol. 65 b.]  
 & sertenli, as it semeþ · to seie þe truþe,  
 3if þi wif of wiecheecraft · be witti as þou seidest, If your wife is so  
 þat sche him wrouzt a werwolf · riht wel i hope, witchcraft,  
 sche can with hire connyng · & hire queynt charmes,  
 Make him to man a-zen · it may be non oper. 4137 she can make him  
 & þerfore, sire, bi crist · þat on croyce vs bouzt, a man again.  
 þou ne passest neuer of priþon · ne nou of [þi]<sup>3</sup> puple, Wherefore, you  
 with-oute deliuerance · of þat derworþe best ; 4140 shall never be  
 for made a-zen to man · mot he nede bene. released till he is  
 sende wittili to þi wif · & warne hire fore, made a man.  
 þat sche tit come þe to · for þat may falle after, Send and tell her  
 þat sche ne lette for no lud · þat liueþ in erþe. 4144 to come here.  
 & 3if sche niekes wiþ nay · & nel nouzt com sone, If she will not,  
 sende hire saddli to sai · þat sone with min ost, say I will fetch  
 I wol þat reaume ouer-ride · & rediliche destrue, her forcibly."  
 & fecche hire with fin forse · for ouzt þat bi-tides. 4148  
 for til sche with hire craft · þe werwolf haue holpe,  
 alle þe men vpon molde · ne [mai] make 3ou deliuered." <sup>4</sup>
- " Bi crist," sede þe king · " þat on croyce was peyned, " She shall be  
 þat þe quen be of-sent · sauf wol i fouche. 4152 sent for.  
 3if sche mizt in any maner · make a-zen mi sone  
 to be a man as he was arst · wel were me þanne.  
 but serteynli i not · wham i sende miht,  
 to make þe massager · myn erande wel to spele, 4156 But I have no one  
 to send but some  
 of my lords,

<sup>1</sup> Read "many a day hade i be ded."—M.

<sup>2</sup> Read "ouzt ze be bi him."—M.

<sup>3</sup> Read "of thi puple."—M.

<sup>4</sup> mai seems required.

- but 3e wold suffer · summe of þise lordes,  
 þat ben lederes of my lond · & lele men holde.
- if you will give  
 them leave." 3if 3ou likes, 3iue hem leue · & hete hem þider wende,  
 I hope þei schul hastlier · þan any oþer spede." 4160
- "I grant it; bid  
 them bring the  
 queen." "þat i wol," seide william · "ches wich þe likes,  
 & hote hem hi3e hastili · harde as þei mowe,  
 & bring þe quen · for eas þat mai falle."
- [Fol. 66.] ful spacli þe king of spayne · to spede þo nedes, 4164
- The king chooses  
 50 lords, as fast ches him fifty · of ful grete lordes,  
 þat tidi men were told · & trewest of his reaueme,  
 & tid bi-tok hem þe letteres · þat told al here erand,  
 & het hem munge bi mouþe · more, & þei couþe, 4168
- giving them a  
 letter and a  
 message, saying, whan þei come to þe quen · of þe eas bi-falle—  
 " & seiþ hire þus sadli · sires, i 3ou praye,  
 for what eas sche mot com · or bi críst of heuene,  
 sche get neuer gladnesse · of me, ne of mi sone. 4172
- "Tell her my son  
 is found, & seið hire soþli · þis selue encheson,  
 for hire mi sone is founde · þat sche for 3ore saide  
 was sonk in þe see · so dede sche me to leue ;
- in the shape of a  
 werwolf. but as a wilde werwolf · he walkeþ here a-boute ; 4176  
 & how he sou3t after socour · 3e saw wel alle.  
 þer-fore treuli as it tid · telle here to þe hende,  
 & bidde hire bliue with hire bring · þat mai be is bote,
- Bid her bring  
 charms to  
 disenchant him." to make him man a3en · mi3ti as he was ere, 4180  
 oþer al þat lond worþ lore · & our liues also,  
 þer goþ non a3en-turn · 3e mow hire treuli seið."
- þe menskful messangeres · mekeli þan seiðe, 4183  
 "we wol worche 3our wille · as wel as we kunne."
- Next day the  
 messengers set  
 out **M**anli on þe morwe · þe messageres were 3are,  
 greiþed of alle gere · gaily atte þe best,  
 of horse & harneys · & what þei hade nede,  
 & went forþ on here way · wi3tli & fast ; 4188  
 Euer þe geynest gatis · to goo to þe soþe,  
 Euer spacli þei hem spedde · til spayne þat þei come,  
 & come to a cite · þere soiourned þe quene.
- and went to  
 Spain.

- tid was hire told · tiding of here come, 4192  
 & sche gamsum & glad · goþ hem a-ȝens, She comes out to  
meet them,  
 with loueliche ladies · þat longed to hire chaumber,  
 & oþer menskful maidenen · mo þan foure schore.  
 & mekli whan þei were met · þe messageres þei greten  
 with eliping & kessing · kindeli to-gadere. 4197  
 but sone þat comli quen · wel curtesli asked,  
 “how fares mi lord þe king · for *cristes* loue in heuen,  
 & mi semli sone · seþþe þei out went? 4200 [Fol. 66 b.]  
and asks after her  
lord and her son.  
 han þei wonne at here wille · þat þei went fore?  
 what dos mi lord wiþ þat lady · & here loueli douȝter?  
 wol sche ȝit my sone hire wedde · & to wif haue?” Is he to wed the  
princess?  
 “Madame,” saide þe messenger · most worþi of alle,  
 “oþer-wise þan ȝe wene · is al þe werk turned, 4205 “Madame,  
affairs are quite  
changed.  
 It helpes nouȝt for to hele · nouȝ herkenes mi sawe.  
 siþþe þe king of heuen · on croys for vs deide,  
 worse fel it neuer to wiȝes · þan it haþ a while. 4208  
 for alle þe real rinkes · of þis reame be slayne,  
 & doluen depe vnder mold · mani day seþþe.  
 þe stoute stiward of þis lond · & his strong neuew,  
 & þe constabul sone · þat kud kniȝt was proued, 4212 Our best men are  
slain and buried  
—the steward and  
his nephew,  
 & out of number nobul men · to nempne þe soþe.  
 Mi lord þe king was þer cauȝt · in a kene stoure,  
 & ȝour sone also · and are prisons boþe,  
 & we alle, madame · & many mo of oþer 4216 The king, the  
prince, and all  
we lords, are  
prisoners.  
 of þe lordes of þis lond · þat ȝut a-liue bene,  
 & neuer-more for no man · mowe be deliuered,  
 ne pult out [of]<sup>1</sup> prison · but purli þourh ȝour help.  
 & þeiȝh we hade þe quen · þurth queintyse & strengþe We conquered all  
the queen’s lands  
except Palermo.  
 brouȝt ferst at swiche bale · with so breme a-sawtes, 4221  
 wasted hire londes · & wonne hire townes,  
 & pult al pertly to our wille · but palerne alone;  
 sertes, þei were a-seged · so þat atte laste 4224  
 Many times in þis maner · mereȝ sche craued,  
 þat sche most wende a-wai · with hire douȝter one, The queen asked  
to haue leave to  
depart where she  
pleasid.

<sup>1</sup> Read “out of prison.”—M.

- bouthe daunger or duresse · or any despit elles,  
 & late mi lord haue þat lond · at liking for euer ; 4228  
 The king refused.  
 ac my lord in no wise · wold þer-to graunte,  
 & þat hap vs hard harmed · for hastili þer-after  
 þer kom a kniȝt hire to help · þe kuddest of þe worlde,  
 & most miȝthi in armes · þat euer man of herde. 4232  
 [Fol. 67.]  
 Then came a  
 mighty knight  
 to help her, who  
 conquered the  
 king and the  
 prince.  
 he slow of oure segges · soþli alle þe best,  
 & conquered with clene miȝt · þe king & his sone,  
 & lelly many oþer lordes · þat ȝit a-liue are.  
 & whan þei were in prison · pult at hire wille, 4236  
 þer wan in a werwolf · a wonderli huge ;  
 Next, a werwolf  
 came and saluted  
 the king, and  
 seemed to crave  
 help.  
 with a komli kunte-naunce · to þe king he went,  
 & fel down to his fete · & faire he hem kessede,  
 & wrouȝt him gret worchip · & wiȝes þat it seizen 4240  
 saiden, it semed wel · as it socour souȝt ;  
 but þanne as bliue þat best · busked on his weie.  
 The knight asked  
 the king what it  
 meant,  
 & þan þat kud kniȝt · þat vs conquered alle  
 coniuered mi lord þe king · bi al þat crist wrouȝt, 4244  
 þat he tyt schold him telle · treuli al þe soþe,  
 ȝif he wist in any wise · wat þat best were ;  
 who said, it must  
 be Alphonse his  
 son.  
 & he soþli þus sayde · schortly to telle,  
 þat it was alphioums his sone · anon riȝt he wist, 4248  
 þat þou with þi wicchecraft · a werwolf him hadest  
 maked.  
 We are sent to  
 say that we shall  
 never be released  
 wherfore, menskful madame · bi marie in heuen,  
 we be made massegeres · to munge ȝou þis nedes,  
 þat neiþer þi lord nor þi sone · nor non of vs alle 4252  
 worþ neuer deliuerred of daunger · þat we dwellen  
 inne,  
 till you have  
 disenchantid the  
 werwolf.  
 til þou com to þat kip · & with ȝour queynt werkes  
 haue heled þe werwolf · wel at alle riȝtes,  
 & maked to man aȝe · in maner as he ouȝt. 4256  
 If you refuse,  
 & ȝif þou grutche a-ny grot · þus greiþli to worche,  
 alle þe men vpon molde · ne mowe it nouȝt lette,  
 þat þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat kepuþ vs alle,  
 that mighty  
 knight will come  
 nel com to þis kuntre · with a clene strengþe, 4260



- & balfulli do þe brenne · in bitter fire, and burn you,  
 & ouer-ride þis reaume · & redili it destrye ;  
 &, wheþer þou wolt or non · winne<sup>1</sup> þe with strengþe, and will put us  
 & seþen duelfulli to dethe · do vs alle after ; 4264 all to death.”
- & þerfor do vs wite wiztli · houþ þou wirche þenkest.”  
 as bliue as þis bold quen · þat braunden was hote, [Fol. 67 b.]  
 hade herd al holli · how þat hit ferde, At this news  
 sche swelt for sorwe · & swoned rit þere, 4268 queen Braunden  
 & afterward wept · wonder was it none. swoons.
- & to þe menskful messageres · mekli þenne sede,  
 “now, sires, seþþe it is so · what so bi-tyde, She consents to go  
 I wol wende þou with · & wel þou deliuere, 4272 with them.
- þurth help of þe heuene king · hastili & sone.”  
 þanne gart sche to greiþe · gaili alle þinges, She gets every-  
 þat hem bi-houed on hond · to haue bi þe weye, thing ready.  
 & a real rouzte · to ride bi hire side, 4276  
 of lordes & ladies · of al hire lond þe best.
- & soþli for soþe<sup>2</sup> · no seg vnder heuene  
 ne seiþe neuer no route · araized more betere, No one ever saw  
 ne gaylier greiþed · to go to þe soþe, 4280 better arrayed  
 of hors & of harneys · & alle oþer gere. company.
- þe quen hade hire with · al þat bi-houed,  
 to warysche with þe werwolf · wel atte best.
- Gaili were þei greiþed · wel at te best, 4284  
 with here menskful meyne · sche meued on gate,  
 & hized on here iurnes · fast as þei miþt,  
 til þei come to palerne · to proue þe soþe. They come to  
 william & hise wizes · were warned<sup>3</sup> of here come ; 4288 Palermo, where  
 with a real route · he rod hire a-þens, William meets  
 & worþili hire he wolcomed · wen he hire mette, them,  
 & hire clene companye · curtesli & faire ;  
 & presteli to þe paleys · with gret pres hem ladde. 4292  
 þe curtes quen of þat lond · com hem a-þens,

<sup>1</sup> MS. “wenne.” Read “winne.”—M. See l. 3622.

<sup>2</sup> MS. “seþe.”      <sup>3</sup> MS. “warnes.” Read “warned.”—M.

- as also do the  
queen, the king,  
and the princee. þe king of spayne with his sone · & oþer kniȝtes gode,  
þat were put in prison · presteli þurth here dedes.  
hoþe murþe & mournyng · at þat metyng was ; 4296
- The queen of  
Spain is grieved  
to see them  
prisoners. whan þe quen of spayne · saw hire lord in hold,  
& hire semli sone · & seþe alle þe oþer  
of grete lordes of hire lond · it liked hire ille.
- [Fol 68.] þe comly quen of þat lond · williams owne moder, 4300  
with welþe & gret worchip · welkomed hem alle,  
& william curtesli cauȝt · þe quen of hire palfray,  
& his menskful moder · ful mekli hire kessed,  
& hire lord & hire sone · swetly þer-after. 4304
- William helps  
Braunden to  
alight. hire lord þe king of hire kome · was comforted michel,  
& hire sone als · & seþen alle oþer  
of þe lordes of þat lond · þat þere leie in hold,  
for þei hopeden in hast · to haue help þer-after. 4308
- All are glad to see  
her. william & his menskful moder · mekli & faire  
ful loueli þe quen of spayne · led hem bi-twene,  
& hendeli in-to halle · þanne hire þei brouȝt,  
& derli on þe heiȝe des · þei a-doun seten. 4312
- She is led to hall,  
and seated at the  
daïs. þe king of spayne & his wif · seten to-gader,  
& here sone hem bi-side · samen to talke,  
to make hem in þe mene while · as murye as þei couþe.
- She and the king  
and princee sit  
together. þe quen of palerne & hire douȝter · þat damysele hende,  
& þe menskful meliors · were macched to-gadere, 4317  
to haue same here solas · & seie what hem liked.
- and the queen of  
Palermo, the  
princess, and  
Melior. seþen al þat huge halle · was hastili fulfilled  
al a-boute bi eche side · with barounes & kniȝtes, 4320  
þe real rinkes of þe reaume · riȝt on þat o side.  
soþli þe segges of spayne · were set on þat oþer,  
so þat perles paleis · with peple was fulfilled.
- The hall is filled  
with barons and  
knights, and the  
Spanish lords. þann were spacli spices · spended al a-boute, 4324  
fulsumli at þe ful · to eche freke þer-inne,  
& þe wines þer-with · wich hem best liked.
- There were spices  
and wines. þe werwolf had  
been kept in  
William's  
chamber. **A**nd as þei mad hem so mirie · to miȝge þe soþe,  
þe werwolf þat ȝe witen of · was in williams  
chamber, 4328

- & hade be þere in blis · bi niȝtes and daies,  
 seþen þe messangeres meuede · after þe quene,  
 þat was his sterne stepmoder · til þat stounde þanne.  
 but wel wist þe wolf · whanne sche was come, 4332
- & hastili in-to halle · he hiȝed him þat time,  
 to do [hire] to þe deþe · deliuerli ȝif he miȝt,  
 so wroþ<sup>1</sup> he was hire with · wite ȝe him neuer.  
 as bliue as þe best · was broken in-to halle, 4336
- a pase bi-fore al þe puple · he passeþ him euene,  
 & drow him toward þe des · but doutusli after  
 he stared on his stepmoder · stifli a while,  
 whan he saw [hire] with his sire · sitte in murþe. 4340
- ful wroþ þan þat werwolf · wax of þat siȝt,  
 & bremly his bristeles · he gan þo a-reise,  
 & grisiliche gapande · with a grym noyse,  
 he queite toward þe quene · to quelle hire as bliue.  
 & assone as þe quene · saw him so come, 4345
- sche wax neiȝ of hire witt · witow forsoþe,  
 & carfulli to þe king · criande, sche saide,  
 “a ! leue lordes, mi lif · lengþes ȝut a while ! 4348
- socoures me nouþe · or ful sone i deiȝe,  
 for þis ilk breme best · bale wol me wirche,  
 ac i wite him no wrong · witeþ wel alle.  
 I haue serued þe deþ · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes, 4352
- lengþeþ now my lif · for loue of heuene king,  
 & meke me in ȝour mercy · i may do nouȝt elles.”  
 þe king of spayne stifli · stert vp sone,  
 & his sone al-so · to saue þe quene. 4356
- william ful wiȝtli · þe werwolf þan hent  
 anon in his armes · aboute þe necke,  
 & sayde to him soberli · “mi swete dere best,  
 trust to me as treuli · as to þin owne broþer, 4360
- or as feiþli as falles · þe fader to þe sone,  
 & meke þe of þi malencoli · for marring of þi-selue.  
 I sent after hire for þi sake · soþli, þou trowe,
- I sent for her for thy sake.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “wroþ.” Read “wroth.”—M. See ll. 3221, 4341

- to help þe of þi hēle · hastili, ȝif sche miȝt. 4364  
 & sche has brouȝt now þi bote · bi *crist*, as i hope,  
 & but sche haue, be riȝt siker · be god þat vs wrouȝt,  
 to cold coles sche schal be brent · ȝit or come eue ;  
 & þe aschis of hire body · with þe wind weue, 4368  
 & þi sire & his sone · & alle is segges noble  
 schul be put in prison · & peyned for euere,  
 dulfulli here lif daies · til deth haue hem take.  
 for-þi lete me allone · mi lef swete frende, 4372  
 anoie þe na more · ne nede schaft þou haue,  
 ne to hire do no duresse · as þou me derli louest.”
- The werwolf is glad, and kisses William's feet.  
**Þ**e werwolf was ful glad · of *williams* speche,  
 þat bi-het him in hast · to haue help after, 4376  
 & faire down to his fete · fel hem to kisse,  
 & as he coude, be contenance · ful kindeli graunted,  
 In alle wise to worche <sup>1</sup> · as *william* wold seie,  
 & made no more debat · in no maner wice. 4380
- Queen Braunden is glad,  
 as sone as þe quen · saw how it ferde,  
 þat þe werwolf wold · worche hire no schaþe,  
 sche was gretli glad · & oft god þonkes,  
 & *per*tili bi-fore alle þe puple · passed him tille, 4384  
 & bliue bi-fore þe best · on boþe knes hire sette,  
 & mekli in þis maner · mercy sche craued.
- and kneels before the werwolf, saying,  
 “ swete *alphouns*,” sche seide · “ mi semli lorde,  
 I haue brouȝt here þi bote · to bring þe of sorwe ; 4388  
 sone schal þe puple se · þi semli face,  
 In manhede & in minde · as it out to bene.
- I have sinned against you,  
 I haue þe gretli a-gelt · to god ich am a-knowe,  
 for redili þe to reue · þi riȝt eritage ; 4392  
 þat þis man *min* owne sone · miȝt it haue hadde  
 feiþli after þi fader · ich forschop þe þanne  
 In þise wise to a werwolf · and wend þe to spille ;  
 but god wold nouȝt · þat þou were lorne. 4396  
 for-þi of mi mis-gelt · mercy ich craue,
- but God wills not that you should be lost.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “ worthe.”

- lene me lif, 3if þe likes · alphouns, i þe praye,  
 & at þi bidding wol i be · buxum euer-more,  
 & lelli as my lord · al my lif þe serue, 4400  
 & neuer agult þe wil i liue · in game ne on earnest ;  
 & giue me now in þi grace · and godli þe bi-seehe,  
 for his loue þat mad man · for-giue me þis gelt.” [Fol. 69 b.]  
 & þan wiztli to william · weping sche seide, 4404  
 “a! kurtes kniȝt · for cristes loue of heuene,  
 bidde þis buxum best · be merciabul nouþe,  
 for he wol worche at þi wille · i wot wel forsoþe,  
 More þan for alle men · þat on mold liuen ; 4408  
 & 3ou, alle hende lordes · helpeþ me to praye  
 to þis kurtes kniȝt · to graunt my bone.  
 to þis bestes mercy · i bowe me at alle,  
 to worche with me is wille · as him-self likes.” 4412

- Of þe quenes profer · þe puple hadde reuþe,  
 for sche fel to-fore þe best · flat to þe grounde ;  
 þer was weping & wo · wonderli riue.  
 but so kenli þe king · & þe kniȝtes alle 4416  
 bi-souȝt william for þe quen · soþli so 3erne,  
 þat he godli al his gref · for-gaf at þe last,  
 so þat sche hastili hized · to help þat best ;  
 & bleþeli boute grutching · þat graunted sche sone. 4420  
 þan stint sche no lenger · but bout stryf went  
 Into a choys chaumber · þe clerli was peinted,  
 þat non went hire with · but þe werwolf al-one.  
 þan rauȝt sche forþ a ring · a riche & a nobul, 4424  
 þe ston þat þeron was stiȝt · was of so stif vertu,  
 þat neuer man vpon mold · miȝt it him on haue,  
 ne schuld he with wicchecraft · be wicched neuer-more,  
 ne per[i]sche<sup>1</sup> with no poysoun · ne purliche enuene-  
 med ; 4428  
 ne wrongli schuld he wine · þat it in wold hadde.  
 þat riche ring ful redily · with a red silk þrede  
 She binds it with  
 a red silk thread

<sup>1</sup> MS. “persche.” Read “perische.”—M.

- round the wolf's neck.  
She takes a book out of a casket, and reads in it a long time, till he becomes a man again.
- [Fol. 70.]  
William only was fairer.  
The werwolf is very glad,  
but is ashamed of being naked.  
She tells him he need not be so, for they are alone.  
He must now go to the bath.  
Alphonse goes to the bath, finding it "tidily warm."  
The queen serves him.  
She asks him who shall give him his clothes?  
He says he will take his attire and the order of
- þe quen bond als bliue · a-boute þe wolwes neeke.  
seþe feiþli of a forcer · a fair bok sche rauzt, 4432  
& radde þer-on redli · riȝt a long while,  
so þat sche made him to man · in þat mene while,  
as fair as fetys · and als freli schapen,  
as any man vpon mold · miȝt on deuise. 4436
- was non fairre in world · but william allone,  
for he of fairnesse was flour · of frekes þat liue.  
whan þe werwolf wist · þat he was man bi-come,  
fair of alle fasoun · as him fel to bene, 4440  
he was gretli glad · no gum þurt him blame,  
ful wel him liked þe lessun · þat þe lady radde.  
soþli þat he was so naked · sore he was a-schamed,  
whan þe quen þat of-sey · sone sche seide him tille,  
"a ! alphouns, leue lord · lat be alle þo þouȝtes, 4445  
i se wel þou art a-schamed · & so were it no nede ;  
ne buþ here in þis bour · but our selue tweyne.  
& on þe, sire, se i no siȝt · but as it schuld bene, 4448  
ne þe faileþ no þing · þat falleþ a man to haue.  
fare now forþ to þi baþ · þat faire is keuered,  
for it is geinli greiþed · in a god asise."  
& alphouns anon þanne · after hire sawe, 4452  
buskes in to þe baþ · boute more noyse,  
& fond it treuli a-tired · & tidili warme.  
þe quen him comforted · & curtesli him serued  
as mekkeli as sche miȝt · in alle maner wise ; 4456  
for no burn nas hem bi · but hem-self tweyne.
- þan þe curtes quen · ful cunyngli saide,  
" swete sire, saie me now · so ȝou crist help,  
what gom wol ȝe þat ȝou giue · ȝour garnemens nouþe ?  
ȝe ne tok neuer as i trowe · of kniȝthod þe hordere. 4461  
for-þi þow telle me of whom · ȝe take it þenk,  
for wel ȝe wite [what] whiȝ · worþiest is here."  
" Madame," þan seide alphouns · " be marie in heuen,  
I wol take myn a-tir · & þat trie ordere 4465

- of þe worþiest weiz · þat weldes now liue.”  
 “hoo is þat,” seide þe quen · “is it 3our fader?”  
 “Nay, bi god,” quath alphiuus · “þat gart me be  
 fourmed, 4468  
 It is þat ilk kud kni3t · þat 3e alle knowe,  
 þat deliuered þe of þe deth · þis day of mi-selue.  
 a worþier wie3h in þis world · woneþ non nouþe,  
 king ne kni3t as of kin · ne of kud dedes. 4472  
 Mi tir of him wol ich take · and þat trie order,  
 & loue him as mi lege lord · al mi lif time.”  
 þe quen after william · went in-to halle,  
 & tok him slizli bi þe sleue · & saide in his ere, 4476  
 “sire, 3if þi wille were · þe werwolf þe bi-secheþ,  
 þat tow tit eom him to · to tire him in his wedes ;  
 he ne wol þat non oþer · þat worchipe him 3eue.”  
 “is þat soþ,” saide william · “mi swete lady hende ?  
 cleymeþ he after cloþes · for cristes loue in heuen ? 4481  
 deceyue me nou3t with þi dedes · but seie me þe soþe.”  
 “3is, bi crist,” quap þe quen · “cloþes he askes ;  
 he is as hol, herized be god · as he was euer 3ite, 4484  
 & manliche in alle maneres · as to man falles ;  
 hi3es him hastili him to · & help he were greiþed ;  
 for i wot þat þis folk · fayn wold him sene. 4487  
 but he wol þat no wi3t · to chaumber with þe come,  
 but meliors þi menskful make · & þe quenes dou3ter,  
 Dame florence þe faire · for whom was þis werre.  
 hem boþe he biddeþ bring · & no wi3t elles.”  
 þan william ful wi3tli · as man ful of ioye, 4492  
 clipte þe quen & kest · & oft crist þonkes,  
 þat his felawe was hol · þat hade him holp oft.  
 as bliue was him brou3t · al þat bi-houed  
 of alle comli cloþing · þat a kni3t schuld haue ; 4496  
 no man vpon mold · mi3t richer deuse.  
 þan william wi3tli · with meliors & his suster,  
 & þe comli quene · spacli forþ þei went  
 in-to þe chois chaumber · þer channged was þe best

knighthood from  
the worthiest man  
alive,

viz. William, who  
shall be his liege  
lord.  
[Fol. 70 b.]

The queen tells  
William the  
werwolf wishes  
him to clothe him.

“Is it true,” he  
says, “that he  
asks for clothes?”

“Yes,” says she,  
“he is as whole  
as ever.”

He will have no  
one but you and  
Melior and the  
princess  
Florence.”

William kisses  
the queen for  
making his fellow  
whole.

William, Melior,  
&c., go to the  
chamber,

- and see a bath  
and a bed, with  
a man in it  
whom they knew  
not.  
[Fol. 71.]
- out of þe werwolfs wise · to a worþi kniȝt. 4501  
þan bi-held þei þe baþ · & a bed bi-side,  
& in þat bed als bliue · þat burn þei seien,  
þat non so semli to here siȝt · saw þei neuer ere ; 4504
- Yet they greet  
him, and  
Alphonse answers,
- but of þat *companie*, be *erist* · þer ne knew him none.  
napeles *william* wiȝtli · worþili him grette,  
& þo menskful maidenen · mekli þer-after,  
& þan *alphouns* a-non · answered & saide, 4508  
“*erist* krouned king · sire kniȝt, mot ȝou saue,  
& þi faire felachiþe · þat folweþ þe after.  
sire kniȝt, i am in þi kiþ · & comen to þi owne,  
& þow makes me now · but þis mene semblant. 4512  
to put þe of peril · i haue ney perished oft,  
& many a scharp schour · for þi sake þoled,  
to litel þow me knowest · or kinhed me kiþes.”
- “Sir knight,  
you give me a  
poor welcome.”
- “True,” said  
William, “but I  
conjure you to  
say who you are.”
- “I ne wot in þis world · what þat ȝe are ;  
but i *comiure* ȝou, be *erist* · þat on croyce was peyned,  
þat ȝe seiþ me swiþe soþ · ho-so ȝe bene.” 4516
- “I am the  
werwolf, who  
have saved you  
from many  
perils.”
- “I am he, þe werwolf” · sede *alphouns* þanne, 4520  
“þat haue suffred for þi sake · many sori peynes,  
& pult þe out of periles · þer þou perished<sup>1</sup> schuldest,  
nade goddes grete miȝt be · & mi gode help.”  
“certes, sire, þat is soþ” · sede *william* þanne, 4524
- William embraces  
him with great  
joy.
- & lepes liȝtli him to · & lacehis him in armes ;  
with clipping & kesseng · þei kidden gret ioye.  
alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt half telle  
þe mirþ þat was maked · in þe mene while. 4528  
& ȝif *william* was glad · wittow forsoþe,  
Meliers was moche more · ȝif it so miȝt bene ;  
& florence of þat fare · þanne gret ferli hadde.
- Florence greets  
him, and he  
instantly falls in  
love with her.
- & sone as sche him saw · loueli sche him grett, 4532  
& he godli a-gayn · gret þat gode mayde,  
& for þe beaute þat sche bar · as bliue his hert  
turned to hire treuli · to loue for euer-more.

<sup>1</sup> Read “perische” (∴)



- whan þei in þat gladnesse · a gret while hade sete,  
 alphou<sup>s</sup> asked a-non · a-tir for to haue, 4537 Then Alphonse  
asks for his  
clothes, to go and  
see his father.  
[Fol. 71 b.]
- to fare out as fast · with his fader to speke,  
 & with lordesse of þat lond · þat him long hade missed.  
 & william wiztli · with-oute any more, 4540
- Greip<sup>e</sup>d him as gaili · as any gom þurt bene,  
 of alle trie a-tir · þat to kni<sup>z</sup>t longed,  
 so þat non mi<sup>z</sup>t a-mend<sup>1</sup> · a mite worþ, i wene.  
 & whan þei were at wille · as þei wold be greip<sup>e</sup>d, 4544
- eche on hent oþer bi þe hand · hendli & faire,  
 & hastili in-to þe heize halle · hi<sup>z</sup>eden in-fere. They go together  
to the hall.
- whan þe perles puple · perceyueden hem<sup>2</sup> come,  
 Many a lord ful loueli · lep hem a<sup>z</sup>ens, 4548
- as þo þat were geinli glad · on þat gom to loke.  
 Gret murþe at þat metyng · was mad, be 3ou sure.  
 þe king of spayne forsoþe · knew his sone sone,  
 & gret him ferst as a glad man · & oft god þonkes, 4552 The king of  
Spain soon knew  
his son.
- þat he so faire hade founde · his formest sone.  
 seþen þe lordes of londe · loueli him gretten,  
 & his bold broþer · be-fore alle oþer ;  
 saue þe king him-self · semliest he him gret, 4556 The werwolf is  
greeted by his  
brother.
- & most ioye for þat metyng · made þat time.  
 no tong mi<sup>z</sup>t telle · treuli þe soþe,  
 þe ioye þat was wrouzt · with lasse & with more.  
 þe comli quen of palerne · oft crist þonked, 4560 The queen of  
Palermo thanks  
Christ.
- þat hade hire sent of his sond · so moche ioye to haue,  
 & hade setteled hire sorwe · so sone, þat was huge.  
 sone þe semli segges · were sette in halle ;  
 þe real rinkes bi reson · at þe heize dese, 4564 All in the hall  
take their proper  
places.
- & alle oþer afterward · on þe side benches,  
 & sete so in solas · sadli ful þe halle,  
 eche dingneli at his degre · to deme þe soþe.  
 whan þe noyse was slaked · of þe semli burnes, 4568 The king of Spain  
addresses his son,
- þe king of spayne spak · to alphou<sup>s</sup> his sone,

<sup>1</sup> MS. "a-mand." Read "amend."—M.

<sup>2</sup> MS. "whan." Read "hem."—M.

- & seide, "semli sone · sore has me longed  
to se þi freli face · þat i for-lore hadde.
- [Fol. 72 ] for þis comli quen · þurth 3one kniȝtes dedes, 4572  
haþ vs alle in hold · to harm at hire wille.  
but swete sone · saide it haþ ben oft,  
þat our deliuerance · was don on þe one ; 4575  
þurth þe schuld we help haue · or neuer-more elles.  
þerfore, heuen king · heried mot 3e bene,  
þat haþ þe lend lif · vs alle to deliuere."
- Alphonse inquires  
what caused the  
war. "swete sire," seide alphonse · "so 3ou crist help,  
wharfore was al þis fare · formest bi-gunne ?" 4580  
"bi crist, sone," quath þe king · "to carpe þe soþe,  
alle þe werre & þis wo · is our wronge dedes.  
i desired þis damisele · þat digne is & nobul,  
to haue hire to þi broþer · þat here bi þe sitteþ ; 4584  
ac hire moder in no maner · hire nold me graunte.  
for-þi wiȝtli with werre · i wasted alle hire londes,  
& brouȝt hire at swiche bale · þat sche mercy craued,  
in þis maner þat sche · most mekli & faire, 4588  
do hire a-weī with hire douȝter · boute more harme ;  
sche wilned nouȝt elles · but þat nold i graunt.  
but þan com þis kene kniȝt · & þurth his clene strengþe,  
boldli in batayle · he bar down vs alle, 4592  
& pult vs in prison · to payne at his grace ;  
þus sped we vs out of spayne · to spire after winnyng."
- Alphonse answers, **A**lphonse þan a-non · answered & saide,  
"faire fader, bi mi feiþ · folili 3e wrouȝten, 4596  
to wilne after wedlok · þat wold nouȝt a-sente.  
þat moue 3e wite bi 3our werkes · how wroþli <sup>1</sup> 3e  
spedde ;  
to wicke was 3our *conseil* · & 3our wille after ;  
3if 3e <sup>2</sup> haue wonne þe worse · wite it 3our-selue. 4600  
but i hope to heuen king · 3if 3e wol here mi wordes,
- But I hope all  
can be made to  
end well."

<sup>1</sup> Read "wrongli."—M.<sup>2</sup> MS. "he." Read "ze."—M.

- al pis bale schal be brouzt · to bote at þe last.”  
to þe quen of palerne · alphouns þus saide,  
“a! menskful madame · mekes alle 3our peple, 4604 Alphonse craves  
silence while he  
þat non spend no speche · til i speke haue.” speaks further.  
þan was silens mad · to seie al þe soþe. [Fol. 72 b.]  
“ladis & oþer lordes · lesteneþ now my sawe !  
þis 3e witeþ wel alle · with-oute any fabul, 4608 “Ladies and  
lords, this land  
þat þis lond hade be lore · at þe last ende, had been lost if  
the war had  
3if þise werres hade lasted · any while here. lasted.  
but god 3ou sent swiche grace · of his grete miȝt,  
þat þis kud kniȝt · with his elene strengþe 4612 But this knight  
hath remedied all  
haþ i-bet al 3oure bale · & brouzt to 3our wille your grief,  
alle 3our fon þat with fors · defoyled 3ou long.  
3it wot non wiseli · wennēs he come,  
ne what weiȝ he is · but wite schal 3e sone. 4616 and yet no one  
knows who he is.  
3if þat burn wel him bar · i blame him but litel ;  
for mater i-now haþ eche man · to mene þe soþe,  
his moder þat is in meschef · to meyntene & help ;  
& schal come him bi kinde · 3if he crist loue.” 4620 He did quite right  
to help HIS  
MOTHER.”  
“ what bi-tokeneþ þis tale · telleþ, i be-seche,  
whi seie 3e so ? ” · seide þe quene þanne.  
“sertes, madame,” seid alphouns · “ soþli me leue.  
þis comli kniȝt is þi sone · bi crist þat me wrouzt ; 4624 “This knight,  
madame, is THY  
þou bar him of þi bodi · king ebrouns was his fader. son, and king  
Ebrouns was his  
al pis lordchip of pis lond · is lelli his owne. fader.  
& i am þe werwolf · wite 3e for soþe,  
þat bi-fore his fader · ful 3ore i 3ou bi-reft. 4628 I am the werwolf  
who took him  
& passed with him mi weie · prestli fro 3ou alle. away from you  
all.  
þe king & hise kniȝtes · with kries ful huge,  
þei sewed riȝt to þe see · to sle me 3if þei miȝt.  
but bliue boute bot · þe brode water i passed, 4632 Then the king  
and his knights  
pursued me as  
far as to the sea  
[Straits of  
Messina],  
boute hurt oþer harm · herized be goddes grace.  
þat so sauf sent me ouer · wiþ þi sone sounde.  
& gode ladi, 3if þe like · loue me neuer þe worse,  
þat i þe barn away bar · to blame had i be elle[s], 4636 which I crossed  
over in safety.  
for i wist ful wel · wat wo him was toward

Had I not taken  
him away, he  
would soon have  
been dead.

[Fol. 73.]

For Ebroun's  
brother bribed the  
ladies who had  
William in their  
care,

to poison the  
king and prince  
both.

When I knew it,  
I was grieved,  
and for pity stole  
him away.

I have ever helped  
him at need, and  
have brought him  
hither,

and now yield  
him to thee  
again."

When the queen  
heard this, her  
joy was  
unbounded.

Melior perhaps  
was the gladdest  
of all, that her  
lover was king of  
all that land.

ne had i so do, he hade be ded · many a day passed.

þe king ebrouns broþer · be-þouzt þis oft,  
if<sup>1</sup> þis ilk bold kniȝt · had he brouzt out of line, 4640  
he schold have entred as eyr · þis eritage to hold,  
after þe kinges day · bi dessent of blode.

& sone as a schrewe schuld · þe schrewedest he þouzt ;  
he coynted him queyntli · with þo tvo ladies, 4644  
þat hade þat time þi sone · to kepe in wardē,  
& meded hem so moche · wiþ alle maner þinges.

& bi-het hem wel more · þan i ȝou telle kan,  
Gret lordchip of londes · & liking at wille, 4648  
so þat þei him bi-hiȝt · bi a schort terme,  
þat þei priuēli wold enpoysoun · þe king & his sone,  
to haue do krouned him king · to kepe þat reaume.

but whan i knew al here cast · of here wic wille, 4652  
I ne miȝt it suffer · for sorwe & for reuþe,  
þat here wicked wille · in þise wise ended.

& þerfor i him tok · now haue i told þe soþe,  
& haue him holp herto · wanne he hade nede, 4656  
as moche as i miȝt · in eny maner wise :  
& hider i brouzt him, be ȝou siker · ȝour bales for to  
amēde.

haue him now bi þe hand · i ȝeld him here to þe."

Whan<sup>2</sup> þe comli quen · þat carping hade herde, 4660  
& saw þat was hire sone · soþli i-proued,  
þer nys man vpon mold · miȝt telle þe ioye  
þat was mad hem bi-twene · in þe mene wh[i]le,  
betwene þe dame & þe douȝter · & hire dere sone, 4664  
with clipping & kesseng · & oþer kinde dede.

& ȝif any miȝt be most · meliors was gladdest,  
þat hire loueliche lemman · was lord of þat reaume,  
bi kinde as kinges sone · & god kniȝt him-selue. 4668

MS. "of." Perhaps we should substitute *if*.—M.

<sup>2</sup> MS. "Mhan." The rubricator has here and elsewhere made a mistake, and inserted a capital M for a W.—M.

- swiche murthe as was mad · at þat metyng þanne,  
 & þat of al þat puple · þat in þe paleys were,  
 tonge miȝt non telle · þe tenþe<sup>1</sup> del, for soþe.  
 & anon, after þat · alphouns þanne hem tolde, 4672
- alle þe happes þat he hadde · al holly to þe hende,  
 from þat time þat he tok · þe child fro his frendes.  
 how þe fader him folwed · fayn him to quelle ;  
 & how he bar forþ þe barn · ouer þe brode water ; 4676
- & seþen how he souȝt forþ · bi selcouþ weizes,  
 bering euer þat barn · be niȝtes and daie,  
 til he com bi a forest · seuen mile fro rome ;  
 & how þe cou-herde com him to · & kept þe child  
 after, 4680
- & seþen how þemperour · souȝt out to hunte,  
 & fond him in þe forest · & faire hade him home,  
 & tok him to kepe · to his douȝter dere ;  
 & how þe meke mayde & he · melled of loue, 4684
- & hadde here liking in loue · a long time ofte ;  
 & how þe kinges sone of grece · kom hire to wedde,  
 & on þe morwe þat þe mariage · schold haue be  
 maked,
- how þei went a-wai · in wite beres skinnes ; 4688  
 “ þer-after, sire, i þe saued · forsoþe as þow knowest,  
 whanne alle þe puple prestili · pursewed after,  
 to haue do þe to deþe · & þi dere make.  
 & at boneuent i þe brouȝt · fram þe breme quarrer,  
 whan al þe cuntre was umbe-cast · with elene men of  
 armes, 4693
- to haue þe take þer tit · & to dethe hampred ;  
 I tok here souerayne sone · so saued i þe þere.”  
 seþen he told hou he dede · here hides þan chaunge,  
 & dede hem haue hertes skinnes · to hiden in hem  
 hope. 4697
- “ seþen at a wide water · i wan ȝou ouer boþe,  
 a tokene ȝit of þat time · telle i mai þi burde.

[Fol. 73 b.]  
 Alphonse recounts  
 all the details—

how he bore  
 William over the  
 water ;

how he carried  
 him by strange  
 ways to the  
 forest near Rome ;

how the cowherd  
 found him, and  
 then the emperor ;

how he and the  
 emperor's  
 daughter loved  
 each other ;

how the lovers  
 fled, clad in two  
 white bears'  
 skins ;

how they escaped  
 at Benevento ;

how they  
 exchanged their  
 hides for harts'  
 skins ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. “tonþe.” See l. 4715.

- and how the  
barge-boy hit  
Melior with an  
oar. a boye hire ȝaf a buffet · with a breme ore, 4700  
so þat hire lif lelli · neiȝ hade sche lore.”  
alle here happes holli · alphouns telleþ þere,  
& what he hade suffred · to sauen here liues.
- William was very  
glad at finding he  
was king Ebrouns'  
son.  
[Fol. 74.] Whan william hade herd · holli his wordes, 4704  
he was gretli glad · no gom þurt him wite,  
þat al þe puple in þe place · a-þertli knewen  
þat he was kindeli · king ebrouns sone.
- He embraces and  
kisses Alphonse,  
saying, þan lauzt he alphouns anon · loueli in armes, 4708  
& clipped him & kessed · & kindeli sayde,  
“ a ! faire frend alphouns · ioye þe bi-tide,  
& god for his grete miȝt · þi godnesse þe ȝelde,  
& þi tenful trauayles · þow hast for me suffred, 4712  
& for my loueli lemman · lord it þe quite !  
for i ne wot in þis world · what wise i miȝt  
quite þe [þe] tenþedel · in al mi lif time.  
but þer nis god vnder god · þat i may gete euer, 4716  
þat it [ne] schal redeli be þin · at þin owne wille ;<sup>1</sup>  
ne no dede þat i may do · þat ne schal be do sone,  
& loue lelli what þou louest · al mi lif dawes,  
& hate heizeli in hert · þat þou hate þenkest, 4720  
so þat my hert holli · schal hold him at þi wille.  
& þerto heizeliche am i hold · for holli i knowe  
þat alle þe sawes be soþ · þat þou saidest ere ;  
saddre sorwes for mi sake · suffred astow manye.” 4724  
“sertes, sire, þat is soþ” · seide alphouns þamme,  
“ Me þinkeþ ȝe miȝt be hold · to quite me mi mede ;  
& so i desire þat þou [do]<sup>2</sup> · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes.  
“ ȝa ! wold god,” seide william · “ þat i wist nouþe 4728  
“ ȝis, sire,” seide alphouns · “ so me crist help,
- “ In what way ? ”  
answered  
William. In what maner þat i miȝt · mest with þe plece,  
or þat i walt worldes god · þat þou woldest ȝerne.”  
“ ȝis, sire,” seide alphouns · “ so me crist help,

<sup>1</sup> Here follow two lines (out of place) which occur again below.  
See ll. 4722, 4723, and the note.

<sup>2</sup> Or insert “wole,” as Sir F. Madden suggests.

- þer nis god vnder god · þat i gretli willne, 4732 "There is no  
benefit I so long  
for as *our* thing."
- as o þing þat þou woldest · wilfulli me graunt."  
"ʒis, i-wisse," seide william · "wilne what þe likes,  
þeiʒ þou in hast woldest haue · holli al mi reame ;  
I wold nowt wilne a mite worþ · but meliors allone." "I will grant you  
half my kingdom  
—anything but  
Melior."  
[Fol. 71 b.]
- alphouns a-non · answered þanne & seide, 4737  
"I kepe nouʒt of þi kingdom · be crist þat me bouʒt,  
ne of þi loueli lemman · lelly but in gode.  
I ne wilne no-þing but þi suster · to be samen wedded,  
to weld here as my wif · al my lif tyme." 4741 "All I ask for is  
thy sister to  
wife."
- "ʒa, worþi god," seide william · "wel were me þanne,  
ʒif i wist þat þow woldest · here to wiue haue. "That were well  
indeed, if thou  
canst marry so  
low."
- it were a wonderful werk · ʒif þou woldest euere 4744  
Meke þe in eny maner · to be maried so lowe."  
"ʒis beter, sire," seide alphouns · "i preie þe of nouʒt  
elles,  
for al þe sorwe þat i haue suffred · for þi sake euer.  
but graunte me boute grucching · to haue þat gaie  
maide." 4748  
"hi god, sire," seide william · "þat gart me be fourmed,  
þou schalt [haue]<sup>1</sup> hire at þin hest · & with hire al my  
reaume,  
oper half witterli · with-out any lette."  
"nay, crist forbede," seide alphouns<sup>2</sup> · "for his holi  
blode, 4752  
þat i were so wicked · to wilne ouʒt of þi gode ;  
I ne bidde nouʒt a bene worþ · but þat burde one." "Nay, I ask but  
that lady only."  
þan william as a glad man · godli him þonked,  
& seide, "sertes, nowe [we]<sup>3</sup> schul be · samen hole  
frendes, 4756  
lelli breþeren in lawe · our lord be it þonked ;  
for al þe welþe of þe world · at wille nouʒ vs falleþ."  
þan al þe puple in þe paleys · prestli, fo[r] ioye,  
Maden al þe marþe · þat men miʒt deuise. 4760  
Then all the  
people rejoiced  
greatly,

<sup>1</sup> Read "schalt *haue* hire."—M.      <sup>2</sup> MS. "alphouns."

<sup>3</sup> Read "nowe *we* schul."

& þe comli quen · ful oft crist þonked,  
 þat hade so wigtli of hire wo · so wel hire comforted.  
 tid were þe tidinges told · wide where a-boute  
 of þat ferli þat was fallen þere · fast þan þer-after, 4764  
 Gret puple drow to palern · to proue þe soþe,  
 to loke on þe lordes · in liking at wille.

and the tidings of  
 it were soon  
 spread every-  
 where.

As soon as it was  
 known that the  
 two ladies would  
 have betrayed  
 William,

Now forto munge forþer · as þe mater falles.  
 N whan þise [tidinges]<sup>1</sup> were told · to lasse & to  
 more, 4768

þat þo tvo trattes þat william · wold haue traysted,  
 þo ladyes þat had him to loke · & leren in zouþe,  
 þei wisten witterly þanne · with-oute any lette,  
 þat þei schuld be do to deþe · deulfulli in hast, 4772  
 brent in briȝt fur · to-drawe, or an-honged,  
 as þilk þat [were]<sup>2</sup> worþi · for þere wicked dedes—

[Fol. 75.]  
 they were afraid  
 they would be  
 burnt, drawn, or  
 hanged.

So Gloriande and  
 Acelone put on  
 sackcloth,

Gloriauns & achillones · þo tvo ladies hiȝten—  
 bliue þei hem bi-þout · what bote miȝt hem help, 4776  
 seþe here treson was kud · & knowe al a-boute.  
 hastili þei hent hem on · heizresse ful rowe  
 next here bare bodi · & bare fot þei went,  
 & faire bi-fore william · þei felle on knes boþe, 4780

and put them-  
 selves in  
 William's grace.

& goue hem in his grace · for þat grete gilt,  
 & knouelecheden al þe cas · how þei cast hadde,  
 to haue sotiliche sleyn · him-self & his fader,  
 bi hest of þe kinges broþer · þat bale to haue wrouȝt.  
 “lete vs, sire, haue þe lif · wil our lord wold. 4785

“We beg for our  
 lives,

we meke vs in zoure merci · at alle maner poyntes,  
 to sle vs or to saue · wheþer ȝou god likes.  
 þat we ar worþi to þe deth · wel we be a-knowe, 4788  
 but wold ȝe graunt vs ȝour grace · for goddes loue of  
 heuen,

and hope to be  
 allowed to do  
 penance,

to put vs to sum place · penaunce to wirche,  
 & late vs haue þe lif · whil our lord wold,

<sup>1</sup> This word is surely wanted; cf. l. 4763.

<sup>2</sup> Read “that *was* worthi,” or “*were* worthi.” M.



- þat we miȝt a-mende · *sum* of our mis-gilt, 4792  
 & for ȝour fad[er]<sup>1</sup> & for ȝou · feiȝþli to preie. and to pray for  
 ȝif ȝe worche so · worchipe miȝt ȝe gete, father."  
 &, dere lord, of þe deth · may no god dede falle,  
 bot a litel wicked wille · þer-with wold be slaked."  
 al þe barnage as bliue · baden for hem ȝerne, 4797  
 þat þei most *in alle maner* · þat trespas amende.  
 & william þan wiȝtli · here wille haȝ graunted, William grants  
 so þat þei wrouȝt *in þat wise* · & wold be gode after. them their lives,  
 some were þe ladies · to an hermitage brouȝt, 4801  
 & linned þere in god lif · wil our lord wold, and they live in  
 In penaunce & in prayeres · prineli & loude, a hermitage  
 til þei went of þis world · whan god wold hem fecche. till the time of  
 now lete i here of þe ladies · & lesteneþ a-noþer, 4805 their death.  
 what bi-tidde of þis tale · as þis store telleþ. [Fol. 75 b.]
- William þan with-oute more · wiȝtli þer-after,  
 made him menskful messageres · to mene þe William sends  
 soþe, 4808 messengers to the  
 þe grettest lordes of þat land · þat lelest were hold, emperor of  
 & konyngest of kurtesie · & kowden fairest speke. Rome,  
 to þemperour of rome · redeli he hem sent,  
 & with loueli letteres · lelli him bi-souȝt. 4812 beseeching him to  
 ȝif þat is wille were · with-oute any lette, come to Palermo  
 to be þere with his best burnes · bi a certayne time, to his daughter's  
 to mensk þe mariage · of meliors his douȝter. marriage,  
 and ȝif alisaundrine · were þanne aliue, 4816 and asking that  
 þat sche most with him come · curtesli he prayde. Alexandrine  
 þan were þe messageres · in alle maner wise might come too.  
 so trieliche a-tired · to telle þe soþe,  
 of hors & of harneys · & [what]<sup>2</sup> hem most neded,  
 þat no wieȝh of þis world · þurt wilne beter; 4821  
 & went forþ on here way · wiȝtly and fast, The messengers  
 til þei redli hade rauȝt · to grete rome euene. go to Rome;  
 whan þe boll barounes · be-fore þemperour come, 4824

<sup>1</sup> Read "fadere."—M.<sup>2</sup> See line 4187.

- and greet the  
emperor from  
Alphouse king of  
Spain      ful godli þei him gret · gladli, as þei ouzt,  
ferst in alphouus half · þat king was of spayne,  
for þempour & he · hadde be felawes 3ore,
- and William king  
of Apulia,      seþen in worþi williams · þat king was of poyle,      4828  
& souerayn of cisile · as schold a king bene.
- and in Melior's  
name,      & seþen in meliors name · þat was hise mery douzter.  
& in þe kinges half of poyle · praiede him fayre,
- to come to  
Palermo to his  
daughter's  
m'riage.      to be at palerne with his puple · presteli & sone,      4832  
bi a certeyn day · þat set was sone after,  
to menske þe mariage · of meliors his douzter,  
for to wiue he wold here take · þat welt þat reaume.  
whanne þe messagers hade munged · of meliors þe  
schene,      4836
- The emperor asks  
where his  
daughter is.      Gretteliche was he gladed · & gan for to seie,  
“lordinges, for 3our leute · lelli me telles,  
3if 3e wite in any wise · were be þat burde?”
- [Fol. 76.]  
“In Palermo,  
sire. Here is her  
letter.”      “Marie, sire,” sede þe messageres · “3e mowe vs wel  
trowe,      4840
- þe milde mayde meliors · in palerne now dwelles ;  
Loo here hire owne letteres · to leue it þe beter.”
- The king bids a  
clerk read the  
letter,      þe king komauuded a clerk · keneli & swiþe  
to loke on þo letteres · and lelli hem rede,      4844  
þat he mi3t wiztli wite · what þat þei mened.
- and the clerk  
unlid it and read  
as the messengers  
had said.      þe clerk þanne deliuerli · vudede þo letteres,  
& fond as þe messageres · hade munged be-fore,  
how þe king of poyle · prestli hade ordeyned,      4848  
at swich a certayn day · his semliche douzter wedde.
- Then the emperor  
knew it was all  
true,      Þanne wist þemperour wel · þat þei were treuwe,  
& made þe messagers · þe mu3tþe þat he couþe,  
realiere nere neuer rinkes · resseined in place.      4852
- and summons his  
lords to go with  
him to the  
wedding.      Mauli made þemperour · his messageres out-wende.  
alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli to somoune  
to be redili a-raied · in here richest wise,  
to wend with him wiztli · to þe wedding nobul.      4856  
& wan þei herden his hest · þei hiezeden fast,

- & certes on þe selue day · þat hem was a-signed,  
 so riche a route in rome · was rialiche a-sembled,  
 þat neuer seg vnder sunne · ne saw swiche a-noþer,  
 so trizliche a-tired · of al þat to hem longed ; 4861  
 & went wiztli here [way]<sup>1</sup> · wen þei were zare,  
 & alisaundrine with hem · as i arst munged.  
 & wending as þei were · in here way þat time, 4864  
 of þe menskful messageres · þemperour þanne asked,  
 bi what cas his douzter · was fare to þat londe,  
 & how kendeli seche was knowe · þat king wold hire  
 wedde.  
 & þei titli him told · al þe trewe soþe, 4868  
 of alle fortune þat was falle · fram comsing to þende,  
 In alle maner as i munged · in mater here bi-fore.  
 & whanne þemperour hade herd · how [þat] hit ferde,  
 he was gretteli gladed · and oft crist þonked 4872  
 of þe fortune bi-falle · of so faire an hende,  
 & munged þanne al þe mater · to his meyne sone,  
 as þo menskful messagers · hade munged be-fore. 4875  
 þe murþe þat þanne was maked · miȝt no tonge telle,  
 þat tit was mad for þo tiding · whan þei told were.  
 & so þan held þei here way · harde & faste,  
 til þei to palerne prestili · with al þat pres come.
- William<sup>2</sup> þanne ful wiztli · with a faire puple 4880  
 of crowned kinges · & kniȝtes many hundred,  
 went a-ȝen þemperour · with wel glade chere.  
 a gay greting was þer gret · wan þei to-gedir met. and greets him.  
 william & þemperour · went alder-formest, 4884  
 & alhouns next after · & auenautli him grette,  
 with alle þe murþe vpon mold · þat men miȝt deuise.  
 þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him next after,  
 for þemperour & he bi-fore · felawes halde bene, 4888  
 The king of Spain  
 also welcomes the  
 emperor gladly.

<sup>1</sup> Read "here way wen they were zare."—M. See ll. 4861, 4878.

<sup>2</sup> The capital W is mis-written M. See l. 4923.

- & kindli kessed eij<sup>er</sup> o<sup>er</sup> · whan þei kome to-gadere.  
 þe murþe þat was mad · at þat metyng þanne,  
 ne may no tong telle · treuli þe soþe.
- On hearing the palace, seþen went þei alle samen · swetli to-gadere 4892  
 to þe perles paleys · and prestili þat time,  
 the queen and Melior and Florence with a clene cumpanye þe quen · com hem a-zens,  
 þat lady was of þat lond · & ledde in here hondes  
 þe menskful mayde meliors · & here oune douzter ;  
 & hem seweþ a selcouþe route · of semli ladies ; 4897
- and the queen of Spain come to welcome him. þe quen of spayne spachi · þan spedde fast after.  
 a mery meting was þer mett · whan þei neized same,  
 with clipping & kessing · and *contenauce* hende. 4900
- Great was the emperor's joy at seeing his daughter. but soþli whan þemperour sey · his semli douzter,  
 a glader gome vnder god · miȝt non gon on erþe.  
 þe melodie þat þei made · no man miȝt telle,  
 ne neuer nere gestes vnder god · gladliere receyued.  
 noþing wanted þei at wille · þat þei wold haue, 4905  
 þat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here riȝttes.
- No need to tell of their merry fare. [Fol. 77.] Munge now nel i namore · of here merie fare,  
 for beter to be þan it was · miȝt no burn þenke. 4908
- The joyous meeting of Alexandrine and Melior. as sone as alisaundrine · hade siȝt of hire ladi,  
 no tunge miȝt telle · treuli half þe ioye  
 þat þei made at þat metyng · whan þei mette same.  
 & meliors ful mekli · brouȝt hire to hire chaumber,  
 & told here whan sche sei time · treuli al þe soþe, 4913  
 al þe sorwe þat sche hade suffred · seþe sche hire seie ;  
 now of þis mater · no more nel ich munge ;  
 & alle murþe was hem mad · among atte fulle. 4916
- Melior tells her friend all her story. william & his worþi make · whan þei sei time,  
 told þemperour treuli · þat hem tidde hadde,<sup>1</sup>  
 of meschef & of murthe · & ho hem most helped,  
 & how þei brouȝt were of bale · to here bote þere. 4920  
 & alle þenne of þat auenturre · hadde gret ioye,  
 & þonked god of his grace · þat so godli hem spedde.

<sup>1</sup> After "hadde" occurs a line made up from this line and the next, and not finished, viz. "of mechef & of murþe þat hem tidde h."

**W**hanne <sup>1</sup> time was, to þe mete · þei turned sone,  
 & serued [were]<sup>2</sup> selcouþli · riȝt as hem wolde, 4924  
 of alle dere deintes · of metes and of drynkes ;  
 and as þei muriest at þe mete · þat time seten,  
 þer come menskful messageres · þat men were nobul,  
 fro þemperour of grece · gret wel þe quene, 4928  
 þat ladi was of þat lond · & he hire dere fader,  
 & from hire broþer partende · þat was hire pert broþer.  
 & whan þise messageres · hade here greting made,  
 þan þe soueraynest seg · saide of hem alle, 4932  
 “Madame, makes ȝou merie · for marie loue in heuten,  
 for ȝour feiȝful fader · naþ ȝou nouȝt for-ȝete.  
 ac he haþ sent ȝou to socoure · so grissiliche an host,  
 þat þer nis man vpon mold · þat may ȝou with-stond,  
 þat þei nelle bring in bale · at ȝour bidding sone. 4937  
 þei kome sailing in þe see · here souerayn is ȝour  
 broþer ;  
 partenedon þe perles · al þat puple ledes,  
 & se him schal ȝour-self · hastli, bouthe faile, 4940  
 er þis þridde day be don · doute ȝou non oþer.  
 & whan þat comli quen · þo tidinges herde,  
 a gladdere womman in world<sup>3</sup> · was þer non a-liue,  
 to þe menskful messagere · made<sup>4</sup> gret ioye, 4944  
 & worþili hem welcomed · ȝe mow wite þe soþe.  
 þe comli quen & þe king · counseiled þan to-gedere,  
 þat þe bridhale schuld a-bide · til hire broþer come,  
 to mensk more þat mariage · ȝif þei miȝt þanne. 4948  
 þan on þe þridde day ariued · hire broþer þere,  
 with a clene cumpanye · to carp þe soþe,  
 þe grettest lordes of þat lond · þat liued þat time ;  
 but his ost þat tide he left · in þe see stille. 4952  
 whan þe quen wist of his come · curtesli & sone,

All go to meat,  
and are serued  
with all dear  
dainties.

Some messengers  
enter, from the  
emperor of  
Greece and the  
queen's brother  
Partenedon.

The chief of them  
says, “Madame,

your father hath  
sent an army to  
help you.

Partenedon your  
brother is their  
leader.”

[Fol. 77 b.]

Then the queen  
was very glad,  
and welcomed the  
messengers.

It was agreed to  
put off the bridal  
till her brother  
came.

On the third day  
he arrived, with a  
great company.

<sup>1</sup> The large capital letter is mis-written M, as at l. 4880.

<sup>2</sup> See l. 5064.

<sup>3</sup> MS. “woldr.”

<sup>4</sup> The sense would be clearer if the pronoun “sehe” were supplied, but it is often omitted in similar cases throughout this poem.—M.

The queen goes  
forth with the  
rest to greet him.

Ghælli with grete lordes · sche goþ him aʒens,  
þe kud emperour of rome · & þe king of spayne,  
& his comli quen · & alle þe kniʒtes gode. 4956  
þe worþi william was þe first · þat welcomed him faire,  
& alphouus after him · & after þe kinges.

She receives him  
right royally.

þe quen of palern presteli · þan presed to hire broþer,  
& receyued him as reali · as any rink þurt bene; 4960  
þe king of spayne & þe quen · curtesli him gret,  
& þemperour of rome · with riʒt gret ioye.

It was a solem  
sight to see them  
"clip" and kiss.

þer was a solempne siʒt · whan þei samen mette,  
with clipping & kissing · to kepþe hem to-gadere. 4964  
þe lady ful loueli · þan lad forþ hire broþer  
presteli to palerne · to þe paleys riche.

None can tell the  
mirth that was  
made.

More mureþe vpon mold · miʒt no man deuise,  
þan was mad to þo men · to munge þe soþe; 4968  
Ne wanted hem no-þing · þat þei wold haue,  
plenteuosli in eche place · þe puple was serued.

The queen tells  
her brother how  
William was her  
son,

& as þei sete in solas · some þe quen told  
buxumli to hire broþer · what bi-tidde þere; 4972  
how william was hire son · & with his douʒti dedes  
hade conquered þe king of spayne · & ended þat werre;

[Fol. 78.]  
and how the  
werwolf was  
restored to man's  
shape;

& in what wise þe werwolf · was brouʒt to his state;  
& holli alle þe happes · as ʒe han herd be-fore; 4976  
how þei went away boþe · in white beres skinnes.

and of the  
weddings to be on  
the morrow.

þan told sche how alphouus · schuld his nece wedde,  
& william worþi meliors · with welþe on þe morwe.<sup>1</sup>

He was very  
vexed at this, for  
he had wooed  
Melior in Rome.

þan þemperoures sone of grece · was a-greued sore, 4980  
whanne he wist on þe morwe · þe mariage schuld bene,  
for he wend hire haue wedded · whilom in rome.

He would have  
liked to win  
Melior by force.

& þeiʒh he wist william · his nobul newe þanne,  
hade he had his ost · he wold [haue] a-saide þere 4984  
to haue with stoteye & strengþe · stoutli hire wonne.

But as he saw it  
could not be, he

but sei he soþli · so miʒt it nouʒt bene,  
ac suffer he most · þouh it him sore rewed,

<sup>1</sup> These two lines, 4978 and 4979, follow line 4987 in the MS.; but are evidently out of place there, and must be inserted here.

- & semblant made he sobur · so as it him paide, 4988 appeared to be  
 but i hote þe in hert · it liked him wel ille. pleased, though  
 þann william and his moder · & meliors als, grieved at heart.  
 & alþhouns anon riȝt · of alisaundrine toched, William and the  
 to marie here menskfulli · a-mong hem riȝt þanne. 4992 rest wished to  
 & so þei touched hem be-twene · to tele þe soþe, find a husband for  
 þat braundnis alþhouns broþer · schuld be hire make, Alexandrine,  
 þe kinges sone of spayne · þat comsed alle þe werre, and thought that  
 & he at his fader hest · hit þanne graunted, 4996 Braundnis agrees  
 & at þe bidding of his broþer · & williams hest. to this.  
 þan driue þei forþ þe day · in dedut & in murþe, They pass the day  
 & haden holli at wille · what hem haue nedede, merrily till  
 & seþþe to bedde uche burn · busked him þat time. bedtime.  
 but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe, 5001 Next day, all  
 Men miȝt haue seie of segges · many on greiȝed,<sup>1</sup> were seen in their  
 In þe worþiest wise · þat seien were euere, finest attire.  
 seþþe he þat vs bouȝt · in bemleem was bore. 5004  
 alle þe clerkes vnder god · couþe nouȝt descriue Not all the clerks  
 a-redili to þe riȝtes · þe realte of þat day, could describe the  
 þat was in þat cite · for þat solempne fest, royalty of that  
 & of alle men þat manerli · miȝt ouȝt gete 5008 day,  
 of any god gaili · to greiþe hem midde. [Fol. 78 b.]  
 to munge of menstracie · it miȝt nouȝt be aymed, nor tell of the  
 so many maner minstracie · at þat mariage were, minstrelsy at the  
 þat whan þei made here menstracie · eche man wende, marriage.  
 þat heuen hastili & erþe · schuld hurtel to-gader, 5013 The minstrelsy  
 so desgeli it denede · þat al þerþe quakede. dinned so that  
 þe stretis were alle strewed · & stoutli be-honged, the earth quaked.  
 with gode cloþes of gold · of alle gay hewes ; 5016 The streets  
 & burgeys with here burdes · in here best wise, were strewn with  
 weyteden out at windowes · eche weie a-boute, cloth of gold.  
 to prie on þe puple · þat priked in þe stretes,  
 & to loke on here lord · þat lelli þan schold 5020  
 be krowned king on þat day · to kepe al þat reaume.

<sup>1</sup> "greiþed" (?)

But when the time came for the brides to go to church, their attire was past description.

There were kings and queens and lords, with horses and "harness."

The emperor of Rome led Florence, William's sister.

The king of Spain led Melior.

Partenedon led Alexandrine.

[Fol. 79.]  
The clergy met them in procession, and gave William the cross to kiss.

The patriarchs and prelates were soon apparelled,

and the couples were wedded.

Towus, countries, and castles are given to Alexandrine's husband.

No clerk could describe the mirth.

But trewþe now for to telle · whan time come of daye,  
þat þe blisful brides · schold buske to cherche,  
of here a-tir for to telle · to badde is my witte, 5024  
for alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt it descriue  
a-redili to þe riȝtes · so riche it were alle.

boþe kinges & quenes · & oþer kud lordes,  
perteli in alle a-paraile · pursewend þurth-oute, 5028  
of hors & harneys · & þat hem haue neded,  
so þat non miȝt be amended · a mite worþ. for soþe ;  
as eche gom in his degre · godliche ouȝt.  
for-þi no more of þat mater · nel ich miȝge noþe, 5032  
but touche forþ of þe tale · as telleþ þe gest.

whan þe burnes were boum · to buske to chirche,  
þemperour of rome · williams suster ladde,  
þilke þat alhouus · schold to wiue weld. 5036

& þe kud king of spayne · curtesli & faire,  
ladde meliors menskfulli · a-mong alle þe puple.  
þe quenes broþer of palerme · partenedon þe hold  
alisauðrine at þat time · auenauztli ladde. 5040

al with blisse on here blonkes · þei busked to chirche,  
with alle þe muþe vpon mold · þat man miȝt of þenk.<sup>1</sup>  
þe clergie com hem<sup>2</sup> a-ȝens · riȝt gailiche a-tyred,  
ful pertliche on procession · prestli as þei ouȝt, 5044  
& komen to here king · & dede him þe croyce kesse.

þan with worchip & wele · went to þe cherche,  
þe patriarches & oþer prelates · prestli were reuested,  
to make þe mariage · menskfulli as it ouȝt. 5048

& after þe lawe of þe lond · lelliche to telle,  
þei were þer wedded · worchipfulli and fayre  
& lelli, for alisauðrines lord · ne hade non londes,  
þer were tit ȝif hem to · treuli fele townes, 5052

comli castelles and coup · and cuntres wide,  
to liue wiþ worchip & wele · in world al here liue.  
no clerk vnder crist · ne kowþe nouȝt descriue  
þe murthe for þat mariage · þat was maked þanne. 5056

<sup>1</sup> Catchword—"þe clergie." <sup>2</sup> MS. "him." Read "hem."—M.



- þe richesse ne þe riaulte · to rekene þe soþe,  
 ne þe solemþne seruise · þat seyn was þat time.  
 but whan þe seruise was seid · as it schold bene,  
 þat fel to a mariage · be-maked at cherehe, 5060  
 þat puple prestli aȝen · to þe paleys wente  
 wiþ al þe *murþe* of menstracye · þat man miȝt on þenk.  
 & treuli whan time was · þei *turned* to mete,  
 & serued were as selcoupli · as hem-self wolde 5064  
 desiren of eny deyntes · of metes & drinkes.  
 It were toor forto telle · treuli al þe soþe,  
 & to reherce þe aray ariȝt · of þat riche feste,  
 for-þi i leue þis liȝtli · ac leueþ þis for treuþe, 5068  
 þer miȝt no mon it amende · a mite worþ, i leue.  
 whan bordes were born a-doun · & burnes hade  
 waschen,  
 Men miȝt haue seie to *menstrales* · moche god ȝif,  
 sterne stedes & stef · & ful stoute robes, 5072  
 Gret garisun of gold · & greiþli gode iuweles.  
 þe fest of þat mariage · a moneþ fulle lasted,  
 & eche day was gret god · giue al a-boute,  
 to more & to lasse · þat at þe mariage were. 5076  
 þan lauȝt þe lordes here leue · at þe monþes ende ;  
 partenedon *parted* first · of palerne þe quenes broþer ;  
 for he hade ferrest to fare · formest he went.  
 & william wiþ his wiȝes · went him wiþ on gate, 5080  
 & semli wiþ alle solas · to þe see him brouȝt,  
 & his menskful moder · meliors, & his suster.  
 prestili þe quen of palerne · þan preied hire broþer,  
 to grete hire feiþful fader · fele times & ofte, 5084  
 “ & þonk him kindli of þe help · þat he to me sent,  
 & telle him treuli · as it bi-tidde here.”  
 þan lauȝt þei eche leue at oþer · lelli to telle ;  
 partenedon passed to schepe · & his puple after, 5088  
 & went wiȝtli to saile · þe wind was at þe best,  
 & saileden wiþ game & gle · to grece til þei come.  
 þan told he tyt to his fader · treuli þe soþe,

The service  
ended,

they returned to  
the palace, and  
went to meat.

It were hard to  
tell all about the  
rich feast.

When they had  
washed after  
meat, the  
minstrels received  
gifts—steeds,  
robes, gold, and  
jewels.

The feast lasted a  
month.

[Fol. 79 b.]

Partenedon was  
the first to go  
home ;

and the queen  
told him to thank  
her father.

Then Partenedon  
sailed away to  
Greece.

He told his father  
all the events,  
how his sister was  
helped by her  
son, and Melior  
married to his  
nephew.

The emperor  
wondered, but  
was glad his  
nephew was so  
peerless,

and that his  
daughter had  
been so well  
aided.

Next, the  
emperor of Rome  
went homewards,

and William and  
the rest escorted  
him for five  
miles.

[Fol. 80.]

The emperor  
advises his  
daughter, saying,

"Be courteous to  
all, meek to thy  
servants, and  
leal to thy lord.

of fortune þat was falle · fram comsing to þende. 5092  
how his semli suster · was holpen þurth hire sone,  
& how þat maide meliors · was wedded þat time,  
to his owne neweu · þough it him nouzt liked. 5095  
& whan þemperour hade herde · [holly]<sup>1</sup> þo wordes,  
he was a-wondred gretli · as he wel miȝt,  
but glad he was þat his neweu · so nobul was wox,  
& preised so perles · al oþer þat he passeþ, 5099  
of alle kniȝtes vnder [heuene]<sup>2</sup> · þat knowe were þanne.  
& þat his douȝter of here duresse · was so deliuered,  
Gretli he þonked god · of his grete miȝt ;  
& liued þan in lisse · al his lif after. 5103  
but go we now from þe gregoyse · & ginne of anoþer,  
& of þe puple in palerne · how þei passed, telle.

þe real emperour of rome · remewed next after  
redili towardses rome · with al his route nobul.  
william & his moder · meliors<sup>3</sup> & his suster, 5108  
þe king of spayne & his sones · & here semli puple,  
went wiþ him on gate · wel an fine myle,  
to conueye him curtesli · as kindnesse it wold,  
wiþ al þe murþ vpon mold · þat men miȝt on þenk.  
& as þei went bi þe weie · wittow for soþe, 5113  
ful mekli to meliors · þemperour þus saide,  
"now, dere douȝter, i þe preie · do bi mi rede.  
lok þou bere þe buxumli · & be god & hende, 5116  
konnyng & kurtes · to komwne & to grete ;  
be meke & mercyabul · to men þat þe serue,  
and be lel to þi lord · and to þis ladi after, 5119  
þat is his menskful moder · & moche þow hire loue.  
& alle þe lordes of þis lond · loue wel after,  
& loke, douȝter, bi þi lif · as þow me louest dere,  
þat neuer þe pore porayle · be piled for þi sake,

<sup>1</sup> See l. 246.

<sup>2</sup> Read "vnder god," or "vnder heuene."—M.

<sup>3</sup> MS. repeats "meliors."

- ne taxed to taliage · but tentyfli þow help, 5124 Never let the  
poor be robbed on  
þat al þis lond be lad · in lawe as it ouzt ; thine account,  
þan wol al þe pore puple · þreie for þe 3erne, and the poor will  
to liue long in god liif · & þi lord also. pray for thee.
- stiffi loke þow st[r]iue · fo[r] state of holi cherche, 5128 Strive to maintain  
to meyntene it manli · on alle maner wise. the church.
- Gif gretli of þi god · for goddes loue of heuen ;  
be merciabul to alle men · þat in mechef arn ; Be pitiful to all  
so schaltow gete god los · & gretli be menskked, 5132 in trouble.
- as han al þin aunceteres · or þow were bi-geeten.  
do þus, mi dere douzter · & drede þow þe neuer, Do thus, and thou  
þat þow ne schalt haue heuen blisse · after þis liue." shalt win the  
ful mekli seide meliors · wiþ meling of teres, 5136 bliss of heaven."
- "i hope, sire, to heuen king · 3our hest so wirche,  
þat no barn þat is born · schal blame mi dedes." Melior, weeping,  
ful tyt after þo tales · þei token here leue, says she hopes  
clipping & kesseng · kurtesli eche oþer. 5140 none will ever  
but þe mournyng þat meliors · made þat time, blame her.
- for hire fader schold fare · from hire so sone,  
treuli it were ful tor · to telle þe soþe. It were hard to  
ac þemperour ful hendeli · held hire in is armes, 5144 tell how Melior  
& comforted here kindeli · and þe quen priiede mourned at her  
to be meke & merciabule · to meliors his douzter, father's  
" & cheresche here & chaste · 3if þat chaunce falles, departure.  
þat sche wold miswerche · wrongli any time." 5148 But he comforted  
" 3is, bi crist, sire," quap þe quen · "kare nouzt þer- [Fol. 80 b.]  
fore. her, asking the  
queen to be kind  
to her, and to  
chasten her when  
she does wrong.
- i loue hire as miin owne lif · leue þow for soþe,  
wel i wot sche wol worche · al-way þe gode. 5151 The queen  
for-þi here wille schal be wrouzt · what sche wol 3erne promises, saying  
þat sche ne schal want in no wise · what þe hert likes." she will doubtless  
þemperour hire þroli þonked · many þousand siþe, always do right.
- & after þat, anon riht · to alisaundrine he seide, 5155 The emperor  
" God has þe nouzt for-gete · my gode hende mayde ; tells Alexandrine  
for worchipfulli artou wedded · to welde a kinges sone. that God has not  
ful busili i þe bidde · þat burn euer honoure, forgotten her.

- & wirche him al þe worchip · in world þatou maye ;  
 þanne schal eche lud þe loue · & for þi lif preie." 5160
- "Your command shall be kept,"  
 she replied.
- "3our hest, sire, schal be holde" · sede alisaundrine  
 þanne,  
 "so þat ze ne schul here · of me nouzt but gode,  
 I hope, þurth goddes grace · but gomes on me lye."
- Then the emperor  
 took his leave,  
 and went to  
 Rome.
- þemperour þan tiztli · tok leue of hem alle, 5164  
 & wendes forþ on his way · wiztli to rome,  
 & liuede þere in liking · a long time after.  
 now reste we of romaynes · & reken we ferre,
- We now speak of  
 the Spaniards.
- & speke we of þe spaynols · wil we haue space, 5168  
 hou þei sped hem to spayne · spacli þer-after.
- William and his  
 mother and  
 Melior return to  
 the palace at  
 Palermo.
- Whan þe king of palerne · & his perles moder,  
 & þe meke meliors · his menskful quene,  
 were come a-ze to here court · to carpe þe soþe, 5172  
 þei passed in-to palerne · to þe paleis riche,  
 with al þe murþe vpon mold · þat man miȝt of þink.  
 but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe,  
 þe king of spayne spacli · spac to take leue, 5176  
 for him & alle his felawchipe · to fare þat time,  
 boþe him-self & braundine · þat was his bold quene,  
 & his semli sones boþe · alphouns & his broþer,  
 & here worþi wiues · þat were alle at onis. 5180
- The king of Spain  
 and Braundine  
 and his sons  
 propose to take  
 leave,  
 [Fol. 81.]
- king william þe king · of spayne þonkes  
 of al þe faire fordede · þat he hade for hem wrouzt,<sup>1</sup>  
 þurh þe grete grace · þat god hade him sent ; 5183  
 for caire wold þei to here cuntre · & crist him bi-teche.
- The king of Spain  
 thanks king  
 William.
- whan þe king was war · þei wold nedes wen[d],<sup>2</sup>  
 Gret sorwe for alphouns sake · sank to his herte,  
 for he schuld his felawchipe · for-go at þat time. 5187  
 but whan þat he nedes<sup>3</sup> most · he nam him bi hond,  
 & seide, siking sore · "now alphouns, swete broþer,
- William is very  
 sorry to lose  
 Alphonse, and  
 says,

<sup>1</sup> MS. "woruzt."

<sup>2</sup> MS. "wen nedes." Read "nedes wend."—M.

<sup>3</sup> MS. "nedest."

- seþþe þou cairest in-to þi cuntre · to kepe þi reāume,  
 I bidde þe as buxumli · as broþer schal a-noþer,  
 3if it bi-tide eni time · þat þow tene haue, 5192  
 with werre or oþer wrong · with eny wiȝt in erþe,  
 or with þe sori sarazins · schuldest haue to done,  
 sende to me þi sond · swiþe vpon hast,  
 & i schal hastili me hiȝe · bi him þat me bouȝt, 5196  
 to venge þe verali · for ouȝt þat bi-tideþ.”  
 “þe selue, sire, seie i be þe” · seide alphoums þanne,  
 “sone to come to þi sond · schal þer non me lette.”  
 eiþer þonked oþer · many þousand <sup>1</sup> siþes, 5200  
 & lauȝt seþe here leue · þouȝh hem loþ were.
- Þ**anne mekli williams moder · & meliors he kissed,  
 bi-kenned hem to crist · on croyce þat was peyned,  
 & mekli þe quen þan · to hire douȝter meled, 5204  
 & kenned hire curtesli · to kepe wel hire mensk,  
 bad hire be buxum · & wel hire burn loue,  
 & haue pite on þe pore · & prestli hem help,  
 & gretliche herie god · & do alle gode dedes. 5208  
 & sche, sore siking · seide þat sche wold,  
 sche hoped, þurth goddes grace · & hastli þer-after,  
 clipping & kessing · to crist þei hem bi-tauȝt.  
 & spacli þe spaynols · sped hem to schipe ; 5212  
 whan þei were arayde · eche ring,<sup>2</sup> as þei wold,  
 swiþe þei setten vp sayles · & souȝten on gate  
 with al maner murþe · þat man miȝt of þink,  
 for wind & gode wederes · hade þei at wille ; 5216  
 & spedden hem spacli · til spayne þat þei come.  
 þan alle þe lordes of þat lond · & oþer lasse & more,  
 þat were ouȝt worþi · of alle þat wide reāume,  
 hiȝeden hem to þe hauene · hendeli hem aȝens, 5220  
 & welcomed him worþili · as þei wel ouȝt ;  
 & of alphoums come · alle were glade.

“If, Alphonse,  
 thou art ever in  
 trouble, or art  
 assailed by the  
 Saracens,

send a message to  
 me, and I will  
 come and help  
 thee.”

“I say the same  
 by thee,” said  
 Alphonse ;

“nothing shall  
 prevent me from  
 coming to thee.”

Then Alphonse  
 kissed William's  
 mother and  
 Melior,  
 and the queen  
 gave Florence  
 good advice.

She, sighing  
 sorely, promised  
 to follow it.

The Spaniards  
 embark, and  
 [Fol. 81 b.]  
 sailed away with  
 a fair wind.

The Spanish lords  
 come out to meet  
 them at the  
 haven.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “þousans.”

<sup>2</sup> “rink” (?) See l. 5353.

- All went on to the palace. & so al þat puple to þe palays · passede sone,  
with al maner murþe · þat men make couþe. 5224
- The king of Spain crowned  
Alphonse as king,  
as he himself was very old.  
þe king of spayne spacli · to speke þe soþe,  
krouned alphouns to king · to kepe þat reaume,  
for him-self was febul · & fallen in elde,  
to liue þer-after in lisse · wil our lord wold. 5228  
þus was alphouns þere king · after þat time,  
& held a-redili to rizt · þe riche & þe pore,  
so þat eche burn him blessed · bi niztes & daie[s].  
of him a-while wol i stint · & of william speke, 5232  
þe kud king of poyle · þat i of karped ere.
- William and his people return to the palace at Palermo.  
Spacli as þe spaynols · sped hem to sayle,  
william with his folk · went wiztli azayne  
to paleys of palerne ; · his puple him sewed, 5236  
with alle murþe of menstracie · þat men miȝt on þenk.  
þan william wiztli · as a wis king schold,  
pes among þe puple · he put to þe reaume,  
a-leide alle luþer lawes · þat long hadde ben vsed, 5240  
& gart holde þe gode · and gaf mo newe,  
þat profitabul to þe puple · were proued & hold ;  
so þat neuer cristen king · kauȝt more loue  
þan william dede in a wile · wite ȝe for soþe. 5244  
& ȝif he geynli was god · to alle gode werkes,  
If he was beloved,  
Melior was more so.  
& wel bi-loued in his lond · with lasse & wiþ more,  
ȝit was meliors as moche · his menskful quene,  
[Fol. 52.] or more ȝif sche miȝt · in any maner wise ; 5248  
so prestli sche wold plese · þe pore & þe riche.  
þan bi-tid it in þat time · to telle þe soþe,  
þe riche emperour of rome · ended his daies,  
deide, & was be-dolue · as dere god wold. 5252  
& alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli at o sent,  
The emperor of Rome died and was buried.  
sent william to seie · so as was bi-falle ;  
The Roman lords send to William and Melior to come and live in Rome  
& to meliors his quene · bi messageres nobul,  
as to here lege lord · lelli bi rizt, 5256  
þurth meling of þe mariage · of meliors þe schene.

- hendli al in hast · þei preiȝed him þider hiȝe. as emperor and  
to vnder-fonge in fee · al þat faire reaume, empress.
- & erden in þat empire · as emperour & maister. 5260
- whan þe worþi william · wist al þat fare, He and Meliot  
& treuli hade vnderston <sup>1</sup> · þe tidinges to þende, make the  
to þe menskful messageres · he made glad chere, messengers good  
& welcomed worþili · witow for soþe. 5264 cheer,
- naþeles meliors & he · made moche sorwe but are sorry to  
for þemperour was forþ-fare · faire to crist. hear of the  
sone þei cauȝt cumfort · for þis þei knewe boþe, emperor's death.
- þat deþ wold come to alle · þat crist hade fourmed,  
to emperours & erles · to eche þat lif hadde. 5269
- & god þan of his grace · godliche þei þonked,  
& seide þei wold his sondes · suffer, & his wille.
- but william ful wiȝtli · with-oute any more, 5272 William sends  
sent as swiþe hise sondes · soþli in-to spayne, messengers to  
bi messageres milde · þa moche god couþe, Spain to  
& bid alþouȝs his broþer · schuld bliue come, 5275 Alphonse,
- & bring wiþ him his [wif · þat]<sup>2</sup> was his worþi suster. asking him to  
alisaundrine & hire lord · alþouȝs he bad hem preie, come with  
þat he dede hem com wiþ him · for cas þat miȝt falle, Florence and  
& his feiþful fader · ȝif he a-liue were. Alexandrine and  
her lord and the  
old king.
- (ac he was ded & doluen · as dere god wold, 5280 (But the old king  
& alþouȝs held in his hond · holli al þat reaume, was dead and  
as kinde king crowned · þurth counseil of his peres). buried.)  
[Fol. 82 b.]
- & whan þe menskful messangers · here message wisten, The messenger  
& hade letteres of here lord · to lelen here sawes, soon arrived in  
þei went wiȝtli in here way · with-oute any more, 5285 Spain.
- & sped hem in-to spayne · spacli in a while,  
& to þe kud king alþouȝs · kiþed here arnd.

Whan<sup>3</sup> alþouȝs witerli · wist of here wille, 5288 When Alphonse  
þat þe riche emperour of rome · was reðeli god bi- knew his brother-  
tauȝt, in-law was to be  
emperor of Rome,

<sup>1</sup> See the note.<sup>2</sup> Read "his *wif that* was."—M.<sup>3</sup> The capital W is mis-written M.

- he was very glad, þat his buxum broþer · schuld be lord þere-after,  
 he was gretli glad · and oft god þonked,  
 & marie his moder · þat him swiche grace sente ; 5292  
 & swiþe lett of-sende · alle his segges nobul,  
 after alle þe lordes of þat lond · þe lasse & þe more,  
 & oþer perles puple · him prestili to serue.  
 whan þei gaili were greiþ · as hem god þouzt, 5296  
 þei passeden toward palern · as fast as þei mizt,  
 alphouns & his worþi wif · williams sister,  
 & braundinis his bold broþer · & alisaundrine his wif,  
 wiþ hundredes of kene kniȝtes · i knew nouzt þe names.  
 & redili whan þei were come · þer þei ariue schuld,  
 william wiþ his wiȝes · went hem aȝens.
- Alphonse and  
 Melior, þat  
 Braundinis and  
 Alexandrine come  
 to Palermo.
- The great joy of  
 William and  
 Alphonse at their  
 meeting.
- but no man vpon mold · mizt telle þe ioye  
 þat þe bold breþeren · bi-tweyne [hem] <sup>1</sup> made, 5304  
 william & alphouns · whan þei mette samen,  
 & wiþ his semli sister · seþþen sone þer-after,  
 & wiþ his oþer broþer · braundinis þe bolde,  
 & after wiþ alysaundrine · & alle oþer seþþe ; 5308  
 þat prestili with al þat puple · to palerne þei went,  
 & made hem þer as merie · as man mizt deuise,  
 wiþ alle derworþe deinteyes · of drynkes & metes.  
 & þus þat perles puple · in palerne hem rested 5312  
 sadli al a seuen niȝt · hem-seluen to ese.  
 & bi þat eche burn · on his best wise  
 was purueyed prestli · of al þat hem neded,  
 & william þat worþi king · was þan wiȝtli ȝare, 5316  
 wiþ al his real route · remewed toward rome,  
 þan made he his moder · be menskfully greiþed,  
 Mid him & meliors his quen · in murþe to wende,  
 & wiþ his semli sister · to solas here hertes. 5320  
 þan wiþ al his real route · he rides on gate,  
 Redili to-wardes rome þo · riȝtes gates,  
 with al maner murþe · þat men mizt on þenk.  
 & as þei caired ouer cuntre · & come neiȝ rome, 5324
- All go to Palermo  
 and make merry  
 for a week.
- [Fol. 83.]  
 When all were  
 ready, William  
 set out for Rome,
- providing rich  
 apparel for Melior  
 and his sister and  
 mother.

<sup>1</sup> Read "bi tweyne hem made."—M.



- þer com him a-ȝens · of kinges & oþer grete  
 þe fairest ferde of folk · þat euer bi-fore was seie ;  
 no man vpon molde · miȝt ayme þe noumber.  
 & worchipfulli þei welcomed · william here lorde, 5328
- & al his <sup>1</sup> freli felawchip · freli þei gret,  
 & receyued hem as realy · as any rinkes miȝt ;  
 Riden riȝt in-to rome · with reaulte and murþe.  
 ac no tonge ne may þe atir · of þe cite telle, 5332  
 so richeli was al araied · in rome for his come.
- þe prelates on procession · prestili out comen,  
 & alle þe belles in burw · busili were runge,  
 for ioye þat here lege lord · his lordchip schuld take.  
 þan passed al þat puple · to þe paleys euene, 5337  
 & eche man was esed · euenli at wille,  
 wanted hem no þing · þat þei haue wold,  
 for plente to al þe puple · was purueide at þe fulle.
- & on þe morw at masse · to munge þe soþe, 5341  
 william with al his worchip · emperour was maked,  
 & meliors his comli quen · was crowned emperice.
- þer nis no clerk vnder crist · þat couþe half descriue  
 þe reaulte þat was araied · in rome for þat fest, 5345  
 Ne þe tipedel of hire atir · to telle þe riȝt,  
 for al þe men vpon mold · it amende ne miȝt,  
 nouȝt þat fel to swiche a fest · forsoþe, half a mite. 5348  
 for-þi wende i wol a while · wite ȝe for soþe,  
 to reherce þe aray · of þe real fest,  
 & telle forþer of þis tale · what tidde after.
- F**ulle fiftene daies · þat fest was holden, 5352  
 wiþ al þe realte of rome · þat euer<sup>2</sup> rink of herde.  
 no tong miȝt telle · þe twentipe parte  
 of þe mede to menstrales · þat mene time was ȝeue,  
 of robes wiþ riche pane · & oþer richesse grete, 5356  
 sterne stedes & strong · & oþer stoute ȝiftes,

On nearing Rome,  
 kings and nobles  
 come forth to  
 meet them.

All ride to Rome,  
 and find the city  
 richly decked out.

The prelates meet  
 them in  
 procession, and  
 the bells are rung.

Next day, at  
 mass, William is  
 crowned emperor,  
 and Melior  
 empress.

Never was a more  
 royal festival.

[Fol. 83 b.]

The feast lasted  
 fifteen days.

The minstrels  
 had presents of  
 rich robes and  
 steeds.

<sup>1</sup> MS. "hes."

<sup>2</sup> MS. "eueri;" but see l. 4232.

- so þat eche man þer-mide · miȝt hold him a-paied.  
 & er þe fest fulli · was fare to þe ende,  
 william þemperour · þat newe was crowned, 5360  
 as a curteys king · on þe kowherd þouȝt,  
 þat him hade fostered · to-fore, seuen zere ;  
 & sent sone after him · & his semli wiue.  
 & whan þe kowherde kom · þe king to him saide, 5364  
 “sire kowherde, knowestow me ouȝt · so þe crist  
 help?”  
 þe kowherd kneled sone · & karped þese wordes,  
 “ȝa ! lord, wiȝ ȝour leue · ful litel i ȝou knewe.  
 I fostered ȝou on mi flet · for soþe, as me þinkeþ, 5368  
 & seide ȝe were my sone · seuen ȝer and more.  
 þe riche emperour of rome · þat regned here þat time,  
 wan ȝou fro me a-wei · wo was me þer-fore.  
 but herized be þe hiȝe king · ȝou þus haþ holpe, 5372  
 & pult ȝou to þis plizt · fram pouert euer-more !”  
 william þe worþi emperour · ful wiztli þus saide,  
 “bi crist, sire, þou hast seid · al þe soþe euene ;  
 þou me fostredes ful faire · as fel for þin astate, 5376  
 & bi our lord, as i leue · þat schaltou lese neuer !”  
 anon þan het he in hast · do him forto come  
 his stiward wiȝ-oute stint · to stiȝtli alle his londes,  
 & bi-fore kud kniȝtes · and oþer kene lordes, 5380  
 he ȝaf to þe kowherde · a kastel ful nobul,  
 þe fairest vpon fold · þat euer freke seie,  
 & best set to þe siȝt · him-selue to kepe ;  
 and al þat touched þer · to a tidi erldome, 5384  
 to þe kowherd & his wif · þe king ȝaf þat time,  
 as freli as eni freke · for euer couþe deuse.  
 & hastili het eche a bailli · þat hade it to kepe,  
 to do eche burn be buxum · bi niȝtes & daie[s],<sup>1</sup> 5388  
 to þe cowherdes comaundement · as to here kinde  
 lord,  
 as þei louede here liues · neuer to lette his wille ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. “daie ;” but “daies” is better ; see l. 5490.

The feast ended,  
William sent for  
the cowherd.

He asks the  
cowherd if he  
knows him.

“Yes, by your  
leave, you were as  
my son for seven  
years.”

Praised be God,  
who hath  
preserved you  
from poverty.”

“True, you  
fostered me, and  
shall lose nothing  
by it.”

William sends for  
his steward, and  
gives the cowherd  
a fair castle

[Fol. 84.]

and a “tidy”  
earldom,

and hade the  
castle-stewards  
see that men  
were obedient to  
the cowherd’s  
command.

& sent his stiward as swiþe · to sese him þer-inne.  
 & hastili was his wille wrouzt · witow for soþe. 5392  
 þus was þe kowherd out of kare · kindeli holpen,  
 he & his wilsum wif · wel to liuen for euer.  
 of þe kinde couherde · now nel i telle no more,  
 but lete him in his blisse · & his burde also, 5396  
 & touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres.

Thus were the  
cowherd and his  
wife saved from  
the hardship of  
poverty.

Whan þis faire fest was finischid · at þe .xv daies  
 end, The festival  
ended, each lord  
went to his own  
home ;  
 eche a lord ful loueli · his leue gan take  
 of emperour & emperice · & oft hem þonked 5400  
 of þe worchip & wele · þat þei hem wrouzt hadde.  
 þemperour to þe grete god · ful godli hem bi-tauzt ;  
 but omage arst of hem alle · hendeli he tok,  
 Mekli as þe maner is · his men to bi-come, 5404  
 to com keneli to his kry · as to here kinde lord.  
 & he ful godly hem þonked · & to god bi-tauzt,  
 & þan went þei here way · whider þaim god liked,  
 eche lord to his owne lond · & lenged þer in blisse.  
 & king alphouns a-non · after alle were went, 5409  
 & his worchiful wif · be-fore william comen,  
 & braundyns his broþer · and alisaundrine his burde ;  
 at emperour & emperice · euerече on at ones 5412  
 loueli lauzten here leue · to here lond to wend.  
 sone þan, soþli to seie · þer was sorwe riue,  
 whan þat william was war · þat þei wend wold,  
 Moche mournyng þei made · & meliors also ; 5416  
 but seþþe it miȝt be no beter · suffer hem be-houed.  
 william bi þe hond · hent alphouns his broþer,  
 & neiȝ wepande for wo · wiȝtli þus saide,  
 “ broþer, ȝif it be · bi god þat vs wrouzt, 5420  
 I wold it were þi wille · wiþ vs forto lenge,  
 hit forþinkes me sore · þat we schul de-partе ;  
 but seþe it nel be non oþer · nouzt for to striue, 5423  
 I bi-kenne ȝou to krist · þat on croyce was peyned,

but William first  
took homage of  
them all.

Alphonse and  
Braundinis and  
their wives  
took their leave  
to go home.

William and  
Melior were much  
grieved at their  
departure.

[Fol. 84 b.]

William takes  
Alphonse by the  
hand, saying,

“ I would thou  
couldst stay here,

- and I pray thee,  
if any one wars  
against thee,
- &, broþer, i þe bidde bi al · þat euer þow louedest,  
3if destine falle of ani dede · þat þou to done haue,  
þat eny wiȝt wiȝ werre · wirche aȝens þi paie,
- send to me and I  
will come to  
thee."
- swiȝe send me to say · & sone i come to þe, 5428  
þat no liuend lud · schal me lette neuere,  
wil me lasteþ þe lif · for loue ne for awe ;  
til þow be wel wroke · wol i neuer stinte."
- "The same say I  
by thee," replied  
Alphonse.
- "3a, blessed be þow, bold broþer" · seide alphouns<sup>1</sup>  
þan, 5432  
þe same sey i be þe · so me wel time !"  
feiffullere frenchipe · saw neuer frek in erþe,  
þat more plenerli hem profered · to plese eche oþer,  
& to help oþer in hast · ho-so hade nede. 5436  
þemperours moder william · and meliors else,  
seide to hire douȝter · þe semli quen of spayne,  
"loueli douȝter, leue lif · loue þi lord euere,  
& be euer busili aboute him · buxumli to serue, 5440  
& lede him euer wiȝ þi lore · his lond to kepe ;  
so schaltow lelli be loued · wiȝ lasse & wiȝ more."
- and she promises  
on her knees to  
do so.
- & sche kneling on here knes · curtesli saide,  
sche hoped to heuen king · whil here lif lasted, 5444  
to wirche as þei here wissed · with-oute any lette.  
& to alisaundrine a-non · riȝt þei sayde  
sadli, in same wise · sche schold hire lord loue ;  
& sche sore sikande · seide þat sche wold. 5448  
& whan þei samen had seide · what hem-self liked,  
& time was atte laste · atwinne forto de-parte,  
þer was siking & sorwe · on boþe sides sadde,  
weping & wringing · for wo at here hertes, 5452  
& clippinge and kessing · þei cauȝt eche oþer,  
bi-kenned hem to crist · þat on croyce was peyned,  
& soute seþe on-sunder · þough it hem sore greued.
- They give  
Alexandrine the  
same advice,  
which she says  
she will follow.
- At last they have  
to take leave, to  
[Fol. 85.]  
the great sorrow  
of all.
- þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him þan to horse,  
& went forþ in is way · wiȝ-oute any more ; 5457  
& al his faire felawchip · folwed him after,
- The king of Spain  
mounted his  
horse, and went  
home with his  
company.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. has "william," an obvious blunder ; see l. 5198.

& sped hem þanne spacli · to spayne þat þei come. They were royally  
received on their  
return.  
 þer were þei reali resceyued · as god riȝt it wold, 5460  
 with alle maner murþe · þat man miȝt on þenke ;  
 & þere þei lenged in lisse · al hire liue after,  
 & ledden wel þat lond · to gode lawes euere,  
 so þat eche burn hem blessed · þat euer þei bore were.  
 of hem of spayne to speke · my speche now i lete, 5465 Of the king of  
Spain I say no  
more.  
 but lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,  
 of þe riche emperour of rome · redeliche to telle.

**W**hanne þe king of spayne · spedli was faren, 5468 After this William  
made a progress  
through his  
empire,  
 william with him tok · al his worþi meyne,  
 & his menskful moder · & here maydenes alle,  
 & rides þurth þempire of rome · richeli & faire,  
 to alle solempne cites · & semliche holdes, 5472  
 to knowe þe kuntres · as a king ouȝt ;  
 lauȝt omage of eche lud · þat longed to þe reaume.  
 & whan þat dede was don · deliuerli & sone,  
 Gode lawes þurth his lond · lelly he sette, 5476 He established  
good laws, so that  
robbers might  
soon be hanged or  
drawn asunder.  
 & held hem so harde · i hete þe for soþe,  
 þat robboures ne reuowres · miȝt route none,  
 þat þei nere hastili hange · or with hors to-drawe.  
 flatereres & fals men · fram him sone he chased, 5480 Flatterers he  
chased from him,  
and loved no liars.  
 Lieres ne losengeres · loued he neuer none,  
 but tok to him tidely · trewe cunsayl euere,  
 þat al þe puple for him preide · þe pore & þe riche ;  
 so wisli he wrouȝt · to sauē his reaume. 5484 Rich and poor  
prayed for him.  
 & ȝif he meke were of maneres · meliors his quene,  
 was al swiche on hire side · to telle þe tre[w]þe,  
 so gracious to goddes men · & alle gode werkes,  
 so piteuows to þe pore · hem prestili to help, 5488 [Fol. 85 b.]  
Melior was so  
gracious to God's  
men and to good  
works,  
 þat eche man hade ioye · to here of here speke,  
 & busily for hire bede · bi nyȝtes and daies.  
 & also williams moder · þat menskful quene,  
 so god was & gracious · to eche gomes paye, 5492 William's mother  
was so gracious  
that all blessed  
her.  
 so witty & willeful · to wirche alle gode dedes,

þat eche burn hire blessed · busili euer-more,  
& heizli *preiede* to heuen king · to hold here liues.

Then she remembered her dream, that her right arm lay over Rome, and her left over Spain.

þan com here in mynde · at þat mene while, 5496

þat here sweuen was soþ · þat *sum* time hire mette,

þat here riȝt arm redeli · ouer rome a-teyned,

& lelli here lift arm · laye ouer spayne.

þan wist sche wiztli · what it be-tokened, 5500

William was her right arm, and Florence her left arm.

here sone þat regned in rome · here riȝt arme ment ;

þat here der-worþ *douȝter* · was drawe to spayne,

here lif time to be þere ladi · here left arm schewed.

She thanks Go! for all her bliss.

God þanked sche godli · of al his grete miȝt, 5504

& his menskful moder · þe milde quen of heuen,

þat out of bale hade hire brouȝt · to blisse so faire.

William and Melior had two sons.

þus william & his worþi quen · winteres fele,  
liueden in liking & lisse · as our lord wolde, 5508

& haden tvo sones samen · ful semliche childeren,

þat seþþen þurth goddes *grace* · were grete lordes *after*.

One was emperor of Rome after his father, the other was king of Calabria and Apulia.

þat on was emperour of rome · & regned after his fader,

þat oþer was a kud king · of calabre & poyle ; 5512

& miȝti men & menskful · were þei in here time,

& feiþful as here fader · to fre & to þewe.

So came William to be emperor of Rome after all his hardships.

þus þis worþi william · was emperour of rome,

þat hadde many hard happe · hade þere-bi-fore, 5516

& be in gret baret · and bale sum time ;

And so shall all [Fol. 86.] they that seek good prosper.

of alle bales was he brouȝt · blessed be goddes miȝt !

& so schal euerich seg · þat secheþ to þe gode,

& giues him in goddes *grace* · & godliche ay wircheþ.

Thus hath William ended all his work, following the French as well as he could.

In þise wise haþ william · al his werke ended, 5521

as fully as þe frensche · fully wold aske,

& as his witte him wold *serue* · þouȝh it were febul.

but þouȝh þe metur be nouȝt mad · at eche mannes

The metre is the best he could make.

paye, 5524

wite him nouȝt þat it wrouȝt · he wold haue do beter,

3if is witte in eny weizes · wold him haue serued.  
 but, faire frendes, for goddes loue · & for 3our owne Fair friends,  
 mensk,  
 3e þat liken in loue · swiche þinges to here, 5528 pray for the good  
 preizes<sup>1</sup> for þat gode lord · þat gart þis do make, lord who caused  
 þe heude erl of hereford · humfray de boune ;— this to be done,  
 þe gode king edwardes dou3ter · was his dere moder ;— Humphrey de  
 he let make þis mater · in þis maner speche, 5532 Bohun, earl of  
 for hem þat knowe no frensche · ne neuer vndersto[n].<sup>2</sup> Hereford.  
 biddiþ þat blisful burn · þat bou3t vs on þe rode,  
 & to his moder marie · of mercy þat is welle,  
 “ 3if þe lord god lif · wil he in erþe lenges, 5536 God grant him a  
 & whan he wendes of þis world · welþe with-oute ende, good life, and  
 to lenge in þat liking ioye · þat lesteþ euer-more.” happines without  
 & god gif alle god grace · þat gladli so biddes, end after death.  
 & pertli in paradis · a place for to haue. Amen. 5540 God give grace to  
all, and a place  
in Paradise,  
Amen.

<sup>1</sup> MS. “preized.”

<sup>2</sup> Read “vnderstoude.”—M. See note to l. 5262.





þe Gestes of þe worpie King and Emperour,  
Alisaunder of Macedoine.

Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes, and ooper, Beurnes, or bachelers · þat boldely thinken Wheþer in werre, or in wo · wightly to dwell, For to lachen hem loose · in hur lifetime, Or dere thinken to doo · deedes of armes, To be proued for <i>pris</i> · & prest of hemselue, <sup>1</sup> Tend yee tytely to mee · & take goode heede. I shall sigge forsothe · ensamples ynow Of one, þe boldest beurn · & best of his deeds, That euer steede bestrode · or sterne was holden ! Now shall I carp of a King · kid in his time, þat had londes, & leedes <sup>2</sup> · & lordships feole; <sup>3</sup> Amyntas þe mightie · was þe man hoten : Maister of Macedoine · þe marches hee aught, Bothe feeldes, & frithes · faire all aboute ; Trie towres, & tounes · terme of his life, And kept þe crowne · as a King sholde. þen this cumlich King · & keene in his time, Had wedde a wife · as hym well thought, And long ladden hur life · in lond togeder. Twoo seemlich sonnes · soone they hadden ; þe alder <sup>4</sup> hight Alisaunder · as I right tell ; And sir Philip forsoothe · his frobroder hight. <sup>5</sup>	<p>[Fol. 1 b.] Ye lords and others, who seek to acquire praise,</p> <p>4</p> <p>attend all to me.</p> <p>8</p> <p>I shall tell of the best man that ever bestrode steed.</p> <p>12</p> <p>Amyntas was a mighty king of Macedonia.</p> <p>16</p> <p>He wedded a wife, by whom he had two sons ;</p> <p>20</p> <p>Alexander the elder son, and Philip.</p>
---	--

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hymselfue*, with *e* written above the *y*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. "leethes," with *d* written above the *th*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. "fell," with *feole* written above it.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *alder*, with *e* over *a*. See note.

<sup>5</sup> Here follows the catchword, "Cas fel, dat dis K."

- [Fol. 2.] Case fell, þat this Kyng · as Christe wolde þanne, 24  
 Amynas fell sick  
 and died. Was *with* siknes of-sought · & soone þer-after,  
 Hee was graythed to grace · & to God went.
- Alexander the  
 eldest son was  
 crowned king, His alder-aldust<sup>1</sup> sonne · þat Alisaunder hight,  
 þo was crowned King · to keepe þe reigne. 28  
 Well hee ladde þe londe · while hee lyfe hadde,  
 but soon died. But his term was tint · or it tyme were.  
 And all þe cause of þis case · I con soone tell ;  
 How hee was doolefully ded · & doone of his life. 32  
 Ðat made his moder þe Queene · þat moste was  
 adouted ;  
 Eurydice hue hight · unkinde of her deedes.
- She lusted after  
 her own children. Hue loued so lecherie · & lustes of synne,  
 þat her chylder hue chase · unchastly to haue. 36  
 For Alisaunder, hur sonne · assent so ne wolde  
 Alexander refused,  
 and she killed  
 him. To fulfill so foule · her fleshlych sinnes,  
 Hue let kyll þis Kyng · *with* care at his hert,  
 In þe formest yere · that hee first reigned. 40  
 And Ðus lafte hee his life · our Lorde haue his soule !  
 Thus he departed  
 this life. For a feller in fight · found men seelde,  
 While him lasted his life · londes to yeeme.<sup>2</sup>
- [Fol. 2 b.] Now let wee þis lued · lengen in bliss, 44  
 And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale.
- Many years before  
 this, Philip was  
 fostered and  
 brought up Fel[e] wintres tofore · in his faders life,  
 Than was Philip þe free · to fosteryng take,  
 In courte [of an] unkouthe kith · *with* a King ryche, 48  
 That was chuse<sup>3</sup> of þe childe · & choicelich *hym* kept.  
 Hee that fostred, & founde · Philip in youthe,  
 King of Tebes that time · truly was holden,  
 by Epaninondas, King of Thebes. Epaninondas hee hyght · full hardy to meete. 52  
 So hee cherished þe childe · cheefe ouer all,  
 This king  
 cherished the  
 child well. þat hee was woxen full weele · & wyght of his deede,

<sup>1</sup> An *e* is written above the first *a* in this word.

<sup>2</sup> Catchword—Now let wee dis lued, &c.

<sup>3</sup> A *y* is written above the *u*.

- Forto abyde any beurn · in battle, or eles.<sup>1</sup>  
 When his broder *with* bale · brought was of life, 56  
 Ryght was, þat þis renk · reigned hym after  
 To bee crowned a King · in his right riche, Philip was now  
 As maister of Macedoine · amonges þe greate, the rightful heir  
 For to leade þe lond · as hym leefe thought, 60 to the crown.  
 Men to holden of hym · þat hed was of all,  
 Philip fared him forthe · in a fayre wyse, He therefore went  
 To receiuen his right · & reigne on his londes ; to Macedonia.  
 But when þe Lordes of þe lond · lelich wysten 64  
 Of hur neew cummen King · þat his kith asketh,  
 With greate werre þat wonne · þei werned hym soone, His lords with-  
 That by force of hur fight · ðei<sup>2</sup> firked hym ðennes,<sup>3</sup> stood him.  
 That hee ne must in his marche · *with* his menne  
 dwell, 68  
 Ne beleue in his lond ; · þat liked hym yll.  
 Whan Philip felt tho folk · so ferse of hur deedes,  
 Ayen to Tebes hee turned · teenid full sore. [Fol. 3.]  
 To þe Kyng of this case · hee carped soone, Philip returned to  
 How hee was kept at his coome · *with* a keene route, Thebes.  
 That hee was faine *with* his folke · to flee from his owne.  
 Epaminondas þe King · was carefull in hert, Epaminondas was  
 Till hee were wroken of þe wrong · þat þei wrought wroth,  
 hadden. 76  
 Hee graythled hym a greate oste · grym to beholde,  
 And cheued forthe, *with* þe<sup>4</sup> childe · what chaunce so  
 betide.  
 So *with* Philip þe free · hee fared on in haste, and joined Philip  
 To clayme his Kingdome · & catchen þe shrews, 80 to punish the  
 That beraften hym his ryght · *with* rufull deedes. lords.  
 Than, shortly to showe · þei sharplich went,  
 And foughten for Philip · his fone to dustroye,  
 Tooke towres, & towne[s] · tamid<sup>5</sup> Knightes, 84 The Thebans  
 fought for Philip,  
 and discomfited  
 his foes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. "oreles."<sup>2</sup> MS. "dei."<sup>3</sup> MS. "dennes," *with* thence *above* it.<sup>4</sup> MS. Dou, as if for "ðou ;" but "þe" is written above it.<sup>5</sup> MS. "tamed," with an *e* over the *a*.

- Felled þe falsse folke · ferked<sup>1</sup> hem hard,  
 With skathe were þei skoumfyt<sup>2</sup> · skape þei ne myght,  
 Who-so weldes a wrong · þe worsse hym<sup>3</sup> betides,  
 For hee,<sup>3</sup> þat reigneth in ryght · reskueth troth. 88
- The lords fled  
 to Athens.  
 For fere of sir Philip · fledde they all,  
 And turned tit to a towne · þat Attanus hyght,  
 A stip stede, & a strong · & straite for to winne,  
 And kept keenely þat cost · fro þe Kyng than, 92  
 That hee ne myght with þo menne · medle no while.  
 The King of Tebs for teene · targed no lenger,  
 But sought to þe Citie · & a-saute made.  
 [Fol. 3 b.] They beseeged it so · on sides aboute, 96  
 and took it.  
 That they tooke þe towne · & traytours sleew.  
 Thus faire Philip, þe free · his fomen awaited,  
 And thus sought hee his lond · with loðelike<sup>4</sup> dyntes.  
 Then was Philip  
 crowned king,  
 400 years after  
 Rome was built,  
 [B.C. 359;  
 A.U.C. 395.]  
 Than þis cumly Knight · was crowned soone, 100  
 Of Macedoine made Kyng · maugre them all.  
 Fore hundred yere holly · as I here tell,  
 Sin þe Citie of Roome · sett was in erth,  
 Philip in his freedam · faire gan dwell, 104  
 So too reigne on his ryght · as rink in his owne.  
 Philip is made  
 king.  
 Now is hee crowned King · & keeppes his reigne,  
 And swiþe hardie is hee · happes too fonde.  
 Now fares *Philip* þe free · too fonden his myght, 108  
 He defeats the  
 Assyrians  
 [Illyrians].  
 And attles to þe Assyriens · aunteres too seeche ;  
 And nere blynd þe beurn · of battle stern,  
 Till hee had fenked þe folke · too fare at his wyll,  
 And wonne þe won · with werre full keene, 112  
 Folke to fare with hym · as hee faine wolde,  
 They acknowledge  
 him as lord.  
 To chesen<sup>5</sup> hym for cheefe Lorde · & chaunge hym neuer.  
 Philip full ferslich · in his fyght spedde,  
 And prooved in his powre · as Prince full noble. 116

Whan hee had so them · hollich ifenked,

<sup>1</sup> MS. seems to have "ferkerd;" see l. 67.

<sup>2</sup> MS. skoumfyt.

<sup>3</sup> See the note on these two words.

<sup>4</sup> MS. lodelike.

<sup>5</sup> MS. chosen, with e above o.

Hee sought too a Citie · full seemely too knowe, Larissea <i>hyght</i> , þat helde · full hardie men in,		He next attacks Larissa.
One þe klenist coste · þat any King aught.	120	
Philip fetches hym folke · & foundes full soone		[Fol. 4.]
Too bidden þem battle · & brodes in haste, For to lache hym as Lorde · þe lond for to haue, Or deraine it <i>with dintes</i> · & deedes of armes.	124	
Ferse were þo folke · & foughten in haste, Or þei lesen þeir lond · their life for too spill.		The people are fierce, and fight long.
Longe lasted þat strife · but lelli too knowe, By fin force of his fight · <i>Philip</i> it winnes.	128	
Now hath <i>Philip</i> in <i>fyght</i> · freely wonne The Citie of Assyriens · <i>with</i> selkouthe <i>dintes</i> ; And lordship of Larisse · laught too <i>his</i> will ;		He takes Larissa.
And intoo Greece hee gose · <i>with</i> a grim people.	132	
Than hee turnes too a towne · Tessalonic it <i>hyght</i> ; And assailes it soone · þe Citie to haue.		He attacks Thessalonica.
Too [sese] <sup>2</sup> onely þe towne · or any oþer goodes, Hee ne nyed it nought · but needely too haue	136	He did not care to rule over the town, but to make the men in it <i>his</i> .
All þo mightfull menne · þat in þe marches dwelt, Too bryng at his baner · for bolde þei were, And a-losed in lond · for leeflich <i>Knichtes</i> .		
For þis enchesoun hee chused · too chasen hem þere, Till þei were at his wyll · as hee wolde ax.	141	
But or hee tooke so their toune · teene gan spring ; Many a dulfull dint · deled þei there.		It is a hard fight.
But all þei were unaware · wisely too knowe	144	
Of þat sorowfull asaute · þat they so had ; For hadde þei knowe þe kast · of þe Kyng stern, They had kept well his <i>cumme</i> · <i>with</i> carefull <i>dintes</i> .		
þei see no succour · in no syde aboute,	148	[Fol. 4 b.]
That was come to hur koste · þe king for to lett ; And Philip <i>with his</i> fresh folke · so fast þem assailes, That þei gradden hur grip · his grace to haue,		No one comes to help them.
Him to taken þeir toune · & trulich to serue,	152	They capitulate.

<sup>1</sup> MS. holde, *with e above o*.<sup>2</sup> See the note.

For to wend at his wyll · whereso hym liked,  
And redy to his retainaunce · ryght as hee wolde.

- Philip now takes  
Athens,      Now is Philip full grym · in fyght for to meete,  
And many mightfull menne · may *with* hym leade.  
Atteneſ, þe trie toune · hee tooke too his wyll,      157  
The folke too fare *with* hym · when hee fonde time.
- and the city of  
Assyria [Illyria],      þe Citie of Assyrie · is sett too his paye,  
And all þe beurnes in þe borowe · boune too h<sup>s</sup> heste.  
So Larissa is his,      The Lordſhip of Larisse · is lauht too himſelue,      161  
Men too cumme too his erie · & kipeþ þeir might.
- and Thessalonica.      Tessaſonie þe trewe holde · is turned too hym alſe,  
With all þe weies in þe won · his werre too keepe. 164  
Now is þat peepſe full preſt · & preued of ſtrength  
For too wirchen his will · & wend at his neede.
- Philip is doughty  
and dreadful.      Philip, for his ferſe folke · in fele<sup>1</sup> oper landes,  
Doughtye men douten · for dreedfull hee ſeemes.      168  
By every koſte, þat hee com · kid was his might,  
For when hee medled him moſte · þe maistriſe hee had.
- I next ſpeak of  
Erubel, King of  
Molossiſ.      To profre þiſ proceſſ · preſtly too here,  
I karp of a kid king · <sup>Erubel</sup> Ariſba was hote;      172  
The Marqueſ of Molosoſ<sup>2</sup> · menſkliche hee aught,  
For hee was King of þe kip · & knight wel a-loſed.
- He had a ſiſter,  
[Fol. 5.]  
named Olympias.      Hee had a ſuſter in ſight · ſeemely to ſonde,  
The moſte luſſum of life · þat euere lud wyſt;      176  
Olympias þe onorable · ouer all hue hyght.  
Roſe red was hur rode · full riall of ſehape :  
With large forhed & long · louelicke trefſes,
- She had golden  
hair, great gray  
eyes,      Gliaſiande aſ goldwire · growen on length;      180  
Bryght browſe ibent · bliſfull of chere ;  
Grete yien, & graie · gracious lippeſ ;  
Bothe cheekes, & chinne · choiſe too beholde ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. fale.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Molosoſ, with a's over the two firſt o's; ſo in l. 204.  
Marqueſe ſhould perhaps be marches.

- Mouth meete þertoo · moste for too praise. 184 a meet mouth,  
 Hur nose namelich faire · hur necke full scheene ;  
 Schuft shudders aright · well ischaped arnes ; well-shaped arnes,  
 Hondes hendely wrought · helplich, sweete ;  
 Faire fyngers unfolde · fetise nailes ; 188 fair fingers,  
 Sides seemely sett · seemlich long. seemly sides,  
 Hupes had hue faire · & hih was hue þan ; fair hips,  
 Hur pies all þorou-oute · þristliche ischape,  
 With likand legges · louely too scene ; 192  
 And þe fairest feete · þat euer freke kende, and the fairest  
 With ton<sup>1</sup> tidily wrought · & tender of hur skinne. feet.  
 Liliwhite was hur liche · to likne þe beurde ;  
 Where is þer lengged in lond · a Lady so sweete ? 196  
 Ðer sprong neuer spicerie · so speciall in erþe, No spicery or  
 Ne triacle in his taste · so trie is too knowe, treacle could be  
 As that Ladie, with loue · too lachen in arnes ! sweeter.

- Wherefore I carp of þis case · knowe yee may. 200  
 Philip þe free king · that ferse was of myght, Philip desires to  
 For þe beurde so bryght was · of blee scheene, wed her,  
 He had his liking ilaide · þat Ladie too wedde.  
 Too Molosor with his menne · hee meened in haste, 204  
 Craued soone at þe Kyng · þat comelich beurde, and craves her of  
 For too welde too his wife · as hee will hadde. her brother.  
 Ðe king was full curtis · & coflich hym grauntes,  
 For had hee werned<sup>2</sup> þat wyght · wo had hee suffred, [Fol. 5 b.]  
 For þat frelich fode · Philip, wolde eles 209 He dares not  
 Haue geten [hire] with grim stroke · of grounden tooles. refuse Philip.  
 þat time thought þe Kyng · to targe no lenger ;  
 But bring þat blisfull · to þe bern soone. 212 He brings the  
 To kyng *Philip* hee *comme* · as curteis of deede, lady to Philip.  
 And laft hym þe Ladie · to lache at his wyll.  
 For hee thought on this thing · þroliche<sup>3</sup> in hert, He thought that,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *toze*, with *ton* above.

<sup>2</sup> Over this word is the gloss—*si prohibuisset*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *þroliche*, with *e* over the *o*.

were Philip his ally,  
 none would dare offend him.  
 But he made a mistake.  
 For, after Philip had made her his queen,  
 he invades Molossis.  
 His men seize the cities.  
 [Fol. 6.]  
 Erubel goes into exile, and continues in sorrow till his death.  
 Philip seeks to be feared in all lands.

3if hee had too his help · in his hie neede 216  
 Of Macedoine þe King · a mighty man holden,  
 To alie him too þat Lorde · & his loue winne,  
 þer shoulde no bydyng bern · so bolde bee in erth,  
 Too teene hym untruly · term of his reigne ; 220  
 Ne to greue þe gome · for gremþe of his help,  
 The while *Philip* þe free · lym frendship kid.  
 Hee was bitraide in his trust · for truly þer-after,  
 When Sir *Philip* was fare · with þe faire beurde, 224  
 And wedded þat wight · with worship & ioye,  
 To bee Ladie of his land · & his leue make,  
 Men to queme hur as Queene · & quiklich hur serue,  
 Bothe beurdes & bern[es] · boune<sup>1</sup> too hur wyll, 228  
 To Molosor with maine · his menne gan hee bryng.  
 Y-armed at all pointes · þei aunted hem ȝider ;  
 Mani a lud of þe lond · raid hi to grounde,  
 And many a seemeli segge · sorowe they wrought. 232  
 þei laft for þo þe lond · Lordshipes tooke,  
 Seseden<sup>2</sup> þe cities · and seemelich tounes,  
 Keuered hem casteles · þe Kyng too distrie ;  
 For his susteres sake · cease they nolde, 236  
 That hee with werre ne wan · þe won þat hee aught,  
 And þe Kyng of his kip · with care þei pinte.  
 And *Philip* unfaithfully · þe faire coste had,  
<sup>Eruba</sup>  
 Arisba in exile · euer was after, 240  
 And neuer comme too his kip · but caught was in teene.  
 With doole dried hee so · his dayes in sorowe,  
 To hee gaf<sup>3</sup> up his goste · with God for too dwell.

Of þat carefull kyng · carp I no farre, 244  
 But leaue hym in languor · & lysten too more,  
 How *Philip* chases as cheefe · chaunces too fonde,<sup>4</sup>  
 Too bee adouted as deth · in diuers londes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *seems to have* boane.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *fiefeden*, the en *being above the line*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *gaue*, with *f* above *ue*.      <sup>4</sup> MS. *fynde*, with *o* over the *y*



- When he had so hem [hampred · he] hendely fetched  
 His make too Macedoine · *with* mirthes ynow. 249
- He laught leue at *his* wife · & laft hur still He takes leave  
of his wife.  
 For too liue in hur londe · in liking of hert,  
 That no gome under God · greuen hur myght. 252
- Philip his faire folke* · ferselich araies,  
 Too Greece he gra[i]p<sup>e</sup>es hym now · *with* a grete will.  
Conothoanham
- Hee comme too Methone · full cumlich a place, He comes to  
Methone.  
 Of any borowe best buylt · & bolde menne þere,<sup>1</sup> 256  
 One þe hugest holde · & harl for too wynne,  
 That was in Greece o þe grounde · *grai*p<sup>e</sup>d too stond.
- Hee brought *his* menne to þe borowe<sup>2</sup> · & bliue it asailes, He attacks  
Methone with  
his army.  
 With prese of his power · hee profers þem fyght. 260
- Many a cumly Knight · & oþer kid peeple  
 On euery side was sett · asaute too make.  
 þough<sup>3</sup> *Philip* fared *with* folke · ferefull in fyght,  
 Litle gained his greefe · for grim thei were, 264 He finds them  
ready to fight.  
 To warden þeir walles · *with* weies ynow.  
 þat citie wer sure men · sett for too keepe,  
 With mich riall araie · redy too fight,  
 With atling of areblast<sup>4</sup> · & archers ryfe. 268 [Fol. 6 b.]  
They vex him  
with arblasts and  
arrows.
- Well feþered flon · floungen aboute,  
 Grim arowes & graie · *with* grounden hedes  
 Wer enforced to flie · her fone for to greue.  
 So bolde were in þe borowe · *with* balefull strokes, 272
- þat of *Philipes* folke · fele they slew, They slay many  
of his men.  
 And many mightfull men · maymed hee þere,  
 þat þe prent of þat prese · passed neuer.  
 And *Philip* þe ferse King · foule was maimed ; 276
- A schaft *with* a scharp hed · shet<sup>5</sup> oute his yie, A shaft shoots out  
his own eye.  
 That neuer siþþen forsoþe · sawe he therin.  
 þe gremþe of þo grim folke · glod to his hert,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þere, *with* d (for ð) over the þ. See the note on bolde.

<sup>2</sup> MS. has another o above the first o.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Though, *with* þ over the Th.

<sup>4</sup> MS. areblast, *with* i over it, between the a and r.

<sup>5</sup> MS. shet, *with* o over the e.

	For his eger enemies · his yie to lese.	280
He makes a vow to be avenged.	Hee made a very uow · auenged too beene Of þat teenefull tach · þat hee tooke þere, And swore swiftlich his othe · aswage hee ne sholde, [Fol. 7.] With all þe maine þat hee might · too merken <sup>1</sup> hem care, For to take þe toune · þough hee teene had, 285 All þe segges in sight · sorowe too kipe.	
[Fol. 7 b.] He renews the attack fiercely.	Philip enforeceth hym now · his folke for to gie ; Hee rydes thorough-oute þe ronk <sup>2</sup> · araies him newe. Many mightfull menne · made hee stryue, 289 With archers & oþer folke · aunted hym nere. þei lete flie to þe flocke · ferefull sondes, <sup>3</sup> Gainus <sup>4</sup> grounden aryght · gonne they dryue, 292 Stones stirred they þo · & stightlich layde On hur engines full gist <sup>5</sup> · to ungomme þe walles. þei craked þe cournales · with carefull dyntes, þat spedly to-sprong · & spradde beside. 296 þe Kyng with his keene ost · collich fightes, And kipes all þat hee can · þe kipe for to haue ; þei [sesen] <sup>6</sup> on þe citie · soothe for too tell, Hur borowe bet so doune · with balefull strokes, 300 And himself in þe saute · sorowfully wounded ; And many a lifeles lud · layed to þe grounde, þat þei ne stirred of þe stede · strife for to make.	
They beat down the walls.	Hur zates zeede þei too · & youlde hem soone, 304 To Philip farde þei forthe · as fenked <sup>7</sup> wightes, Profred hym þe pris holde · & preies <sup>8</sup> in haste To deeme what hee doo will · for hur deede yll.	
The citizens surrender.	Ðus <sup>9</sup> was þe citie of-sett · & sippen so wonne ; 308 But many a balefull beurn · bought it full dere,	
Thus was the city won.		

<sup>1</sup> Cf. marked in l. 932.<sup>2</sup> MS. rank, with o over the a.<sup>3</sup> MS. soundes or sonndes.<sup>4</sup> MS. Gamus.<sup>5</sup> MS. iust, with gist above it ; and gist is marked.<sup>6</sup> See note.<sup>7</sup> Over fenked is the gloss, unquished.<sup>8</sup> MS. praies, with e over the a.<sup>9</sup> MS. Dus, with þ over the D.

Komothonham

Or kid Methone · too þe Kyng fell.

In Greece, many a grete toune · grim was of strength, In Greece were  
many great  
towns.  
 And þe menne of þat marche · misproude were ; 312  
 Thei were so ding of þeir deede · ded[a]in<sup>1</sup> þat they had, They would let no  
one govern them.

þat any gome under God · gouern hem sholde.

But as they sayden hemself · and assent made,

þei nere encline to no King · hur kip for too gye. 316

They wrought by þeir owne will · & wolde noug<sup>ht</sup> They did as they  
liked best.  
 eles,

To seche þem a Souereine<sup>2</sup> · þe Citie to 3eme.

Farre þen þeir owne folke · fare they nolde,

What lud liked hem best · þe Lordship hee gat,<sup>3</sup> 320 They elected what  
chief they pleased.

And on chees for cheefe · &amp; chaunged lome.

All swich cities · þat seemelich were,

Philip fenkes in fyght · &amp; fayled lyte,

That all Greece hee ne gatt · with his grim werk. 324 Philip conquers  
them all.

In what maner &amp; how · men may i lere,

þat hee withlich<sup>4</sup> whanne<sup>5</sup> · þe worship of Greece,

To bee holden of hym · holly þe raigne,

For to gye þe gomes · as hym goode thought. 328 [Fol. 8.]

Now tell wee of Tebes · that trusty<sup>6</sup> was holde, I now speak of  
Thebes.

There as Philip þe free · to fostring dwelt,

How þe ludes of the land · a-losed for gode,

Wer enforced to fight · with hur fone hard. 332

þer turned a-3e Tebes · twoo trie places,

þe sikerest cities · that any seg wist ;

þe Lordship of Lacedemonie · loped hem than,

And of Phocos þe folke · fast hem assailes. 336 The Thebans  
are attacked by  
the Lacedaemonians  
and Phocians.þe werre wox<sup>7</sup> in þat won · wonderly stern, The war between  
ther is very  
stern.<sup>1</sup> MS. dedin, with disdeine over it. Cf. l. 584.<sup>2</sup> MS. Souereine, with a over ei.<sup>3</sup> MS. hi þat, with ee over i, and g over the þ.<sup>4</sup> MS. mightly, with the older spelling withlich over it.<sup>6</sup> MS. wanne, with wh over the w. See "Werwolf," l. 2852.<sup>6</sup> MS. trusty, with i over the u.<sup>7</sup> MS. wax, with o over the a.

- And eiper on hur enemies · egerly wrought.  
 On a season isett · assembled they boþe,  
 With all þe maine þat they might · metten ifere ; 340  
 Araide rinkes aright · reulich smiten,  
 On foote & on faire horsse · fought þei samme.  
 Priken<sup>1</sup> on a plaine feelde · precued Knightes,  
 Bolde were bore doune · on bothe twoo halues. 344
- The Thebans  
are vexed at  
their enemies'  
fierceness,  
but are not  
afraid of them.
- Of Tebes þe tric folke · wer teened in hert,  
 For hur ferefull fone · so ferslich spedde,  
 With wrayth of a woode will · wonde<sup>2</sup> þei nolde,  
 To riden into the route · rappes to deale. 348  
 Steedes stirred of þe stede · strane men under,  
 And oother folke on hur feete · folowed them after.  
 The Lacedemonieins · lowe laide were,  
 And of Phocus folke · feld they also. 352
- The Thebans get  
the upper hand,  
and put their foes  
to a heavy  
ransom,
- The Tebenieins teenfully · tooke this oþer,  
 And to a riche raunson · þe rinkes they putt,  
 That amounted [to] more · then they might paye,  
 Or dereine with right · with rede of þemself, 356  
 To profer hem as prisoneres · till they payde had,  
 To let lobely þat goode · or hur life tine.  
 þe companie was carefull · & kest<sup>3</sup> in hur hert,  
 þat þei þat raunson with right · arere ne might, 360  
 þei wer so sorowfull hemself · that summe to rere,  
 þat þei ne spared þat space · to spenen<sup>4</sup> hur liues.  
 A proude Knight of þe prese · hur Prince þei made,  
 Philomelo<sup>5</sup> þe fell man · was þe freke hote, 364  
 þe folke of Phocus too araie · & þe fight zeme,  
 With ludes of Lacedemonie · to leggen on hard ;  
 For they kende þe case · & kneew eche one,  
 But thei prestly payde · that precious summe, 368  
 þei sholde leesen hur life · þei þem lothe thought.
- which they must  
pay or die.
- Not raising the  
sum, the Phocians  
resume the war.
- Philomelus is  
chosen their chief.
- [Fol. 8 b.]
- They know they  
must pay or die.

<sup>1</sup> An e over the i.<sup>2</sup> MS. wonde, with e over the o.<sup>3</sup> MS. kast, with e over the a ; also the e is marked.<sup>4</sup> MS. spend, with nen (marked) over the d.<sup>5</sup> MS. Philomela, with o over the a ; see l. 421.

- And 3if þei ferde <sup>1</sup> to fight · their fone for to nye,      Wherefore they  
With skathe to bee skoumfit · & askape neuer,      prefer to fight.
- þei wisten all full well · wisly to knowe,      372
- That more dreede þen deth · drie þei ne might ;
- As goode thought hem go · till they grounde sought,      Better fall than  
To meete *with* hur fomen · & manlich deie,<sup>2</sup>      be killed as  
As bee cowardly killd · for cateles want.      376      cowards.
- Forthe *turned* thei tid · hur teene to uenge,  
All to lachen or leese · or hur lyfe tine.  
Full stoutely *with* stiff will · þei stirred on hur gate,  
To teene þe Tebenieins · þei *turned* to fight.      380      They attack the  
þei dradden litle hur deth · & doughtily wrought,      Thebans  
þei putt þem in perill · & prikened aboute,      recklessly.
- þei rought lite of hur life · & laiden on hard ;  
For fere, ne fantasie · faile they nolde.      384
- þei were so hardie too harm · happes to fonde,  
þat þei þat stint at hur stroke · stirred no more ;  
So þei felden hur fone · by force of her dintes.  
For greefe of hur grim stroke · grunt full many,      388      They fell their  
þat hem rued þe res · þat þei ne rest had,      foes by sheer  
Whan þei þe bikering abide · *with* bostefull deedes.      force.
- þus Phosus<sup>3</sup> *with* fyght · felden this oþer ;      Thus the Phocians  
þei taken hur tresour · & teened hem sore.      392      win the battle.
- þei of Tebes *with* teene · *turnede* fro thanne  
Ruefull & redeles · biraft of hur goodes.      The Thebans are  
In sorowe bene they of-sett · to siken in hert,      rueful, and seek  
3if þei ne haue none help · hem<sup>4</sup> to auenge.      396      revenge.

For Ɔis<sup>5</sup> feye folk Ɔer<sup>5</sup> · so fouli was harmed,  
Till þei were wreken of þat wo · wolde þei nought  
blinne ;

To seeche more socour · assented they all.      They resolve to  
þe mightie King of Macedoyne · moste was adouted      seek succour.

Of any wight in þe worlde · þei wist þe soothe.      401

<sup>1</sup> MS. farde, *with e over the a.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. dye, *with deie (marked) above it.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. Φosus.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þem.

<sup>5</sup> MS. dis, der ; *and so is written fo.*

- [Fol. 11.]  
They go to fetch  
Philip, and proffer  
him their  
allegiance.
- To fetch Philip, þe folke · farde in an haste,  
And comen ryght to þe kith · þere þe King dwelt,  
Besoughten hym of socour · hur Soueraïne to bene, 404  
To be Lorde of hur land · þeir lawes to keepe,  
þei to holden of hym · þe hye & the lowe,  
With þat hee wolde *with* hem · wend in an haste,  
Hur enemies egerly · in earnest to meete. 408
- Philip sets out for  
Thebes, ready to  
attack the  
Phocians.
- Philip grauntes & gose · graithes his peple,  
Til þei to Tebes wer turnd · targe þei nolde.  
With his ferefull folke · to Phocus hee rides,  
And is wilfull in werk · to wirchen hem care. 412
- The Phocians  
send for help to  
Athens.
- Folke of Phocus to fere · or the fight *comme*,  
Weren ware of hur werk · & went for help.  
þei armed þe Atteniens · & aunter hem þider,  
Strained in stel ger<sup>1</sup> · on steedes of might, 416
- The Lacedæmon-  
ians also join  
them.
- With grim graiþed gomes · of Lacedemonie,  
All redie araied · to ryden hem till.  
Hem lacked a leader · þe ludes to araie,  
Hur Prince in þe forme prese · was prened to þe erth,
- Philomelus had  
been slain.
- Philomelo þe faire Knight · in þe fight died. 421  
When þei proffred hem prest · & þe pris wonne,  
For þei myssed þat man · they made hem a neew.
- Enomanus  
[Onomarchus] is  
chosen leader.
- Enomanus, an eger *Knyght* · in erth to fight, 424  
þei made master of hem · þe menne for too leade,  
And busken to battaile · as bostfull in armes,  
With a leflich lust · lachte togeder.
- He is duke of  
Phocis.
- Of Phocus þe fell Duke · in þe fight rydes ; 428  
Enomanus þe bolde beurn · þe battle araies,  
Hee was chosen for cheefe · in chasing of werre,  
Too bee þeir dereworthe Duke · for doughtie hee  
thought.

Both sides are  
ready for battle.

[Fol. 11] b.]

Now beene þe parties prest · to proffren hur dintes,  
With baners brode displaide · busken to meete, 433  
Gurden in goode speede · grislich farde,

<sup>1</sup> MS. stelger.

Bothe blonkes & beun[es] · baren to grounde.  
 þer was feld many frekes · þat on þe feeelde lay, 436 Many are felled,  
 Every segge for hymself · bisetten hur might, and wounded  
 þat many a wounded wyght · walowed þere. wights wallow  
 But *Philip with his* wight men · þe werre gan 3eme,<sup>1</sup> Philip and his  
 þat by strenght of her strife · þei straught to foote 440 men overcome all  
 All so many as *his* menne · mighten areche. they can reach.  
 þus *his* peple on þe plain · all þe pris<sup>2</sup> wonne,  
 þat none stirred of þe stede · þere þei stroke sett.  
 þe ludes of Lacedemonie · loþed in hert, 444 Both Lacede-  
 þat euer þei stinten in strife · to sterue in þe place. monians  
 Of Phocus þe ferse men · forthoughten hem all, and Phocians  
 þat euer þei farde to fight · with Philip þe keene. repent their  
 þus þis cumlich Kyng · þat ilche kith wynnes ; 448 rashness.  
 Lorde of Lacedemoine · was þe lud þaune, Thus Philip is  
 And Phocus by fin strokes · freelich hee walte, lord of  
 And hathe all Greece at *his* graunte · for *his* grete yie. Lacedæmonia and  
 Phocis.  
 Now cease wee þe sawe · of þis seg sterne, 452  
 And of a Kyng wel i-kid · karp wee now,  
 þat entred in Ægypt · euer on *his* line, We now speak of  
 To leng in þat Lordeship · & þe lond aught. a king of Egypt.  
 Of what kinne hee *comme* · can I nought fynde 456 I find nothing  
 In no buke<sup>3</sup> þat i bed<sup>4</sup> · when I beganne here about his kindred  
 þe Latine to þis language · lelliche turne. in any book.  
 Nectanabus þe noble man · his name was hote, His name was  
 þe nede of Nigremauncie · hee nas nought to lern. 460 Nectanabus, and  
 In art of Astronomie · able hee was holde, he was skilled in  
 And cheefe of enchauntment · chaunces to tell. necromancy and  
 Hee was [kene] on his craft · & cunningy of deede, astronomy.  
 Egypt by eritage · entred hee neuer ; 464 He did not gain  
 Hee wanne it by witchcraft · for y-wis hee was Egypt by  
 knowe.<sup>5</sup> inheritance, but  
 by witchcraft.

<sup>1</sup> MS. 3enn or 3eme ; see l. 365.

<sup>2</sup> MS. pris, with ce over the s.

<sup>3</sup> MS. booke, with u above the oo.

<sup>4</sup> MS. bed, with had above it.

<sup>5</sup> See the note.

- A prince of Persia comes to Nectanabus, and says,
- A proude Prince & a pris · fro Perss<sup>1</sup> was fare,  
 þat helde of þis hye King · hollich his londes.  
 To noble Nectanabus · nam he his gate, 468  
 And tolde this tydyng · to þe Kyng soone,  
 How hym was care to cumme · by costes aboute.  
 “ þe Kyng of Perce *with* prese · of peple full huge  
 Graithes hym grim folke · & greue ʒou thenketh.<sup>2</sup> 472  
 But yee cast at his *comme* · to keepen hym hence,  
 Yee shall lose your lond · & your life also.”
- Nectanabus does nothing in defence,
- For no care of þis case · þe King in his lond  
 Kleped<sup>3</sup> no Knighthod · ne no kid peeple, 476  
 Hee ne araide no route · þe raigne too keepe,  
 But passed priuily · in place full derne.
- but secretly fills an earthen pot full of rain-water.
- A prest erþen pott · hee proferes him till ;  
 Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress ; 480  
 A bright braseyn ʒerd · brode on his hond.  
 And by þe conning of craft · þat hee kid hadde,  
 Hee sawe saile on þe sea · seemelich Knightes,  
 Bothe schippes & schoute[s] · *with* schawes of myght,  
 Well i-armed, iwis · werre too holde, 485  
 þe egerest of Egipt · in earnest too meete.
- The prince says, “ Sir, I told you the truth.
- Whan hee had þat happe · hollich awaited,  
 þe Prince to þe pris Kyng · prestly saide, 488  
 “ Sir, I tolde you trowth · trist<sup>4</sup> yee no nooþer,  
 Yee beene greefly bigo · but grace you falle.  
 Artasarses þe Kyng · & armed Knightes,  
 Oute of Perce beth prest · passing hider, 492  
 With nine grete nations · too nye þee here.  
 Perce is þe principall · & Perthe þat ooþer,  
 Of Medie full mich folke · murder þee think ;  
 Of Syria [a] siker oste · sechen too fight ; 496
- Persians, Parthians, Medians, Syrians,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Perss, with ss marked, and ce above it.

<sup>2</sup> MS. you thinketh, with ʒ above the y, and e above the i.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Kliped, with e above the i.

<sup>4</sup> MS. trist, with u above the i.



- With menne of Mesopotame · too mark þe teene ;  
 Of Augmi & Arabes · armed Princes ;  
 þer beene of Bosorij · beurnes ynow ;  
 Of Arofagi all men · that armes now welde. 500  
 Yee bene enforced to fight · with þus fell beurnes,  
 And ooper weies of þe weste · werre too make ;  
 þis ilk tydyng of teene · trowe yee mowe,<sup>1</sup> 503  
 And but yee bett beene araide · bale you springeth.”  
 Trust these tidings, and beware !”
- Nectanabus anonne right · nyed hym tyll,  
 And gleming gainelech · too þe gome saide —  
 “ Keepe well thyne owne koste · þat þei no komme  
 ðare,<sup>2</sup> [Fol. 12 b.]  
 “ Take care of  
 your own lands.  
 þat is take too þee · truly too zeme. 508  
 þou kipes no Knighthod · too karp as a Prince,  
 But as a gome wer agast · þou grendes thy speeche.  
 þei ðei<sup>3</sup> turn such teene · this time hider,  
 With all þe might of hur maine · mee too distroie, 512  
 þe uertue of il uictorie · of unwele peepel,  
 Is *noght* stabled in strength · of no stiff prese.  
 Thorou graunte of þe greate God · if him goode thinkes,  
 In fight or in fell turn · ðer<sup>4</sup> as flight is of dintes, 516  
 In battail or holde stede · bigly too wurch,  
 As mich may a meane man · as a more stern,  
 For þou seeste well thiself · (saide þe king þan),  
 A Lioun in a launde · may lightlych driue 520  
 Of hertes an holle herde · as happes ilome<sup>5</sup> ;  
 For no strength, ne strife · no stifnes of members,  
 But as gracious Godde · grauntes too beene.”  
 a mean man may do as much as a sterner one.  
 A lion can drive a whole herd of harts.  
 Strength is from God only.”
- Anon as Nectanabus · had namned þese wordes,  
 Hee passed in his Paleis · too a priuie sell, 525  
 Hee tooke prestly a pott · too preeuie yet more.  
 Nectanabus goes to a secret cell.

<sup>1</sup> MS. may, with owe above ay.    <sup>2</sup> MS. dare, with þ above d.<sup>3</sup> MS. der, for ðer ; but we must read ðei.<sup>4</sup> MS. der, with þ above the d.    <sup>5</sup> Before and above i is wh.

- He makes ships  
of wax, and puts  
rain-water in a  
pot.
- Hee wraught shipps of wax · & rain-water hentes ;  
Hee puttes it in þe pott · & a palme braunche 528  
Hee helde hard in his hond · & his art kipes ;<sup>1</sup>  
With all þe wyle of his werk · þe waie gon enchaunte,
- By his sorcery, he  
sees the god of  
Barbary floating  
in the sea,
- By segging of sorsery · þat hee sei <sup>2</sup> þere  
Fleete in þe floode · farre fro þe lond, 532  
Of Barbre þe bryght God · brem too beholde ;  
þe gaye God of Egipt · glisiande bright,  
So sailed in þe sea · in that same tyme.  
Hee bihelde how þe God · þat heried was in Barbre  
Gouerned hur goodes · by grace of his myght. 537
- He sees the god of  
Barbary will not  
let the people  
help him.
- þe seg sei <sup>2</sup> well himself · þat socour him fayles,  
For no grace hur grete God · graunt ne <sup>3</sup> might ;  
Of hem hoped hee help · too haue at his neede, 540  
But hee kneew by that kast · þei kouth noght help.
- He shaves off hair  
and beard, doffs  
his armour, and  
dons white sendal.
- þe beurn for a barbour · bliue let send,  
His berd, heire, & his hedde · hett hee too schauē.  
Hee cast of his Knightweede · & cloþes hym neew, 544  
With white sendal in syght · seemely too knowe,  
Of gold swith gret-won · graithes hee ðanne ;<sup>4</sup>  
All that Astronomie · aught too long,  
With ginnes of Gemetrie · too ioinen his werkes, 548  
Hee let trusse full tid · & takes nomore,  
But fares *with* few folke · farre fro þe londe.
- [Fol. 15.]
- His gold and  
instruments of  
astronomy he  
packs up,
- Hee passes as a Prophet · priuely þanne  
Fro Egipt till Ethiope · & eft on his gate. 552  
þere hee lenged in þat land · as a lud straunge  
Men kneew hym for no king · kunnyng hee seemes.  
Whan his menskfull menne · might nought fynde  
Hur ked King in Egipt · carefull þei were. 556  
To hur God Seraphin · þe gomes gon all  
Koure doune on hur knees · [ & ] karpē þese wordes.
- and passes into  
Ethiopia, and lives  
there.
- When his men  
cannot find him,  
they pray to their  
god Seraphin.  
[Serapis.]

<sup>1</sup> MS. kipes, with ee above the i. A p is often (in copies) written by mistake instead of þ.

<sup>2</sup> MS. sei, with aw above ei.

<sup>3</sup> An o is written above the e.

<sup>4</sup> MS. danne.

- "Seemely Seraphin" · saide they thanne,  
 "Tell us sum tydyng · of our true Prince, 560  
 Noble Nectanabus · that now is awaye!"  
 Hur God grathliche spake · & too þe gomes saide,  
 "Kares<sup>1</sup> nought for your Kyng · þis kith hath hee lete,  
 For peril of þe proude Kyng · from Perce þat wendes ;  
 Hee shall hye hym againe · & help you faire,  
 And schend þem schamelich · þat sholde you greue."  
 Of þis swift answer · þei wer swith glad,  
 And graueden a greate ston · a God as it were, 568  
 I-corue after a Kyng · full craftie of werk.  
 þe frekes in that faire ston · at his feete soone  
 Let write euery worde · wisly too knowe,  
 That Seraphin þat Soueraine · saide hem till, 572  
 In mynde that more folke · myght it arede.
- Now nolde Nectanabus · no while dwell,  
 Too þe Courte of þe Kyng · till hee comme were,  
 Too looke on Olympias · þe onorable Queene, 576  
 þat was alosed in lond · of diueres raignes,  
 For one þe brightest of blee · þat bore was in erth.  
 Whan þe seg had seene · that seemely Ladie,  
 Too greete that gracious · hee gose in a haste, 580  
 Hee cummes too þat comely · & coffich saide :  
 "Haile ! quemfull Queene · quaintly shape !  
 Moste of all Macedoine · menskfull Ladie !" 583  
 Hee was dedaine on his dede · "Madame" too segge  
 Too any Ladie in lond · for lordlich hee karpes.  
 þe Queene quitt hym his speche · & quikly saide,  
 "Maister, welcome, ywis · will[e] yee sitte ?"  
 þe Ladie laches þis lude · & ledes in hand ; 588  
 By hur side þat seg · too sitten hue makes.  
 þat worthlych too þis wight · wilsfully saide :  
 "Fro what kith bee yee comme · kennes mee now ;  
 Ert þou aught of Egipt · in earnest too tell ?" 592

"Seraphin, tell us news of Nectanabus!"

The god replies, "He has gone away for fear of the Persians.

He will come again."

They were glad, and carved a god of stone,

at whose feet they wrote every word that Seraphin had said.

Soon after, Nectanabus goes to Philip's court to see Olympias.

He greets her, saying,

[Fol. 13 b.]

"Hail! gracious Lady!" For he would not say "Madame."

The queen says, "Master, welcome!"

whence do you come? From Egypt?"

<sup>1</sup> MS. Kare, with s above the e.

"Queen, you  
please me. I am  
glad when I hear  
of Egypt.

"Queene," saide hee quickly · "þou quemest my hert ;  
A full speciall speeche · spoken yee haue.

Where euer menne saye 'Egipt' · myne eres ar prest,  
For þat wortlich<sup>1</sup> worde · waketh my bliss. 596

The men of  
Egypt understand  
dreams, and the  
language of birds.

It is a Knightly kith · & kid men inne,  
Of any wightes in wonne · wysest i-holde.  
þei bene rinkes aright · in reching of sweuenes,  
Too preue-mich priuie thyng · & pyping of birdes.  
þe ludene<sup>2</sup> of þat language · lelli þei knowe, 601  
· And bothe of burdes & bern[es] · þe burth too tell.

I am an  
Egyptian  
prophet."

I am a lude of þat lond · lered therin,  
Too preche as a Prophet · preued of witt." 604

"Tell me what  
thrilled thy  
thought at seeing  
me ?"

When hee þese tales her till · had tolde soone,  
þe face of þat faire thyng · fast hee beholdes.

"Lude," saide þe Lady · "let mee iknowe 607  
What thing thurlude thy thought · þo þou mee bihelde?"

"A bright god  
hath sent me to  
save thee from  
sorrow."

"Forsoothe," saide that seg · "seemely Queene,  
I segge, God sent mee · too saue thee now,  
For too waste thy wo · with wille þat I owe.  
Thorou bone<sup>3</sup> of a bright God · busked I hider, 612  
Too defend fro doole þee · dereworth Queene."

[Fol. 14.]

Whan hee with speede had spoke · his speche to  
þe end,

He fetebes a brass  
tablet set in ivory,  
and deked with  
gold and silver.

A brem brasen borde · bringes hee soone,  
Imped in iuory · too incele þe truthe, 616

With goode siluer & golde · gailich atired.  
In this blisfull borde · beholde men myght

Three circles were  
set in it.  
In the first were  
the twelve signs  
of the Zodiac.

Three circles isett · seemelich rounde.  
þe first cirkle in himself · seemely was holde, 620

þe twelue signes in sight · sett þerin.  
If any wight in this wonne · wilnes þem knowe,  
Kairus to þe Kalender · & kenne yee may.

In the second was

Sithen in þe seconde circle · soothely too lere, 624

<sup>1</sup> MS. worlich. Cf. I. 1021.

<sup>2</sup> MS. lude ne.

<sup>3</sup> MS. bone, with a second o above the o.

- Was craftely contained · þe course of þe sonne ;  
 And þe mark of þe moone · made in þe third,  
 þat bliss was for a beurn · þat borde too biholde.  
 þan fettes hee a forcer · freelich ischape,  
 þat wraught was of iuory · wonderly faire ;  
 Seuin sterres þat stounde · stoutlich imaked,  
 Hee showes forthe scheenely · shynand bright.  
 þe bern couth þerby · boldly tell,  
 When a gome were igett · by grace of his witt.  
 Foure stones in fath<sup>1</sup> · forthe gon hee bryng,  
 þat lay longyng · too the louelich sterres ;  
 Many thinges of man · myght hee showe,  
 By studie<sup>2</sup> of þe stones · in what state hee were.  
 “Maister,” quath þe Queene · “quainte of thy werkes,  
 If þee liketh þat I leue · thy lufsum deedes,  
 Tell mee tidly þe time · & term of þe zeres,  
 In what daie my dere Lorde · þat douhti is holde,  
 Was iborne of þe burd · þat hee best loued ?”  
 þe King by his kunnyng · castes it soone ;  
 By ginnes of Gemetrie · hee ioifully telles  
 Bothe þe date, & þe daie · & þe dere tyme,  
 þat Philip was forth brought · of his faire mooder.  
 Whan this rink had arad · & redely showed,  
 All þe burth of þe bern · by his art one,  
 “Ladie,” saide hee, “louelyche · liketh þee aught eles,  
 þat I shoold þee showe · in a short time ?”  
 “Maister,” saide þat menskfull · “mee likes too knowe,  
 What Philip my free lorde · þat fairest of londe,  
 Wil wirc by mee ? · for weies mee tolde,  
 Hee wyll forsake mee soone · & seeche hym a newe,  
 Whan hee is cumme too þis kith · too kithe mee  
 sorowe.”——

the course of the sun.  
 In the third, that of the moon.

628 Then he fetched an ivory box,

with seven shining stars in it,

632 by which he knew a man's birth-hour.

He chose four stones, belonging to planets.

636

“Master,” said she, “when was my dear lord born ?”

640

He told her the date and the day.

[Fol. 1t b.]

648

He asks if she would know aught else ?

652

She asks what Philip will do to her ;

for she has heard he will forsake her.

- For yee ne haue nocht i-herd · holly þe wrath,  
 By what cause þe Kyng · coueted in hert

(As you have not heard Philip's cause for wrath, I tell you now.

<sup>1</sup> Sic. Read “feip.”

<sup>2</sup> MS. studie, with i above the u.

- Too loþe this Ladie · mee list you tell.  
 As Philip farde to fight · in a ferce place,  
 Once Philip went  
 to the temple of  
 Ammon, and  
 said,  
 Hee turned too a temple · atired too-rightes, 660  
 His grete God Amon · grates too zelde ;  
 Hee kneeles coflich adoune · & kries hym till,  
 " What will  
 happen to  
 Olympias ? "  
 And saide, " Seemely God · send mee too knowe,  
 Of onorable Olympias · þat I on think, 664  
 What shall hur happe to haue · þat hende is of deede?"  
 His God gaue an ansuer · & too þe gome saide,  
 " She will have a  
 child, the greatest  
 man on earth.  
 " Hur chaunce is too haue a childe · þat cheefe shall in  
 erth  
 Of any ludes þat liue · in Lordship wex. 668  
 þe bern shall not bee ðine<sup>1</sup> · bolde þo þou seeme,  
 But geten of a-nooþer gome · in þat gaye burde."  
 þen was þe King carefull · & kest<sup>2</sup> for wrath  
 Therefore was  
 Philip wrathful  
 against her.)  
 For too bring þat beurde · in baile for euer. 672  
 Menne tolde this tydyng · too þe true Queene,  
 þerfore hur lyked þat lud · his lore too knowe.—
- " Now," saide Nectanabus · anon too þe Lady, 675  
 " þe sawe þat þou haste saide · uncertain is founde ;  
 Nectanabus  
 answers, " It is  
 uncertain.  
 But ðei<sup>3</sup> þou ne hap noght yet · too haue þat sorowe,  
 þat fere shall bifall þee · within few yeres.<sup>4</sup>  
 [Fol. 15.] Whan Philip in his foule will · hathe þee for-lete,  
 Maugre his malice · or his menne sterne, 680  
 Him tides to take þee azain · trowe þou no nooder."  
 " Maister," quod þe Queene · " queme yee me might,  
 Of this unkouth case · too karp þe soothe.  
 " Who will be so  
 bold as to make  
 him do so ? "  
 When Philip þe ferefull · forsake mee thynkes, 684  
 Who durst bee so bolde · þat bides in erth,  
 Too make hym, maugre his menne · mee for too take?"  
 þus saide þe seg · " Such one I knowe ;  
 " A god shall  
 A God þat is gracious · & grete of his myght 688

<sup>1</sup> MS. þine; but above the þ is a ð without the cross stroke.

<sup>2</sup> Over the e in kest is a.

<sup>3</sup> MS. dei, with though above it as a gloss.

<sup>4</sup> Catchword—Whan Phelip.

- Shall busk too thy borde bed · by þee too ligge,  
 And fro this harmfull happe · help þee faire.”  
 þe Ladie full louely · of þe lnd askes,  
 “Which dereworthe dright · desires mee too haue?”  
 þis King carpes anon · & cofly saide, 693  
 “Hee is *noght* yonge of his yeres · þat yernes þee take,  
 Noper olde of *his* age · but onely too showe,  
 In a meane maner · mightfull hee seemes. 696  
 Hee hath hye on *his* hed · hornes of syluer,  
 With golde gailye begonne · glisiing bright,  
 With here on *his* hedde · & his berd also.  
 Hee wyll nye [þee] too-night · & neede þee bihooues 700  
 Bee full prest too his paie · & profer þee faire.”  
 “Ȝif I may trowe thy tale · trulich,” hue saide,  
 “I shall hilich [þee] herie · with hert and wyll,  
 Noght praise þee as a Prophet · þat passeth in londe,  
 But as a gracious Godde · greate I þee thynk, 705  
 And bileeue on thy lore · all my lifetime.”
- þan nolde Nectanabus · no lenger abide,  
 But gothe too a greene grounde · þere gras es wer sett ;  
 Farre fro þe Paleis · hee fares all alone, 709  
 And laches in a launde · full louely wortes.  
 Hee grindes hem grathly · & gripes in honde,  
 Hee wringes oute þe wet wus · and went on his gate.  
 Hee passed intoo þe Paleis · in a preeuwy wyse. 713  
 When it dreew too þe derk · & þe daie slaked,  
 þe burd busked too bedde · & brought was on slepe,  
 þis King with his conning · kithes his werkes, 716  
 With wiles of witchcraft · & wicked deedes,  
 þat by fauour of þe fende · & his foule craftes  
 Hee grathes hym as a God · & gothe too þe burde ;  
 As hue slumbred on slepe · slilich hee wendes, 720  
 And lyeth by þat Ladie · þat louely was holde.  
 Whan hee his will had wraught · hee wendes in haste,  
 And straihite oute of þe stede · with a stiff wyll.

come to thy bed,  
and thus shalt  
thou have help.”

“What god will  
that be ?”

“He is neither  
old nor young.

On his head are  
silver horns.

He will be nigh  
thee to-night.”

“If it comes true,  
I shall not praise  
thee as a prophet,

but greet thee as  
a god.”

Nectanabus goes  
alone to gather  
worts,

[Fol. 15 b.]  
and wrings out  
of them the wet  
ooze.

At dusk, Olympias  
goes to bed.

Nectanabus  
arrays himself as  
a god,

and goes to her,  
and soon returns.

- She awakes in wonder. þan þe burde in her bed · braide of hur slepe, 724  
And whan shee wakyng was · shee wondred in hert.
- She had dreamt of Ammon, with silver horns and face like a burning coal. Hue mett on þe midnight · of mirth full riue,<sup>1</sup>  
þat grete God Amon · gan þiþer wend,  
And had seemelich isett · siluern hornes, 728  
And bright blased his blee · as a brend glede.  
þen was Amon ywis · of worship a-losed,  
And igrett for a God · grettest in lond.
- Ammon was a god shaped like a sheep. Hee was ishape as a sheepe · shinand bright, 732  
I-painted full prisely · & precious stones  
Wer sticked on þat stock · stoute too beholde.
- All the land worshipped him. All þe ludes of þe lond · Lordes & eles  
Set hym for soueraine · þeir sokour too beene, 736  
And saide þere sacrifice · in selkouth times.
- Olympias had dreamt that he drew near her, and said, þanne or-trowed Olympias · þe onorable Queene,  
þat hee neiherd þat night · nye too her syde,  
And fonded hur fleshlych · or hee fare wolde. 740  
Whan hee in his lykyng · þat Ladie lauht had,  
Hur seemed in þat same stede · þat hee saide after,  
“ Worldly wooman · well may þee lyke,  
For thy keeper of care · is conceiued now.” 744
- [Fol. 16.] A morowe on þe mirie daie · þis menskfull Queene  
Arises up redely · and a rink sendes  
She sends next day for Nectanabus. Anon too Nectanabus · & needely hym praies,  
þat he cofly comme · too carpen her tyll. 748  
þan laft þis lud · *noght* long ther-after,  
But camme too þat louely · too kenne of her lore.
- She tells him her dream, and says. þe Queene tolde hym till · þe tales too þe ende,  
Of her dereworth dreme · þat draihite hur in slepe, 752  
And hue saide too þat seg · “ Soothe oþer eles  
þif it were, I ne wott · for wislich I slept,  
Whan I þat sweuen so sweete · swiftly mette.”
- “ I know not the truth of it, for I was asleep.” “ Nay,” saide Nectanabus · “ ne trowe þou no nooþer, 756  
þis ilk sawe was soothe · & certain iprooued.

<sup>1</sup> MS. riue, with f above ue.



For ȝif þou lene mee leue · too leng biside,  
 for too stand in a stede · of a straitte place,  
 Too waite at a windowe · & warn þee after, 760  
 I shooldre trie þe truthe · & tell þee soone,  
 Wheþer i faithfull or falss · founde thy sawe.  
 For I warne þee well · with worship & ioie,  
 Hee wyll þee nye too-nyght · in a newe fourme. 764  
 In dreme as a dragoun · dreche hee þee thenkes,  
 And sithen showe hym hee shall · a shawe as it were,  
 Mich liehe<sup>1</sup> too mee · by mark of my face.”  
 “Sir,” saide þat seemelich · “þi sawes bee mirye, 768  
 þou shalt stond in a stede · still biside ;  
 ȝif it bee certain & soothe · þiself shall i chese,  
 Too faper þe free · that I forth bryng.”  
 þe burd bad hastely · by hur boure side, 772  
 þat swich<sup>2</sup> a place<sup>3</sup> were prest · too prooue þe truthe.<sup>4</sup>

Give me leave to  
be near thee ;

I will tell thee if  
it is true or false.

To-night thou  
wilt see him in a  
new form.  
He will be a  
dragon, and  
afterwards a man,  
much like  
myself.”

“Sir, thou shalt  
be near. If it be  
true, thou shalt  
be supposed the  
father.”

Whan þe leme & þe light · of þe leefse sonne  
 Was idrawne adowne · & dym were cloudes,  
 þe Ladie lay on hur bed · & lysted too slepe, 776  
 And this wonderfull weie · waites his place ;  
 Hee stode still on þe stede · & stirred no foote.  
 And sleily, when þe first slepe · slaked on wightes,<sup>5</sup>  
 Hee chases by, enchauntement · þe chamber within, 780  
 And with a dragons drem · drewe too þe bedde.  
 þan hee meeues too hur mouthe · & makes his lidene,  
 And kisses þat cumly · & kithes his wyll ;  
 And sithen hee seemed a seg · hymself as it were, 784  
 And spake too her speedily · these speciall wordes ;  
 “On þee is gotten a gome · þe grimmet in erth,  
 þat all weies in þe worlde · worship shall.”  
 þus quaintely þis Queene · was quemed with gyle, 788

[Fol. 21.]

At night, the  
lady fell asleep.

Nectanabus takes  
the form of a  
dragon,

comes to  
Olympias,

and tells her she  
shall have a  
mighty son.

<sup>1</sup> MS. liehe, with *ke* above *che*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. swich, with *u* above *the wi*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. place, with *is* over *ce* ; perhaps the older copy had *plais*.

<sup>4</sup> Catchword—Whan ȝe leme of ȝe liht of ȝe leue sonne.

<sup>5</sup> MS. nightes, with *w* above *n*.

- And wend gamene *with* a God · gracious of might,  
Whan a libbing lud · lay in hur armes.
- At daybreak he  
returns.
- þis rink, or þe sonne rist · romes a morowe,  
And passes in þe Paleis · prestlich hym one. 792  
And far forthe on þe daye · whan þe faire burde
- The lady arises  
and is attired.
- Had long þere layne · & had lyst too ryse,  
Dereworth damseles · drowen<sup>1</sup> them þiper ; 796  
Too serue þat seemely · þei setten hur hondes.
- She sends for  
Nectanabus,
- Hue sendes soone for þe segge · & saide þese wordes,  
“ Menskfull maister · makeles of witt,  
Tell mee now truly · & targe<sup>2</sup> no lenger, 800  
What kid King Philip · þat keene is of hert,  
Deemes *with* mee too doo · mee dreedes it sore ? ”  
þe lud too this Lady · full louely saide,  
“ Of Philip haue þou no fere · for faitly too knowe, 804  
Amon þe grete God · by graunte of my boone,  
Schall þee wisse fro wo · & wreche of his teene.”<sup>3</sup>
- He says that  
Ammon will  
protect her,
- [Fol. 21 b.] þan farde Nectanabus · forthe fro þat place,  
Hee wendes too a wildernes · & waites him erbes, 808  
Hee tempres hem tidly · & takes hem after,  
And hee draines in a dish · till þei dry were.
- He takes a sea-  
fowl, and anoins  
it with the juice  
of herbs.
- þan fetches hee a seafoule · faire of his wynges,  
And sawes of sorsery · hee saide therouer ; 812  
Of his grounden gras · þe wus can hee take,  
þeron hee brynges þe brid · & bathes his pilus.  
By help of þe Hellfeende · hee hauntes his werkes,  
To gille Philip in Greece · whan þe gome slept. 816  
Whan it nied þe night · nedelich & soone,  
Philip fared too bed · & fell on a slepe.
- Philip, by his  
enchantment,
- þe chaunce of enchauntment · chased his mynde,  
þat hee was draiht *with* dreme · thorou deuiles engines.  
þan met þat man · on his mirie slepe, 821

<sup>1</sup> MS. drowen, *with* cew *above* owen.    <sup>2</sup> *Above the ge is ie.*<sup>3</sup> Catchword—“ Danne ferd Nect.”

- þat hee sawe on his sight · his seemely make,  
 How þat louelich lif · laide was a bedde,  
 And a gracious God · gripte hur in armes.  
 Hee lay by þat Lady · his liking hee wrought ; 825  
 And whan his deede <sup>1</sup> so deerne · doone was in haste,  
 Amiddes hur membre · too maken it close,  
 Hee sawe hym sowen <sup>2</sup> a seme · by seeming of sweuen,  
 And with a gaie golde ring · hee gan it asele ; 829  
 A ston stiked þerein · stoutlich igraue ;  
 þe cast of þe sonne course · was corue þerin ;  
 A litle lioness hed · louelich ishape, 832  
 With a swith faire swerd · sweetelich imaked,  
 Was isett on þe sell · þe seme all amiddes.  
 Whan Philip on þe forthe daie · first gan arise,  
 Hee clipped hym his clerkes · full conning of witt, 836  
 Full noble Nigremanciens · þan<sup>3</sup> [nyed] hee in has te,  
 þat kouth such sweuens · swiftly arede.  
 Hee minges his metyng · amonges hem all,  
 And what it might bee too meane · þe menne gan hee ask.  
 His enchauntour cheefe · þat þe chauce herde, 841  
 Too þe cumly Kyng · kid these wordes,  
 And saide, “ Sir, forsoothe · thy seemely make  
 By a gracious God · shall go with childe. 844  
 þe prent þat was i-putt · on hur priuie membre  
 With þe gaie golde ring · graue too-rightes,  
 þe leue lioness hed · þat laide was amid,  
 As mich amounteth too meane · as I may tell, 848  
 When hur barn is ibore · bolde shall hee wex,  
 And bee kid for a King · kene of his deedes.  
 As þe lioun is Lorde · of liuing beastes,  
 So þe ludes in þe lond · alouten him shall. 852  
 þe sonne course <sup>4</sup> of þe sell · sinifieth also,  
 þat hee shall fare as farre · as any freke dwelles,

dreams that he  
 sees Olympias  
 with Ammon,

who marked her  
 with a seal.

On the seal was  
 the Zodiac, a  
 lion's head, and  
 a sword.

He asks what the  
 dream signifies.

[Fol. 22.]

His magi say,

that the seal-mark  
 signifies what her  
 son shall be like.

He will be feared  
 like a lion.

The zodiac means  
 he will conquer all  
 to the far East.

<sup>1</sup> MS. deene, *an obvious error*. See note.

<sup>2</sup> MS. sowen, *with ew above owen*. <sup>3</sup> *Over the þ is d, for ð.*

<sup>4</sup> MS. coures; see l. 831.

And right too þe sonne rist<sup>1</sup> · his raigne shall last.  
 þe swerd sweetlich inade · in sweuen too rede, 856  
 Bitokneth full treewly · in times here-after,  
 þat hee shall grow full grim · & graithlich<sup>2</sup> winne,  
 With stern strokes of swerd · & striuing of dintes,  
 Bothe boldes & borou[es] · & bern[es] to his will, 860  
 And seemely cities · as soucraine in erth.”  
 Philip saide, “Forsooþe · mee seemed þat tyme,  
 That I sawe þe God · go graith too hur bedde.  
 Whan hee his will had wrought · ‘Woman,’ he saide,  
 ‘Thy keeper is conceiued · thy comefort too bene, 865  
 þat þee & Philip þe free · of fone shall auenge.’”  
 “Sir,” said þe enchauntour · “soothely too mene,  
 Whan þe God gan speake · too þe gaie beurde, 868  
 How hue conceiued had · þe help of hur teene,  
 Faire Philip & hur · freely too keepe,  
 þat is wisly too witte · hee will you defend  
 Fro paines & peril · þat perce þee ne shall.” 872  
 Of this mirie meting · well may þou lyke,  
 Of swiche<sup>3</sup> happes so hende · herde I nere tell.”

[Fol. 22 b.] In þe same sesoun · soothely too showe,  
 Philip farde too fight · as I tofore saide. 876  
 þat time, þe Tebeniens · hee turned too fight  
 Azain þe ferefull folke · of Phocus<sup>4</sup> þe riche,  
 With ludes of Lacedemoine · lasches too deale.  
 Azain Philip too fare · feele þer<sup>5</sup> come. 880  
 Nectanabus anon right · with his nice werkes,  
 Too begile þe gome · graithes hym soone,  
 Deraide as a dragoun · dreedfull in fight.  
 Hee wendes too þe werre · with Philip too holde; 884  
 In sight,<sup>6</sup> of þe same shape · hee seemed þan,

The sword, that  
 he will be mighty  
 in battle.

Philip says,  
 “Ammon said her  
 son would be her  
 comforter.”

“That means, he  
 will defend you  
 and her from  
 peril.”

The Thebans  
 again attack the  
 Phocians.

Nectanabus  
 becomes a dragon,

<sup>1</sup> MS. rist, with e above i, making rest, which is wrong (l. 791).

<sup>2</sup> MS. has a gloss, greatly, which is wrong.

<sup>3</sup> MS. swiche, with u above wi.

<sup>4</sup> MS. has an s above the c.

<sup>5</sup> A d above the þ.

<sup>6</sup> Above sight is written sute.

As whan hee farde tofore · too þe faire Queene.  
 þan hee farde in þat fight · as hee folke sleew,  
 And brutned in that battle · buernes ynow. 888 and fights for  
 For dreede of þis dragoun · menne dreew þem þence, Philip.  
 And fell doune in þe feelde · fenked in haste.  
 þe dreede of þis dragoun · þat drof<sup>1</sup> men aboute,  
 So fought for Philip · & feld mo Knightes 892  
 þan all þe-men of Macedonie · & more of his people.  
 Whan this Kyng had kill[e]d · with carefull strokes Philip defeats the  
 þe Lacedemoniens · þat life loren<sup>2</sup> hadde, Phocians.  
 And Phocus · with ferse dynt · freelich ywonne 896  
 Thorou drede of þe dragoun · & drift of his Knightes,  
 þe fell folke of Attens · fledden hym soone,  
 And thought to sauen hemself · fro sorowe of his wrethe.

Philip after þis fight · in a foule time, 900  
 Was going too [ride] ouer Greece · as a grete Prince.<sup>3</sup> Philip's progress  
 þe armed Attenieins · aunted hym till, is opposed by the  
 þei wern ware of his comme · & his waie stoppes. Athenians.  
 þe King kipes<sup>4</sup> his grim · too keuren him gate, 904  
 But all his werk was in waste · þei werned his  
 thoughtes.<sup>5</sup>

For hee ne sholde hem shend · & shamelich take [Fol. 23.]  
 Hur seemely cities · too sorowen hem all,  
 Enforced were þe entres · with egre men fele, 908 The passes are  
 þat hee ne might in þat marche · no maner wend. manned against  
 Whan þe seg sawe well · no sokour ne speede, him.  
 He was gretely agrise<sup>6</sup> · & greued in hert,  
 For hee ne might in þo men · his malice kith. 912  
 To Tebes & Tessalonie · þat truly hym holpe, He goes to  
 Tebes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. droue, with f above ue.

<sup>2</sup> MS. loren, with ne above en.

<sup>3</sup> This line is corrupt; see note.

<sup>4</sup> MS. keepes, with i above ee; the p being obviously miswritten for þ, as elsewhere. Cf. l. 529.

<sup>5</sup> Catchword—"For he ne scholde."

<sup>6</sup> MS. agrise, with d above the e to the right.

- Hee went as a woode man · his wrath too auenge.  
 Whan hee comme too þat coste · þei kepten hym faire,  
 And gon too hur gates · & grathlich hem opens, 916  
 And lete þe riuk riden in · *with his* route sterne ;  
 And weies hym welcomes · *with* worship & ioye.
- His treachery. þei trowed no tresoun · untruly too haue ;  
 But *Philip* þe ferefull · faire thei grette, 920  
 And lete hym prik *with* his prese · in hur pris holdes.  
 As soone as þe seg · was þe citie within,  
 Hee, wrathfull [of] wille · wronglich þare,
- He kills the  
princes and dukes  
of Thebes. Hee lete catch þe King · & kyllen hym soone, 924  
 And his Princes of price · prestlich hee quelde.  
 Douhtie Dukes *with* doole · too deth gon hee bryng,  
 And ooper Lordes of lond · liueles hee made.
- He burns their  
towns, Hee brende holdes & borous · & beurnes therin, 928  
 And all went too wo · þat they with mett.
- and harms them  
as much as he had  
helped them. As mich as *Philip* tofore · hem frendship wrought,  
 Whan hee fought for þem · & Phocus distriede,<sup>1</sup>  
 As mich maugre & more · hee marked hem after, 932  
 Too be-traie them untruly · þat trusten hym till.  
 On weies & women · awrak hee his teene,  
 And solde them too seruise · in sorowe too liue,  
 And robbed of riches · all þe riche tounes. 936
- Thus did he out  
of spite. þus hee wrought þat wrong · *with* wreche of his anger,  
 For teene of þe Attenieins · þat turned him too kepe.<sup>2</sup>
- [Fol. 23 b.] Whan hee þis cursed case · unkyudely wrought,  
 Hee ne laft no leng[er] · in that lond þan. 940
- He next attacks  
Cappadoeia.  
[Olynthus ?] For too fonde more fight · his folke gan hee leade,  
 And fares too a countrie · *with* Knightes ynow,  
 þere a citie was sett · seemely & noble,  
 þat Cappadoce was cleped · a full kid place. 944  
 Many doughtie of deede · dwelt þerin,  
 þat wern fresh too fight · & fell of hur deedes.  
 Philip bedes hem biker · & biddes þem yeelde
- The men must  
yield or fight.

<sup>1</sup> MS. distroide, *with* ie above oi.<sup>2</sup> Catchword—"Whan he dis kursede case."

- þeir faire citie in faith · or fight þei shall. 948  
 þe seges in þe citie · þemself so kept,  
 þat *Philip* lafte þere long · & litle hee spedde.  
 But hee ne stint of his strife · *nocht* a stounde while, At last he takes  
the town.  
 Till hee had take þe toune · þat tristy was holde, 952  
 And made all þe menne · meeke too *his* wyll.  
 Whan hee had wonne þis won · & wrought more teene,  
 With mirth too Macedoine · hee makes his chace.  
 Hee priked too *his* Paleis · *with* Princes & Dukes, 956 He returns home.  
 And many a seemely seg · þat sued hym þanne.  
 Of hym þe Queene was ware · & wendes *with* ioye, The queen  
receives him.  
 And romed *right* too þe rink · receiued him faire.  
 Philip kisses his fere · as fell for too doone, 960  
 And kneew by hur countenance · hue *conceiued* had.  
 “*Dame*,” saide þat douhtie · “how haste þou doone now? Philip says she  
has done amiss  
 Who hath þee unclene i-kept · sithen I *comme* fro þee ?  
 þou haste medled amis · methynk, by thy chere. 964  
 Natheless I not 3it · nai, as I trowe,  
 ʒof þou haue cheuesed þee a chylde · as þi chaunce  
 falles ;  
 For it is <sup>1</sup> geten of a God · thy ilt is þe lasse. Yet no great  
blame is hers,  
 Of all þe happe þat þou haste · hollich ifounde, 968  
 I had minde on my slepe · by meting of sweuen,  
 Azaines mee & all men · þat may thee biholde, for he had learnt  
in a dream  
all about her.  
 Blameles þou might bee · of thy berem-chaunce.  
 No wight of thy werk · wite þee might, 972 [Fol. 24.]  
 Sithen it is sonde of a God · soothelich i-prooued.”

It betid in a time · tidly thereafter,  
 þat Philip made of folke · a feaste full ryche. Philip makes a  
rich feast.  
 All his Princes of price · praied hee thider, 976  
 And ooper Lordes of lond · ne laft hee none.  
 Whan hee is fare fro fight · his folke for too feaste,  
 In Macedoine *with* *his* men · this mirth hee made.  
 As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-rightes, 980

<sup>1</sup> MS. it it.

Nectanabus  
appears as a  
dragon.

Nectanabus by Nigremauncie · neew hym attires,  
And in a dragounes drem · hee dreew to þe halle.  
Hee comme first too þe King · & too þe kid Queene,  
And sithen hee buskes aboute · þe bordes echone, 984  
Hee drowned as a dragon · dredefull of noyes,  
þat all þe gomes were agrise · of his grim sight.

He goes up to the  
queen and kisses  
her.

þan farde hee forthe · too þe faire Queene,  
And hee holdes his hed · *right* in hur lappe, 988  
And kisses þat cumly · in knoweing of all.  
Philip saide too *his* fere · freely þese wordes,

Philip says it is  
the dragon who  
helped him.

“ Dame, of this dragoun · I doo þee too knowe,  
And every liuand lud · þat lenges herin, 992  
In a brem battail · abroad in þe feelde,  
Whan I was greefly bigo<sup>1</sup> · *with* a grim peeple,  
Hee comme flie too feelde · & my fone schende,  
þat I was holpe by hym · hem too distrie.” 996

The dragon  
flies away.

Whan þis tale was tolde · & tended of all,  
þe dragoun dreew him awaie · *with* drift of his winges.

Another time,

In a somer season · soone therafter,  
As Philip satt by hymself · soothe for too tell, 1000  
A faire breeding brid · bremlich went,  
And in þe lappe of þat lud · louely hee sittes.

a bird lays an  
egg in  
Philip's lap.

[Fol. 24 b.]

Or þis freelich foule · farde of þe place,  
Hee bredde an ai on his barm · & braides him þan.  
Philip wondred was · of this werk quainte, 1005  
And satte still on þe stede · stirred no foote.  
þe ai fell on þe flore · in the frekes sight,  
And þe shell to-shett · on þe schire grounde. 1008

An adder comes  
out of the shell,

Whan it coffi too-clef<sup>2</sup> · þer crep oute an addre,  
And buskes full boldely · aboute þe shell.  
Whan this worme<sup>3</sup> had went · wislich aboute,  
Hee wolde haue gliden in againe · graithlich & soone.

<sup>1</sup> MS. bigo, *with ne above o to the right.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. too clef, *with eue above f.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. worme, *with wrom above it ; no doubt the older MS. had wrom.*



But or hee had in his hed · hee hastily deide,<sup>1</sup> 1013 but dies before it  
can creep in  
again.  
 And dreew nere too his denne · but deide bi-side.  
 Philip for þis ferlich · fast gan wende  
 To noble Nigremauncieins · þat hym nyh were, 1016  
 And asked hem an answer · þis aunter too reede,  
 For cheef of enchauntment · chosen þei were.  
 “ Sir,” saide one enchauntiour · “ your seemely make It means that his  
son shall be a  
great conqueror,  
 Shall bere such a barn · in a brem tyde, 1020  
 þat by might of his maine · & maistrie of Kinges,  
 All so wide as þis worlde · shall welden his raigene.<sup>2</sup>  
 Whan hee aboute hath ibene · abroad in þe londes,  
 And iwonne at his will · þe wortlych<sup>3</sup> places, 1024  
 þe kith þat hee comme fro · or hee com till, but will die  
before reaching  
home.  
 Hee shall bee doluen & ded · as destenie falles.  
 As þe addre of þe ai · auntred aboute,  
 And wolde haue shoten in þe schell · or hee schent  
 were, 1028  
 So shall fare by þe freke · þat ferre may bee knowe.  
 Whan hee hath reigned a roum · as richest of all,  
 Or hee may too his marche · with his maine wende,  
 þere hee was fostred & fed · him falles too dye.” 1032

Now will I cease þis sawe · & segge you more  
 Of hym þat hight Alisaunder · holly þe birth.<sup>4</sup>

The birth of  
Alexander.

[*A portion of the story being here lost, the omission is supplied from a French prose text of a similar type.*]

[Le terme de l'effantement la royne approchoit, et lui commençoit le ventre moult a douloir. Si fist appeller Nectanebuz et lui dist: “ J'ai grant douleur en mon ventre.” Nectanebuz compta l'eure et lui dist: “ Sousleve toy, royne, ung poy de ton siege, car

The queen calls  
for Nectanabus.

<sup>1</sup> MS. deide dyed, and deide is marked.

<sup>2</sup> Above the a is an e.

<sup>3</sup> MS. wortlych, with worthy above it. Cf. l. 596.

<sup>4</sup> Here follows the catchword—“ Swiche fortune fel,” but the next leaf is blank. For an account of the piece here inserted to complete the sense, see the note.

Alexander is born.

Earthquakes and thunder, snow and sleet.

Philip perceives that the child is divine.

The child is well taken care of.

His hair, eyes, and teeth.

How Aristotle taught him the 7 arts.

He surpasses his companions.

ellemens sont orendroit orribles du soleil." Et la royne se leva, et la douleur se passa maintenant. Apres ung poy, lui dist : "Siez toy, royne." Et elle s' assist, et enfanta ung filz. Et quant li enfens chey sur terre, et la terra croulla, et foudra tonnoirie, et signes grans furent veus par tout le monde. La noif meslee avec gresil chey du ciel et ouvry le terre comme des<sup>1</sup> pierres. La nuit targa à venir, et celle fu plus longue des autres. Dont le roy Philippe fu moult esmayez, et dist a la royne : "Femme, j'ay pensay en mon cuer que cest enfant me feust nourris en aucune maniere, pour ce qu'il n'est de moy conceus. Mais pour ce que j'entens qu'il est conceus de Dieu, et pour ce que je voy les elemens changier en sa naissance, vueil-je qu'il soit aussi bien nourris en ma memoire, comme s'il feust miens propres. Et vueil qu'il ait nom Alexandre, aussi comme avait nom mon aultre filz que j'avais de mon aultre femme."

Maintenant les dames de leans prindrent l'enfant et le nourirent par grant diligence. Et sachez qu'il ne ressembloit au pere ne à la mere, mais avoit propre semblance. Car ses cheveux estoient comme crin de lyon, ses yeulx estoient grans et resplendissans, et ne ressembloit pas l'un à l'autre. Car l'un estoit noir et l'autre vair. Ses dens estoient trop agües et sa regardence estoit comme du lyon. Et combien que sa sestature feust petite, non pour quant aux signes qui se demonstroient, sembloit il bien que Alixandre devoit estre.

#### COMMENT ARISTOTE APRENT A ALIXANDRE LES SEPT ARS.

Apres, il fu de aage pour mettre à l'escolle. Le roy Philippe lui fist mettre et plusieurs autres enfans gentilzhommes avec lui, lequel enfant les surmontoit tous de toutes choses en lettres et en paroles. Et aussi fait il en ysnelette et en vigueur. Dont il advint,

<sup>1</sup> MS. deux.

quant il eut xii ans, il fu si aprins des sept ars par Aristote, le meilleur qui oncques feust, que il ne treuvoit homme qui tant en seust comme il faisoit.

Quant Alixandre ot xii ans accomplis, on lui bailla escuiers sages et congnoissans, qui avoient este par le pais et par les terres, et avoient use toute leur vie les armes. Et ceux l'aprirent et enseignèrent si bien de

toutes choses qui aux armes appartenoient, que il en toutes choses seurmontoit ses compaignons. Quant le roi Philippe congnut la grant vigueur qui estoit en luy, si lui dist : "Filz Alixandre, je ayme moult la ysnellete de ton corps et le soutil engin de ton courage. Mais triste suis que ta semblance ne ressemble à la mienne."<sup>1</sup>

Quant ce ouy la royne Olimpias, si se doubta moult, et appella Nectanebus, et lui dit :]

"Master on molde · what may mee befall ?

Of *Philip* sore am I aferd · for *his* fell speeche, 1036

For hee sayed too my soonne · in *syght* of myne yie,

Hee was purlich payed · of *his* prise werkes,

But hee chaunged *his* chere · & too þe chylde sayed,

'That þow ne art lyke mee, lude · mee lykes full yll ;'

Therefore my mynde & my moode · is marred<sup>2</sup> too care,

For *his* woorde am I wrought · wofull in hert." 1042

"Queene," *quoth* Nectanabus · [care þou no more,<sup>3</sup>]

For the sake of thy soonne · [þat schal saue þe at nede."<sup>3</sup>]

At the age of twelve,

he is taught to wield arms.

Philip's remark.

Olympias says to Nectanabus,

[Fol. 17.]

"Philip complains that Alexander is not like him."

"Never mind that; your son will help you."

The Lude looked on-loft · late on an eeue, 1045

And on a starre too stare · hee stynt full long,

Hee hoped to haue there · of *his* hertes desyres ;

Too catche sum cunnyng · hee kest up *his* yie. 1048

When Alisaunder þat sawe · hee sayed full soone,

"Father, wherfore · is þat farly too tell,

One eve, Nectanabus looks on the stars.

<sup>1</sup> MS. moye.

<sup>2</sup> MS. married, *with r above i*.

<sup>3</sup> Two half-lines are here lost, and are supplied from conjecture; blank spaces are left for them in the MS.

- That thow lookest on-loft · so long at þis tyme ?”  
 “ Soonne,” sayed þe segge · “ in syght I beholde  
 A brem sterre & a bryght · that mee best lyketh.” 1053
- Alexander asks  
 him to point out  
 his favourite  
 star.
- “ Leeue <sup>1</sup> fader,” quoth þe freke · “ fonde I, mee tell,  
 The sterre þat yee staren on · sticketh it in heuin ?”  
 “ Yea, forsoothe, deare soonne ” · sayed hee than,  
 “ It is in heuin full hy · beholde who-so myght.” 1057  
 “ And may yee, syr,” sayed þe chylde · “ by sum maner  
 wise,  
 Schowe mee schortly in shape · þat schynyng sterre !”
- He says he must  
 wait till  
 midnight
- “ Yea, wooste þou see, my soonne · in certeyn tymes,  
 The inkest howre of þis nyght · ny by my syde,  
 Withoute þe citie,” he sayed · “ in certeyn places, 1062  
 So, lo ! myghtst þou see · þat seemely sterre !”
- [Fol. 17 b.]
- “ That ilk for to see ” · hee sayed, “ I desyre,  
 And I shall wend thee with · when þee well lyketh.  
 But canst þou by any craft · kenne mee now 1066  
 What death dry þou shalt · by destinie shape ?”
- He asks if he  
 knows his own  
 fate.
- “ Yea,” soonne, sayed hee þo · “ in certein I knowe,  
 That I shall drye þe death · in dreedefull dedes stoundes,  
 By encheson of my chylde · such chaunce shall fall ;  
 But whan, wott I not well · ne in what place.” 1071
- “ Yes; my son  
 will kill me.”
- Nectanabus goes  
 down beside a  
 ditch.
- Nectanabus in þat nyght · as hym neede thought,  
 Passeth forthe priuely · þe Paleis without,<sup>2</sup>  
 Hee gooth downe by þe dyche · þat deepe was of  
 grounde, 1074  
 Euyll it is of syght · the walles besyde.  
 [“ Sone,” sayde Nectanabus · “ see 3ond þe sterres,] <sup>3</sup>  
 Joyfull Jupiter · Myrthfull Mercurie, 1077  
 The leame of his lyght · lyketh well my hert !”  
 So hee stynted þat stounde · & styrrd no foote,  
 Hee pored on þe planetes · pass ere hee woolde. 1080
- He points out the  
 planets.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Leeue, with *fe* above *ne*.

<sup>2</sup> Here follows a half-line out of place, “ the walles besyde,” the line “ Euyll it is of syght ” being left incomplete.

<sup>3</sup> A line is here lost.

- Hee braides too þe bank · of þe brode water, Alexander pushes  
him into the  
ditch.  
 By þe shoulderēs hym tooke · & shift hym in myddes,  
 With a wrathfull wyll · þese woordes hee sayed :  
 “Wretched worldly wyght · why wylst þou knowe  
 The prinitie of planetes · or precious starres,      1085  
 Syn þou art erthly thyself ? · in an yll tyme  
 Kaughtst þou in þat craft · cunningg of happes  
 Let them þat in heuin bee · knowe hy thynges ;      1088 “Only gods  
should know  
heavenly things.”  
 That lore longes too Godde · & too no lud eles,  
 Thow þat worldly art wraught · thy wytt þou bisett  
 On enery erthly thyng · & ern þou nomore ! ”  
 The segge sayed this sawe · souk or hee wer,      1092  
 “Truthe haue I þee tolde · in tymes ypassed ”— “I have always  
told you the  
truth.”  
 And with þat sawe þe soule · fro þe seg hee partes.  
 Alisaunder anonne · ryght armed in hert,  
 Hee did hym downe too þe dyche · as hee no dreede Alexander takes  
him out dead.  
     had ;      1096  
 Hee sprainde in a sprite · & spradde it aboute,  
 [And cauȝt vp þe cors · and eayres to þe queene.]<sup>1</sup>  
 “Saye mee, seemely · sunne, what þou bryngst ?” [Fol. 18.]  
 “Ich haue broght,” quoth þe burn · “a ded body here,  
 That noble Nectanabus · too name was hote.”      1101  
 “Sunne,” sayed þat seemelich · “my sorowe is þe more !”  
 “It is thy foule fowlye · þat this fare wrought,  
 Your carefull conscience · yee casten so large, Alexander  
reproves  
Olympias.  
 That yee wern no wyght · but wyrch as yee lyst.” 1105  
 The Queene quoth nought againe · but quickly & soone She cannot reply.  
 Too burye þat burn · þe beurd gan heate.  
 Of this lyueles lud · ne lyst mee tell,      1108  
 Of hym I cease my sawe · & seche too more.

Ther was a Prince full price · of powre y-holde,  
 Keeper of Cappadoce · that Kyng Philip aught.  
 A huge horsse & a hy · hee had that tyme,      1112 A HORSE.  
 The moste seemely in syght · þat euer seg wylt.

<sup>1</sup> A line is here lost, and supplied from conjecture.

There was a  
horse that fed on  
men.

Hee bore a hedde as a bole · y-brested to-ryght,  
And had hard on his hedde · hornes y-grow,  
Menne wern his meate · that hee moste loued ; 1116  
for as many as hee myght · murdre hee wolde.  
Hee was byglich ybownde · on bothe twoo halues,  
Bothe his chaul & his chynne · with chaynes of yren ;  
Many lockes wer laft · his legges aboute, 1120  
That hee nas loese in no lime · ludes to greeue,  
To byte, ne to braundise · ne to break no wowes.  
for hee so myghty was made · in all maner thynges,  
Of such a body as hee bore · þe blonke so sterne, 1124  
Was neuer steede in no stede · þat stynt upon erth.

Messengers took  
him to Philip as a  
present

Intoo meery Macedoine · þe messengeres þei camme,  
From what kith þei camme · coffy they tolde,  
Let greete hym with God · & goode wyll,<sup>1</sup> 1128  
And their presaut of price · proffred hym tyll.  
Hee had blyss of þat beaste · & blythely hym thankes.

Philip has a cave  
built for him.

[A caue he comanded · to coynt men inou3,]<sup>2</sup>  
Dupe<sup>3</sup> as a dunioun · dyked in erth, 1132  
All about bygge · with barres of yern.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Therefore þe Kyng had cast · too keepe þat steede,  
In þat caue craftely · enclosed with gynne.

Traitors were  
thrown to him to  
eat.

For if a trayter wer y-take · in tyme thereafter, 1136  
Or any thriftles theefe · for thynges accused,  
They shoulde bee cast in þat caue · too þat kene blonk,  
And bee deuoured with doole · as þe doome wolde.  
Anon as euer þe nyght · nyied on erth, 1140

Philip dreams,  
that whoever  
tames the horse

Philip farde too bedde · & fell on a sleepe.  
Of a myghtfull Godde · hee mett þat tyme,  
That on his bedsyde satt · & þis sawe tolde—  
“ Who prickes<sup>4</sup> on a playne feelde · þe perelous beaste,  
Hee shall raigne as a ryng · ryall & noble, 1145

will be king of  
Macedon.

<sup>1</sup> This line occurs in the MS. two lines higher up, clearly out of place.

<sup>2</sup> A line is here again lost, and supplied from conjecture.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Dupe, with ee above u.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Tho pricked, which is unintelligible.

And bee Kyng of thy kith · Knyghtes too leade,  
When þou art doone & dedde · & thy daye endes."

- When Alisaunder was of age · as I shall tell, 1148  
Of full fifteene yere · faren too þe end,  
Hee was hardye & hende · happes to fond, Alexander was  
now 15.  
And such wys of his witt · in worldly thynges ;  
Lered on letrure · was þe lud then, 1152  
And of latin þe lore · lellich hee wyst. He knew Latin.  
In a tyme betyd · as I tell after,  
That many menne of Attenes · with myckle ooper  
peeples,  
Did þem forthe on a day · by þe dupe<sup>1</sup> caue, 1156 Some Athenians  
see the horse  
lying amid men's  
bones.  
There þe steede in stooðe · strayed in bondes.  
They sawe lygge in theyr looke · legges & armes,  
Fayre handes & feete · freaten too the bonne,  
Of menne þat myslych wer · murdred therin, 1160  
By iustes<sup>2</sup> unioyfull · iugged too death.  
When Alisaunder was ware · of þe wylde b[easte],  
That was of body so bolde · bremlych yshaped,  
Too hym hee heelde forthe his hand ; · þe hors it [Fol. 19.]  
awaytes. 1164  
Hee layed þe neck oute along · & lyked his handes, The horse licks  
Alexander's  
hands.  
And sythe hee foldes his feete · & falles too þe grounde,  
And abowed [to] þe burn · on his best wyse.  
When Alisaunder so sawe · in his syght there, 1168  
How þe steede was stylle · & no stryfe made,  
Bale thought þat burn · too bynde þat steede,  
That so meeke was of moode · & made no noyes.  
Hee unclosed þe caue · unclainte þe barres, 1172 He enters the  
cave.  
And straihte into þe stede · stroked hym fayre.  
Hee raught forthe his right hand · & his rigge fro<sup>us</sup>,  
And coies hym as he kan · with his clene handes.  
þan hee loses his lockes · his legges unbyndes, 1176 He unfastens the  
steed's bonds,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Deepe, with u above ee ; see l. 1132.

<sup>2</sup> Indistinct and uncertain.

That hee nas fast in no foote · bifore ne bihynde.  
 Therof þe blonk was blythe · & blainte no furre<sup>1</sup>  
 But meeke was of maneres · withoute mischaunce.<sup>2</sup>

and it is as  
 meek as a lamb,

Was nere lambe in no land · lower of chere, 1180

No hownde to his hous-lorde<sup>3</sup> · so hende to queme,  
 þat was leuer to lyke · þe lude þat hym aught,  
 þen was þe blonk to þe beurn · þat hym bistint.  
 þan wendes þis weih · þe caue withoute, 1184  
 And þe horss *with* his hand · hendely brings.

He rides him  
 about.

Soone hee leapes on-loft · & lete hym worthe,<sup>4</sup>  
 To fare<sup>5</sup> as hym lyst faine · in feelde or in towne.

The steede strauht on his gate · & stired hym under,  
 And wrought no wod res · but his waye holdes. 1189

Philip is  
 astonished,

When sire *Philip* gan see · þe seg so too ryde,  
 And his blonk behelde · abated of wrath,  
 Of þe michel meekenes · marueil hee had, 1192  
 That þe steede so stern · stynt of his fare.

[Fol. 19 b.]

and tells his son  
 his dream.

He sayde, “ Sonne Alisaunder · of þis same chaunce  
 Iche had mynde in my slepe · by metyng fownde.  
 A greate glisiande God · grathly mee tolde, 1196  
 That þou shalt raigne when I rotte<sup>6</sup> · on my ryche  
 londes.”

“ Faþer,” sayde þe freke · “ if þou foreknowes  
 That I shall leade thy landes · when thy life endes,  
 Let mee be *proued* as Prince · in pres where I wend,  
 And fende mee finliche well · to fonde my strength.”

Of this bounden beaste · blynne [we þe] speche,  
 Of King Philip þe keene · karp wee now. 1203

Philip goes to  
 Byzantium.

When *Philip* had *with* his folke · faren on Greece,  
 And taken tresure ynough · in townes full riche,  
 Hee hurd tell of a towne · thriftily walled,

<sup>1</sup> An i above the u.    <sup>2</sup> che above unce.    <sup>3</sup> untes above us.

<sup>4</sup> MS. worche, with t above e.    <sup>5</sup> An i above and between a and r.

<sup>6</sup> MS. rotte, with royte above it, which may have been miswritten for rotyc in the older copy.



- A citie sett by peece · with full siker wardes,  
 Byzaunce þe bolde sted · was þe borowe hote ; 1208 BYZANTIUM.  
 None better hym aboute · þat any beurn wüst.  
 It was chosen for cheefe · to cheffaren in,  
 And many merchautes þer-in · þat much goode aught.  
 All þe Lordes of þe lond · þat large was founde, 1212  
 Helde it hur cheefe holde · when happe camme of  
 warre.
- Many menne of þe easte · of merchautes ynow,  
 Wer brought to þe borowe · too biggen & sell.  
 No defaute nas founde · in þat faire place, 1216  
 On euery syde þe sea · of-souhte <sup>1</sup> the walles.  
 Pausanias a pris King · none prester ifounde, Pausanias built it.  
 While hym lasted his lyfe · on his lond riche,  
 Let build þe borowe · too byde therin, 1220  
 When hee was ferkid with fyght · of his fone grimme.  
 That bolde borou Byzance · þat buyld was to-rihtus, [Fol. 20.]  
 Was called syn in þat coste · Constantinoble <sup>2</sup>, It was afterwards  
 Of Roome a riche Emperour · þat reigned sythe, 1224 called Constan-  
 Constantine hee was cleped · a Knyght well alosed, from Constantine,  
 The sonne of saint Elaine · þe seemelich Ladie, son of Helen.  
 That weihs <sup>3</sup> worshipen yet · for hur werk hende,  
 A new name too þat borowe · hee named þan, 1228  
 And called it Constantinople · þat knowen is wyde.  
 For þat stalworthe sted · so strong was founded, Since it was so  
 Philip <sup>4</sup> hoped þat holde · with his help to wynne, strong, Philip  
 For too keepe in that kith · cumlich & riche 1232 wanted it  
 All his tresour ytryed · for, in tresoun or gyle, to keep his  
 That none robbed þe rink · of þese riche thynges. treasures in.  
 Philip with his ferefull folke · fast hym arayes,  
 For too prouen his pride · at þe pris borowe. 1236

<sup>1</sup> MS. of souhte, with f above the s, and also saftie above the latter part of souhte.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Constantinople, with b above the p; see *Werwolf*, l. 1425.

<sup>3</sup> MS. wightes, with weihs (marked) above it.

<sup>4</sup> MS. For Ph.; but we must omit this second For.

Forthe rydes þe Kyng · *with* his route huge,  
 Philip besieges it. And hath þe citie besett · on sydes aboute ;  
 On floode & on faire lond · his folke gan hec sett, 1239  
 3if hee *myght* derie *with* dint · þat dereworthe place.  
 This seg bisecegged so · þe citie full long,  
 With all þe maine þat hee myght · made his assautes,  
 His men could not take it. But all þe ludes þat hee ladde · for loue ne for aie,<sup>1</sup>  
 No *myght* apeire þe place · of a peny brede. 1244  
 For þat freelich frieke · as I fore tolde,  
 The kid Knight Pausanias · þat King was of Spart,  
 It was too strong for them. That borowe in his best state · let build so strong,  
 That all þe wightes in þe worlde · it wyne ne myght,  
 But 3if fode lacked · too ludes within. 1249

\* \* \* \*

[*The next page is blank, and the rest is wanting.*]

\* \* For an account of the continuation of the story, see the note at the end of the "Notes to Alisaunder," and consult the Preface.

<sup>1</sup> MS. awe, *with aie above it.*

## NOTES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

P. 1. The first quire of the MS. consisted of 12 folios, or 6 pairs of leaves. Of these the three outer pairs have been slit up the back, which has occasioned the loss of the *first three* leaves, and of the *tenth*, which was once joined on to the *third*. The *eleventh* and *twelfth* are fastened in merely by their edges. The part omitted by the loss of fol. 10 corresponds to 144 lines of the French text, whilst the first three missing leaves correspond only to 186 lines of the same. This is to be accounted for, most probably, by the fact that the English translator did very much as he pleased, in some places following his original closely, in others condensing the story, and in others again giving us descriptions and explanations entirely, as it would appear, of his own invention. See note to l. 3.

P. 2. Of the later French prose version of the story a short specimen may suffice, as it is obviously inferior to the old version in rime.

The following corresponds to ll. 18—32 on pages 1 and 2 :—

"Et nous signifie l'histoire au premier liure que iadis fut un Roy de Cecille duc de Calabre & seigneur de la pouille nomme Ebron riche / puissant / craint & redoute sur tous princes de son temps / tellement que roy : Prince : ne autre neust ose sur luy entreprendre ne guerroyer. Dequoy aduertiy Lemperenr de Grece luy donna a femme & espouse sa fille : tant belle sage / gente & plaine de vertus : & deuote enuers dieu que rien plus. Nommee estoit Felixe plaine de toute felicite. Laquelle a cause de son bon bruiet & religion augmentoit & accroissoit merueilleusement la renommee du roy Ebron son mary tant que toutes gens prenoient plaisir a les voir & acquerir leur beneuolence."—*From the Paris edition, printed by N. Bonfons.*

A considerable portion of the commencement of the story is repeated in the English version near the end—(ll. 4624—4806)—where we find Embrons, Gloriande, and Acelone named Ebrouns, Gloriauns, and Achillones. A perusal of this repetition of the story gives us a very fair idea of the way in which the English translator must have begun his poem. Ebrouns died soon after the affair with the Werwolf, and his brother too (I suppose), for he is never again spoken of as alive. Queen Felice lived to a good old age, ending her days in happiness and peace. The Werwolf turns out to be the Prince Alphouns or Alphonse, eldest son of the king of Spain.

P. 4, l. 115. *Far* was the local name of the Strait of Messina, called

*Faro di Messina*, or *Far de Meschines*; thus we read of “fluvium magnū, qui dicitur Le Far de Meschines” in Benedict of Peterborough (ed. Stubbs, 1867), vol. 2, p. 125; and again, at p. 138 of the same work, we find the following,—“Et est notandum quod in fluvio illo del *Far* de Meschines sunt illa duo pericula maris maxima, scilicet Silla et Caribdis. Quarum una, Silla, est ad introitum del *Far* prope la Baignare, et Altera, scilicet Caribdis, est prope exitum del *Far*.” Two formidable perils these, for the Werwolf to encounter on his way; but he seems to have safely avoided them!

P. 6, l. 170. The exact distance of this forest from Rome is afterwards stated to be seven miles. See l. 4679.

L. 1. (*English text*). The first two extant lines of the poem represent the concluding phrase of the extract from the French—*que tot li plaist Ce que la beste de lui fait*. The next line in the French text is, *Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit, &c.*

3—35. These *thirty-three* lines are represented in the French text by only *seven* short lines, which run thus:—

Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit,  
qui en cele forest manoit,  
el bois estoit avoec sa proie,  
.i. chien tenoit en sa coroie,  
de pasture la nuit repaire;  
li chiens senti lenfant et flaire,  
forment abaie, et cil le hue, &c.

Hence it is clear that the excellent lines, 20—31, are *original*; and they shew that our own author was a man of very considerable poetical power. So again, the idea in l. 59—

“appeles and alle þinges · þat childern after wiluen,”—is entirely his own, and proves that he knew how to add a graceful touch to the poem he copied from.

P. 7, l. 19. *to wawe* was explained by Sir F. Madden as meaning *to the wall*; but I fancy it is but *one* word. See *To-wawe* in the Glossary.

P. 9, ll. 80—93. Having shewn (note to l. 3) how the translator has there written 33 lines where his original had but 7, it seems right to give an extract shewing, on the other hand, that he has here only 14 lines where his original has 26, some of them being very curious.

—“or oies

del leu qui estoit repaires  
de la viande quala enquerre  
par les vilains et par la terre;  
avoec lenfant tant en avoit  
que a grant paine laportoit.  
et quant lenfant na retrouve,  
onques nus hon, de mere ne,  
ne vist a beste tel duel faire,  
qui li oïst uller et braire,  
et les pies eusamble detordre,

et la terre engouler et mordre,  
 esrachier lerbe et esgrater,  
 et soi couchier et relever ;  
 et comme il socit et confont,  
 et querre aval et querre amont,  
 et les larmes fandre des ex,  
 bien peust dire, si grans dex  
 ne fu par nule beste fais.  
 lors ert saillis ens el markais,  
 si met a la terre le nes,  
 tout si com lenfes ert ales  
 desi ou le mist li vilains.  
 le suit li leus de rage plains ;  
 tant la sui a esperon,  
 que venus est a la maison.”

P. 9, l. 80. The letter *l*, like *r*, is one that sometimes shifts its place in a word. As we find *brid* for *bird*, so we find *wordle* for *world*; and *woluk* may be *intentionally* put for *wlonk*. Cf. *carfti* for *crafti*, l. 3221.

83. *no nei3* = *non ei3*, i. e. no egg. So *thi narmes* for *thin armes*, thy arms, in l. 666.

84. *grinneþ*. The MS. has *ginnep*. Sir F. Madden's note is—"A verb is wanting after *ginneþ*. We may, probably, supply it by 'so balfully he ginneth *greue*,' or by some similar word." But this rather spoils the rhythm of the line. Mr Morris says—"it seems probable that *ginnep* = howl, utter, send out, from AS. *ginan*, to open, *yawn*." This is somewhat farfetched. It is simpler to suppose that it is miswritten for *grinneþ*, which is not an inappropriate word, and is familiar to us from the expression in the Psalms—to *grin like a dog*, i. e. to grin with rage and spite. But it is still more to the point to observe that there is, as it were, some authority for the grinning of werwolves, if we compare with the text the following quotation—"þai *gremede* for gladchipe euchan toward oðer, as *wode wulues þet fainen* of hare praie." Morris: *Early English Homilies*, p. 277 (E. E. T. S. to be published shortly). Cf. also "The Lyon did both gape and *gren*." Bp. Percy's Folio MS. *Carle of Carlisle*, 213.

P. 10, l. 121. Between this line and the next, the translator has missed a portion of the original, viz. the lines following :

“ de mult de gens estoit loee ;  
 de son signor avoit .i. fil,  
 biau damoiseil, franc et gentil ;  
 Brandins ot non, ce dist lescris.”

“She was praised by many people. She had by her lord one son, a fine lad, frank and gentle ; he bore the name of Brandins [or Braundius], as says the writing.” The name of *Brandins* being so very like *Braude*, the translator may easily have lost his place, and omitted the passage unintentionally. Braundins is mentioned afterwards, as the reader will find.

136. *a noyement* = *an oynement*, i.e. an ointment, unguent. Cf. note to l. 83. See l. 139.

141. "All the form of man so amiss had she shaped (transformed)." —Morris; *note to the line in* "Specimens of Early English."

143, 144. "But truly he never after possessed any other resemblance that belongs to human nature, but (was) a wild werwolf." The construction is involved.

P. 11, ll. 156—160. Here the translator, finding a tendency to repetition in his original, cuts matters short, omitting how the werwolf lived two years in Apulia, and grew fierce and big and strong; and how, hearing of the treachery of King Embrouns' brother, he resolved to steal away William in the manner already described. It is needless to say that ll. 161—169 are wholly interpolated.

P. 12, l. 206. There is something amiss with this line; it hardly makes sense as it stands. In l. 35 the phrase is "to hold to baie;" in l. 46 it is "to hold at a baye." So here, if one may be permitted to change "&" into "at," we have,

to haue bruttenet þat bor · at þe abaie seþþen,

i.e. "to have afterwards destroyed the boar, (when held) at bay."

P. 14, l. 251. In the original, William very properly grounds his refusal on the fact that he does not know who the emperor is, or what he wants to do.

" non ferai, sir, et por coi,  
car je ne sai que vos voles,  
qui vos estes, ne que queres ;  
ne se voles riens, se bien non,  
ja ne me face Dix pardon ! "

261. "Read *wend*," and again elsewhere, in l. 5185. This elision of a final *d* in such words as *hond*, *lond*, *sheld*, *held*, &c. is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation."—M. We find *wend* in l. 229.

267—272. Hereabouts the translator condenses his original with great judgment. The "churl's" grumbling, as there given, is not very interesting.

P. 15, ll. 293—295. The French merely says,

" en ceste forest le trouvai,  
asses pres dont nous somes ore."—

The man who could turn this prosaic statement into

"how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,  
*clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges soue,*  
*vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge*"—

had certainly both poetic power and a lively imagination. Indeed, the translation is very superior to the original, as far as I have compared the two. It should be observed that, immediately after writing the two lines printed above in italics, the translator boldly omits about 16 lines of the cowherd's rather prosy story.

P. 16, l. 325. Mr Morris explains *fordedes* by making it equivalent to

*fayre dedes*, kind actions. That this is incorrect appears from the fourth line on fol. 81 (l. 5182),

“of al þe faire fordede · þat he hade for hem wrouȝt.”

The expression “*fair fair deed*” would be unmeaning tautology. See the glossary.

329—343. The translator here follows the original pretty closely, giving, however, rather the sense than the exact words.

P. 17, l. 347. “This is not an error of the scribe, as at first supposed, but formed by the same analogy, as *alizt* for *alighted*, *comfort* for *comforted*, *gerde* for *girded*, &c. It occurs often in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible.”—M. The very word *comaund* (= commanded) occurs in ll. 2557 and 2564 of the alliterative Romance on the Destruction of Troy.

P. 17, l. 360—365. Compare the original text—

“Salues moi Huet le nain,  
et Hugenet et Aubelot,  
et Martinet le fil Hengot,  
et Akarin et Crestien,  
et Thumassin le fil Paien,  
et tos mes autres compaignons;” &c.

In l. 362, Sir F. Madden printed *dcery*, but he says, “This word is doubtful in the MS. and may either be read *owery* (as printed by Harts-horne) or *dwerth*. It seems to be intended to represent the F. *dru*, *drue*, B. Bret. *drew*, *drud*, signifying a loved friend or companion. But if the final letter be supposed to take the place of *g*, it may then mean dwarf, from S. *dverg*.”

The excellent suggestion at the end of this notice of the word is now seen to be perfectly right; for *dwerth* (dwarf) is simply the translation of *le nain*, Lat. *nanus*; and just as *dwerþ* is written for *dverg*, so our author continually writes *þurþ* for *þurȝ* = through.

For *kimesman* in l. 365, I should propose to read *Thomasin* or *Thomasyn*. It would improve the alliteration, of which there is none in the line as it stands.

P. 18, l. 379. She would have slain herself by *refusing food*, according to the French text.

“jamais sa bouche ne mangast,  
se cil ne la reconfortast.”

388, 389. These “boars and bears, many horse loads, harts and hinds, and many other beasts” have all grown out of four boars only, like Falstaff’s “men in buckram.” The French merely says,

de iiij senglers quorent pris.

403. *held* = *eld*, age. Compare

et meisme de tel aage  
com Guillâmes pooit bien estre.

P. 19, l. 423. The translator here misses a very curious statement, not perhaps understanding the allusion. Nor do I.

de riches dras batus a or,  
com sil fust fix roi Alphinor,

qui sire et rois est de hongrie,  
 qui si est de tos biens plentive ;  
 ne adouques a icel tans  
 navoit mie plus de . iiii . ans  
 et norri puis . vii . ans tos plains.

Here we not only learn, once more, that William was about 11 years old when arriving at the emperor's court (see p. 2, l. 35, and p. 15, l. 296), but we are told that the child was found in rich apparel adorned with beaten gold, *as if he had been son to the king Alphinor, who is lord and king of Hungary*, (and) who is so abundantly possessed of wealth.

429—432. The French text has

“ li damoisiax,” fait leemperere,  
 “ je cuit, par le baron saint Pere,  
 quil est de mult tres haute gens ;  
 car mult par est et biax, et gens,” &c.

P. 23, l. 433. The French text continues thus:—

et souspirer et baaillier,  
 et refroidier et reschaufer,  
 muer color et tressuer,  
 et trambler tot en itel guise,  
 comme se fievre mestoit prise, &c.

P. 24, l. 455. Compare

dont ai je tort qui en blasmoie  
 mon cuer.

460. The French text throws no light on the true reading. The *am* in the MS. is indistinct. Sir F. Madden suggested “ *nad þei ben, i may bonte bale,*” &c., which I have adopted, with the slight change of *may* into *mizt*.

470. We should have expected to find *brouner* rather than *brown*.

472. There seems something wrong here. I had proposed to read —“ *to the harde asente,*” i. e. assent to the infliction. Sir F. Madden considers that the introduction of *to* offends the ear, and proposes, but with diffidence, “ *the hardere asente,*” i. e. assent with difficulty. The French does not help one, being much more concise in this passage.

P. 25. After l. 500 we should expect some such line as,

“ So heried ouer al · and so hey; holden.”

P. 28, l. 576. The catchwords are written, as usual, at the bottom of the last page of each quire.

584. The MS. has “ *he kosin ful nere,*” instead of “ *here kosin.*” This is due to the omission of the small flourish which is used as a contraction for *er*. In the same way we find “ *þide*” instead of “ *þidere*” in l. 47, and elsewhere.

592. For *leliest*, Sir F. Madden has *Jeuest*. The two words would be exceedingly alike, for the scribe makes his *l*'s so short that they are very little longer than the first stroke of a *u*. But over the second downstroke (which is a *little* shorter than the first) a long fine stroke can be detected,



which is his method of dotting an *i*. *Leuest* means *most dearly*, and *leliest* is *most leally*, so that the sense is much the same.

600. The MS. has l. 601 before 600, but the emendation so obviously assists the sense, that it hardly requires apology.

P. 29, l. 611. For this line and the preceding the MS. has—

“& after þan ix. times · hit takeþ me a-daye,  
& ten times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse.”

I have taken the considerable liberty of changing the places of *nine* and *ten*, because the alliteration of *both* lines is thereby improved. The *ten* is as well suited to the chief-letter in *takeþ*, as *nine* is to the initials of *niȝt* and *nouȝt*. I do not suppose that any one will quarrel with the alteration of the *sense*. When we consider that these numbers were selected for *no other reason* than to *secure alliteration* it must be right to place them where they best fulfil that object.

625. For “cosynes” read “cosyne.”—M. This suggestion is supported by ll. 594 and 602. But there is no harm in retaining *cosynes*, as it is used to denote a female cousin, as in *Lancelot of the Laik*, ll. 1185, 1270, 2287, and 2802.

P. 30, l. 645. I suspect that “answeres” ought to have been “answered.” Cf. note to l. 1076.

649. The MS. has merely “after þrowe,” which makes the line halt.

P. 31, l. 692. The MS. having here the letters “ihū” it is difficult to write the word otherwise than “ihesu.” Otherwise the *h* is a corruption of the Greek Η or ε, so that “iesu” would be a truer form. On the contraction iūc for iHOYC, out of which I.H.S. has been made (the mark of contraction being at the same time turned into a small cross), see Hone’s *Ancient Mysteries Described*, p. 282.

698. The *c* and *t* being much alike, *Metynt* may be meant for *Metync*, but *Metynq* is better spelling; see l. 706.

P. 32, ll. 712, 713. The construction is—“For there is no lord in any land, enjoying life—no emperor nor renowned king known to be so rich—that he is not of sufficiently low birth to wed that seemly lady.”

723. The word *houes* nowhere occurs again in the poem, the usual form being *bihoues*. The alliteration also points out that the initial *bi* is really required.

P. 33, l. 753. “Read, tok him *til* a sete.”—M. But I am not sure that this ingenious emendation is altogether required; *til* may be here, as elsewhere, another spelling of *tit* = soon, quickly.

756. Here “For þat” seems to mean “for *whom*.” See l. 769.

771. The MS. seems to have “chamber” in 685 and here; but it is probably a mere slip for “chaūber,” the spelling adopted in ll. 755 and 769.

P. 34, l. 788. “This is not so much an error as an abbreviation before an infinitive, which has occurred to me often in other MSS. It should properly be ‘for to slake.’ Bryant places this, very unnecessarily, among the list of provincialisms.”—M. *Forto* is very common in this MS. See l. 783 just above. Another form is *forte*, which occurs in *Piers Plowman*, Text A. vii. 277.

793. Sir F. Madden prints "as a wo werþ weizh," with a reference to the common phrase "wo worth." The MS. may also be read "wo wery" = wo-weary, weary with wo. The word "worþ" is spelt elsewhere in the MS. with an *o*.

799. *wher*, whether.

804. *Go we* is a form of invitation. Cf. "gowe dyne, gowe" in *Piers Plowman*; A. *prol.* 105. It occurs again in l. 1184.

P. 35, l. 824. "to glade with ueh gome," i. e. to gladden each man with. See note to l. 1825.

843. *þa* is put for *þat* frequently in the present poem. See ll. 765 and 903.

P. 36, l. 862. *whiles*, wiles. So also we find *where* for *were*.

P. 37, l. 883. "So completely was that word wound in to his heart." But this is rather a forced phrase, and it would have been quite as well if the scribe had written—

so witerly was þat wizh · wounded to herte,

i. e. so completely was that man wounded to the heart.

909. Repeated, nearly, from l. 433.

P. 38, l. 920. Read "ther *ne* schal wizth."—M. I copy "no wizth" from l. 786.

P. 39, l. 964. *salerne*. "The city of *Salerno* was famous from very early times for its university and school of medicine, which was protected and flourished most under the Norman princes."—*English Cyclopædia*. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, ed. Perry, l. 4312.

P. 41, l. 1021. "There is some error here, apparently, in the MS."—M. If *hete* is to stand, it may mean to *bid*, from the A.S. *hátan*, to bid, promise. Then the line means—"and to bid her then to play as she pleased in the meanwhile." *Here* = her. Cf. l. 1716.

1028. For *antresse* we should expect to find "aunteres."

P. 42, l. 1069. "*Ouer gart gret ost*. *Gart* appears here to be an error of the scribe, and should be omitted. *Ouer-gret* is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116."—M.

1075. *tyding* seems to be the plural form. See l. 1134, and note to l. 4877.

1076. Read "a-greued."—M. It is worth noting that *s* is not unfrequently written for *d*. In "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," l. 6, *patres* is written for *patred*.

P. 43, l. 1093. So, too, *e* is often written for *o*; we should expect to find *onys* in this line, for in alliterative lines the vowels used as rime-letters are generally *different* ones. *O* is written for *e* in l. 818.

P. 44, l. 1127. In a strong light, the word "þider" can be traced as having occupied the apparently blank space. It was probably erased as having been repeated by mistake. Hence, there is no word to be supplied here.

P. 45, l. 1163. "þe first batayle" means "the first *battalion* or company." Cf. l. 1152.

P. 46, l. 1190. *fresly* = *fersly*, fiercely. This shifting of the letter *r*

may have been intentional. See "The Romans of Partenay;" ed. Skeat, 1866; preface, p. xvi. Cf. note to l. 80.

1196. "Read 'grettest;' and also in l. 1365. The is similarly elided from 'menschfullest,' in l. 1435."—M.

1211. The word *so* is required for the alliteration, and it improves the sense. *What so* = howsoever, and occurs elsewhere.

P. 47, l. 1222. "For *te* read *to*."—M. But perhaps *te* may stand. See notes to l. 788 and 1093.

1226. In the "Romans of Partenay," *for* is miswritten for *fro* over and over again. See note to l. 1190.

P. 48, l. 1280. The initial *vn-* belongs to *both* words, i. e. *unwounded* or *untaken*.

P. 49, l. 1299. *dede clepe*, caused to be summoned. Cf. *dede fecche* in l. 1303.

1307. We must read *hem*, not *he*. The scribe probably forgot to make the stroke over the *e*.

P. 50, ll. 1323-4. I have ventured to transpose these lines, as they are otherwise devoid of sense. The MS. has—

"wiþ alle worchipe & wele so was he sone  
to burye him as out to be swiche a burne nobul;"

but it is clear that "so was he sone" (= so was he soon buried) must end the sentence.

1350. The sense seems to require the insertion of *be* or *ben*—"nadde *be þe* socour of o seg," &c. Cf. l. 1358.

P. 51, l. 1358. *forsake*, deny. Cf. Germ. *versagen*.

P. 52, l. 1401. The second *he* may be miswritten for *hire* or *here*, i. e. her. Read "to come, here granted." Cf. note to l. 584.

1415. *but thei thre one*, except they three only.

P. 53, l. 1425. "And who, by descent, was then keeper of Constantinople." But the relative is omitted, probably by an intentional idiom.

It may be observed here, that it appears by the sequel that the Emperor of Greece was the father of the Queen of Palermo, and William's grandfather. Also, the emperor's son was called Partendo or Partenedon, and was, of course, William's uncle.

1427. The ending *-and* in *grethand* is doubtless a mere mistake, due to the word *glimerand* just before.

P. 54, l. 1478. *Diting* is simply miswritten for *tiding*. Such an inversion of letters is occasionally found; thus, in the Romance of Partenay, *aduertise* is written for *aduersite* (adversity) more than once.

1490. *mened of*, bemoaned by; so in ll. 1491, 1492, we find *biloued* *wiþ* meaning *beloved by*.

P. 55, l. 1504. We have had this line before. See l. 246.

1516. *her seche sese miȝt*, ere she might cease.

P. 57, l. 1576. This line has occurred before. See l. 1033.

P. 58, l. 1627. Compare,

"In middes on a mountayne · at midmorwe tyde  
Was piht vp a pailon · a proud for þe nones,

And ten þousend of tentes · I-tilled besydes," &c.

*Piers Plowman*, Text A. ii. 42.

"Tentes and paulions streght and pight freshly."

*Romans of Partenay*, 869.

P. 59, l. 1638. *hese*, ease. Cf. *her*, ere, l. 1516; and *hende*, end, l. 1369.

1640. *Mornyng out mesure*, mourning without measure.

1644. The line would sound better, if *born* and *was* were to change places, as in—

"*Mai banne þat he born was · to bodi or to soule.*"

*Piers Plowman*, A. i. 60.

1654. Both alliteration and sense require some such word as *wist*, which I have inserted.

1662. *tent*, intent, purpose, design. See *Tent* in Halliwell's Dictionary.

1664. *profites loue*. This might seem to mean "for love of the prophet." But this would be quite out of place, and, in fact, the line expresses the same idea as l. 3251 does.

P. 60, l. 1676. The negative prefix in *vnperceyued* affects all the words following it in the same line. Cf. note to l. 1280.

1686. For this story of dressing up in bears' skins, see S. Baring Gould's *Book of Werewolves*, p. 36. Egillson's explanation of the O.Norse word *berserkr* is, one who wears a *bear's sark*, or a habit made of bear-skin over his armour.

P. 61, l. 1723. This mention of *bear-baiting at a stake* is worth remarking. Cf. *Havelok*, l. 1840.

P. 62, l. 1742. "You appear so furious a bear for a man to look upon."

P. 63, l. 1777. *whiche*. We should have expected to find *hou* used here.

1793. This is William's *second* experience of a "dern den" under a "holw hok." See ll. 17, 295.

P. 64, l. 1825. *to kepe wiþ our liues*, to preserve our lives with. Compare—

"Oþer catell, oþer cloþ · to coveren wiþ our bones,"

(i. e. or wealth, or cloth to cover our bones with); *Pierce the Ploughmans Crede*, l. 116.

P. 67, l. 1944. *lengþ* may also be read *lengey*. But the true reading is probably *lengþe*, i. e. lengthen, as in l. 1040. Cf. l. 2345.

P. 68, l. 1957. It is not uncommon in MSS. to find the word *pope* erased or struck out. See *The Romans of Partenay*, p. xviii.

P. 69, l. 1983. For *at sent* Sir F. Madden would read *a-sente*, assented. But I think the MS. reading may stand; *at sent* = at assent, i. e. that she was an assenting party. For *sent* = assent, see Halliwell. See also l. 3017.

P. 71, l. 2073. *treie and tene*. "This expression is very ancient, and may be found in *Cædmon*."—M. See *Cædmon*; ed. Thorpe, p. 137, l. 15.

P. 73, l. 2127. *do crie*, cause to be proclaimed. So in l. 2145, *let he sende* = he caused to be sent. See l. 2174.

P. 76, l. 2236. *for-walked*, tired out with waking or watching, fatigued for want of sleep.

"It should properly be *for-waked* [as in l. 790], but this variation between *waked* and *walked* is to be met with in other MSS."—M. Compare

"And sone the knyght he be the brydill nom,  
Saying, "*Awalk ! It is no tyme to slep.*"

*Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1048.

P. 77, l. 2254. Perhaps *bi* should be *be*; then *þat him bi giue schold* = that should be given him.

P. 82, l. 2432. *helles*. "Read *delles*."—M. But *helles* may stand, as being the plural of *hel*, a hill; see ll. 2233, 2318.

P. 83, l. 2463. I think the rhythm, alliteration, and sense would all be improved by inserting *softeliche*:

And as sone as he hade *softeliche* sette it adowne.

2471. Perhaps we should read *blemched*, i. e. blemished.

P. 84, l. 2501. *þat he bar*, that which he bare.

P. 85, l. 2554. *semes*. Printed *serues* in Sir F. Madden's edition, with the note:—"This word is doubtful, and looks in the MS. more like *scines*." But the word is *semes*, in which the first stroke of the *m* is not quite joined on to the second. There is no stroke above it to show that it is an *i*; nor do I read the word as *selues*. *Semes* means *horse-loads*.

P. 87, l. 2626. Here is a direct allusion to the part of the story which is lost in our English MS. It will be found in the French text, on p. 2.

P. 89, l. 2680. *lengþe*. Or it may be read *lengye*, which would be perhaps better in this place. *Lengye* (the infinitive mood, like *wonye* in l. 3312) is to  *dwell, remain*; *lengþe* is to *lengthen*.

P. 90, l. 2707. *seee*. Printed *seie* in Sir F. Madden's edition; but a close examination of the MS. shews *seee* to be the word. The sense is—"Now *cease* we to talk about the besiegers;" of which "Now *say* we" is the exact contrary.

P. 91, l. 2731. *greyt*. This may be also read *greþt*; the usual form is *greyþed*. Cf. the form *a-greþed* in l. 52.

P. 94, l. 2845. This "park" is the orchard or menagerie already mentioned at p. 3, l. 65.

2864. *drey*. This may also be read *dreþ*, as printed by Sir F. Madden. I have printed *drey*, as coming closer to the form *dreizh*, in l. 2796.

P. 95, l. 2870. The sense and alliteration both require the word *douȝter* to be inserted; see l. 2875.

2890. *bilafst*, remained or stayed behind, whilst the hart fought the beasts.

P. 96, l. 2900. Sir F. Madden prints "*þat he gart*," &c.; but the MS. has *gate*. *Gart* or *garte* makes better sense, and is perhaps right. If so, the wrong spelling *gate* was copied from l. 2895.

P. 97, l. 2964. *þe kinges sone*, i. e. to the king's son.

P. 98, l. 2998. So also we have *hire þouzt* in l. 2873, and *here þouzt* four lines below it.

P. 99, l. 3021. *busked hem*, i. e. *þei* busked hem. This omission of the nominative is frequent, and no doubt intentional.

P. 102, l. 3105. "Probably for *er than an erm*."—M. *Er than* would mean *ere then*, or *sooner then*, with reference to the *er* following. I almost think the first of the three *er*'s is best omitted. That *ar* is miswritten for *an*, there can be no doubt.

3116. Insert the metrical dot after *ben*. The alliteration follows a rule not unusual in old English, that each half-line is alliterative within itself. Thus :—

It wéneþ þat wé ben · riȝt swíche as it-séluē.

P. 105, l. 3203. Something seems wrong here. If *ne* be inserted, and *fair* changed into *fairre* (= more fair, as in l. 4437) it would be clearer. Perhaps, then, we should read—

alle men vpon mold · ne miȝt sen a fairre coupel, &c.

3220. "Something seems wanting to complete the sense, such as *neuer wol i haue*."—M. That is, we should read—

oþer armes al my lif atteli · neuer wol i haue—

where *atteli* is the infinitive mood. If the line is to stand unaltered, *atteli* must be put for *attelle i*; i. e. other arms all my life I design never (to) have. Then the alliteration would fall upon the *vowels*, as thus :—

oþer armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue.

3221. It is difficult to tell whether or not the spelling *carfli* was intentional. *Carfly* appears also in *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 5708; and *kerse* is the usual old spelling of *eress*.

P. 106, l. 3260. The word *to* seems to be required, and the line then means, "for it had advanced to night, by that time." *To fare forth* is to proceed, advance, go onward, go forth; see ll. 2730, 4450. Cf. also l. 3526.

P. 107, l. 3282. For *knizt kud*, a better reading would be *kud knizt*. The sense is the same both ways.

3290. For *is*, Sir F. Madden prints *his*. Both spellings of the word occur throughout the poem. The MS. has *is* in this place.

P. 108, l. 3315. One of the *now*'s is redundant.

P. 110, l. 3374. "A word seems requisite to eke out the line. Perhaps we might read—'Kniztes with sire William *thanne* kauzt god hert.'"—M. Whilst adopting this suggestion, I have ventured slightly to shift the inserted word. It now occurs to me, however, that the real error is in *kauzt*. This, being *plural*, should be *kauzten* or *kauzê*, and then the flow of the verse would be preserved without any insertion of an extra word at all.

P. 111, l. 3399. Perhaps it should be, "ac spacy *as* þe spaynoles," &c.

3404. *lorlde*. "Read *lorde*, and in the following line *lord*. The same singular mistake (if it be one) occurs in p. 142, l. 24 [l. 3955 of the present edition] for *lordschip*."—M.

P. 112, l. 3450. "The illuminator has neglected to supply the capital letter here."—M. The little *w* was made, as usual, by the scribe for his guidance. Three times the illuminator has mistaken his instructions, and made a large M instead of a W; see ll. 4660, 4880, 4923.

P. 113, l. 3477. The word omitted is no doubt *knizt*, for this word is considered as being alliterative to *cris*t; see l. 3671.

P. 114, l. 3509. The werwolf leapt into the sea, and crossed the Straits of Messina to the opposite shore. This part of the story gives us some idea of what the missing part of the English translation was like. See p. 4.

P. 115, l. 3530. The MS. may be read either *sthoure*, or *schoure* (as in Sir F. Madden's edition). *Sthoure* is, I think, the word meant; for see l. 3536. The scribe uses *th* as equivalent to the sound of *t* very frequently; see *mizthi*, *mizth* in ll. 3549, 3557 just below, and *wizthli* in l. 3581.

3533. We should perhaps read, " & conquered."

P. 117, l. 3597. *lat me worþ*, let me be, let me alone.

So in *Piers Plowman*, ed. Wright, p. 12.

For-thi I counseille al the commune

*To late the cat worthe.*

P. 118, l. 3639. There is a sort of gap in the sense which seems to point to the loss of some such line as

Meyntened so his men · þat manly, þei sone.

3646. "The final words of this and the two preceding lines are partly erased, but legible. The later hand has endeavoured to restore them."—M.

P. 119, l. 3665. *for he*, sc. the king of Spain's son. The change of the subject is rather a rapid one.

P. 120, l. 3695. "A verb is here wanting to complete the sense."—M. It is difficult to guess the missing word; perhaps the sense may be bettered by reading,

but I mizt nouzt *awei þer*-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe.

3705. *þe saules*. Read "there saules."—M. An almost better reading would be "*here saules*," but is not so like what the scribe has given us.

P. 121, l. 3737. *man wod*. Perhaps an error for *wod man*.

P. 122, l. 3778. *tom*, opportunity. Not a very common word. It occurs, however, in *Piers Plowman*, A. ii. 160.

I have no *tom* to telle · þe tayl þat hem folweþ.

P. 123, l. 3789. *Iced*. This, if pronounced *issed*, seems to be equivalent to the Scottish *yschit*, issued, a not uncommon word in Barbour's *Brus*.

3799. The scribe's spelling of *þurh* was clearly influenced by his knowledge that he was about to write the word *þour* very soon.

3803. & *I mowe come bi*, if I can get hold of.

P. 124, l. 3825. The word *þat* should be omitted, but it is in the MS.

3835. In *hounde*, there is a (superfluous) stroke over the *n*.

P. 125, l. 3883. *Ferde* is the reading in the parallel line, 3737.

3884. The question has been raised whether in the phrase in Judges ix. 53—"all to-brake his skull"—we ought to join the *to* to the word *all* or to the verb *brake*. It seems certain that, originally, the *to* was a part of the verb, and separate from *all*, and the present line is an excellent evidence of this. It seems equally certain that, in the sixteenth century, the prefix *to* was not very well understood, and the result was that *all-to* was considered as a short way of writing *altogether*. See "The Bible Wordbook," by J. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright. Those who would consider the *to* as belonging to *al*, and who consider *alto* as properly only *one* word, must go on to explain what is meant by *alfor*, *albi*, and *ala*; for we find in this very poem the prefixes *for-*, *bi-*, and *a-* also preceded by the word *al*. See ll. 790, 793, 661, 872.

P. 127, l. 3925. The first "&" seems redundant.

P. 130, l. 4042. & þouȝt, i. e. and *he* thought, an example of the omission of the pronoun, a license in which the author indulges rather freely.

4055. *dared*, became motionless as if stupefied. The word occurs in Chaucer.

P. 131, l. 4061. *any-skines*, written *any skines* in the MS. I have preserved this curious spelling, because I have observed it elsewhere, viz., in one of the Trinity MSS. of Piers Plowman. See the foot-note to P. Pl. A. ii. 26, in my edition, and also the foot-note to Passus x. 2. In the latter place, *foure skenis*, *foure skynnes* are various readings for *foure kumme*. In fact, *any skines* is only another way of writing *anys kines*. "Such forms as *alleskymnes* (all kinds of), *noskymnes* (no kind of), are instances of the genitives *alles* (of all), and *nones* (of none)." Morris: *Specimens of Early English*, p. xxiv. I would submit, however, that *alleskymnes*, *noskymnes*, are here wrongly translated; the former means, *of every kind*, the latter, *of no kind*, just as *anyskines* means *of any kind*, and *foure skynnes* means *of four kinds*. The phrase in Piers Plowman, "of foure kumme þinges," means, *of things of four kinds*.

4065. Probably an error for—"þattow *ue* wost." The sense is, "It can't be that you don't know."

P. 132, l. 4104. That *chaunged* is the right reading is rendered probable not only by the recurrence of the word in l. 4500, but by the use of the equivalent word *forschop* in l. 4394.

P. 133, l. 4150. Probably we should read, "ne may *zou* deliuiere."—M. This is a slightly bolder alteration, but a considerable improvement.

P. 137, l. 4278. "*Seþe* in MS. Read 'sothli for sothe.' A pleonasm arising from some blunder of the scribe."—M.

P. 140, l. 4379. "A slight liberty has been taken here, and also [in lines 2323, 3942]. In all three cases the word is written in the MS. 'wirthē' or 'worthe,' but the correction is so obvious, and the difference so small between *e* and *t* [in the MS.], as to warrant the alteration."—M. It may be added that *se* is almost always written like *st*.

P. 141, l. 4418. *his gref forȝaf*, gave away, i. e. laid aside his anger. *Gref* is sometimes anger caused by vexation, as in *Alisaunder*, l. 264.

P. 145, l. 4551. *knew his sone sone*, knew his son soon.



P. 146, l. 4577. "Therefore, O King of heaven, praised should you be, who have lent thee (Alphonse) thy life, to deliver us all." It is rather an awkward sentence; but it is usual, in Early English, to find "hap" put for "hast" in a sentence thus framed.

P. 147, l. 4632. *boute bot*, without a boat? The usual meaning of *boute bot* is "without remedy," but this would be unsuitable here, for we have "boute hurt oþer harm" in the next line. The werwolf had to swim across the Straits of Messina, and doubtless found it a hard task, for he took care to secure a boat for the return journey. See l. 2729. In l. 567 we have "boute mast," and in l. 568 "boute anker or ore." More probably, however, *boute bot* = *boute bod*, without delay, as in l. 149.

P. 148, l. 4662. *ioye*. Sir F. Madden prints "foþe," with a note that we should read "ioye." A close inspection of the MS. shews that the first letter is really an *i*, with a blur to the right of it making it look like a long *s*. The letters *y* and *þ* are made alike, throughout the MS.

4666. *most*, i. e. most glad.

P. 150, l. 4716. *god nder god*, wealth under God; the author uses *under God* or *under heuene* to signify *throughout the world*. The expression is repeated in l. 4732, and in l. 4730 we find "worldes god" for *worldly wealth*.

4717. Read "it *ne schal redili*."—M. After this line occur the lines,

"& þerto heizeli am i holde · for holliche i knowe,  
þat alle þi sawes be soþ · þat þou seidest ere."

These lines are out of place here, and occur in their proper places lower down. The repetition of them, however, teaches us somewhat; for it affords a most certain proof of the unsettled state of orthography. We here find the same scribe, in re-writing the same lines, altering *heizeli* and *holliche* into *heizeliche* and *holli*, so that he considered the endings *-li* and *-liche* as perfectly interchangeable, and it was a mere chance which of the two he adopted. We also find *seidest* altered to *saidest*, shewing the equivalence of the *ei* and *ai* sounds. There is also a difference of reading; for "þi sawes" reappears as "þe sawes." Lastly, the change of "holde" into "hold" shews the uncertainty attending the use by scribes of the final *e*.

4730. *woldest 3erne*, wouldst yearn for, wouldst desire to have.

P. 151, l. 4736. *a mite worþ*. Just below, l. 4754, the phrase used is *a bene worþ*. Compare

Schal no deuel at his dep-day · deren him worþ *a myte*.

*Piers Plowman*, A. viii. 54.

*A straw* for alle swevenes signifiante!

God help me so, I counte hem *nought a bene*.

*Chaucer*, *Troil. & Cress.* bk. v. st. 52.

So we find, in the *Knights Tale*—the mountance of *a tare* (l. 712)—*nought worth a myte* (l. 700); in the *Miller's Tale*—*nat a kers* (l. 568); and in the *Pardoner's Tale*—the mountance of *a corn of whete* (l. 401).

P. 152, l. 4785. *wil our lord wold*, whilst our Lord would (permit us

to live). This is repeated in l. 4802. In the present line, however, *wil our lord willeþ* would be a better reading.

P. 153, ll. 4797, 4798. "All the nobles immediately prayed for them busily, (on the understanding) that they must by all means amend their trespass," viz., by a life of penitence. Such an ellipsis is not uncommon; in l. 4800, however, the introduction of the word *so* before *that* makes the sense clearer.

P. 154, l. 4827. This line is repeated, slightly varied, at l. 4888.

P. 155, l. 4877. *tiding*. Both this and *tidinges* are plural forms. Cf. l. 1075.

P. 159, l. 5004. *bemleem*; so in MS. Read "beþleem," i. e. Bethlehem. 5013. *hurtel*. "This term is used in Chaucer twice, Cant. T. 2618, 4717 [ed. Tyrwhitt], and in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible is far from uncommon. We find it also inserted in the Prompt. Parv. '*Hurtelyne*, as too thynges togedur, *impingo, collido*;' and, at a more recent period, Shakspeare introduces it into his Julius Cæsar, Act ii., sc. 2.

'The noise of battle *hurtled* in the air,

Horses did neigh, and dying men did groau.'

The line in which this word occurs in our Romance is, perhaps, the finest of the whole poem, and not surpassed by the more polished diction of the Dramatist."—M.

I would add that *hurlest* is a reading adopted for *hurtlest* in later editions of Cant. Tales, in l. 4717. But we find in Chaucer the word in another place, "And hertely they *hurtelen* al attones."

*Legend of Good Women*; Cleopatra, l. 59.

It occurs twice in the "Romans of Partenay;" see the glossary. It is used with great effect by Gray—

Iron sleet of arrowy shower

*Hurtles* in the darkened air;—

though he obviously copies here from Shakespeare.

5014. *desgeli*. I let this word stand, though I believe it should be *desgesli*, or, better still, *desgisli*, *disgisli*, or *disgisili*, for which latter form see l. 485. It is best explained by a passage from Chaucer's Persones Tale—"precious clothing is coupable for . . . his straungeness and *disgisines*," &c. Hence *disgisili* means *strangely, extraordinarily, unusually, inordinately*, and is equivalent etymologically to *disguisedly*; but it should be noted that the meaning of the Old French *desguiser* is rather to *alter* than to *conceal* the outward appearance of a thing, whence *desguiser* is often used in the sense of to trim, deck out, or adorn. In the present case, the sense is, that "there was so strange and unusual a din, that all the earth quaked." In l. 485, Meliors laments that she would, if she married beneath her, "be extraordinarily disgraced." We must not connect this with the A. S. *digellice*, secretly, for this would contradict the sense in both places. The din (l. 5014) was not *secret*, but very manifest; and in l. 485 Meliors is expressing that it is open and public and unusual disgrace that she is afraid of, and that if she could keep the matter secret, all would be well.

P. 160. l. 5035. I fail to discover any alliteration in this line.

P. 167. l. 5262. *vnderston* is probably the provincial pronunciation of *vnderstonde*; thus, and only thus, can we explain the curious reading *vndersto* in l. 5533 (which is very clearly written), where the scribe has forgotten to make a stroke over the *o* to denote the *n*. Cf. note to l. 261.

P. 168. l. 5300. For *i knew* we should probably read *i know*. The letters *e* and *o* are often miswritten, one for the other.

5322. *þo*. Read “*þe*.”—M. But I do not feel convinced that the alteration is needed. As it stands, we may translate it—“Readily towards Rome then, by the direct way;” taking *riȝtes gates* as an adverbial expression. There is some difficulty about *riȝtes*; see the glossary.

P. 170. l. 5378. “Anon then in haste he bad (men) cause his steward to come to him,” &c. *Come* sometimes means *become*; this might suggest the sense, that William made the cowherd his steward, but the latter explanation is disposed of by l. 5391.

P. 172. l. 5437. This curious expression, “the emperor’s mother William,” meaning “the emperor William’s mother,” deserves notice. It is the usual old English phrase. Thus, in Chaucer’s *Squyeres Tale*, we find

“Or elles it was the *Grekes hors Sinon*” (C. T. ed. Tyrwhitt; l. 10523).

That is, “or else it was Sinon the Greek’s horse.” In my opinion, it was very injudicious of later editors to substitute *Grekkisch* for *Grekes*; for, with the latter reading, the line can only mean—“or else it was the Greek horse, Sinon,” which makes out Sinon to be *the name of the horse!*

P. 174. l. 5516. “That had had many hard haps theretofore, and (had) been once in great trouble and misfortune.” The repetition of *hadde* is quite right.

P. 175. l. 5536. *ȝif*, give; like *gif* in l. 5539 below. It is not the conjunction *ȝif* (if) in this instance.

## NOTES TO "ALISAUNDER."

[N.B.—In the following notes, by the *Greek* text is meant the text of MS. No. 113 (du supplément) of the Bibliothèque du Roi, a long extract from which is given in "Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque du Roi," tom. xiii. p. 219, edited by M. Berger de Xivrey. By the *French* text is meant the text of MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, quoted in the same volume. By the *Latin* text (unless otherwise specified) is meant the version contained in "Historia Alexandri magni regis Macedonie de preliis," printed, according to the colophon, in A.D. 1490.]

P. 177, l. 9. *one*, i. e. Alexander; though in l. 11 the poet begins to tell first of all about his grandfather Amyntas.

21. *Two sonnes*. Rather *three*, viz. Alexander, Perdicas, and Philip. Perdicas, like Alexander, was put to death by the wives of Eurydice, according to MS. C.C.C. 219.

22. The variations of spelling are due to the fact that the copyist has evidently made alterations of his own in order to make the significations plainer. Thus *alder* (which occurs again in l. 27) is explained by *elder*. It is very fortunate that he has been at the pains to preserve the old spelling. It must be noted that he sometimes places the *old* spelling, sometimes the *modernized* spelling, in the text. Thus, in l. 1132, we find *Dupe* altered to *deepe*, but in l. 1156 he writes *deepe*, with the old spelling *dupe* above it. I have therefore, in all cases, adopted that spelling which seems rightly to belong to the original MS.

P. 178. l. 28. Ll. 4651 and 5226 of the *Werwolf* resemble this one.

30. "Nec multo post alexander, insidiis eurydicis matris appetitus occumbit. Cui amintas, in scelere deprehensæ, propter communes liberos, ignarus eisdem quandoque existiosam fore, pepererat." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 2. See also *Orosius*, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 168.

33. In this line, the cross-stroke to the initial D *is made* in the MS., showing plainly that the letter Ð was used in the original. In other places, the copyist has written the small letter ð *without* the cross-stroke, as in l. 41, and elsewhere, and I have not always noticed this; for the omission of the cross-stroke is very common even in a *thirteenth* century MS.; see Mr Morris's *Genesis and Exodus* (E. E. T. S., 1865). It may be added that the copyist has two ways of making a *d*; one with a long up-stroke, i. e. ð without the cross-stroke, and the other with the up-stroke curled round to the left and brought down again. *Only the former* of

these is used where  $\delta$  is meant. This is a convenient place for observing that there is a *second copy* (inferior and with several omissions) of the first 43 lines, at a later page of the MS., viz. on fol. 16 *b*. The following variations may be noted:—In l. 2, for *thinken*, the second copy has *thynken*, with an *e* over the *y*. No doubt the original had *thenken* (the right spelling, see *Werwolf*, l. 711), and it was rendered by *thinken* or *thynken*. In l. 3, for *weþer*, another reading is *outher*. In l. 4, for *loose* the second copy has *lose*, which is better; I am convinced that the original could not have had so many *double vowels* as abound in this copy; thus *yee* and *ooþer* in l. 1 should rather have been *ye* and *oþer*. In l. 38, for *her* the second copy has the more usual spelling *hur*.

44. In the *Werwolf*, we find the same method of concluding a paragraph, and nearly in the same words; see ll. 5396, 5466.

47. "Igitur alexander, inter prima initia regni, bellum ab illiriis, pacta mercede et philippo fratre dato obside, redemit. Interiecto quoque tempore, per eundem obsidem cum thebanis gratiam pacis reconciliat. Quæ res philippo maxima incrementa egregiæ indolis dedit. Si quidem thebis triennio obses habitus, prima puericiæ rudimenta in urbe seueritatis antiquæ et in domo epaminondæ summi et philosophi et imperatoris deposuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 2. And see *Orosius*, as above.

P. 180, ll. 87, 88. *hym betides*, *For hee*. The MS. has *hee betides*, for *hym*, with *ee* over *ym* in the latter word. The reading given in the text is the only one that can be grammatically correct.

90. "Primum bellum cum Atheniensibus gessit."—*Orosius*.

102. This date is from *Orosius*. It is right within a few years.

109. *Assyriens*, i. e. *Illyrians*. "Post hos, bello in illiriis (*sic*) translato, multa milia hostium cædit; urbem nobilissimam larissem capit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 2 *b*. So in *Orosius*; and indeed, the *Assyrians* are out of the question. The reader must expect to find the greatest confusion in the proper names; in one of the French copies, for instance, Artaxerxes is called *Arressessers*. In l. 130, we have *Larissa* called the city of the *Assyrians*.

P. 181, ll. 119, 131. In both places, the *e* in *Larissea* or *Larisse* has a slight tag below it. In Latin MSS., this denotes *æ*, and we thus have another slight indication that our author translated from the Latin. Cf. note to l. 255.

124. Over *deraine* is written, as a gloss, the later spelling *deraigne*. One or two quite unimportant variations of this kind I have omitted to mention.

133. "Inde Thessaliam non magis amore victoriae, quam ambitione habendorum equitum Thessalorum, quorum robur ut exercitui suo admisceret, invasit."—*Orosius*, as above.

135. The MS. has *see*, with *swee* or *swa* above it, hardly legible. In l. 299, there is a similar difficult word. Considering *both* passages, the word blundered over is probably *sese*, *sesen*. Cf. *Seseden* in l. 234.

P. 182, ll. 155—170. *Orosius* simply says, "Igitur victis Atheniensibus, subjectisque Thessalis;" and in MS. C.C.C. 219 we merely find, "Quibus

rebus feliciter prouenientibus." That the poet has spun this out into 16 lines seems to me highly probable, and it will therefore be but a vain search to look for an original that may agree with his translation more closely. Just below we have 22 lines, 178—199, which seem to me *evidently* his own, every word of them.

172. *Arisba* or *Erubel*. In his edition of *Orosius*, Havercamp adopts the spelling *Aruba*, the common reading being *Eurueha*; we also find the spellings *Arucha*, *Erybba*, *Arymba*, &c. Compare—"Olimpiadem, neoptolemi regis molossorum filiam, uxorem ducit, conciliante nuptias fratre patrueli auctore uirginis *sarraba* rege molossorum, qui sororem olimpiadis troadam in matrimonio habebat; quæ causa illi exitium (*sic*) malorumque omnium fuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 3.

P. 183, l. 199. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 671.

P. 184, l. 234. *Sededen* begins with a double long *s*. Wherever I have printed *ss*, it is to denote a character resembling a German *sz*.

240. "(Aruba) privatus in exilio consenuit."—*Orosius*.

P. 185, l. 248. *hampred* is doubtless the word wanted. It occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1115, &c.

255. *Comothonhan*. Several MSS. of *Orosius* have "Cū mothonam urbem oppugnaret," &c.; where Cū means *Cum*. Hence the strange word *Comothonhan*, repeated in l. 310; and hence, also, a clear proof that the poet translated from a *Latin* original, as he himself asserts in l. 458.

256. The MS. has "holde menne þere," but the alliteration shows that we must read *bolde*; *holde* belongs to the next line, which see.

254. *grefe*, i. e. vexation, anger; cf. *Werwolf*, 4418.

268. *areblast*. Rather, read *arblast*, which the copyist has turned into *aireblast*, i. e. *air-blast*!

P. 186, l. 284. *merken*. Probably *not* an error for *maken*, as might be thought; for the word occurs again in l. 932. See the Glossary.

291. *flocke*. Possibly an error for *folke*; yet *flocke* makes good sense. *Sonndes* or *soundes* is no doubt put for *soudecs*, messengers.

292. The MS. reading "Gamus" must be a mistake for *Gainus* or *Ganus*; see *Gainus* in the Glossary.

295. *cournales*; see *Werwolf*, l. 2858.

299. The MS. has *seene* or *secue*, with *i* over the *ee*. The right word is perhaps *sesen*, written *sesene*, and read as *seiene* by the copyist.

302. Here and elsewhere *many a* is written "many <sup>a</sup>," with the *a* above the line, as if it did not belong to the phrase; but see *Werwolf*, ll. 3410, 3411. A large portion of the description of this siege of Methone is doubtless of the poet's own invention.

P. 187, l. 329. The outline of the story of these wars is given in *Orosius*.

P. 188, l. 347. *wonde* is no doubt the right word, *wende* being an ignorant gloss upon it, subversive of the sense.

349. MS. has *strane*, or *straue*. Perhaps it means,

"Steeds, stirred from the place, strain under men."

Otherwise, for *strane* read *stronge*, and the sense is,

"Steeds stirred from the place under strong men."

For *men under* = under men, see l. 1188.

362. *spenen* is the right reading, and is put for *spenden*, like *wen* for *wend*, &c.

P. 189, l. 391. The alteration of *Phosus* into *Φosus* is a convincing proof that the copyist took an occasional liberty with the spelling. He could not have had *Φosus* before him in an Old English MS. of the 14th century.

P. 190, l. 416. The copyist has written *stelger*, and marked it as being a word he did not understand. The words may have been run together in the older MS. *Stel ger* is simply "steel gear."

421. Here is another proof that the poet probably followed the Latin of *Orosius*. We find there the phrase—"Philomelo duce"—whence he adopted the form *Philomelo* in l. 364, and did not alter it here. Yet *Orosius* afterwards has—"sequenti prælio inter immensas utriusque populi strages Philomelus occisus est: in cujus locum Phocenses Onomarchum ducem creaverunt."

P. 191, l. 439. *zeme*. The MS. has either "zenn" or "zeme." The latter is right; see l. 365.

445. This line means, "that ever they paused in the strife, (though it had caused them) to die upon the field."

451. *for his grete yie*, in return for his great eye; a curious way of expressing that his vow, mentioned in l. 281, had been fulfilled.

452. Here the more historical part of the story ceases, and the romance properly begins. From this point, also, the poet translates from a different source, as explained in the Preface. Ll. 452—1092 should be compared with the first 722 lines of Mr Stevenson's edition of "The Alliterative Romance of Alexander" (Roxburghe Club, 1849); from MS. Ashmole 44. See also Gower, Conf. Amant. bk. vi.

457. This shews that the poet used more books than one to translate from. His regret that he could not trace the lineage of Nectanabus shews that his probable object in the preceding part of the poem was to trace the lineage of Alexander, and to say something about his father and grandfather.

459. *Nectanabus*; called also *Anectanabus*, *Anee*, or *Natabus*. The story of Nectanabus is utterly rejected by Lambert li Tors. See "Li Romans d'Alexandre," par Lambert li Tors et Alexandre de Bernay; herausgegeben von Heinrich Michelant: Stuttgart, 1846, p. 5.

460. This line occurs, slightly altered, in the *Werwolf*, l. 119.

463. Some such word as *kene* or *kid* must be supplied.

465. *Y-wis* may mean *prudent, knowing* (A.S. *ge-wis*), but as it is elsewhere *always* an adverb in *both* poems, I prefer to think that the sentence is incomplete; and that this line ought to be followed by some such line as—

"For a wel kud clerke · and koynt in his liue."

P. 192, l. 473. *But*, except.

475—483. The Latin is—"non movit militiam, neque preparavit exercitum, sed intravit cubiculum palatii sui; et deprendens conclam

eream plenam aqua pluviali, tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicos incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes."

493. *nine grete nations*. The number nine may have been selected merely for the alliteration. The names of these nations vary greatly in the different copies. The "Augmi" or "Augni" (for our MS. may be read either way, on account of the *m* or *n* being here represented by a horizontal line) may perhaps be the *Aζαροι* of the Greek, or the "Argiri" of the Latin text. By the "Bosorii" the translator would probably mean the men of Bussorah or Bassorah; yet this city was not founded till A.D. 636. It represents the *Βόσποροι* of the Greek text, and possibly answers to the "Rosphariens" of the French text (MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517). The "Agiofagi"—("Agiophii" in the Latin text)—are the "Agriophagi" mentioned in the Latin MS. No. 8518 of the Bibl. du Roi :

"Another folk woneth in the west half,  
That eteth never kow no kalf,  
Bote of panteris and lyouns,  
And that they nymeth as venesons.  
Othir flesch, no othir fyseh,  
No othir bred, heo no haveth, y-wis.  
Feorne men, and othir therby,  
Clepeth heom *Agofagy*."

*Weber's Metrical Romances*, v. i. p. 261.

P. 193, l. 515. The Christian sentiment in this line and in l. 523, of ascribing strength to God only, is the poet's own.

I here add, by way of illustration, the speech of Nectanabus as given in the various texts.

Σὺ μὲν, καλῶς καὶ ἐπιεικῶς ἦν ἐπιστεύθης φρουρὰν φυλάττων, καὶ μὴ ταῦτα λέγε. Δειλῶς γὰρ καὶ οὐ στρατιωτικῶς ἐφθέγξω. Οὐ γὰρ ἐν ὄχλῳ ἡ δύναμις, ἀλλ' ἐν προθυμίᾳ ὁ πόλεμος. Καὶ γὰρ εἷς λέων πολλὰς ἐλάφους ἐχειρώσατο. Καὶ εἷς λύκος πολλὰς ἀγέλας ποιμνίων ἐσκύλευσεν. "Ὡστε οὖν σὺ πορευθῆς ἅμα τοῖς ἐν ὑποταγῇ σοι στρατιώταις τὴν ἰδίαν παράταξιν φύλαττε· λόγῳ γὰρ ἐνὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἀναριθμητὸν πλῆθος πελάγει ἐπικαλύψω.—MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 113 (suppl.); quoted in Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque du Roi; tom. xiii. p. 223.

"Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene observa; sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Virtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi, sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?"—*Historia Alexandri*; edition of 1490, page 1.

"Va-t-en à la garde que je t'ai commandee, et veille curieusement, et pense de bien garder ta reccomandise. Car tu n'a pas parle comme prince de chevalerie, mais comme homme paoureux. Car il n'affiert pas à gouverneur de peuple qu'il s'espouvente pour grant quantite de gent; car victoire ne gist pas en multitude de gent, mais en vigueur et force de courage. N'as tu pas veu par plusieurs fois que ung [lyon?] meit à la



fuite grant quantite de serfz [cerfz ?].<sup>1</sup> Aussi se peut poy contretenir la grant multitude contre les vigoureux.”—*MS. Bibl. du Roi*; quoted in the above vol., p. 287. See also *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson; p. 4, ll. 97—110.

P. 194, l. 532. *Flecte* certainly means *to float* here; yet the Latin has “videbat qualiter egiptii sternebantur inpetu classium Barbarorum.” Out of this the translator has made this curious passage about the “god of Barbre,” the origin of which is to be traced to a misunderstanding of the Greek text, which says, “he sees the gods of the Egyptians steering the enemies’ boats, and the armies of the Barbarians being guided by them.”

545. *white sendal*; “linea vestimenta.”

549. *let trusse*, commanded his men to pack up.

557. *Seraphin*; so spelt in the French text. The Latin has *Serapis*.

P. 195, l. 565. *He shall hve hym againe*. The response of the oracle must be given in the words of the Greek text. It runs thus: ὁ φυχῶν βασιλεὺς ἤξει πάλιν ἐν αἰγύπτῳ, οὐ γηράσκων, ἀλλὰ νεάζων, καὶ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσας ὑποτάξει. Here the word *πέρσας* is ambiguous, and may mean “having destroyed” or “the Persians.” M. Berger de Xivrey draws special attention to this oracle, which he considers as the basis of the whole romance. It was fulfilled, not by the return of the old man Nectanabus, but by the visit to Egypt of his son, the young man Alexander. It is accordingly alluded to again in the passage where Alexander, seeing the great image (mentioned by our author in l. 568), inquires whom it represents. He is told it represents Nectanabus, upon hearing which he falls down and kisses the feet of it. Cf. *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 1135; *Weber’s Metr. Rom.* vol. i. p. 67.

574. Here begins a new paragraph—“Quomodo Anectanabus ascendit palacium ad Olimpiam reginam;” and in Mr Stevenson’s edition is the heading—“Secundus passus Alexandri.”

584. “Aue regina Macedonie! dedignatus ei dicere domina.”

P. 196, l. 594. “Uerbum regale dixisti, quando egiptios nominasti.”

596. The MS. has *worclich*, a mere error for *wortlich*, which is another spelling of *worthlich*; cf. l. 1024.

601. *ludene of pat language*, the speech (or meaning) of that language. “Sum understandis in a stounde · the steven (*voice*) of the briddis,” &c. *Alexander*, ed. Stev. l. 252.

Compare also the passage in Chaucer about Canace understanding the language of birds.

—sche understood wel euery thing

That eny foul may in his *lydne* sayn,

And conthe answer him in his *lydne* again.

*The Squyeres Tale*, Pars Secunda; ll. 88—90.

613. We should rather read, *Too defend þee fro doole*.

616. *Imped*, set; lit. engrafted. “Tabulam ecream et eburneam

<sup>1</sup> The editor has a note—“On reconnaît là les idées provenant de la supériorité si marquée de la chevalerie, au moyen âge, sur les serfs et sur les vilains.” True, no doubt; but *serfz* probably means *stags* in this passage, nevertheless.

*mixtam auro et argento.*" Cf. "Iis ars-table he tok onte sone;" *Weber, Metr. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 17. It was, I suppose, an astrolabe-planisphere.

620. The contents of the circles are wrongly given. They should be (1.) The 12 intelligences—"duodecim intelligentias"—"les xii. intelligences, c'est assavoir les xii. entendemens;" (2.) the signs of the zodiac, called in MS. Ashmole "a dusan of bestes;" and (3.) the courses of the sun and moon.

P. 197, l. 628. *forer*, a box; "une boiste d'ivoire." It contained a species of horoscope, in which were the seven planets, to each of which was assigned a particular kind of stone. Thus in l. 634 we should rather read, "*Seuen stones*," but the poet has written *Foure* for the sake of alliteration, regardless of facts. The seven stones are mentioned in the Latin MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 8518. "*Jovem quippe viseres aëriuo lapide nuncupatum. Solem cristallo, Lunam adamante, Martem dici sub lapide hematite, Mercurium smaragdo. Venus autem saphirina erat; Saturnus in ophite. At vero horoscopus lygdinus erat.*" The Greek text has the same.

656—674. This passage is not in the Greek, Latin, or French texts, and was inserted by the translator from another source (see note to l. 837), to account for Philip's ill-will against Olympias. The interpolation is needless, as a dream is contrived by Nectanabus expressly for Philip's information soon afterwards; see ll. 807—874. The present passage is also omitted in MS. Ashmole 44.

P. 199, l. 694. "*Neque iuvenis neque senex, et barbam canis habens ornatam. Unde si placet, esto illi parata,*" &c. The "silver horns," however, are essential, as being the chief characteristic of the god Ammon.

"With tachid in his for-toppe · *twa tufe hornes.*"

*Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 319.

698. *glisying* is another form of *glisiande*, glistening.

700. Supply the word *þee*. *Nye*, to draw nigh, occurs in ll. 739, 817; and *nye þee* in l. 764.

702. "*Si hec videro, non vt prophetam nec diuinum, sed vt deum ipsum adorabo.*"

710-744. This passage is much amplified. It is much shorter in the Ashmole MS., and the Latin merely has—"euellit herbas, terensque eas et succos illarum tulit, et fecit incantationes per diabolica figmenta; vt in eadem nocte Olimpia deum Hannon concumbentem secum videret, dicentemque ei post concubitum, mulier, concepisti defensorem tuum."

P. 200, l. 726. *riue*. The MS. has *riue*, with *f* over the *u*, rightly explaining *riue* by the modern word *rife*.

738. *Or-trowed*, lit. over-trowed, and hence, suspected, imagined. Compare *ouer-trowe* in the Glossary.

756. *No nooper*, none other, nothing else. So also *þi narmes* for *þin armes* (*Werwolf*, l. 666).

P. 201, l. 760. *Too waite at a window*, to watch at a window. A favourite phrase of our author's. See *Werwolf*, ll. 779, 2982, 3030, 3300.

764. The line would run as well again if *þee nye* were altered to *nye*

*pee*. Compare—"Nam ille deus in figura draconis ad te veniet; et exinde humanam formam accipiens; et mea similitudine apparebit."

770. "Si veritatem probare valebis, te quasi patrem pueri habebō." But this is sometimes curiously altered, as in the following:

"Then salle I cherische the with chere · as thou *my child* were,  
Loute the lovely aud love · alle my lyfe days."

*Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 368.

774, 775. These two fine lines certainly surpass the bald statement—"circa autem primam vigiliam noctis."

779. *slaked on wightes*, fell relaxingly upon men. *Wightes*, not *nights*, is the right reading. Compare—

"Qwen it was metyn to the merke · that *menn* ware taryst,<sup>1</sup>  
And folke was on thair firste slepe · and it was furth evyne."

*Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 374.

781. *a dragones drem*, a dragon's droning. *Drem* or *dream* is sometimes a loud, droning sound. The Latin has—"et sibilando contra cubiculum Olympic cepit transuolare." The French has "ala soufflant entour le lit." Cf. ll. 982, 985.

782. *makes his tidene*, i. e. talks softly. Compare *ludene* above, l. 601.

P. 202, l. 802. *Deemes*, i. e. *will deem*. Philip had been from home for some time; she wonders what he will say when he returns.

808. "Euellens herbas, tritauravit eas et tulit succum illarum, apprehendensque auem marinam, cepit super eam incantare, illam de succo herbarum liniens."

813. Compare—

"And [with ?] the wose of the wede · hire wengis anoyntes."

*Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 413.

817. The phrase *nied þe night* occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 770.

P. 203, l. 824. The Latin has "deus *Hamon*;" and "Amon" is here mentioned in MS. Ashmole.

826. The word *deede* was miswritten *deene* owing to confusion with *deerne*. Compare—

"pat *deede derne* · do no mon scholde."

*Piers Plowman*, ed. Skeat, A. x. 199.

In the Latin follows—"quod videret os uulue consuere et annulo aureo consignare et in ipso annulo erat lapis vbi erat sculptum caput leonis et currus solis et gladius peracutus."

837. *nyed*, approached (a favourite word with our author), is almost certainly the word required here. The following passage is worth notice here.

"Philippe aussi long temps apres ses nopces songea quil seelloit le ventre de sa femme dung grant seel auquel estoit graue lymaige dung lyon; par lequel songe, comme plusieurs eussent expose a phellippe quil

<sup>1</sup> Read "ta ryst," i. e. to rest.

se donnast garde de sa femme, Aristander le deuin affermoit quelle auoit chargie denfant. Car on ne seelle point les choses vuydes; et que elle se deliueroit dung enfant, plain de couraige et ayant nature de lyon. ¶ Deuant ce on auoit ven vng dragon couchant empres olympie qui lors dormit, la quelle chose Refroida tresfort Phelippe enuers elle." MS. Douce 318, chap. iii. The same MS. informs us further that Philip avoided Olympias, because he feared magic or poison; that he sent to Delphos, and was told to sacrifice to the god "Amon," and that he would lose an eye as a punishment for having beheld Amon with her; all which is related by Plutarch. But Eratosthenes says, his mother only told Alexander the secret of his birth on his setting out on his expedition. A similar story is told of the mother of Scipio Africanus. Plutarch explains the dragon story by saying that Olympias belonged to a tribe that religiously cherished serpents of great size. Justin says, Olympias dreamt of having conceived a serpent. "Vincent lystorial" (i. e. Vincent of Beauvais, in his "Speculum Historiale") ascribes the engendrure of Alexander to Neptanabus, but this is flat against Holy Scripture, since in the book of Maccabees [bk. 1, chap. i. v. 1] Alexander is expressly called the "son of Philip." All this, and more, is to be found in the above-mentioned MS., chap. iii.

853. *þe sonne course of þe sell*, the course of the sun upon the seal. MS. Ashmole has "the course one the sonne."

P. 204, l. 855. *some rist*, rising of the sun, the far East; "ad orientem, vnde sol egreditur."

860. The MS. has *boldes*, but we must read *hokles*; cf. note to l. 256.

873. *meting*, dream. See the Glossary.

875. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Qualiter Anectanabus in figura draconis antecedebat Philippum in prelio deuincendo et hostes."

879. *lasches*, lashes, i. e. heavy strokes. Cf. the phrase "to deal dints;" *Werwolf*, 3440.

883. *Deraide*, acted madly or terribly. It is the past tense, not the past participle, but we ought perhaps to supply *hym* after it.

P. 205, l. 895. Here *loren* is correctly glossed by *lorne*, i. e. lost.

900-953. The whole of this passage is an interpolation from another source, and belongs rather to history than to the romance. The drift of it agrees with the account given by Orosius.

901. The MS. has—"Was going too þe ouer Greece," &c. But the word "þe" must be corrupt, being an article without a substantive, and, moreover, a verb is required. I propose *ride* as very probably being the correct reading, as it is the expression used in l. 5471 of the *Werwolf* in a similar case. If the first two letters of *ride* were erased, *de* might easily be confused with *ðe* or *þe*.

903. The Athenians stopped him by occupying the pass of Thermopylæ. "Athenienses . . . angustias Thermopylarum . . . occupauere." Orosius, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 171.

904. *to keueren him gate*, to recover (or obtain) for himself a passage.

908. *þe entres*; the entries, i. e. the pass. *Enforced*, strengthened, forcibly occupied.

909. We must read either *þo marches*, or *þat marche*; for the plural form *þo* see l. 912. The MS. has *þat marches*.

911. *agrised* is a gloss upon *agrise*, the form used by our author.

913. Philip, failing to harm his enemies, cruelly attacks his own allies; "paratum in hostes bellum vertit in socios." *Orosius*.

P. 206, l. 923. Besides *of*, we almost require to insert *was*.

"Hee wrathfull *of* wille *was* · wronglich *þare*."

928. Lines 2621, 2647 in the *Werwolf* resemble this line.

933. The MS. has *traie*, with *be* written before it above the line; perhaps *traie* is the right reading, and *betraie* the gloss upon it.

934. "Conjuges liberosque omnium sub corona vendidit, templa quoque universa subvertit, spoliavitque," &c. *Orosius*.

940. *He ne laft no lenger*, he remained no longer; cf. l. 950.

942. *fares*, goes. This makes sense, but I suspect the right word is *cayres*.

944. "Post hæc in Cappadociam transiit, ibique bellum pari perfidia gessit, captos per dolum finitimos reges interfecit, totamque Cappadociam imperio Macedoniae subdidit." *Orosius*. The editor (Havercamp) remarks that this is false, and that *Cappudociam* is a mere mistake for *Chalcidicam* or *Chalcidem*; and he is doubtless right, as the siege of Olynthus in Chalcidice must be meant.

P. 207, l. 954. At about this line we drop the history and return to the romance, taking it up from l. 899.

965. "Nevertheless I know (it) not yet, nay, as I trow." *Not* = *ne wot*. This is awkward enough. It represents the Latin—"Peccasti, inquit, et non peccasti, quia violentiam a deo passa es."

974. This line occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1416; cf. also l. 5250. It should be observed that a new paragraph begins here in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo Anectanabus in figuram draconis apparuit Philippo in conuiuio, et osculatus est Olimpium."

980. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 4906.

P. 208, l. 982. See note to l. 781, and cf. l. 985. The Latin has "fortiter sibilabat."

992. *liuand lud*, living man; a favourite phrase of our author's; see l. 790, and *Werwolf*, ll. 1690, 3678, 5429.

994. *greefly bigo*, grievously beset; *bigo* is glossed by *bigone*.

999. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo auis generavit ouum in gremio philippi, de quo contracto exiuit serpens, qui statim mortuus est."

1004. "He laid an egg in his lap, and then hurries away." *Hee* might stand for *she*, but *him* is always masculine. We should certainly have expected to find the feminine, as in the Latin and in MS. Ashmole 44.

1008. *to-shett*, i. e. "brast all esoundir," as MS. Ashmole has it. Cf. *too-clef* in the next line.

P. 209, l. 1013. *had in his hed*, got his head in. *Deide* is the right spelling, and *dyled* the gloss.

1022. *Raigne* is the old spelling, *reigne* the gloss.

1024. *wortlych* is found as an occasional spelling of *worthlych*; *worthly* is a gloss. Cf. l. 596.

1025. "Ere he come unto the country that he came from."

1026. *doluen and ded*; more correctly, *ded and doluen*, i. e. dead and buried. Cf. *Werwolf*, 5252, 5280.

1030. *roum* may mean *room*, space; and hence, a while.

1031-2. "Ere he may wend with his host to his (own) land where he was fostered and fed—it befalls him to die."

1033. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, without a heading, and in MS. Ashmole 44 is the heading "Tercius Passus Alexandri."

1034. A portion of the story is here lost. I might have supplied the omission from MS. Ashmole 44 (see Stevenson's edition, ll. 525—672), but the great length of this passage and the consideration that to supply the omission from another *alliterative* poem might lead to confusion between the two, were reasons against this. Or it might have been supplied from the Latin, beginning at—"Appropinquans autem tempus paricendi"—and ending—"Audiens hec Olimpia terrore perterrita vocauit Anec-tanabum, et dixit." It seemed to me, however, that a quotation from the French would be more acceptable, and the omission is supplied therefore from MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, as edited in the 13th vol. of "*Notices des Manuscrits*," &c.; pp. 297-299. The following words may require explanation:—

*chey*, fell;—*croulla*, shook;—*noif*, snow (explained by *neige* by the editor of the French text);—*targa*, tarried, delayed;—*me feust*, perhaps we should read *ne feust*, for the Latin has, "cogitani quod infantulus iste nullatenus nutriatur," and the Ashmole MS. has, "That this frute shall haue na fostring · ne be fed nouthire;"—*vair* (*Lat.* "glaneus"), gray; MS. Ashmole has "ȝelow;"—*sestature*, stature;—*non pour quant*, nevertheless;—*ysnellete*, quickness (cf. O.E. *snell*);—*doubta moult*, feared greatly.

P. 211, l. 1038. "He was very well pleased with his noble deeds, but (then) he changed his demeanour," &c.

1041. The MS. has *maried*, with *r* over the *i*. Hence, the old word was *marred*, altered to *maried*; for *marred* is a common word with our author. *Marred too care*, vexed unto great anxiety, is a not very intelligible phrase, and therefore liable to alteration. It means much the same as *wofull in hert* in the next line.

1043, 1044. Blank spaces are left in the MS. for the two half-lines. Compare—

"Be noȝt afriȝt," quoth the freke · · · ne afrayd nouthir,  
It sall the noy noȝt a neg · nane of his thoȝtes."

*Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 675.

In which passage, *a noy* is equivalent to *an ey*. There is nothing lost (save a half-line) between ll. 1044 and 1045.

P. 212, l. 1054. *fonde I, mee tell, I ask (you to) tell me.*

1055. Cf. "Quat sterne is at 3e stody one · quare stekis it in hevynne." *Alex.* l. 683.

1061. *inkest*, blackest. The MS. is rather indistinct; the "*kest*" is plain, but the beginning of the word is represented by a straight horizontal stroke (elsewhere used for *m* or *n*), with a dot over the very commencement of it. *Enke* = *ink* occurs in "*Meidan Maregrete*," ed. Cockayne, stanza 61; and in Wycliffe's version of the Bible. The Latin merely has, "Sequere me hora noctis," &c.

1076-7. Compare the version in MS. Ashmole—

"Alexander, athill sonne · (quoth Anec his syre),

Loo yondir, behald over thi hede · and se my hatter werdis (*dire destinies*).

The evylle sterne of Ercules · how egirly it sorozes,

And how the mode Marcure · makis sa mekill joy,

Loo 3ondir, the gentill Jubiter · how jolyly he schynes." (ll. 701-705.)

1080-1. *Hee* pored, i.e. Nectanabus. *Hee* braides, i.e. Alexander. Perhaps there are a few lines lost between these two. Compare—

"The domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe,

Thik and thrathly am I thret · and thole none I sone

The slaȝter of myne awen son · as me was sett ever."

Unethis werped he that worde · the writt me recordis,

Thanne Alexander as sone · was at him behind,

And on the bake with slike a bire · he bare with his handis

That doune he drafe to the depest · of the dike bothom.

*Alexander*, ll. 706—712.

The Latin has—"Fata mea mihi propinquam mortem a filio meo comminantur. Taliter eo vidente, accessit ad eum propinquius alexander," &c.

P. 213, l. 1092. *sounk* or *hee wer*, ere he was sunken.

1094. This corresponds with l. 722 of MS. Ashmole 44. Though there is not the slightest hint of any omission in Mr Stevenson's edition, there must be several pages lost in the Ashmole MS. between this line and the next; for the story leaps at once from the dying words of Nectanabus to the duel of Alexander and Nicolas, entirely omitting the rest of the story as told in the Greaves MS. Hence from l. 1094 to the end is the *only existing copy in alliterative verse* of this portion of the story. It does not go quite far enough to supply the whole of the *lacuna* in the Ashmole MS., but it nearly does so, contributing 155 lines towards it.

1094. *hee* in this line is probably put for *hee*, i.e. *she*, the word *soule* being feminine.

1095. *armed*, fortified, bold.

1098. The French has—"et prist maintenant le corps et le porta au palais. Quant la royne le vit, si lui dist, 'Fils Alixandre, que aportes tu?'"

1103—1105. These words belong to *Alexander*. The French has—"En ycelle maniere que tu souffris que il feusse mon pere, à tort, pour ce que tu ne le me deis, l'as tu fait occire à tort."

1107. *heate*, false spelling for *hete*, command.

1110. The initial T of this letter is rather larger than usual, and a new paragraph begins here. At this point I should conjecture that the *Quartus Passus* of the Ashmole MS. may have commenced. In our MS. "A HORSS" is here written in the margin, to intimate that the story of Bucephalus begins here. In the Latin, a new paragraph begins here with the heading—"Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia aduxit equum bucefallum ad philippum regem macedonum."

P. 214, l. 1114. *a hulle as a bole*, a head like a bull; an allusion to the etymology of Bucephalus, from *βοῦς*, an ox, and *κεφαλή*, a head. The name, however, really means a horse branded with a mark like a bull's head; see Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon. I here add the description of Bucephalus as given in the Old High German poem of Alexander, written in the twelfth century by a priest named Lamprecht, as a specimen of that version. For the translation I crave indulgence, as it may not be quite correct. The letter *z* (*italic*) is used instead of a letter in Weismann's edition which resembles a *z* with a slight tag to it.

daz ros daz was wunderlich  
irre unde vil stritich,  
snel unde stare von gescafnisse,  
des sult ir sin gwisse.  
iz hête unzallîche craft  
unde unmaßlîche macht;  
iz irbeiz di lûte unde irslûch,  
iz was freislîch gnûch,  
ime was sîn munt,  
daz wil ih ú tûn kunt,  
alseime esele getân.  
di nasen wâren ime wîte úf getân.  
sîne óren wâren ime lane,  
daz houbit magir unde slane.  
sîne ougen wâren ime allirvare  
glîch eineme fliengendin are.  
Sîn hals was ime loekechte,

ih wéne iz wére lewin geslehte.  
úf den goffen hátiz rindis hâr,  
an den síten liebarten mál:  
só sarrazín ioh cristin man  
nie nihein bezzer ros gwan.

*Alexander*, vom Pfaffen Lamprecht, von Dr H. Weismann, 1850, p. 16. See also the description of Bucephalus in Weber's *Met. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 33.

1130. *hym* may refer to the spokesman of the messengers; but *hem* would be a better reading.

1131. The French has—"si dist à ses ministres, Receves ce cheval, et le metes en une grant quage de fer, et illeuc l'enclloys," &c. *He commanded bygge*, would mean "he commanded (men) to build."

The horse was wonderfully  
wilful and very full-of-strife,  
quick and strong of shape,  
(of it should ye be certain).  
He had unspeakable strength,  
and measureless might;  
he bit people and slew (them),  
he was terrible enough.  
To him, was his mouth  
(that will I make known to you)  
just-like an ass's made.  
His nostrils were wide opened,  
his ears were to him long,  
his head meagre and lank.  
his eyes were to him of-all-colours  
like (those of a) flying eagle.  
His neck was to him covered-with-  
locks,

I ween he was of a lion's kind.  
On his shanks had he heifer's hair,  
on his sides leopards' spots:  
like Saracen, so-also Christian man  
never a better horse won.



1144. *Who prickes* is surely the right reading; compare—"celle nuit songa li roys que une voys li disoit, que cil qui chevaucheroit se cheval regneroit en son rengne apres sa mort."

P. 215, l. 1158. *in theyr looke*, in their sight.

1159. *freaten*, false spelling for *freten*, eaten.

1161. The MS. may be read as "iustes" or "iuyses," the word being indistinct. The former, however, is certainly meant.

1162. The line ends with the letter *b* followed by a space; *beaste* is the spelling in l. 1130.

1167. *abowed*, like *alouted* (for which see *Werwolf*, 3716, 3721), should perhaps be followed by the word *to*.

P. 216, l. 1186. *lete hym worthe*, let him be, let him do as he liked. See note to *Werwolf*, l. 3597.

1193. The MS. has *stynt*, with *ed* above it to the right. Thus *stynt* is the old reading, *stynted* the gloss.

1201. We learn from the Latin that Philip grants Alexander's request by giving him a royal chariot and a company of knights, and the story of the duel between Alexander and Nicolaus or Nicholas follows shortly after. But our author again digresses from the romance story at this point, and takes up the history of Orosius.

P. 217, l. 1226. The story of the Finding of the Cross by Helen, the mother of Constantine, is well known, and is here alluded to.

1231. This line begins with "*For Philip*," but the *For* is redundant, as it appears in the line above. For "*to wyne*" we should probably read "*wynne*," as the *to* is inserted above the line by the copyist, who may not have known that infinitives are often used without it.

1233, 1234. "For that, in treason or guile, none should rob the man," &c.

P. 218, l. 1241. The conclusion answers to the passage in Orosius—"Philippus vero, post longam et irritam obsidionem, ut pecuniam quam obsidendo exhauserat, prædando repararet, piraticam adgressus est." *Orosius*, lib. iii., cap. xiii., ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 174. We may readily imagine that the poet, after a description of Philip's fleet and piratical expeditions, would, on arriving at the passage—"ad Scythiam quoque cum Alexandro filio prædandi intentione pertransiit"—revert to Alexander's exploits at the mention of his name. No doubt also, instead of giving the historical account, he must here have taken up the romance again by relating Alexander's duel with Nicolas; for which see Mr Stevenson's edition and Weber's *Metrical Romances*.

But it may fairly be observed, that the portion of the Romance exhibited in this fragment is, in a certain sense, complete. The whole Romance may be divided into three parts: (1.) the infancy of Alexander; (2.) his acts; (3.) his death. The first of these is contained in the first 1201 lines of the fragment, and lines 1202—1249 do not properly belong to the Romance at all. To add a sketch of the remaining two parts is inexpedient, on account of the great length of the second part. The first part is contained in the first 37 pages of Weber, whilst the whole Romance occupies 327 pages.

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

## ABBREVIATIONS, &amp;C.

Dan. Danish.—Du. Dutch.—F. French.—G. German.—Lat. Latin.—O.N. Old Norse or Icelandic.—A.S. or S. Anglo-Saxon.—Su.G. Sui-Gothic (Ihre's Glossary).—Prompt. Parv. Promptorium Parvulorum (ed. Way, Camden Soc.).—P. Pl. Piers Plowman.—Ch. Chaucer.—Roq. Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.—Wycl. Gloss. Wycliffite English Glossary.—*adj.* adjective, &c.

The following are used in a special sense—*v.* a verb in the infinitive mood; *pr. s.* present tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.* present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. s.* past tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. pl.* past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by 1 *p.* and 2 *p.* Also *imp.* is used for the imperative mood, and *pp.* for the past or passive participle.

NOTE. Numbers with an *obelus* (†) prefixed, refer to the "Alisaunder."

The numbers refer to the *lines* of the two poems. For an account of the method of reference in the former edition, see note at the end of this index.

- A-, throughout the poem, is *generally* disjoined from the word of which it forms a prefix or part, and this is universally the practice in MSS. of ancient English poetry. In most, if not all, words of Saxon origin it represents and is equivalent to the S. *on, an, of,* or *af,* as *a-boute, a-down, a-drad, a-loyned, a-live, a-nizf, a-stepe, a-woy, a-wondred,* &c. The same rule holds good in other branches of the Gothic language. See Ihre and Wachter.—M.
- A. *int.* ah! 602, 663, 845, 928, &c.
- A, 2 *p. s. imp.* have, 978, 1177.
- Abais, 206, } *n. F.* bay. A term  
 Abaye, 46, } borrowed from the  
 Baie, 35, }  
 F. hunting phrase, *Are aux abois*, to stand at bay. See *abois* in Cotgrave, and *abash* in Wedgwood.
- A-bate, *v.* to abate, 1141.
- A-beye, *v. S.* to atone for, 2790.  
 Cf. *abye* in Chaucer.
- A-bide, *v. S.* to wait for, await, tarry for, 1131, 1732, 2269, 3072.
- Abowed to, bowed down to, †1167.
- A-buschid, *pp. F.* in ambush, 3634.
- Ac, 106, &c. }  
 Ak, 678, } *conj. S.* but.  
 Ek, 715, }
- A-chape, 1248, } *v. F.*  
 A-schape, 1671, 1855, 3013, }  
 to escape; *pp.* a-chaped, 2805; a-schaped, 2341, 2816; a-schapel, 2519.
- Acorde, *v. F.* to agree, 2657. Ch.
- A-cord, *n. F.* agreement, 2964. Ch.
- A-coupyng, 3438, } *n. F.* violent  
 Coupyng, 3602, }

- encounter. O. F. *acoper*, heurter, frapper au côté. Roq.
- Acoyed, *pt. s.* enticed, 56. Ch. See Coies.
- A-cuntred, *pt. pl.* F. encountered, 3602.
- A-day, 190, } in a day, in the  
A-daye, 610, } day-time.
- A-dotep, *pr. s.* grows-silly, 2054. See Doted.
- A-down, *adv.* down, 1073, 1244. "See Taylor's Note on Tooke's Divisions of Purley, v. I. p. ix. ed. Svo."—M.
- Adouted, *pp.* F. feared, dreaded, † 33, † 247, † 400.
- A-drad, 1980, 2005, }  
Adradde, 1783, } *pp.* S. afraid,  
A-dredde, 4034, } terrified. A.S.  
*on-driëdan.*
- A-fraied, *pp.* afraid, 2158.
- A-friht, *pp.* frightened, 2784. A.S. *frihtan.*
- Agast, *pp.* aghast, terrified, 1778.
- A-gayn, *adv.* S. again, 395. See A-ɜayne.
- A-gayn, 233, }  
A-geynes, 1341, } *prep.* S. against,  
towards. See A-ɜeynes.
- A-gelt. See A-gult.
- A-greped, 52. }  
A-greiped, 1598, } *pp.* dressed, pre-  
pared, made ready. See Greiſe.
- A-greued, *pp.* grieved, 641, 2116. [Miswritten *a-greues*, in l. 1076.]
- A-grise, *pp.* afraid, terrified, 1743, † 911, † 986. Ch. Cf. A.S. *a-grisan*, to fear.
- Agult, *v.* to offend, sin against, 4401; *pp.* a-gelt, 4391. A.S. *a-giltan.*
- A-liht, *pt. s.* was called, 586. See Hiht.
- Ai, *n.* S. an egg, † 1004, † 1007.
- Aie, *n.* S. awe, fear, † 1243.
- A-ioyned, *pp.* F. adjoining, near, 1753.
- Ak. See Ac.
- A-knowe, *pp.* S. Always joined with the verb *ben.* to be, as "was aknowe," 421; "ich *am* aknowe," 4391; "we *be* aknowe," 4788. *To be aknowe* = to be aware, to acknowledge, confess. "Beēn aknowe wylfully. *Confiteor.* Be aknowe a-geyne wylle. *Fiteor.*" Prompt. Parv. Cf. A.S. *on-cnāwan.*
- Al, Alle, *adj.* S. all. "To write correctly *al* should be used for the *sing. nom.* and *alle* for the *pl.* (as the S. *eal* and *ealle*) but the rule is often violated, particularly in MSS. of the 14th and subsequent centuries. This observation might be extended to a large class of adjectives and substantives which have now lost their final syllables."—M. *Att alle, At al*, in all things, 283, 597. *Al bothe*, both of them, where *al* is an expletive, 851. *Al a niht*, all one night, all night, 2215. *And see* Algate, Alway.
- Alday, all day, 1682.
- Alden, *pp.* holden, 1875. See Halde.
- Alder, elder, † 22.
- Alder-, *gen. pl.* of all. Used only with an adjective in the superl. degree. *Alder-aldust*, eldest of all, † 27. *Alder-first*, *Alder-furcest*, first of all, 3345, 4884.
- Aldes, *pr. s.* holds, 441. See Halde.
- A-legget, *pp.* F. alleviated, allayed, 1034. See *Alluy* in Wedgwood.
- A-leide, *pt. s.* S. abolished, put down, 5240.
- Algate, Al-gate, in all ways, by all means, always, 649, 948, 1064. Ch.
- A-liue, alive, 4235, 5279. [A.S. *on life* (Mat. 27. 63), which are two separate words.]
- A-liht, *pt. s.* alighted, 399, 3923.

- Almauns, Germans, 1165.
- A-losed, *pp.* F. praised, renowned, † 139, † 174, † 331, † 577. *See* Loos. Ch.
- Alouten, *v.* to bow down to, † 852; *pt. s.* a-louted, bowed down, made obeisance, 3721. A.S. *hlutan*.
- Als, 996, 3543, } also. *Alse swipe*,  
 Also, 163, 2503, } as quickly as may be, very quickly, 3158. [A.S. *eall-swá*, whence O. É. *al-so*, *alse*, and *als*, now contracted into *as*, the words *as* and *also* being etymologically identical.]
- Alto-shiuered, broke in pieces, 3603. *See* note to l. 3884.
- Al-way, *adv.* all the while, 345.
- Alwes, *n. pl.* S. 371. *Hal alwes* = all hallows, all saints.
- Amased, *pp.* distracted, confounded, 686. *See* Mase.
- Amendis, *n. pl.* amends, 488, 493, 3919.
- A-meruailed, *pp.* F. astonished, 3557.
- Amiddes, amidst, † 834. Ch.
- Amonges, amongst, † 59. Ch.
- An, *put for* And, 445, 884, 1538.
- An, *put for* On, *in phrase* wel an fine myle = nearly five miles, 5110.
- And, *conj.* if, 3803, 4168. [In l. 3803 it is written "&."]
- Anger, *n.* anxiety, sorrow, 552. A.S. *ange*.
- An-honged, *pp.* S. hung up, 4773. Ch.
- A-niȝt, 2920, } bynight, bynights,  
 A-niȝtes, 785, } at night. Ch.
- Anker, *n.* anchor, 568.
- A-non, Anon, *adv.* immediately, 813, 913. *Anon riȝt*, *Anon riȝttes*, immediately, 273, 235.
- Autresse (? Aunteres), *pr. s.* adventures, ventures, 1028. *See* Aunter.
- A-paraile, 5028, }  
 A-parrayl, 3224, } apparel.
- Aparaylde hem, apparelled themselves, 1146.
- A-paied, 1883, 5358, }  
 Apaized, 1871, 4007, } *pp.* pleased,  
 Apayed, l, 1314, } contented.  
*See* Paide.
- Apeire, *v.* F. to impair, injure, † 1244; *pp.* a-peyred, marred, 933. "Appeyryn, or make wors." *Prom.* Parv. Ch.
- Apertly, A-pertli, *adv.* evidently, plainly, l, 4706. Ch.
- Apes, 2299.
- Arad, *pp.* divined, explained, † 647. *See* Arede.
- Araie, 3367, } *n.* F. array,  
 Aray, 1597, 1601, } order.
- Araie, *v.* F. to array, dispose troops in order, 3561; *pp.* a-raied, 1926, 1942; a-raid, 1934; a-raized, 3375, 3563; arayed, 1153.
- Are, *adv.* S. ere, before, 226; *superl.* arst, q. v. *See* Er.
- Are-blast, *n.* F. arblast, a kind of crossbow, † 268. From Lat. *arcus* and *balista*.
- Areche, *v.* S. to reach, † 441.
- Arede, *v.* to divine, expound, † 573; to read, † 838; *pp.* arad, q. v. A.S. *a-rédian*.
- A-redili, *adv.* S. readily, easily, 5006, 5026, 5230.
- A-raise, *v.* S. to raise, 4342.
- Aren, are; 2 *p. pl.* 2665; 3 *p. pl.* 615. *See* Arn and Ben.
- Arere, *v.* S. to raise, † 360; *pt. pl.* a-rered, 2645. *See* *Wycl. Gloss.*
- Arewe, *n.* S. an arrow, 885.
- Arise. *See* A-ros.
- Armed, *pp.* fortified, emboldened, courageous, † 1095.
- Armure, armour, 3769.
- Arn, are; 2 *p. pl.* 106, 3123;

- 3 *p. pl.* 1694, 5131. *See* Aren and Ben.
- Arnd, errand, 5287. *See* Erand.
- A-ros, *pt. s.* arose, 810, 2744, 3270; arise, 2737; *pp.* arise, 1297. *The form arise = arose occurs in both texts of Lagamon, l. 25988.*
- Artou, 5157, } art thou.  
Artow, 1250, }
- Arst, *superl. adv.* first, before, 2737, 3046, 4154, 4863, 5403; at arst = at first, i. e. for the first time, 1028.
- As = has, 2029.
- A-saie, *v. F.* to essay, try, 3754; *pp.* a-saide, 637, 4984.
- A-saute, Asaute, *n. F.* an assault, † 95, † 145, † 262; *pl.* a-sautes, 2708; a-sawtes, 4221.
- A-schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 1035.
- A-schape. *See* A-chape.
- Aschis, *n. pl. S.* ashes, 4368.
- Aschried, *pt. s.* 3895, } cried  
A-schrized, *pt. s.* 3827, } out to,  
Ascried, *pt. pl.* 3814, }
- called out to. O. Fr. *escrier*. Cf. *ascry* in Ch.
- A-seged, *pp.* F. besieged, 4224.
- A-segned, *pp.* F. assigned, 581. Cf. A-signed in l. 3627.
- Asele, *v. F.* to seal, † 829.
- A-sembled, *pp.* F. assembled, 1120, 1288; *pt. s.* a-sembled to, attacked, 3425; *pt. pl.* a-sembled, met in a hostile manner, encountered, 3409; a-sembleden, 3815. Cf. Sembul.
- A-sent, *n. F.* assent, 1300.
- A-sent, *v. F.* to assent, 482, 2692; *pp.* a-sented, 538.
- Asise, *n. F.* site, situation, 4451.
- A-slepe, S. asleep, 792, 798, 839. *Spelt* a-slape, 1995.
- A-spie, *v. F.* to spy after, watch after, 774; *pp.* a-spied, 2577.
- A-spyes, *n. pl. F.* spies, 860.
- Assone as, as soon as, 4345.
- Astate, *n. F.* state, condition, 5376. O. F. *estat*. Ch.
- A-stente, *v. S.* to stop, 1527. *See* Stint.
- Astit, *adv.* very soon, 3943. *See* Tit.
- A-stoneyd, *pp.* F. astonished, 880.
- Astow, hast thou, 4724.
- A-strangeled, *pp.* strangled, 150. O. F. *estraindre*.
- Aswipe, as soon as might be, very soon, 3555, 3511. *See* Swipe.
- A-teyned, *pt. s. F.* extended, 5498.
- A-tir, *n. F.* attire, dress, 1721, 3183; equipment for battle, 1147; — atyr, 1428.
- A-tired, *pp.* F. equipped, 1228. *See* A-tyred.
- A-tiryng, *n.* dress, apparel, 1941.
- Atling, *n.* preparation, a getting ready, † 268.
- Attele, } *v.* to go towards, ap-  
Attely, } proach, 205; to con-  
jecture, aim at, judge, 404; 1 *p.*  
*pr.* atteli (= attele i), I intend, I  
design, 3220; 3 *p. pr.* attles, goes  
towards, † 109; *pt. s.* atteled,  
guessed, conjectured, 813; attle-  
lede, 861, 941, 1015; attelede,  
went towards, 1760; *pt. pl.* ettele-  
den, went towards, 272. North E.  
and Sc. *ettle*, O. N. *ætla*, to aim at,  
intend, design.
- Atte, Att, at the; *in the following.*  
*Att best, Atte best*, at the best, 1142,  
1575, 4121 (cf. *atte best* in l. 4283  
with *at te best* in the line follow-  
ing); *atte cherche*, at the church,  
1961; *atte depe*, 1511; *atte fulle*,  
4916; *atte last*, at the last, 1389;  
*atte roche*, at the rock, 2367; in all  
which cases the article seems to be  
comprehended in the second syl-  
lable. But in *atte hese*, at ease, 3208,  
and *atte wille*, 1414, *atte* seems to

- be no more than the preposition *at*. And it is certain that *atte*=*at* and no more, in the following: *atte here herte*, at her heart, 539; *atte þe day*, 1599; *atte þe best*, 4186; *att alle*, in all things, wholly, 283. The spelling *atte* being adopted to signify *at te* or *at þe*, it was erroneously used instead of *at* in other cases.
- Attese, at ease, 1295.
- Atwinne, *adv.* S. in two, asunder, 5450. Ch.
- A-tyred hire, *pt. s.* dressed herself, 1706; *pp.* dressed, 1997, 5043.
- Auenantli, 3784, } *adv.* F.  
Auenantli. 4885, 5040, } suitably, well, courteously.
- Auentayle, *n.* F. The movable front to a helmet, and through which the wearer breathed, 3608. "*Ventaille*, the breathing part of a helmet, the sight of the beaver." Cotgrave.
- Auenturre, adventure, 4921.
- Aught, *pt. s.* S. possessed, owned, † 14, † 173, † 237, A.S. *ágan*, *pt. t. ic áhte*. See Out.
- Aught too long, ought to belong, † 547.
- Aunceteres, *n. pl.* ancestors, 5133.
- Aunter, *n.* F. adventure, occurrence, † 1017; *pl.* aunteres (adventures), † 109.
- Aunter, *v.* F. to adventure; aunter hem out=to adventure themselves out, 3268; *pr. s.* auntriesse, 1028; *pt. s.* auntred, ventured, went about seeking an entrance, † 1027; auntred hym, † 290; *pt. pl.* auntred hem, † 230; auntred hym till, ventured against him, † 902.
- Auntrose, *adj.* F. adventurous; hence, dangerous, 921. "Awnterows, or dowtefulle. *Fortunalis, fortuitus*." Prompt. Parv.
- A-vowe, *n.* F. a vow, 532. Ch.
- A-wai, 735, }  
A-waie, 578, } *adv.* S. away.  
A-wey, 1280, }  
A-weye, 221, }
- A-waked, *pt. s.* awoke, 677; *pp.* a-waked, 679; *imp. pl.* a-wakes, 2019.
- Awe, *n.* S. in "for loue ne for awe," 5430. For this expression, see also † 1243. "The phrase appears at length in *Speculum istius Mundi*, MS. Reg. 17, B. xvii. Thou shalt not spare for no drede, *Ne for loue to God ne for his awe*, To go out of the right lawe."—M.
- A-wede, *v.* to lose the senses, become mad, 45, 1750; 1 *p. pr. s.* a-wede, 3185. A.S. *a-wédan*.
- A-weite, *v.* F. to observe sedulously, espy, 2415; *pt. s.* a-wayted, 1711, 1890; a-weited, 791. Cf. Waite.
- A-weiwardes, away, 2188.
- A-went, *pp.* gone away, 1672.
- A-wondred, 872, 2389, } *pp.* aston-  
A-wondered, 310, 392, } ished.  
A.S. *a-wundrian*.
- A-wrek, 2111, } *v.* S. to  
A-wreke, 1128, 3422, } avenge;  
*pt. s.* awrak, wreaked, † 934.
- Ax, *v.* S. to ask, require, † 141. Ch.
- Ay, *adv.* S. ever, always, 615, 2239, 2549.
- Ayme, *v.* F. to estimate, compute, 1596, 3819, 3875; *pp.* aymed, 5010. O. F. *esmer*.
- A-ayne, *adv.* S. again, 5235; a-3e, 4256, 5172; —a-3en, 1837; —a-3ein, 270; —a-3eine, 1508; —a-3eyn, 1921; —a-3en lepes=runs back, returns quickly, 1373.
- A-3eynes, *prep.* S. against, towards, 1264, 1341; —a-3enis, 3533; —a-3ens, 2371; —a-3ene, 12; —a-3e, † 333.
- A-3en-turn, *n.* retreat, way of

cscapē, 4182. See *ȝain-torn*; and cf. *Aȝenturned* in *Wycl. Gloss.*

Bachelor, *n.* F. a bachelor, i. e. a novice in arms, 840, 1136; *pl.* bacheliers, 1477. See *Bachelor* in Roq.

Baden. See *Bidde*.

Baie. See *Abaie*.

Baili, *a.* F. a steward, 5387. See *Bailleul* in Roq.

Baite, 1723, } *v.* to set on a dog,  
Bayte, 11, } to bait (a bear).  
O. N. *beitu*. See *Abet* in Wedgwood.

Bakkes, *n.* *pl.* 2096, outer clothes (?) A word of doubtful meaning. Sir F. Madden conjectured it to mean "checks, from the Teutonic *backe*, Celt. *boch*, which the Romans formed into *bacca*. Vide Wachter and Haltaus, in *v.* and Meusel's *Wurzel-Wörter*, p. 216." Stratmann suggests that it is another form of *bagges*, used for *clothes*. The context favours such a rendering; "rent all his *clothes*" is more likely than "rent all his *checks*;" but whether we are to connect the word with *bag* or with *back* is hard to tell, yet it may mean no more than a *covering for the back*, as in Chaucer, Chan. Yem. ProL. l. 328, where another reading for *bak* is *bratt*. Cf. —dowell it hatte

To breke beggeris bred & bakken hem with *clōpis*.

*Piers. Pl.* ed. Skeat, A. xi. 184.

Indeed, the phrase "oure *bakkes* that moth-eten be," as used in P. Pl. Pass. X. of Text B (p. 195 of Wright's edition), convinces me that this last explanation is right. Curiously enough, as if to remove all doubt, the word *bakkes*, as there used, is, in MS. Laud 581, actually glossed by the Latin *panni*.

Bale, *n.* S. sorrow, misfortune, evil, 107, 134, 460, 741, † 56;

harm, i. e. a pity, † 1170; — *bal*, 1819; *pl.* bales, 476, 1055.

Baleful, *adj.* S. harmful, unfortunate, 1815; — *balefull* = harmful, † 272.

Balfulli, *adv.* miserably, 3959, 4261; — *balfully* = harmfully, hurtfully, 84, 1202.

Bane, *n.* S. a ban, proclamation, edict, 2252.

Banne, *v.* S. to ban, to curse, 476, 1644; *pl. s.* banned, 2100.

Baret, *n.* embarrassment, trouble, 486, 5518. Cf. O. F. *barat*, O. N. *baratta*.

Barge, *n.* a ship, 2767, 2807. See Glossary to *Romans of Partenay*.

Barm, *n.* S. the lap, † 1004. Ch.

Barn, Barne, *n.* S. a child, 9, 16, 18, † 1020; a man, 812, 1491; *gen. sing.* barnes, 100, 2230; *pl.* barnes, 187. See *Burn*.

Barnage, *n.* F. baronage, nobles, 4797.

Bataile, *n.* F. a battalion, squadron, 3783; *pl.* batailes, 3561, 3562; batayles, 1152.

Baucynes, *n.* *pl.* badgers, 2299. "The term occurs in Juliana Berners, spelt *Bausyn*, and in the Prompt. Parv. is 'Bawstone, or bawsone, or a gray' [see Mr Way's note]. It is not uncommon in writers of the 16th or 17th century, and is still retained in Cheshire. See Todd's Johnson, Nares, and Wilbraham. The root is evidently the Celtic *bal* or *baizhl* (see *Bullet*, in *v.*), whence the F. *balsan*, Ital. *balzano*, applied to an animal with a white streak or spot in the face or foot. Hence also is derived the Sc. *bawsand*, brindled. See Jamieson."—M. Cf. *pie-bald*, and *Bawson* in Wedgwood.

Bayte on, *v.* to set on a dog at anything, 11. See *Baite*.

Be, Bi, *prep.* S. by, *passim*. When

- compounded with verbs, the orthography is perpetually interchanged.
- Be = been, 4103. *See* Ben.
- Beaute, *n.* F. beauty, 4534; — beaute, 4074.
- Bed, Bede. *See* Bilde.
- Bedes, *pr. s.* offers, † 947. Cf. † 260. A.S. *beóðan*. Ch.
- Bedes, *n. pl.* S. prayers, beads, 3024. *See* *Beud* in Wedgwood.
- Be-dolue, *pp.* buried, 5252. *See* Doluen.
- Begonne, *pp.* gone about, i. e. surrounded, † 698. Cf. Bi-go. *See* *Begone* in Wedgwood.
- Be-hilde, beheld, 2783.
- Behiȝt. *See* Bihote.
- Be-honged, *pp.* S. hung about, 5015.
- Be-houes, 2349, † behoves, is suit.
- Be-houis, 1815, † able for.
- Be-kenned. *See* Bikenne.
- Be-knowe, *pp.* S. aware, 2172.
- Belaunce, *n.* F. balance, 948.
- Belene, *v. S.* to remain, † 69. A.S. *be-lifan*.
- Bellyng, *part. pres.* bellowing, 1891. "Dame Juliana Berners confines the term to the noise made by a deer, in which sense it occurs in Gawin Douglas, *Virg. Prot.* 94, 26. But in the Prompt. Parv. we have '*Bellyn*, or lowyn as nette (roryn). *Mugio*, and '*Bellynge*, of rorynge of bestys (bellinge of nete). *Mugitus*.'"—M. *See* *Bell* in Wedgwood.
- Be-maked, *pp.* made, 5060.
- Bemes, *n. pl.* S. trumpets, 1154. Ch.
- Ben, Bene, *v. S.* to be, 464, 1930; 2 *p. s. pr.* (with a *future* signification), bestow, shalt thou be, 344; 3 *p. s. pr.* beþ, 547; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ben, 3148, bene, 1672; 3 *p. pl. pr.* bene, 4217. ben, 946; buþ, 4447; *imp. pl.* beth, 3797; *pp.* be, 1913, 3957. *See* Bi, Arn, Aren.
- Be-nom, *pp.* taken away, 2450. A.S. *be-niman*.
- Beraften, *pt. pl.* bereft of, † 81.
- Bere, *n.* a violent noise; here applied to the barking of a hound, 43. *See* Wychliffe Glossary, s. v. *bire*; Lazamon (glossary), s. v. *ibere*; Stratmann, s. v. *bere*. Jamieson refers it to Su-G. *boer*, the wind. Sir F. Madden and Stratmann refer it to A.S. *ge-bære*, which, however, generally means a *gesture*. It may be an imitative word, like *birr*, *buzz*.
- Bere-felles, *n. pl.* S. bear-skins, 2430, 2560. *See* Fel.
- Berem-chaunce, *n.* chance of progeny, conception, † 971. *For the spelling, cf.* Berem-tcm in *Genesis* & *Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 3903.
- Bern, *n. S.* a man, † 212, † 219. *See* Baru, Burn.
- Be-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1742; 3 *p. pl. pr.* be-semen, 2529.
- Be-sewed. *See* Bi-sowe.
- Bestow. *See* Ben.
- Bet, *pt. s.* S. he beat, 1073, † 300.
- Bet, *adv.* S. better, 172, 344, 1012; —bett, † 504; cf. the phrase *more beter*, 4279.
- Bete, *v. S.* to make better, to better, repair, 3167; *pl. s.* bet, 3960. A.S. *bétan*.
- Beþ, it shall be, 547. *See* Ben.
- Be-þout, Be-þouȝt. *See* Bi-þenke.
- Beurde. *See* Burde.
- Burne. *See* Burn.
- Be-wrapped, *pt. s.* wrapped up, 1735.
- Be-wrie, *v. S.* to bewray, 2435.
- Bi, Be, *prep.* S. by, *passim*.
- Bi, be thou, 322; bi ȝine, be given, 2254. [*As* bi, be (= by) *are often*



- interchanged, in both places we should rather read be.]*
- Bi-cast, *pp.* beset, 2287. For all bi-cast an equivalent phrase is unbecast. See l. 4693.
- Bi-cheche, 1 *p. s. pr.* I beseech, 1258.
- Bi-com, *pt. s.* became, 881; *pp.* bi-come, in phrase were bi-come = had gone to. 222; it bi-comes = it goes to, 911.
- Bidde, 1 *p. pr. s.* I ask or pray for, 4754; *pr. s.* biddes, 5539. † 947; 1 *p. pt. s.* bed, I asked for, borrowed, † 457 (where the MS. gloss "had" is wrong); *pt. s.* bede, 5490; *pt. pl.* baden, 4797; *imp. pl.* biddip, 5534; *part. pres.* biddande, 3024; *pp.* bede, 2410. A.S. *biddan*.
- Bi-falle, *v. S.* to befall, 547; *pp.* bi-falle, 2475, 4169.
- Bi-form, *adv. S.* before, 428.
- Bi-gat him, procured for himself, 177.
- Biggen, *v. S.* to buy, † 1215.
- Bi-go, *pp.* S. beset, † 490, † 994. See Begonne, and Bigoo in Ch.
- Bi-gunne, *pt. pl.* began, 2555.
- Bi-hest, 600, } *n. S.* promise.  
By-hest, 57, }
- Bi-het. See Bi-hote.
- Bi-hilde, *pt. s. S.* looked, beheld, 2783; bi-huld, 2426; *pp.* bi-hold, 683.
- Bi-hote (*spelt* by-hote), *v. S.* to promise, 3688; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-hote, 2135; *pt. s.* bi-het, 4376, 4647; bihiȝt, 576; *pt. pl.* bi-hiȝt, 4649; *pp.* be-hiȝt, 606.
- Bi-huld. See Bi-hilde.
- Bi-houes, it behoves, 729 (*cf.* l. 723); *pt. s.* bi-houed, 2720.
- Bi-kenne, *v. S.* to commit to the charge or protection of another; 1 *p. s. pr.* bi-kenne, 5434; *pt. s.* bi-kenned, 350; be-kenned, 371; *pt.*
- pl.* bi-kenned, 5454. Cf. Bi-teche, and Kenne.
- Biker, *n.* fight, battle; bedes hem biker = offers them battle, † 947. "Bikyrf of fytynge. *Pugna*." Prom. Parv. See Way's note.
- Bikering, *n.* conflict, attack, † 390.
- Bi-komsed, *pt. pl.* commenced, 2523. See Comse.
- Bilene, *v. transitive, S.* to leave behind, 2577; *pt. s. (intrans.)* bi-laft, stayed behind, remained, 2385; *pt. pl.* bi-laft, 2890.
- Bilfoder, 81, } *n.* provisions.  
Bilfodur, 1858, }
- "Perhaps from the S. *bylg*, the belly, and *fodder*, food."—M. Cf. *belly-timber*, food, in Halliwell.
- Bi-liue. See Blieue.
- Bi-reft, 1 *p. s. pt.* bereaved, deprived of, 4628; *pp.* biraft, † 394.
- Bi-schet, *pp.* S. shut up, immured, 2014. Ch.
- Bi-seget, *pt. s.* besieged, 2650; bi-seged, 2843.
- Bi-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1733. See Be-seme.
- Bi-set, *pt. pl.* beset, 2281; bi-sett, 2927; bi-sette, 1214; bi-setten, set forth, employed, † 437.
- Bi-side, *adv. S.* 3, 1889.
- Bi-sowe, *v. S.* to sew up, 1689; *pp.* be-sewed, 3117.
- Bi-stint, *pt. s.* made calm, † 1183. "*Styntyn*" or make a thyng to seeyn' of his werke or mevyng. *Obsto.* Prom. Parv.
- Bi-stode, *pt. s. S.* stood near, approached, 175.
- Bi-teche, *v. S.* to commit to the charge of any one, entrust, recommend, 5184; *pt. s.* bi-tok, 66, 4167; *pt. pl.* bi-tauȝt, 5211; *pp.* bi-tauȝt, 5289. A.S. *be-tēcan*.
- Bi-þenke, *v. S.* to think attentively, consider; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-þenke, 3057; *pt. s.* bi-þout, 2748; be-þout,

- 290, 2370; be-pouȝt him, 2773; bi-pouȝt hire, 630, 650; *pt. pl.* bi-pout hem, 4776; be-pout, 2410.
- Bi-tide, *v. S.* to befall, 730; *pt. s.* bitid, 4087; bitide, 7; bi-tidde, 1211; by-tidde, 32.
- Bitraide, *pp.* betrayed, † 223.
- Bitterly, *adv. S.* painfully, 2083.
- Bi-weped, *pp.* covered with tears, 661.
- Bi-ȝete, *n. S.* progeny, 2303.
- Blake-beries, *n. pl. S.* blackberries, 1809.
- Ble, *n. S.* complexion, 3083; —blec, † 202, † 578.
- Blenched, *pp.* blemished, hurt, 2471. "Blemschyde, blemysshed. *Obscatus.* Blenschyn, blemysshen, *Obsusco.*" Prompt. Parv. See *Blemish* in Wedgwood.
- Blessed, *pt. s.* 1192. Sir F. Madden explains it by "wounded, afflicted wounds," from the F. *blesser*. Or it may mean that he *waved* or *brandished* his sword, as in Spenser. F. Q. I. v. 6, and Fairfax's Tasso, ix. 67.
- Blesseden, *pt. pl.* blessed, 196.
- Blepeli. See *Blipeliche*.
- Bleynte, *pt. pl.* looked, 3111. [*Lit.* blinked; cf. Du. and G. *blinken*. Sw. *blinka*. Dan. *blinka*.]
- Blinne, *v. S.* to pause, cause, leave off, 55, † 398; *pt. s.* blynd, † 110; 2 *p. s. imp.* blinne, 322; 1 *p. pl. imp.* blynnne, † 1202.
- Blisful, *adj. S.* happy, 1055; blessed, 1669.
- Blipeliche, *adv. S.* merrily, with good will, 819; blepeli, 1144, 1994; *in the latter place it means* in sport.
- Blue, 1705, † 259, } *adv. S.* quick-  
Biliue, 248, }  
ly;—as blue, as quickly as might  
be, 379; as bliue, 351.
- Blonk, *n.* a horse, 3326, 3362; *pl.* blonkes, 5041, † 435. "In old  
Teutonic, *planchaz* means a *white* horse, and the root is to be found in the Su. G. and Franc. *blank*, still preserved in the F. *blanc*. See Ihre and Jamieson."—M.
- Blowand, *pres. part.* blowing, 3358.
- Bobaunce, *n. F.* pride, boasting, presumption, *always in phr.* "bobaunce and bost," 1071, 1129, 3358. See *Boban* in Roq.
- Bod, *n. S.* abiding, delay, 149.
- Bode, *n. S.* a message, tidings, an order, 2145, 2154, 3767.
- Bodiesse, *n. pl.* bodies, 3767. [*Should be spell* bodies; *but cf.* Antresse. Hayresse.]
- Bogeyssliche, *adv. S.* in a boasting, boisterous, or bold manner, 1707. "In the Prompt. Parv. is '*Boggysschely, Tumide,*' and in Ray's *S. and E. Country Words*, '*Bogge, bold, forward, sawey.*'"—M. See also *Bagge* in Prompt. Parv. and *Bulge* in Wedgwood.
- Boizes, *gen. sing.* boy's, 1705.
- Bolaces, *n. pl.* bullaces, a sort of plum or sloe, 1809. Used by Chaucer, Rom. Rose, 1377. See *Bolleche* in Roq.
- Boles, *n. pl. S.* bulls, 2299.
- Bolstraȝt, *pp.* prostrate, stretched on the belly, 1852. From A.S. *bælg*, the belly, and *streccan*, to stretch.
- Bonde, *pl. adj. S.* (put for *bonde men*), bondsmen, villains, as opposed to the orders of barons and burgesses, 2125. Cf. "Barouns and burgeis and bonde men also." *Piers Plowman*; A. *prol.* 96.
- Bonden, *pp.* S. bound, 2238; *pt. pl.* bounden, 1219.
- Bone, *n. S.* boon, prayer, 1095, 4410; entreaty, † 612.
- Bonke, *n. S.* bank, shore, 2718.
- Bonure, *adj. F.* courteous, affable, 332. See *Debonureli*.

- Bordes, *n. pl.* S. 5070.
- Bore, *pp.* S. born, 240; *spelt* borne, 510.
- Borwe, *n.* S. borough, town, 1889, 2221; — borowe, † 300; borw3, 2835; *pl.* borwes, 2123; borous, † 928. *See* Burw.
- Borw3, *n.* (the same word as the above), a place of shelter, 9. A.S. *beorh*. Cf. the term, "a rabbit's burrow."
- Borwed, *pt. s.* S. borrowed, 1705.
- Bost, *n.* boast, pride, 1141. *And see* Bobaunce.
- Bot, *conj.* S. but, unless, except, 497, 2008; *also spelt* but, 627. But 3if, unless, 472. Cf. Bout.
- Bot, *n. S.* a boat (!) 4632. *Or else* bote bot = bote bod, without delay, as in l. 149.
- Bote, *n.* S. remedy, 627, 741, 959, &c.: do bote = provide a remedy, 1378.
- Botles, *adj.* S. without remedy, 134, 1819; — botlesse, 540; botteles, 896; botelesse, 1539.
- Botned, *pp.* S. bettered, cured, 1055. Cf. Bete.
- Bouf, *n.* F. beef, 1849, 1868.
- Boun, *adj.* ready, 1088, 1138, 1144; — boune, † 160, † 228.
- Bounden. *See* Bonden.
- Bour, *n.* S. bower, chamber, 657, 1971; — boure, 1760, † 772. *See* Burw3-maidenes.
- Bourde, *n.* F. a jest, 1705. (Ch.
- Bourdes, *n. sing.* F. a tournament, jousting. *See* Behordeis in Roq. The word is probably (like many other *war* terms) of Teutonic origin.
- Boute, *prep.* S. without, 149, 211, 567, 812.
- Bouwes, *pr. s.* bows, inclines, 948.
- Bowes, *n. pl.* S. boughs, 23.
- Boxumly, *adv.* S. courteously, 332. *See* Buxumli.
- Brag, *adj. or adv.* bold, boastful, or boastfully, 2352; *sup.* braggest, bravest, 3048. Cf. "Hy schulde nougt *beren hem so brugg."* P. Pl. Crede, l. 706. *See* Braguer in Cot.
- Braides, *pr. s.* moves quickly, hurries, † 1081; — braydes, 149; braides him, departs quickly, † 1004; *pt. s.* braid down, threw down or beat down; braide, awoke, started up, † 724, 686, cf. l. 2096; rushed, 3848; drew quickly, 1867. O. N. *brögða*. Cf. *Abrayde* in Ch.
- Braundise, *v. F.* to fling about (as a horse), † 1122; *pt. s.* braundised, 3294; *pres. part.* brandissende, waving (their weapons), 2322.
- Brayn-wod, *adj.* S. brain-mad, i. e. mad, furious, 2096. *See* P. Pl. A. x. 61.
- Bredde, *pt. pl.* S. went hurriedly, hurried, 1782. "The sense of *breed* is evidently not admissible here. Cf. Braides."—M.
- Brede, *n.* S. breadth, 3055; a peny brede, a penny's breadth. † 1244.
- Brem, Breme, *adj.* S. (*of very common occurrence, and with many meanings*) notable, bold, strong, fierce, &c.: (*applied to men*) 3641, (bears) 1689, (beasts) 1699, (a child) 18, (a battle) 1157, (a host) 3767, (a duke) 1141, (deeds) 1387, (blood) 3861, (an oar) 4700, (a time) † 1020, (a god) † 533, (a tablet) † 615, &c.; *sup.* bremest, 1686, 2936. Ch.
- Bremli, *adv.* S. fiercely, 3294; exceedingly, 2158; — bremely, loudly, 23; — bremly, fiercely, 4312; — bremlich, boldly, † 1001. *Sup.* bremliest, most decisively, 948.
- Brenne, *v.* S. to burn, 1133, 2123, 4261; *pt. s.* brent, 1071,

- 1109; *pp.* brent, 3634, 4367; brend, 2646, †729.
- Breres, *n. pl.* briars, 1809.
- Bretages, *n. pl.* F. parapets of a wall, ramparts. O. F. *bretesche* (see Roq.), Low Lat. *brestachia*.
- Breper, *n. pl.* S. brothers, 2641. [The *nom. pl.* in A.S. is broðra, broðru, broðor, or broður.]
- Brid, *n. S.* a bird, †814; *pl.* briddes, 29, 179, 819.
- Bridhale, *n. S.* bridal, 4947.
- Brit, bright, 3572.
- Brode, *adj.* S. broad, 754, 1674; —brod, 1732.
- Brode, *adv. S.* in *phr.* to brode = too wide apart, too far, 11.
- Brodes, *pr. s.* publishes abroad, proclaims, †122.
- Brond, 1244, } *n. S.* a brand.  
Bront, 1192, } sword.
- Broder, *n. S.* brother, †56. [*Probably miswritten for broðer*; cf. 4935.]
- Brout, brought, 3959; brouzt of liue = brought out of life, killed, 1159.
- Brug, 1674, } *n. S.* a bridge.  
Brugge, 2140, }
- Brusten, *v.* to injure severely, destroy, 154. Cf. Dan. *brøst*, hurt, damage.
- Brusure, *n. F.* a bruise, wound, 2461.
- Bruten, *n. S.* to destroy, 3760; bruttene, 1133; *pl. s.* brutned, 1073, 1202, †888; *pl. pl.* bruttened, 2647; *pp.* bruttenet, 206. Swed. *bryta*; Dan. *bryde*; A.S. *brytan*, *brotan*.
- Bugles, *n. pl.* F. 1154.
- Burd, *n. S.* a lady, maiden, damsel. †715; —burde, 683, 765, 812, 830, †670; beurde, †202, †205; *pl.* burdes, 3669, 5017; beurdes, †228. Burde no barn, neither man nor maid, 1971.
- Burgeis, *n. F.* a burges, 1889; *pl.* burgeys, 2128, 5017.
- Burn, *n. S.* a man, 332, 510, 511, 657, &c.; —burne, 444, 477; burn, †9, †110; *pl.* burnes, 617, 1129; beurnes, †2.
- Burpenes, *n. pl.* S. burdens, 2555.
- Burw, *n. S.* a town, 5335; *pl.* burwes, 1073, 1109; *the same as* Borwe, q. v.
- Burw3-maidenes, *n. pl.* S. bower-maidens, attendants, 3071. See Bour.
- Buschen, *v.* to move about briskly, 173. See Buske.
- Busily, *adv.* S. industriously, eagerly, carefully, 650, 2181, 2210; —busili, 2577.
- Busk, *n. F.* a bush, 3062, 3069; busch, 3101, 3111.
- Buske, *v.* to brush about, hurry about, hurry, 2210; busk to or buske to, to hurry towards, 1968, 2264; busk of or buske of, to hurry from, 1653, 1997; *pr. pl.* busken, †426, †433; 1 *p. s. pl.* busked, †612; *pl. s.* busked, 1085; (prepared), 3196; busked to, 1707, 2055; buskede him or busked him (went), 21, 1863; *pl. pl.* busked (prepared), 1152; buskeden (hurried), 2819; busked hem (went quickly), 1530, 2477, 2770. See Buschen. Icel. *at buast*. See Busk in Wedgwood.
- But, *conj.* S. except, unless, 476, 627, 937, 972, †368, &c. But 3if, unless, 758, 939 1276. See Bot.
- Buþ, *pr. pl.* are, 4447. See Ben.
- Buxum, *adj.* S. tractable, obedient, 2943; meek (*applied to* beasts), 2720, 2854, 3085, 4062. A.S. *boesam*.
- Buxumli, 3717, 4972, } *adv.* S.  
Buxumly, 2, 510, } meek;  
boxumly, 332; *comp.* buxumlier, 723.
- By, *prep.* S. near; by þat barn = near that child, 220.

- Bygge, *v.* S. to build, construct, † 1133. Swed. *byggå*; Dan. *byggge*.
- By-hote. See Bi-hote.
- By-þan, by the time that, 220. Cf. A.S. *be þam þe*.
- Cacche, *v.* to catch, take, obtain, get, 806, 2266, 2940;—kacche, 2217; *pr. s.* caccheth, 3750; *pt. s.* cauþt, 4302; *pt. pl.* cauþt, 1053, 1495, 2867; kauþt, 1053, 3374; *pp.* cauþt, 4214; kauþt, 2531.
- Caire, *v.* S. to return, travel, go, 5184; 2 *p. s. pr.* cairest, 5190; *pr. s.* cayres, 2977; *pt. s.* kayred, 373; *pt. pl.* caired, 2714, 5324; cayred, 2201; kayred, 3734; *imp. pl.* kairus, † 623; *pres. part.* cairende, 1922. A.S. *cærau*.
- Calles, *pr. pl.* call, 239; *pt. s.* cald, 887; calde, 1460.
- (Can) can, know, acknowledge; *in the past tense*, could, knew, *inf.* kenne, † 623;—1 *p. s. pr.* kau, 321, 635; con, 297; 1 *p. pl. pr.* kunne, 4184; *pr. pl.* konne, 3334; *pt. s.* koupe, 2, 174, 655; kowpe, 5055; koupe, 952; coude, 4378; couþde, 120; couþpe, 118; kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* coupe, 577; kowden, 4810; coupen, 1033; copen, 1576; kende, † 367; *pp.* coup, known, famous, 5053.
- Care, *n.* S. care, grief, sorrow, regret, 496;—kare, 288, 424, 726, 743.
- Carefull, *adj.* S. full of care or anxiety, anxious, sorrowful, † 75, † 244; causing care, woful, † 295;—carful, 2201, 2860, 3181;—karful, 373, 3774.
- Carestow, carest thou, art thou sad, 3182. See Kares.
- Carfti, *adj.* crafty, skilful, 3221. [*It should rather be crafti, but this form is sometimes found. See Romans of Partenay, l. 5708.*]
- Carfulli, *adv.* S. sorrowfully, 4347;—carfuli, 152;—karfulli, 3734.
- Carpen, *v.* to speak, tell, talk, † 748; carpe, 4581; carp, 832, † 11; karpe, 2523; 1 *p. s. pr.* carp, † 200, † 244; karp, † 172; *pr. s.* carpes, † 693; karpes, † 555; 1 *p. s. pt.* karped, 5233; carped, 217; *pt. s.* carped, † 72, 990; 1 *p. pl. imp.* carpe, 2855; karpe, 4054. *Phrase*—to karp (karpe, earpp) þe soþe, to tell the truth, 503, 2804, 655, † 683. “Carpyn or talkyn. *Fabulor.*” Prompt. Parv.
- Carping, *n.* talking, speech, 4660;—karping, 3100.
- Cas, *n.* F. chance, hap, fortune, event, 326, 915, 2919;—case, † 24; bi cas, 595; for cas, 1037. Ch.
- Cast, *pt. s.* cast away, i. e. lost, 881;—caste, contrived, 1981. See Kest.
- Castel-werk, castellated work, 2220.
- Castis, *n. pl.* events, 654.
- Catel, *n.* F. wealth, possessions; *gen. sing.* cateles, † 376. Ch. See *Catels* in Roq.
- Caytif, *n.* F. a wretch, person of low extraction, 710. Ch.
- Cayreden, *pt. pl.* carried, 2520.
- Ceput. See Kepe.
- Certes, *adv.* certainly, verily, indeed, 732, 1380, 1500, &c. Ch.
- Chambur, *n.* F. chamber, 685. [MS. *chanbur*.]
- Chamly, *adv.* S. shamefully, 2124. Cf. *Sehamly*.
- Charge, *n.* F. load, 388.
- Chase, chose, † 36. See Chese.
- Chases, 2 *p. pl. imp.* chase ye, 1207.
- Chast, *v.* to chasten, chastise, 729; 2 *p. s. imp.* chaste, 5157. P. Pl.
- Chaul, *n.* S. jowl, jaw, † 1119. A.S. *ceole*. Cf. *chol* in P. Pl. Crede, and *chall* in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua*.
- Chaunche, *n.* F. chance, 137.

- Chaunded, *pt. s.* enchanted (1)  
[*But we should perhaps read*  
*chaunged.*]
- Chauntemens, *n. pl.* F. enchant-  
ments, 654.
- Che, *pron.* she. 462, 641, 2317.  
Cf. Sche, and Hue.
- Chief, *adj.* F. chief, 3841;—cheefe,  
† 1210.
- Cheffaren, *v.* to chaffer, bargain,  
buy and sell, † 1210.
- Chepinge, *n.* S. market, 1822;—  
fro chepinge ward, from towards  
market, on the return from market,  
1844.
- Chere, *n.* F. countenance, look,  
appearance, demeanour, 647, 4882,  
5263. Ch.
- Cherl, *n.* S. churl, countryman,  
54, 60, 62. &c.;—cherle, 1675; *pl.*  
cherls, 513. Ch.
- Cherli, *adv.* F. cheerily, kindly,  
62.
- Chese, *v.* to choose, † 770; *pt. s.*  
ches, 4165; chees, † 321; chused,  
† 140; *imp. s.* ches, 4161; *pp.* chuse  
of = chosen by, beloved by, † 49.  
Ch.
- Cheued forth, *pt. s.* hastened forth.  
† 78. Cf. O.F. *eschever*, and see  
*esquiver* in Cotgrave.
- Cheused, *pt. s.* obtained, pro-  
cured. † 966. See *Cherir* and *Cher-  
rissance* in Roq. and *Cheris* in Ch.  
*Mars and Venus*, st. 37.
- Cheueteyn, *n.* F. chieftain, 3379.
- Child, *n.* S. child, 1822. “It is  
here used for a person of gentle  
birth, in opposition to *cherl*.”—M.  
In l. 541 it is used of a person of  
mean birth, but grown up to man-  
hood.
- Chipmen, *n. pl.* S. shipmen,  
sailors, 2811, 2818.
- Choisli, *adv.* F. aptly, 1753;—  
choielich, choicely, † 49.
- Chold, *pt. s.* should. 2014.
- Choliers. See *Kolieres*.
- Chortly, *adv.* S. shortly, 2035.
- Choys, *adj.* F. choice, fair, 400.
- Chul, (*ye*) shall, 3339.
- Chused. See *Chese*.
- Chylder, *n. pl.* S. children, † 36.  
[*The A.S. pl. is cildra, cildru.*]
- Clatered. See *To-clatered*.
- Clene, *adj.* S. fair, noble, 1083,  
1124, 1434; *sup.* clennest, 1609.
- Clenli, *adv.* S. cleanly, fairly,  
clearly, 3847;—clenliche, 3477;—  
clanli, 3288.
- Clepe, *v.* S. to call, 1299, 1977,  
3181; 2 *p. s. pr.* clepus, 249; *pr. pl.*  
clepun, 2221; *pt. s.* clepud, 56, 260,  
274, 977, 1182; cliped, † 836;  
kleped. † 476; *pp.* clepud, 1956;  
cleped, † 944; y-clepud, 121. Ch
- Cleppende. See *Clipped*.
- Clere, *adj.* F. fair, fine (colour),  
579;—cler (strength). 2037.
- Clerli, *adv.* F. finely, 4422.
- Clened, *pt. s.* cleaved, stuck, 734.
- Cleymeþ, *pr. s.* calls out, calls,  
4481. Lat. *clamare*.
- Clipped, *pt. s.* S. embraced, 63,  
1570; clipte, 672, 1265; clipt,  
3205; clept, 675; clupte, 1587;  
*pt. pl.* clipt, 1833, 3100; *pres.*  
*part.* clippend, 2808; cleppende,  
2804; clipping, 1396; *pp.* clipped,  
859.
- Clipping, *n.* S. embracing, 1053,  
3474.
- Clouztand, *pres. part.* S. mending,  
clouting, 14. A.S. *clát*, a clout.  
“The verb is preserved in Belgic  
*klutsen, kluteren*, to cobble or  
repair.”—M. Cf. Du. *klotsen*, to  
strike on; and see *Clouted* in Ch.
- Coffi, *adv.* S. quickly, boldly,  
† 1009;—colly, † 693, † 748;—  
collich, † 207, † 297, † 581, † 662.  
A.S. *cōfllice*.
- Coies, *pr. s.* soothes, coaxes, † 1175.

- Cf. Acoyed. F. *coi.* from Lat. *quietus*.
- Col, *n.* coal, 2520; *pl.* coles, 4367.
- Colled, *pt. s.* embraced, 3032; — kolled, 69; *pres. part.* collinge, 2984. O.F. *acoler*. See Spenser, F. Q. iii. 2, 34.
- Com, *pt. s.* came, 39, 47, 61; — kom, 507; *pt. pl.* come, 151, 3363; *pp.* come, 50, 816; — kome, 501; — komen, 513. Com bi = acquire, 1688.
- Comande, Komande, commanded, 347, 1110. See note to l. 347.
- Come, *n. S.* arrival, 4192, 4953. 5222; — kome, 807; — coome, † 73; — cumme, † 147.
- Comen, *adj.* Lat. common, 6. See Komwne.
- Comfort, *pt. pl.* comforted, 1495; *pt. s.* cumfort, 1512; *pp.* confortd, 350.
- Comly, *adj.* comely, 294; — comliche, 963, 2704; — comelieli, † 205; — comeliche, 987; — komli. 873, 2858; — cumlich, † 18; — cumly, 783.
- Comliche, *adv.* in a comely manner, 660; — comeliche, 2220; — komly, 51; — komeliche, 423.
- Compacement, *n. F.* contrivance, stratagem, 1981.
- Compers, *n. pl. F.* companions, 370. Ch.
- Comse, *v. F.* to commence, begin, 2244; *pr. s.* komses, 616; *pt. s.* comsed, 37, 194, 288, 579, &c.; comsede, 832; komsed, 1430; cumsed, 424, 764. P. Pl.
- Comsing, *n. F.* commencement; — fram comsing to þende, from beginning to end, 4869, 5092.
- Con. See Can.
- Confort, *n. F.* comfort, 1408.
- Conforted, *pp.* comforted, 380. See Comfort.
- Coninge, *n. F.* cunning, skill, 120; — kunning, † 643.
- Conseyl, *n.* counsel, advice, 114; — cunsail, 595; — cunsaile, 969; — cunseil, 2126; — cunseyll, 2105; — cunsayle, 1118.
- Contenaunce, *n. F.* countenance, demeanour, 1401, 3076, 4900; — countenaunce, † 961; — cuntenaunce, 1397; — kuentaunce, 912, 3323.
- Conyng, *adj. S.* cunning, skilful, 653; — cunning, † 463; — konyng, 2917; *comp.* cunnyngere, 406; *sup.* konyngest, 4810.
- Conyng, *n. pl.* conies, rabbits, 182. [*The sing. is conyng (Wycl. Gloss.), and we should expect to find conynges here, as in P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 12. See Conyng in Halliwell, who calls it Anglo-Norman. It is Teutonic; cf. Du. konijn, G. kaninchen.*]
- Coraious, *adj. F.* courageous, 3318; — koraious, 3352.
- Corteys, *adj. F.* courteous, 194, 2704; — curteyse, 406, 601; — curteise, 1397; — kurtes, 4405; — curteys, 231; — curtais, † 207.
- Cortynes, *n. pl.* curtains, 2056. Ch.
- Corue, *pp.* carved, cut, 3233.
- Cosynes, *n. F.* female cousin, 625. See the note.
- Coude. See Can.
- Couenabul, *adj. F.* meet, agreeable, suitable, 4089; *sup.* couenablest, 3219. Ch.
- Coupyng, *n. F.* violent encounter, 3602. See Acoupyng.
- Couren, *pr. pl. F.* cower, crouch, 3336; *pt. s.* koured, 47. See Koure.
- Cournales, *n. pl. F.* battlements, † 295. See Kerneles.
- Coupe, *adj. S.* kind, affable, 3659.
- Coupe, Couzde, Couzpe, &c. See Can.
- Couwardli, *adv.* cowardly, 3336.

- Couyne, *n.* F. contrivance, plan, 3147; — koueyne, 952. O. Fr. *convine*. See Roq. and *Coryne* in Ch.
- Coynt, *adj.* F. crafty, artful, skilful, 653, 1981; — coyntc, 2824; — koynt, 4090; — coynte crag (as we say a *sly corner*), 2850.
- Coynted him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 4644.
- Coyntise, *n.* F. stratagem, art, 448, 1688, 1972; — coyntice, 1665; — coyntyse, 1670, 1825.
- Cracche, *n.* F. manger, 3233. "Cracche, crache, *stall, crib*, Job vi. 5; Lk. ii. 7, 12, &c." *Wycl. Gloss.*
- Craft, *n.* 635; — kraft, 559.
- Crafti, *adj.* S. skilful, clever, 1681; *comp.* craftier, 1680. See Carfti.
- Craftli, *adv.* S. prudently, 3828.
- Crep, *pt. s.* crept, † 1009; *pt. pl.* crepten, 2235. See Krepe.
- Cri, *n.* F. proclamation, 2249; — kri, 2174; — kry, 5405.
- Criande, *pres. part.* crying, 4347.
- Crie mercy, to beg for mercy, 1276.
- Croice, *n.* F. cross, 350, 3127; — croyce, 1343, 3493.
- Cristen, *adj.* Christian, 522.
- Cunly, Cumme, Cunsed. See Comly, Come, Comsed.
- Cunstabul, *gen. sing.*, constable's, 4212.
- Cunter, *n.* F. an encounter, 1344.
- Cuntre, *n.* F. country, 6; — kontrey, 241; — kuntre, 1673; — kontre, 722; *pl.* cuntreis, 1922; kuntres, 5474.
- Curtais, Curteise. See Corteys.
- Curtesliche, *adv.* F. courteously, 233; — curteysly, 274; — curtesli, 347; — curteisle, 353; — knrteyslyche, 873; — kurtesliche, 1430; — kurteisly, 1986; — curteyseliche, 2662; — kortesliche, 1430; &c. See Corteys.
- Cuuerede. See Keuer.
- Dalt. See Dele.
- Damisele, *n.* F. damsel, 401, 562, 589; *pl.* damiscles, 1978.
- Dar, 1 *p. pres. s.* I dare, 564, 938; der, 2169; 1 *p. s. pt.* dorst, 2040; *pl. s.* dorst, 305.
- Dar, *pr. s. in the phrase* "dar no mon hem wite," no one need blame them, 2434. "It is equivalent here to *thurf*, from S. *pearfan*, Teut. *darfen*, to need." — M. See Thort.
- Dared, *pt. s.* looked dazed, stared as if stupefied, gazed fixedly, 4055. See Way's note on "Daryn" in Prompt. Parv. Ch.
- Darked, *pt. s.* lay hid, lurked, 17, 44, 2543; *pl.* darkeden, 1834; darked, 2851.
- Dawe, *n.* S. day, *in phr.* brouzt of dawe = bereft of life, 3818 (cf. † 56); *pl.* dawes, 77, 3704, 4719; daywes, 570; daies, 5490. [*When the pl. takes the form dawes (daywes) it is preceded by lif.*]
- Dawe, *v.* S. to dawn, 3261; *pt. s.* it dawed, 1791, 2218, 2480.
- Debate, *n.* F. strife, 2779; — debat, 4380.
- Debonureli, *adv.* F. courteously, meekly, 730. Cf. Bonure.
- Ded, dead; *in phr.* "ded as dore-nail," 628, 3396. [In P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 26, we have "as deed as a dore-trec," where the earlier text has "ded as a dore-nayl." See P. Pl. A. i. 161.]
- Dedain, *n.* F. disdain, † 313. O.F. *desdaing*.
- Dedaine, *adj.* F. disdainful, † 584.
- Dede, *n.* S. deed, 1197; an action, i. e. a battle, 1137, 1187; *pl.* dede, 3807; dedes, 1368; dedus, 1096, 3406, 4115.



- Dede, *n.* S. death, 2072; *usually* deth, *as in* 151.
- Dede, *did.* See Do.
- Dedut, *n.* F. pleasure, 4998.
- Deerne. See Dern.
- Defaute, *n.* F. default, 1185.
- Defoyled, *pt. pl.* F. trampled on, depressed, 4614.
- Degised. See Disgised.
- Deie, *v.* to die, 546. † 375; —lei, 696; —deyen, 3353; 1 *p. s. pr.* deize, 4349; deie, 919; 1 *p. pl.* pr. deizen, 3598; *pt. s.* deide, 1322, † 1013; deyde, 113; *pt. pl.* deyde, 1407.
- Del, *n.* S. part; furpe del = fourth part, 1284. Cf. Tenpedel.
- Del, *n.* F. dool, sorrow, 349, 1510; —dol, 781, 2054; —doel, 1909; —dool, 88; —doole, † 242, † 613, † 926; —dul, 2757; —duel, 564, 919, 1318, 1321, 1370, 1647, &c.
- Delfulli, *adv.* sorrowfully, grievously, 1980; —dolfulli, 2434; —doolefully, † 32; —dulfulli, 2335, 4371; —duelfulli, 578, 3422. See also Dulfull.
- Dele, *v.* S. to deal, deliver (blows), 1222; *pt. s.* dalt, 2791; *pt. pl.* delten, 3440; *pres. part.* deland, 1235; *pp.* dalt, 1271.
- Deliuier, *adj.* F. quick, nimble, 3596.
- Deliuierly, *adv.* quickly, 349, 776, 1119, 1702; —deliuierli, 1510, 1909; —deliuierliche, 1245. Ch.
- Deme, *v.* S. to judge, declare, 151, 1074; *phr.* “to deme pe sope,” 151, 583, 1161, 2633.
- Demeyned him, *pt. s.* behaved, 1201, 3636; *pt. pl.* demened hem, 1222.
- Denede, *pt. s.* dinned, resounded, 5014.
- Dent. See Dint.
- Departe, *v.* F. (*intr.*) to part asunder, sever, 2334, 5422; 1 *p. pt.* departed, 2026; *pt. s. (trans.)* departed, 3594.
- Depeinted, *pp.* painted, portrayed, 3573; —depeynted, 3217. Ch.
- Der. See Dar.
- Deraied him, *pt. s.* F. acted madly (like a man *disordered* in mind), 2061; —deraied him, 3741; —drayed (*read* derayed ?) him, 1210; —deraide [hym ?], † 883. O. F. *desroyer, deroyer, dessarroyer.*
- Deraine, *v.* F. to make good, to sustain a refusal (*a law term*), † 124; —dereine, † 356. “*Desrener*, to dereine; to justifie, or make good, the denial of an act, or fact.” Cotgrave.
- Dere, *v.* S. to harm, injure, 953; —derie, † 1240. Ch.
- Dere, *adj.* S. dear, precious, 401; *phr.* “whan zou dere likes,” 1050; “him dere pouzt,” 1268; “zou dere pinkes,” 4352, 4727.
- Derk, *n.* darkness, 1285, † 714.
- Derly, *adv.* S. dearly, sumptuously, 1421; —derli, 4312, 4374.
- Derling, *n.* S. a darling, 1538; *pl.* derlinges, 2568.
- Dern, *adj.* S. secret, 1792; —derne, † 478; —deerne, † 826; *pl.* derne, † 860. Ch.
- Dernly, *adv.* S. secretly, 17, 131, 1311, 1799; —dernli, 1050, 2208.
- Derworpe, *adj.* S. precious, dear, 585, 2585; —derworpe, 1745, 2633, 4140, 5311; —dereworth. † 613; —dereworthe, † 431, † 692, † 1240; *sup.* de[r]worpest, 3209. P. Pl.
- Des, *n.* F. The *daüs*, or seat of honour, 4312, 4338; —dese, 4011.
- Describe, *v.* F. to describe, 5005, 5025; 1 *p. s. pt.* descriued, 3042.
- Deschuer, *v.* F. to discover, reveal, 3192.

- Descunering, *n.* discovery, 1043 ;  
—discueryng, 1024.
- Descuy, *v.* F. to deceive, 3306.
- Desgeli. *See* Disgisili, *and the note*  
*on l.* 5014.
- Desmays you, *imp.* be dismayed,  
3040.
- Desparaged, *pp.* disparaged, 485.
- Despit, *n.* F. mischief, injury,  
555, 4227 ;—despyt, 3335.
- Despitously, *adv.* mischievously,  
maliciously, 1137 ;—despitusly,  
1210.
- Desseece, *n.* F. decease, 4101.
- Destene, *n.* F. destiny, 315.
- Destruye, *v.* F. to destroy, 2930 ;  
—destruc, 4147 ;—destrye, 4262 ;  
*pp.* destruyt, 2847 ; destrued, 2646 ;  
destruyed, 2124.
- Deuel, *n.* S. devil, 1976 ; *phr.*  
“a deuel wai,” 1978. Ch.
- Deuer, *n.* F. duty, 474, 2546 ;—  
deuere, 520. Ch.
- Deuis, *n.* F. device, 3222.
- Denise, *v.* F. to describe, talk  
about, tell of, 2985 ;—diuise, 1316,  
2635 ; deuce, 1603 ; *pt. pl.* deuised,  
3302.
- Denouteliche, *adv.* devoutly, car-  
nestly, 2976 ;—deuoteliche, 1245.
- Denoyde, *v.* F. to quit, leave,  
2044.
- Digised. *See* Disgised.
- Digne, *adj.* F. worthy, 583, 4583 ;  
—ding, † 313. Ch.
- Dignely, *adv.* worthily, 520 ;—  
dingneli, 4567.
- Diked, *pp.* dug out, 2233.
- Dint, *n.* a stroke, blow, 1234,  
2784, † 343 ;—dent, 2757, 3750 ;  
*pl.* dintes, 1222, † 124, † 130 ;—  
dentes, 1215, 3440 ;—dyntes,  
† 295.
- Disgised, *pp.* disguised, 1677 ;—  
degised, 3888 ;—digised, 2530.
- Disgisi, *adj.* F. in disguise,  
masked, mummerwise, 1620 ;—dis-  
gesye, secret, 2715.
- Disgisili, *adv.* strangely, extra-  
ordinarily, 485 ;—desgeli, 5014, *on*  
*which line see the Note.*
- Diting, *an error for* Tiding, 1478.
- Diuise. *See* Deuise.
- Dist, *v.* S. to dispose, get ready,  
prepare, 3253 ; *pt. s.* (with him),  
1119 ; *pt. pl.* (with hem), 1799 ;  
*pp.* dist, i. e. dressed, prepared,  
ready, destined (with reference to  
death), 151, 315, 776, 1620, 1643,  
1677, 3222 ; 1 *p. imp. pl.* “dist  
we vs henne,” let us readily go  
hence, 2553. Ch.
- Done, *v.* S. to do, to cause. 320,  
860 ; *also* to fight (metaphorically),  
3252 ; 1 *p. pr. s.* do, 3249 ; 3 *p.*  
*pr. s.* dop, 925 ; dos, 4202 ; 2 *p.*  
*pr. pl.* dop, 1452 ; 3 *p. pr. pl.* don,  
3244 ; 1 *p. pt. s.* dede, 555 ; 3 *p.*  
*pt. s.* dede, 862, 1025 ; dude, 3427 ;  
*pt. pl.* dede, 2092 ; dude, 1145 ;  
*imp. s.* do, 2127 ; *imp. pl.* dop,  
3507 ; *pp.* don, 2928 : do, 936,  
1024. *Phr.* dude to dethe = did  
to death, killed, 3427 ; dude hem  
forp = went forth, 1145 ; dede  
hem on gate = went on their way,  
2092 ; *cf.* 1119 ; dede him out,  
went out, 2061 ; done (*pp.*) =  
dead, 937. “When followed by  
another verb, the latter is always  
in the infinitive mood (as in the  
case after all the other auxiliaries)  
and [often] receives a passive sig-  
nification.”—M. E. g. *dede calle*,  
caused to be called, 1522 ; *dede*  
*clepe*, 1299 ; *do eric*, cause to be  
proclaimed, 2127, 4049 ; *do kepe*,  
cause to be kept, 413, *dede fecche*,  
1303 ; *do quelle*, cause to be killed,  
1246 ; *dede translate*, caused to be  
translated, 167. The exception to  
this is when the verb following is  
*neuter*. E.g. *dede astente*, made  
to stop, 1526 ; *dede to mete*, caused  
to dream, 862 ; *dede renne*, caused  
to run, 3390 ; *do vanisch*, 639.

- Another exception is when *do* is followed by *him* (used reflexively), as in *do him loþe mi loue*, cause himself to loathe my love. 516. Another phrase is *do to wite* (651, 1331, 1459) = to cause to know, which is still in use, and in which *to wite* takes the place of the A.S. *gerund*.
- Doel, Dol, Dool. *See* Del.
- Dof, *imp. s.* doff thou, do thou off, 2342.
- Doluen, *pp.* (from *delve*), buried, 4210; *doluen quie*, buried alive, 1564; *ded and doluen*, dead and buried, 2630, 5280, †1026. Ch.
- Dom, *n. s.* judgment, doom, 1220. Ch.
- Dornayl, Dorenail. *See* Ded.
- Dorst. *See* Dar.
- Doted, *pp.* F. foolish, idiotic, 4055. *See* A-dotep. Ch.
- Dounes, *n. pl. s.* downs, 2903.
- Doun riȝtes. *See* Riȝtes.
- Douten, *pr. pl.* fear, are afraid of, †168. O.F. *douter*. Cf. Adouted.
- Douȝter, *gen. sing.* daughter's, 3152.
- Doutusli, *adv.* doubtfully, 4338. Cf. *Doutous* in Ch.
- Douȝti, *adj. s.* doughty, brave, 1101, 1215, 1352; —*douȝthi*, 1302, 2709; —*douȝty*, 1318; *comp.* *douȝtiere*, 1161; *sup.* *douȝtiest*, 1197.
- Douȝtili, *adv.* bravely, 1222.
- Draihlt. *See* Dreche.
- Drawe. *See* Drouȝ.
- Drayed. *See* Deraied.
- Dreche, *v. s.* to disturb, molest, †765; *pt. s.* draihlte, †752; *pp.* draihlt, †820. A.S. *dreccan*, *pt. t.* *drēhte*, *pp.* *drēht, gedrēht*. Ch. *See* Way's note in Prompt. Parv.
- Drede, *n. s.* dread, fear, 1909; *miswritten* dredre, 1892.
- Dreew. *See* Drouȝ.
- Drem, *n. s.* a droning noise, †781, †982. *See* note to l. †781.
- Dreme, *n. s.* a dream, 752.
- Dressed him, *pt. s.* addressed himself, 1237.
- Dreȝing, *n. s.* suffering, 919. Cf. Drie.
- Drie, *v. s.* to endure, suffer, 1772, †373; —*drye*, 459, †1069; —*dry*, †1067; 1 *p. pr. s.* *drye*, 459; 2 *p. pr. pl.* *drizen*, 3704; *pt. s.* *dried*, †242; *drey*, 2864; *dreih*, 2796. A.S. *dreogan*. *See* *dree*. Cf. Mæso-Goth. *dringan*.
- Drift, *n. s.* driving-power, †998; chasing, onset, †897.
- Drinen, *pr. pl.* "drinen forþ þat day," drive forth (i. e. pass) the day, 3065; *pt. s.* *drof* (drove), †891; *pp.* *drine* (driven), 979.
- Dronked, *pp.* drenched, i. e. drowned, 3516.
- Dronken, *pt. pl.* drank, 1906.
- Drowned, *pt. s.* droned, made a droning noise, †985. Cf. Mæso-Goth. *drunjus*.
- Drouȝ, *pt. s.* drew, drew near, approached, 2208; *dreew*, †714; *drow*, 1068, 1235, 1321, 1526, 1914; *drow him*, 4338; *pt. pl.* *drouȝ*, 781, 3065; *drowe*, 1089; *drowen*, 1220; *drow hem*, 1792; *drowen them*, †795; *was drawe him* = had drawn himself, 44.
- Duel, Dul. *See* Del.
- Dulfull, *adj.* doleful, causing dole, †143; —*duelful*, 3440.
- Dupe, *adj. s.* deep, †1132, †1156.
- Duresse, *n. f.* hardship, constraint, cruelty, 1074, 1114, 1125, 1546, &c. Ch.
- Dwelle, *v.* to delay, tarry, 701; *pr. s.* *dwelles*, 1989; *pt. s.* *dwelled*, 1966. Dan. *dræle*. Sw. *dräljas*.
- Dwerþ, *n. s.* a dwarf, 362 (*see* Note). A.S. *dwerg*, Dan. and Sw. *dwerg*.

- Dwined, *pt. s.* pineal, dwindled, 578. A.S. *drinan*. Ch.
- Eche, each, 517. "It is usual to find a (for *an*, one) used after this word, as *eche a barn*, 188; *eche a ryak*, 1172; *eche a strete*, 1617; *eche a kautre*, 1673; *eche a gum*, 3465; [*eche a seg*, 3932:] *eche a baili*, 5357; *eche a lord*, 5399; and when combined with it, is written both in Old English and Scotch, *ilka*."—M.
- Eft, *adv.* afterwards, again, 882, 1049, †552;—eft as fele, as many again, 3372.
- Egge-tol, *n.* edged tool, sharp instrument, 3755. [*It seems to be a compound noun*; cf. A.S. *ecg-bana*, *ecg-héte*, &c.]
- Egged, *pt. s.* S. incited, urged, 1130. A.S. *eggian*. O.N. *eggja*. Dan. *egge*. "*Eggju*, or *entyeyn* to doon' wel or yvele." Prompt. Parv.
- Egre, *adj.* F. eager, courageous, 3636.
- Eiles, *pr. s.* ails, afflicts, 634, 1533;—eyles, 944; *pt. s.* eilede, 951;—eyled, 831. 888.
- Eir, *n.* F. heir, 709, 1474, 4102;—eyr, 4641;—eyer, 77;—eyre, 128.
- Eijer . . . other, each . . . the other, i. e. one another, 1010, 1032, 1613, 2505, 3032, 4889, 5200. Eijer (each), 1054; *spelt* ejer, 833; cf. *eijper*, 1240; *gen. sing.* eijers (each other's), 1014.
- Eizen, *n. pl.* S. eyes, 463, 465, 1063, 1585;—eizyen, 228;—eyizen, 458.
- Ek, but, 715. See Ak.
- Eke, *adv.* also, 473.
- Eld, *adj.* S. old, 3498.
- Elde, *n.* S. old age, 5227.
- Elles, else, otherwise, 1132, 1571, 2671;—eles, †55, †209. A.S. *elles*.
- Em, *n.* S. uncle, 3421, 3435; *gen. sing.* emes, 3426. Ch.
- Emperice, *n.* F. empress, 5343, 5400. Ch.
- Enchaunmens, *n. pl.* enchantments, 137.
- Encheson, *n.* F. occasion, cause, †1070, 3697, 4173;—enchesoun, 1172, †110.
- Ender day, by-gone day, day past, 3042. See P. Pl. Crede, l. 239, and *hendre* in Jamieson.
- Enforced, *pp.* strengthened, forcibly occupied, †908.
- Engines, *n. pl.* warlike engines, †294;—engynes, 3000.
- Enpoysoun, *v.* F. to poison, 4650.
- Ensaumples, *n. pl.* F. examples, †8.
- Enteeches, *n. pl.* F. spots, stains (metaphorically used), 558.
- Entent, *n.* F. intention, 1544.
- Entres, *n. pl.* F. entries, passes, †908.
- Eny, any, 2223;—eni, 1077.
- Enys, *adv.* once, 1093. A.S. *anes*, *gen. of an*, one. [*But it is a mere expletive in this place.*]
- Er, *conj.* S. before, ere, 1612, 2026;—her, 1515;—or, †310, †791. See Ere.
- Erande, *n.* S. an errand, 4156;—herend, 1469;—herande, 1592;—arnd, 5287. Cf. Mæso-Goth. *airinno*, to go on a message.
- Erber, *n.* arbour, 1752.
- Erden, *v.* S. to dwell, 5260; *pt. s.* erded, 1417.
- Ere, *adv.* S. before, formerly, 160, 3031, 4180, 5233. Cf. Arc.
- Eritage, *n.* F. heritage, 4097, †464.
- Erliche, *adv.* S. early, 1296, 2519.
- Ern, *n.* S. an eagle, 3105. Ch.
- Ern = 3erne, †1091. See 3erne.
- Ert, art thou, †592. Ch.

- Eschel, *n.* F. troop, company, battalion, 3379, 3564, 3785. O.F. *eschelle*.
- Esed, *pp.* made at ease, accommodated, 1632, 5338.
- Estres, *n. pl.* F. retreats, recesses (of a garden), 1768. Applied in Ch. to the inward parts of a house, &c. See O.F. *estre* in Roq.  
"Like to the *estres* of the grisly place,  
That hight the gret tempul of Mars  
in Trace."—Ch. Kn. Ta. 1113.  
Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, 1448, 3626.
- Eten, *pt. pl.* ate, 1906, 2515.
- Eth, *adj.* S. easy, 3571. Ch. A.S. *eað*.
- Eþer, either, each, 833. See Eijþer.
- Etteleden, *pt. pl.* hurried, 272. See Attele.
- Euele, *n.* S. evil, mischief, 558, 1065.
- Euen, *adv.* straight, exactly, hard by, 755, 1093;—eueue, 747, 762, 811.
- Euenly, *adv.* straightway, 1747.
- Euen-while, *n.* even-time, even-tide, 1747.
- Euerich, every, 622, 1474;—eueuche on, every one, 5412.
- Facioun. See Fasoun.
- Fade, *pp.* faded, 891.
- Fader, *n.* S. father, 241, &c.; *gen. sing.* fader, 4996.
- Faileden, *pt. pl.* failed, 2660.
- Fain. See Fayn.
- Fairre, *comp. adj.* fairer, 4437.
- Falle, *v. S.* to befall, happen, 324, 806, 1700; *pr. s.* falles me (happens to me), 439; falles (suits, appertains, belongs), 14, 339, 1685, 2789; *pt. s.* fel (befell), 903; fel for (suited), 1766; him fel (behoved him), 4440.
- Fantasie, *n.* F. fancy, apprehension (of evil), †384. Ch.
- Fanteme, *n.* F. a phantom, a fancy, 703, 2315, 4109.
- Fare, *v. S.* to go, 5079, 5142; *pr. s.* fares, 1315; *pt. s.* ferd or ferde, 30, 1479, 2649, (behaved) 884, 2073, (fared, did) 1497, 1499, (befell) 1922; *pt. pl.* ferden, 2745, 2809; ferde, 1913; ferd, 1915; farde, †305; *pp.* faren, 1514, 5468; fare, 2485, †224; faren forþ = proceeded, advanced, 3260; *cf.* 2730, 4450.
- Fare, *n.* S. journey; hence, business, "goings-on," affair (*esp.* a troublesome business), 1091, 2079, 2802, 2943, 4580, &c.
- Farre, *comp. adv.* farther, †244.
- Farly. See Ferli.
- Fasoun, *n.* F. fashion, shape, make, 402, 934, 4440;—fason, 2836;—facioun, 500.
- Fauzt, *pt. s.* fought, 3426; *pt. pl.* fouzten, 3414.
- Fax, *n.* S. hair, 2097.
- Fayn, *adj.* S. glad, 2817;—fain, 1783; *sup.* faynest, 3933; (*adv.*) fayn (gladly), 858.
- Fayre, *adv.* fairly, kindly, 347.
- Feele, Feole. —See Fele.
- Feffe, *v. F.* to enfeoff, provide for, give presents to, 1061; *pp.* feffed, 193. Ch.
- Feintise, *n.* F. faintness, 436;—feyntyce (eowardice), 1188;—feyntise (flinching), 763; *phrase*, "feipli boute feintyse," verily, without flinching (or hesitation), 1543, 3169. Ch.
- Feiþ, *n.* S. faith, 858;—feizþ, 275.
- Feiþli, *adv.* in faith, truly, 777, 828, 912, 1317;—feizþely, 201;—feizþliche, 2732;—feizþli, 4793;—feizþely, 230;—feþli, 132;—feþly, 209;—feizliche [? feizþliche], 261;—fairly, †804;—feizly, 703.
- Feiztful, *adj.* faithful, 337; *comp.* feizfullere, 5434.

- Fel. *See* Falle.
- Fel, *n.* S. skin, 1720, 2361; *pl.* bere-felles (bear-skins), 2414, 2430, 2560.
- Felachipe, *n.* S. fellowship, 777, 1317, 4510; — felachip, 1479.
- Felawe, *n.* S. fellow, companion, 275, 339; *pl.* felawes, 186, 193, 360, &c.
- Feld, *pr. s.* felt, 1; feld foute = perceived the scent, 33; *pp.* feled, 638.
- Feldfares, *n. pl.* fieldfares, 183. Ch.
- Fele, *adj.* S. many, 5, 186, 388, 801, &c; — fel, † 46; — feele, † 880; — feole, † 12.
- Fell, *adj.* S. fierce, cruel, † 364, † 946. *Comp.* feller (of a *fever*), 897; (of a *sickness*), 609; (of a *battle*), 3614; (of a *man*), † 42. Ch.
- Felled, *pt. s.* felled, killed, † 85; *pl. pl.* † 387, 3415; feld, † 352; *pp.* felde, 3638.
- Felli, *adv.* fiercely, 3274; — felly, 3451.
- Felpe, *n.* S. filth; hence (by metaphor) a low fellow, a wretch, 2542, 2545.
- Fend, *n.* S. a fiend, 3130.
- Fende, *v.* to defend, 3650; fende mee = defend myself, fight, † 1201.
- Fenkes, *pr. s.* vanquishes, conquers, † 323; *pp.* fenked, † 111, † 305, † 890; ifenked, † 117. *Probably a modification of F. vaincre, as the spelling venkud occurs in The Seven Sages, 2024. Cf. "For haddest thou fenked the fon (foes)," &c. Alexander, ed. Stevenson, p. 208, l. 339.*
- Fer, *adv.* far, 2546, 2781; *comp.* ferre, 2613, 5167, 5397; *sup.* ferrest, 2433, 5079.
- Ferche. *See* Fers.
- Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 3366.
- Ferd, *n.* S. a troop, company, 386, 5326. A.S. *fjrd.*
- Ferden. *See* Fare.
- Fere, *n.* S. a companion, 364, 1639, 2866; (a spouse), † 960. *Cf.* I-ferre.
- Fere, *adj.* entire, sound, 1583. *Cf.* Icel. *fjerr*, Su.-Go *fjerr*. Dan. and Sw. *för*.
- Fere, † 413. I can only suggest that *to fere* may mean *for fear* (which seems a forced construction), or that we should read *to-fere*, beforehand. *Cf.* To-fore. Line † 415 also seems to be corrupt, and for *þei* we might read *þen*.
- Ferefull, *adj.* S. terrible, † 291, † 411.
- Ferforþ, *adv.* far away, 209.
- Ferke, *v.* to drive, drive onwards by beating, to press hard upon, 3630; *pt. s.* ferked, † 85, † 1221; *pl. pl.* firked, † 67. "*Firk*, to whip, to beat." Halliwell.
- Ferli, *adj.* S. terrible, fearful, 2449, 3186, 3934. A.S. *fjérlíc*.
- Ferli, *sb.* a wonder, 3280, 4531; — ferlich, † 1015; — farly, † 1050. *See preceding word.*
- Ferliche, *adv.* terribly, wonderfully, 3238.
- Fers, *adj.* F. fierce, severe, 436, 3351, 3641; — ferse, † 70, † 276; — ferehe, 3796.
- Fersche, *adj.* fresh, 3633. A.S. *fersc*. *See* Fresch.
- Fersly, *adj.* fiercely, 1766; — fersli, 3348; — ferslich, † 115; — ferselich, † 253; — ferscheli, 3426. *Also spelt* fresly, 1190.
- Ferst, *adv.* first, 648; *adj.* 1163.
- Fesaums, *n. pl.* pheasants, 183. Ch.
- Festened, *pt. s.* fastened, 1720; festned, 1239; *pp.* festened, 447, 3437, 3593; fest, 1650.
- Fet, *n. pl.* S. feet, 1766.
- Fetis, *adj.* F. well made, lovely, pretty, genteel, 126, 1447, 4095;

- fetys, 225, 4435; fetyse, 393;  
— fetise, † 188. O. F. *fetis*. Low  
Latin, *factitius*. Ch.
- Fetisliche, *adv.* fairly, neatly, pro-  
perly, 98.
- Fettes, *pr. s.* fetches, † 628.
- Fetures, *n. pl.* features, 857, 2886.
- Feuer, *n. F.* fever, 897. *In l.*  
1239, *for* of feuer (*as in MS.*) read  
on feuter. *See* Feuter.
- Fente, *n.* scent, trace, 90, 2189;  
— fonte, 33. “*Fente*. Vestigium.”  
Prompt. Parv. “*Fente*, trace of a  
fox or beast of chase by the odour.”  
— Morris.
- Feuter, *n. F.* the rest for the spear,  
3437, 3593. From Lat. *fulcrum*.  
Cf. *fautre* in Roq., and see *Morte*  
*Arthure*, l. 1366. Sir F. Madden  
points out that this is obviously the  
meaning in *Wallace*, iii. 168 (where  
Jamieson renders *fectir* by *rage*,  
from the Icel. *fuðra*, *efflagro* !)
- Feye, *adj.* fated to die, unlucky,  
† 397. A. S. *fége*. Cf. *Morte Arth.*  
121, 4253.
- Feyntice (1239), Feyntise, Feyn-  
tyce. *See* Feintise.
- Feyre, *n. F.* a fair, 1822.
- Feyrye, *n. F.* race of fairies, 230.  
“*See* Keightley’s *Fairy Mythology*,  
vol. i.”—M.
- Festly, Fepli. *See* Fepli.
- Fifte, fifth, 1322.
- Fin, *adj.* fine, great (applied to  
*force*), 1117, † 128; — fyn, 1217.
- Finched, *pp.* finished, 3934.
- Findestow = findest thou, 132.
- Finliche, *adv.* finely, 768, † 1201.
- Firked. *See* Ferke.
- Flagetes, *n. pl.* F. flagons, 1893;  
— flaketes, 1585.
- Flebled, *pt. pl.* became feeble,  
2660, [*But we should rather read*  
febled. Cf. *febul* in l. 5227.]
- Flecchinge, *n. F.* finching, turn-  
ing aside. *See* *fléchir* in Cotgrave.
- Fleeté, *v. S.* to float, † 532. Ch.
- Flen, *v. S.* to flay, 1682; *pp.*  
flayne, 2607.
- Flen, *v. S.* to flee, to fly, 3872;  
— thene, 1856, 3879, 3892; *pt. s.*  
flel, 1896; *imp. pl.* fleþ, 3366.
- Flet, *n. S.* floor of a cottage;  
*hence*, on mi flet = in my cottage,  
5368. A. S. *flett*. *See* *Myrk’s In-*  
*structions for Parish Priests*, ed.  
Peacock; l. 273, *note*.
- Flite, *v. S.* to chide, debate, 2545.
- Flitte, *v. S.* to drive away, banish,  
623.
- Flon, *n. pl. S.* arrows, † 269.
- Floriched, *pp.* flourished, clothed  
with verdure, 2438.
- Floungen, *pt. pl.* flew as if flung,  
were thrown, † 269.
- Fode, *n.* a man, † 209. Cf. Sw.  
*föda*, to bring forth.
- Fodest, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou feedest,  
i. e. suppliest, 1646; *pt. s.* foded,  
57; *imp. pl.* fodes, 2050. Cf. Meso-  
Goth. *fodjan*.
- Fold, *n. S.* earth, ground, 5382.
- Fold, *pp.* folded, 858.
- Folili, *adv.* foolishly, 4596; —  
folliche, 1557.
- Folwe, *v. S.* to follow, 189; *pr. s.*  
folwes, 436; fulwes, 33; *pt. pl.*  
folwed, 3351, 3631; *imp. pl.* folweþ,  
3344.
- Fomen, *n. pl. S.* foemen, foes,  
3274, 3372, † 98.
- Fon, *n. pl. S.* foes, 3269, 3338;  
— fone, † 271, † 332, † 866.
- Fonden, *v. S.* to try, seek, at-  
tempt, † 108; — fonde, 1019,  
3387, † 216, † 385; fond, 777,  
3599; 1 *p. pr. s.* fonde (I seek,  
ask), † 1054; 3 *p. pr. s.* foundes  
(goes), † 121, *pr. pt.* fonden (are  
busy), 1682; *pt. s.* foned, † 740;  
*pt. pl.* fondede (busied themselves,

- 3629; *imp. pl.* fondes, 1114; *pp.* fonded, 623, 801; *pres. part.* founding (going), 1749. A.S. *fandian*.
- Fond, *pt. s.* found, 293, 422, 2730, 4847; *pl.* fond him = found for him, 73.
- Foos. *See* Fos.
- For, *prep.* on account of, 1691; as suited for, 294, 506; in spite of (?), 1226. [*But we should, in the last place, read fro.*]
- For, *conj.* in order that, 746, 2751; because, 1319, 1668.
- For —, an intensive prefix. A.S. *for* —. Mæso-Goth. *fra* —. G. *ver* —. *See* below.
- For-barre, *v.* to bar up, enclose forcibly, 3333; *pt. pl.* for-barred (parried), 1217.
- For-brenne, *v. s.* to burn up, 1188; *pp.* for-brent, 2621, 2831, 3001.
- Forcer, *n. f.* a casket, coffer, 4432, † 628. *See* Way's note on *Foorcere* in Prompt. Parv.
- For-dede, *pt. s.* killed, destroyed (= should kill), 2972; *pp.* fordon, 1563.
- Fordedes, *n. pl.* previous deeds, 325; — fordede, 5182. *See* note to l. 325, and cf. l. 2076.
- Fore, *adv.* beforehand, 2076, 4142. *Cf.* To-fore.
- Fore, *prep.* for, 2941.
- Forfare, *v. s.* to kill, 2762.
- For-fouten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3686. *See* Jamieson.
- For-frete, *pp.* eaten up, 2376. *See* Fret.
- For-gaf, *pt. s.* gave up, 4418.
- For-gete, *pp.* forgotten, 5156.
- For-go, *v.* to forego, lose, 5187.
- For-hungred, *pp.* exhausted with hunger, 2515.
- For-left, *pp.* left, 2497.
- For-lete, *pt. pl.* left, forsook, 2311; *pp.* for-lete, 679.
- For-lore, *pp.* wholly lost, 2955, 4571.
- Formest, *adj.* first, foremost, 1191, 5079, † 40; — formast, 2324; *adv.* (at first, first of all), 939, 1362, 2324.
- For-oute, *prep.* without, 2681.
- Fors, *n.* force, 1117. *See* Fin. *Phrase*, "no fors þei ne leten," they little cared for, 3651. *Cf.* *I do no fors*, I don't care, in *Chaucer* (Aldine edition), vol. vi. p. 305.
- Forschop, 1 *p. pt. s.* I transformed, misshaped, 4394; *pp.* for-schaped, 2639. *Ch.*
- For-sake, *v.* to deny, 1358. A.S. *for-sacan*.
- Fort, *put* for Forto, 788. *See* note.
- Forþeres, *pr. s.* proceeds, 5397.
- Forþ-fare, *pp.* departed, 5266.
- Forþi, For-þi, *conj.* S. on that account, therefore, 723, 1051, 1624, &c.
- Forþinkes me, *pr. s. impers.* it mislikes me, grieves me, 5422; *pt. pl. refl.* forthoughten hem, repented, † 446. *Ch.*
- Forþward, *adv.* S. forward, 3630.
- For-waked, *pp.* exhausted with waking, worn out for want of sleep, 785, 793, 1797; —al for-waked, 790; —al for-walked, 2236. "Chaucer uses it, *Cant. Ta.* 5016, and *Wyntoun*, viii. 16. 141."—M.
- Forwandreþ, *pr. s.* wanders long, 739. "In Chaucer is the *pp.* forwandred, *Rom. Rose*, 3336."—M. *See* also P. Pl. A. *prob.* 7.
- Forward, *n. s.* a compact, 1451; *pl.* forwardes, 1557, 1568, 1650.
- For-wept, *pp.* worn out with weeping, 2868. "In Chaucer's *Dreme*, 1833, and *King's Quair*, ii. 54."—M. *Cf.* Bi-wept.
- For-wery, *adj.* exceeding weary, 2443 "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose*, 3336."—M. *Cf.* Dan. *langravig*.



- For-wounded, *pp.* much wounded, 3686. "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose*, 1830."—M.
- For-ȝeten, *pt. pl.* forgot, 1909; *pp.* for-ȝete, 4934. See For-gete.
- Fos, *n. pl.* foes, 1190; —foos, 2699. See Fon.
- Fostredes, 2 *p. pt. s.* didst foster, 5376.
- Fote, *n. S.* a foot (used as a measure), 4033.
- Fouche, *in phrase*, "sauf wol I fouche," I will vouch-safe or guarantee, 4152.
- Foule, *adv.* fully, 1646.
- Foules, *n. pl. S.* birds, 822; *gen.* foulou, 805.
- Foundes, Founding. See Fonden.
- Fourtenizȝt, *n. S.* a fortnight, 2681; —fourtenenizȝt, 1337; —fortenizȝt, 2423; *gen.* fourtenizȝtes, 2683.
- Foute. See Feute.
- Fouȝten. See Fauȝt.
- Fowlye, *n.* folly, † 1103.
- Frakes. See Freke.
- Fram. See Fro.
- Frauȝt, *pp.* freighted, 2732.
- Frayne, *v. S.* to ask, inquire, 250; 1 *p. pt. s.* freyned, 2034; *pt. s.* freyned, 1303, 3587; *pt. pl.* freyned, 394. "Somner says that in his time this word still prevailed in Lancashire."—M.
- Fre, *adj. S.* liberal, generous, noble, 337, 386, 1061, 3277; *used as sb.* 505; *opposed to* pewe, 5514. See Sir F. Madden's *Reply to Mr Singer's Remarks on Havelok*, p. 15.
- Fredom, *n. S.* liberal disposition, 189.
- Freke, *n. S.* a man, 402, 1117, † 193, &c.; —frek, 264, 897, 934, &c.; *gen.* frekes, 3886; *pl.* frekes, 442, 2286; —frakes, 3504. Applied to a young boy in l. 4078. The A.S. *frec* is chiefly used "in a bad sense, but the root exists in the Su.-G. *fræck*, Isl. *frek*, strenuus, ferox."—M. Cf. Sw. *fräck*, Dau. *fräk*.
- Freliche, *adj. S.* noble, genteel, 428, 822, 3876; —frelī, 5329; —frelȝ, 124, 366, 500; —frelȝliche, 360; —frelȝlich, † 209, † 1003, † 1245.
- Frelī, *adv. S.* nobly, honourably, 5329. *Generally in phr.* "frelȝliche schapen," finely shaped, 126, 225, 393; "frelī schapen," 1447; *sup.* "frelȝkest i-schapen," 2634. "In the Isl. *fráligr* is alacer, celer, strenuus. *Orkneyinga Saga*."—M.
- Fresly. See Fersly.
- Fresch, *adj.* fresh, 3640. See Fersche.
- Fret, *pt. s.* gnawed, 87; *pp.* fretten (*rather read* fretten), † 1159. A.S. *fretan*. G. *fressen*. Cf. For-frete.
- Frip, *n.* a thicket, wood, forest, 822; *pl.* fripes, 2216, † 15. W. *ffridd*. Cf. O. Fr. *fraitis* in Roq.
- Fro, *prep.* from, 13, &c.; —fromme, 425; —fram, 5373.
- Frobroder, *n.* younger brother (*apparently contr. from* from-brother), † 23. [*I cannot find the word elsewhere.*]
- FronD, *n. F.* front, 3584.
- Frotus, *pr. s.* rubs, strokes, † 1174.
- Ful, *adv.* very, 983.
- Fulfillen, *v.* to fulfil, 1451; *pp.* fulfilled, 4319.
- Fulsumli, *adv. S.* plenteously, 4325.
- Fulwes. See Folwe.
- Fundeling, *n.* foundling, 481, 502, 2077.
- Fur, *n. S.* fire, 1188, 4773; —fure, 907, 3759.
- Furpe del, fourth part, 1284.
- Fy, *interj.* fie! 481.

- Gabbe, *pr. pl.* S. talk idly, 1994.  
Ch.
- Gadere, *v. S.* to gather, 30 ; —  
gader, 1022.
- Gaf. *See* Gif.
- Gailiche, *adv.* gaily, 2591 ; —gayli,  
1625, 2597 ; —gayly, 2731.
- Gainli. *See* Gaynli.
- Gainelich, *adv.* † 506. *It is doubt-  
less an error for gamelich : the  
parallel passage in MS. Ashm. 44  
is, "A lowde lafter he loȝc." See  
Gamelly.*
- Gainus, *n. pl.* javelins, † 292. Cf.  
"Ganye, Gainye, Genye, Ganyhe, an  
arrow, javelin." Jamieson. Cf. Ir.  
*gain*, an arrow ; *W. gaing*, a chisel  
or wedge. [*In MS. miswritten  
gamus.*]
- Gamelly, *adv.* playfully, joyfully,  
laughingly, 427 ; —gamelich, † 506 ;  
—gamli, 3383 ; —gameliche, 2591.
- Gamsun, *adj.* S. joyful, 4193.
- Gan, Ganne. *See* Gin.
- Gan, *pr. pl.* they go, 811.
- Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 2372 ;  
—gapande, 2875 ; —gapind, 3503.
- Garisun, *n. F.* provision, reward,  
5073 ; —garissoun, 2491. Cf.  
Warissoun.
- Garnemens, *n. pl.* garments, 3207,  
4160. P. Pl. Crede, 158, *foot-note.*
- Gart, *pt. s.* caused, made, 1248,  
2082, 2168, &c. ; —garte, 1365 ; —  
"gart þis do make," caused this to  
be done, 5529. *See also* 2900.
- Gat. *See* Gete.
- Gate, *n. S.* road, way ; *on gate*,  
on his way, on their way, 1119,  
2092, 4014 ; *on his gate*, 372 ; *on  
here gate*, 1912 ; *on oure gate*,  
2500 ; *on hur gate*, † 379 ; *pl. gatis*,  
gates ; *heie gates*, high-roads,  
1691 ; *geynest gatis*, nearest ways,  
4159 ; *oper-gate*, otherwise, 3761.
- Gayne, *v. impers.* to avail, help,  
profit, 598 ; *pr. s.* gayneþ, 3109 ;  
geimeþ, 3899 ; *pt. s.* geyned, 3891 ;  
*pr. s. subj.* geyne, 3107. Dan.  
*garne*. Sw. *gagna*.
- Gayned, *pt. s.* in "na gref *gayned*  
to his joye," no grief accrued to  
his joy, 2473. Cf. O. F. *gagner*.  
A.S. *gynan*.
- Gaynest, *adj. sup.* nearest, readiest,  
3465 ; —geynest, 4159. Cf. Gayne ;  
and *Gane* in Jamieson.
- Gaynli, *adv.* readily, well,  
thoroughly, 636, 2665, 2706, 3135 ;  
—gaynliche, 369 ; —geinli, 3448 ; —  
geinliche, 744 ; —geynliche, 1030 ;  
—geynli, 3553, &c. Cf. Gaynest.
- Gelt, *n. S.* guilt, 2339, 4403.
- Gemetrie, *n.* geometry, † 548,  
† 644. P. Pl. A. xi. 153.
- Genge, *n. S.* gang, assemblage,  
1600, 1625.
- Gerd him, *pt. s.* girt himself,  
3291.
- Gerdeþ, *pr. s.* strikes, 1240. *See*  
*Girde* in Ch. "But perhaps we  
should read *gretþ*."—M.
- Gere, *n. S.* gear, clothing, 1716,  
2588 ; *stel ger*, steel armour, † 416.  
Ch.
- Gergeis, Greeks, 2200.
- Gerles, girls, 816.
- Gest, *n. F.* geste, romance, 5033 ;  
*pl. deeds*, adventures, 2780. Cf.  
Spenser, F. Q. ii. 2, 16.
- Gestes, *n. pl.* S. guests, 4904.
- Gete, *n. S.* to get, obtain, 644 ;  
1 *p. pt. s.* gat (begat), 4191 ; *pt. s.*  
gat, 2895 ; 1 *p. pt. pl.* gete, 4077 ;  
*pt. pl.* gaten, 1592 ; *pp.* geten,  
1030 ; gete, 799.
- Gie. *See* Gye.
- Gif, *v. S.* to give, 5539 ; —giif,  
1169 ; 1 *p. pr. s.* giue, 531, gif,  
536, 1000 ; *pt. s.* gaf, 395, 992,  
1559 ; *pt. pl.* goue, 4781 ; *pp.* giue,  
5075. *God gif* (God grant), 2157 ;  
*God goue*, 1648 ; *God gof*, 2348.  
*See also under* 3eue.

- Ginne, 1 *p. pr. s.* begin, 1929; *pr. pl.* ginneb, 1185, 2080; *pt. s.* gan, 691, 736; *pt. pl.* gonne, 4009; 1 *p. imp. pl.* ginne, 5104. *Also, as an auxiliary verb; pr. s.* ginnes ride (doth ride), 1189; *pt. s.* gan, 71, 647, 831, &c.; *pt. s. subj.* gunn, 290; *pt. pl.* gonne, 1961, 2200, †292; *gun*, 1154, 3274; *gunne*, 1164, 1272, 1530, 1600; *gon*, 3825.
- Ginnes. *See* Gyne.
- Gist, *adv. (i)* justly (placed), exactly (set), †294. *The gloss iust seems correct.*
- Glade, *v. S.* to gladden, 824, 827; *intr.* to rejoice, 351; *pp.* gladed, 600, 870, 1593. Ch.
- Gle, *n. S.* melody, 824.
- Glede, *n. S.* a burning coal, †729. Ch.
- Gleming, *pres. part.* looking askance, †506. *See* *Glime* in Jamieson.
- Glimerand, *pres. pt.* shining, 1427.
- Glisande, *pres. pt.* glistening, shining, †180, †534, †1196;—*glisiing*, †698.
- Glod, *pt. s.* glided, †279.
- Glosed, *pt. s.* spoke coaxingly, persuaded, 60.
- Go we, let us go, *used for* let us, 1184. *Cf.* "gowe dyne, gowe." P. Pl. A. *prol.* 105.
- God, *n. S.* goods, riches, possessions, 1731, 3523, 5071.
- God, Gode, *adj. S.* good, 1765, &c. "*Used substantively*, 504, 1334, 3777. In the first and last instances *parentage* or *birth* is understood, and *lady* in the second."—M.
- Godli, *adv. S.* goodly, well, fairly, 1305, 1450, 1461;—*godliche*, 1270, 2444, 5031;—*godly*, 169, 2916;—*goddeli*, 306.
- Godelyche, *adj. S.* goodly, fair, 355.
- Godmen, *n. pl.* good men, strong men, 1069.
- Gof. *See* Gif.
- Gome, *n. S.* a man, 670, 824, 851, †221, †252, &c.;—*gom*, 747, 1007, 1092, &c.;—*gum*, 4441; *gen. sing.* gomes, 346, 1687; *pl.* gomes, 1169, 1939.
- Gon, *v. S.* to go, 4902;—*gone*, 2600; *pr. s.* gop, 271, 747, &c.; *pr. pl.* gon, 1687; *gan*, 811; *imp. pl.* gop, 263.
- Gon, Gonne. *See* Ginne.
- Gost, *n. S.* spirit, breath of life, 992, 1559, 2120; a phantom, 1730.
- Goue. *See* Gif.
- Gradden, *pt. pl.* cried out; *grad-den hur griß*, cried out for peace, made a treaty, †151. P. Pl. A. ii. 59.
- Graith, *adv.* straight, at once, †863. *Cf.* Greip.
- Graipd. *See* Greipe.
- Graithlich. *See* Greipli.
- Grame, *n. S.* anger, wrath, 2200. Ch.
- Gras, *n. S.* grass, herb, 644, 799, 1030; *pl.* grasses, 27.
- Grathly. *See* Greipli.
- Greate, *v.* to greet, †705.
- Grece, *n. S.* grass, 636. *See* Gras.
- Grece, *n. F.* a flight of steps, stairs, 811. *See* Way's note in Prompt. Parv.
- Gref, *n. F.* grief, 2473; vexation, anger, 4418;—*greefe*, †264; *pl.* greues. 778, 868, 956, &c.
- Greefly, *adv.* grievously; *greefly ligo*, grievously beset, †490, †994.
- Gregoyse, *n. pl.* Greeks, 5104.
- Greip, *adj.* ready, 5296;—*greyt*, 2731. [*These seem to be adjectives rather than from Greipe.*]
- Greipe, *v.* to dress, prepare, make ready, array, 1719, 3558, 4274;

- pr. s.* graipes, † 254; *pt. s.* greiped, 3288; graythed, † 77; *pt. pl.* greiped, 1931, 3207; *pp.* greiped, 1945, 3766, 3768; graythed, † 26; graiped, † 258, 2933; greized (p. greiped) 5002; greyt, 2731; greip, 5296 (*but see* Greip); 1 *p. imp. pl.* greiþe we us, 2588. O. N. *greiða*. [For *greþand*, 1427, read *greþed*.] Cf. A-greþed.
- Greiþli, *adv.* readily, quickly, 984, 3492, 4257; —greiþli, 998; —graiþliche, † 588; —graiþliche, † 562; —graiþly, † 711.
- Gremþe, *n.* S. anger, fierceness, 2080, † 221, † 279. "In 1sl. *grimd*; see *Gautrek's Saga*, p. 251." —M. Cf. Grame.
- Grendes, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou grindest, † 510.
- Gresli. See Grisli.
- Grete, *adj.* great; used (in *pl.*) substantively (as at present) for persons of rank, 1107, 1595, 1936; *comp.* gretter, 1859; *sup.* grettest, 928; *miswritten* grettes, 1196.
- Grete, *v.* S. to greet, accost, 1430; *pr. s.* gretes, 233; *pt. s.* gret, 1393, 1986; grett, 873, 4532; grette, 369; *pt. pl.* gretten, 1334; grette, † 920; *imp. pl.* gretes, 355; greteþ, 359; *pres. part.* gretand, 3816.
- Greteli, *adv.* greatly, 1292; —gretliche, 975, 2444; —gretly, 600; —grettli, 2665; —gretteli, 4872.
- Gretyng, *n.* S. salutation, 234.
- Greue, *n.* S. a grove, 3634.
- Greue, *v.* F. to vex, injure, 689, 2875, 4028; *pr. s.* greues, 530, 608, 889, 899; *pr. pl.* greuen (*sub.* wounds), 1378; *imp. s.* greue, 2793.
- Greues. See Gref.
- Grewes, Greeks, 2080.
- Grim, *n.* S. anger, fury, † 904. A.S. *grim*, fury.
- Grint, *pt. s.* S. ground, pierced through, 1242, 3443.
- Gript, *pt. s.* S. gripped, seized, 744.
- Grisli, *adj.* S. formidable, frightful, 1730; —grisliche, 4343; —grissiliche, 4935; —grislich, † 434; —gresli, 1687.
- Grip, *n.* S. peace, security, 3891, 3899; *gradden hur grip*, sued for peace, † 151; *grawted him grip*, granted him peace, 3927.
- Grocching. See Grucching.
- Grom, *n.* S. groom, man, 1767. "Evidently the representative of *gome* and formed from it, as *bridegroom* is from *brid-guma*."—M.
- Grot, *n.* groat, 4257. "It may also mean a thing of no value, from S. *greót*, pulvis."—M.
- Growen, *pr. pl.* grow, 1812.
- Grucche, *v.* F. to murmur, be unwilling; 2 *p. pr. subj.* grutche, 4257; *imp. s.* grucche, 1450; *pt. s.* grucched, 3927; *pres. part.* grocching, 271. Ch.
- Grucching, *n.* S. murmuring, 1461, 2687.
- Grunt, *pt. pl.* groaned, † 388.
- Gryffouns, Greeks, 1961. " Cf. *Griffouns* in Halliwell.
- Gult, 1 *p. pt. s.* injured, 1172. See A-gult.
- Gum. See Gome.
- Gun, Gunne. See Ginne.
- Gye, *v.* F. to guide, lead, govern, 1105, 2664, † 316, † 328; —gie, † 287. Ch.
- Gye, *n.* F. guide, 2727, 2849.
- Gyled, *pp.* beguiled, cheated, 689. Ch.
- Gynne, *n.* a contrivance, art, † 1135; *pl.* ginnes, † 548, † 644. Ch.
- Hache, *n.* S. ache, pain, 905; —hacche, 847; *pl.* haches, 615, 1575; —hacches, 826, 902. "Still pronounced *aitch* in Cheshire. Vide Wilbraham's Glossary."—M.

- Haches, *n. pl.* hatches (of a ship), 2770, 2776. Ch.
- Hadden, Hadestow. *See* Haue.
- Hakernes, *n. pl.* S. acorns, 1811.
- Hal, *adj.* all, 323, 371.
- Halde, *v. S.* to hold, 1304; *pr. s.* haldes, 905, 932; *pr. pl.* holden, 2711; *pt. pl.* helden, 946; *pp.* holde (bound, beholden), 317; hold, 4722; holde (considered as, esteemed), 2833, 3773, 4158; hold, 1355; *imp. s.* hald, 343; *imp. pl.* haldes, 106.
- Half, *n.* side, 3971; *on goddes halve*, on God's side, in God's name, 2803.
- Halp. *See* Helpes.
- Hampris, *pr. s.* hampers, impedes, troubles, 668; *pp.* hampered, 441; hampred, 4694; *imp. pl.* hampres, 1115. *Cf.* Su.-Goth. *hæmma*, Dan. *hemme*, to *hem* in.
- Han. *See* Haue.
- Hange, *pp.* hung, 5479. [*Better* hanged. *Cf.* Honget.]
- Hap, *n.* chance, fortune, 414, 440, 1794, 1798; — happ, 806; — happe, 32; *pl.* happes, 1815, 1840, 1885, &c.; —vp happe (perhaps), 2722. Icel. *happ*. W. *hap*. Ch.
- Happe, *v. F.* to get, receive, light on, 3340. *Cf.* F. *happer*, to seize.
- Happili, *adv.* haply, by chance, 2774, 4130; —happiliche (luckily), 2495.
- Hard, *adj.* used *substantively* to denote danger or hardship, 435; —harde, 472, 2339; —as harde as (as fast as), 1082, 1857; *cf.* 1286.
- Hardien, *vb.* to make hard, embolden, 1156.
- Hardnesse, *n.* hardship, 1816. Ch.
- Harmes, *n. pl.* sorrows, 453.
- Harmles, *adj.* unharmed, 1671.
- Harneis, *n.* harness, body-armour, horse-trappings, 1582; —harneys, 2349, 4187, 4251. Ch.
- Has, *for* As, 1857.
- Has, *for* Hast, 606.
- Haselnotes, *n. pl.* hazel-nuts, 1811.
- Hastely, *adv.* quickly, soon, 58, 233, 1566; —hasteli, 597, 1051; —hastilyche, 2571; *comp.* hastlier (sooner), 4160.
- Hastou, Hastow, hast thou. *See* Haue.
- Haue, *v.* to have, 72; 1 *p. pr. s.* haue, 519; 2 *p. pr. s.* hastou (hast thou), 1545; hastow, 1005, 1556; has, 606; 3 *p. pr. s.* hap, 477, &c.; has, 475; 2 *p. pr. pl.* han, 4093; haue, 1030; *pr. pl.* han, 361; 2 *p. pt. s.* hadestow (hadst thou), 1816; *pt. s.* had, 369; *pt. pl.* hadden, 1014; hadde, 1259; *imp. s. a.* 1177; *imp. pl.* haueþ, 3339; 2 *p. pr. s. subj.* haue, 4255.
- Hautene, *adj.* F. haughty, proud, 3982; —hauteyn, 472, 529, 707, 729; (loud), 2187.
- Hawes, *n. pl.* haws, berries, 1811.
- Hed, *pt. pl.* hid, 2848; —hedde, 1793; *pp.* hed, 688.
- Heie, *adj.* high, 749; —heiz, 103; —heizh, 569, 1156; —heye, 252; —hize, 5372; *adv.* hyez, 707; *comp.* herre, 529, 1178; *superl.* heizest, 2907. *Heie gates*, high-ways, 1691; *heiz-waye*, 1846. *On heiz*, 2020. *Heiz midnizt*, 2066. *Heize dese*, high dais, 4011.
- Heili, *adv.* highly, greatly, *often joined to the vb.* herie, as, herizeden heili, 3461; —heriende heiliche, 1584; —heriede hizliche, 1798; —to herien heizli, 1875; —hilieh herie, †703; —heizli (earnestly), 5495; —heizeliche, 2336; —heizeli, 4720.
- Heiz vs, *vb. refl.* *See* Hize.
- Heizing, *n.* hurrying, fast travelling, 2440.
- Heizresse, *n. pl.* S. hairs, i. e. hair-

- cloths (by way of penance), 4778. Cf. P. Pl. A. v. 48. The spelling *heizresse* for *heizres* is like that of *bodisse* for *bodies*, 3767, and *lordesse* for *lordes*, 4539. A.S. *hæra*, a hair-cloth.
- Hel, *n. S.* a hill, 2233, 2318; *pl. helles*, 2432.
- Held, *n. S.* (*put for Eld*), *agc.* 403.
- Helden. See Halde.
- Hele, *v. S.* to hide, conceal, 960, 4206; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* hele þou, 945. Ch.
- Hele, *v. S.* to heal, 595; *pp.* heled, 1329, 1575.
- Hele, *n. S.* health, 597, 1375. Ch.
- Helpes, *imp. pl. S.* help ye, 2378; *helpesþ*, 4409; *pt. s. halp*, 2206; *pp.* holpen, 3611; *holpe*, 4012, 4149; *holp*, 4494.
- Helplich, *adj.* helpful, †187.
- Hem, *pron. dat.* to them, 169; *acc. them, passim.* Hemsself (themselves), 812, &c.
- Hende, *v.* to end, 540.
- Hende, *n.* end, 2333, 4178.
- Hende, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 106, 184, 348, 362, †665, &c.;—hend, 165, 1103. O.N. *hendt*, adapted; Dan. and Sw. *händig*.
- Hende, *adv.* at hand, near, 278, 2513.
- Hendeli, *adv.* courteously, gently, 1917, 4311;—hendely, 269, 523, †187, †248;—hendli, 2469, 3032;—hendly, 2785.
- Heng, *pt. s.* hung, 734.
- Henne, *adv.* hence, 1746, 2553; *hennes*, 329. Ch.
- Hennes-forþ, henceforth, 1050.
- Hent, *v. S.* to take, catch, get, 2394; 1 *p. pr. s.* hent, 414; 2 *p. pr. s.* hentest, 2787; *pr. s.* hentes, †527; hentis, 907; 1 *p. pt. s.* hent, 615; *pt. s.* hent, 150, 1010, 2754, &c.; *pt. pl.* henten, 4023; hent, 2420. Hentes *vp* (catches up), 1896; hent *vp* (caught up), 3948.
- Hepus, *n. pl.* hips, berries, 1811.
- Her, *conj.* ere, 1516. See Er.
- Herande, Herend. See Erand.
- Herberwed, *pp.* harboured, lodged, 1626. Ch.
- Herberes, *n. pl.* garden-plots, 1768. See P. Pl. Crede, 166.
- Herde, *n. S.* host, army, 1120.
- Herden, *pt. pl.* heard, 1298.
- Here, *pers. pron.* her, 1716, &c.;—hire, 150, &c.;—hir, 673, &c.;—hure, 2915. The spelling hire is the commonest; hure occurs but once; here is used of the sun, 3073.
- Here, Hire, *poss. pron.* her. See page 95.
- Here, *poss. pron.* their, 14, 73, &c.
- Here-bi-fore, heretofore, 3043, 3959.
- Herende. See Erande.
- Heres, 2 *p. imp. pl.* hear ye, 2291, 2624. Cf. Herden.
- Herien, *v. S.* to praise, 1875; herie, 5208, †703; *pt. pl.* heriede, 1798; herieden, 3461; *pp.* herized, 4484, 5372; heried, 4577, †536; *pres. part.* heriend, 1584. Ch. See Heili.
- Heried, *pt. s. S.* harried, harrowed, 3725. An allusion to "The Harrowing of Hell."
- Herken, *v. S.* to hearken, 213; 2 *p. imp. pl.* herkenes, 2248, 2617.
- Hert, *n. S.* a hart, 2569.
- Herted, *pp.* encouraged, 3417.
- Herre. See Heie.
- Hertily, *adv.* heartily, 97, 102;—hertly, 3324.
- Herto, *adv.* hitherto, 4656.
- Hese, *n.* case, 1638, 3208.
- Hest, *n. S.* command, 468, 495, 2137, 2146, &c.;—heste, †160. A.S. *hæts*.

- Hete, *v. S.* to bid, tell, 1021; 1 *p. pr. s.* hete, 572, 1002, 1626; *pt. s.* 1082, 2045, 2089; hett, † 543; *imp. pl.* hete, 4159. *See also* Hote, Hizt.
- Hetterly, *adv.* violently, angrily, 150, 886, 1243; — hetterli, 2756. *Cf.* A.S. *hættol*, hot, furious; Sw. *hetta*, heat; O.N. *heitr*, hot, angry. *See Gawayne and the Grene Knight.*
- Heue vp, *v.* to heave up, 348.
- Hewe, *n. S.* hue, 3502, 3572.
- Hewen, *pp.* hewn, 3616.
- Hi, they, † 231.
- Hiden, *v. S.* to hide, 4697; — hude, 2743. *And see* Hed.
- Hider, *adv.* hither, 2277.
- Hider-to, hitherto, up to the present time, 3510.
- Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 3177, 3201, 3218.
- Hidus, *n. pl.* hides, 3201.
- Hight. *See* Hizt.
- Him, *referring to* day, 2993.
- Hir, Hire. *See* Here.
- Hirne, *n. S.* a corner, 3201; — hurne, 688. Ch.
- Hirt, *pt. s.* hurt, 3607.
- His, *put for* Is, 3836.
- Hise, *poss. pron. pl.* his, 4115.
- Hit, it, 198, 470, &c.
- Hize, *v. S.* to hasten, haste, 1082, 1286, 2146, 3454, 4162, 5258; hei; us, 1746; hize hire, 1969; hize me, 5196; *used as transit. vb.* to make to haste, 1482; *pt. s.* hized, 1261, 2177; *pt. pl.* hized, 1123; hized hem, 1940; heizden, 2280; hezeden, 2285; heizeden, 2878; hizeden. 4546; *imp. pl.* hizes, 4486; hizes zou, 1187; heize zou, 1051.
- Hizt, 1 *p. pr. s.* am called, 70; *pt. s.* hizt (was called), 2838, 2918; hight, † 23, † 34; hyght, † 52, † 119, † 133; *pt. pl.* hizten, 4775; *pp.* hote, hoten. *See* Hote. *Cf.* A-hizt.
- Hizt, promised. *See* Hote.
- Ho, *pron.* who, 188, 4919; *pl. ho.* 2733. Ho-so (whoso), 1256, 4519; hoo-so, 2135.
- Hok, *n. S.* oak, 1793. *See* Ok.
- Hol, *adj.* S. whole, sound, 1056, 1566, 1655, 3522.
- Holde, *n. S.* a fortress, place of strength, 2836, † 257; — hold (prison), 4573; *pl.* holdes, 5472, † 921.
- Holde, Holden. *See* Halde.
- Holde, *adj.* S. faithful, true, 2833, 3773.
- Holle, *adj.* whole, complete, † 521.
- Holli, *adv.* wholly, 1106; — hollich, † 117; — holliche, 945, 974; — holly, 495, 531, 534, † 327.
- Holpe, Holpen. *See* Helpes.
- Holw, *adj.* hollow, 1793.
- Hom-kome, *n.* home-coming, 807.
- Homward, homeward, 2477, 2487.
- Hond-werk, *n.* handiwork, creatures, 929.
- Honget, *pp.* hung, 2020; — honged, 2086.
- Hony, *n. S.* honey (as a term of endearment), 1655.
- Hope, 1 *p. pr. s.* I believe, think, 1344, 1780; *pt. pl.* hopenen, 4308.
- Hordere, *n.* order, 4461.
- Hors, *n. pl.* horses, 1940, 4187, 4281, 4820. Hors charge (horses' load), 388.
- Hote, 1 *p. pr. s.* I tell, 1123, 1384, 4989; *imp. s.* hote, 4162; 1 *p. pt. s.* hizt (promised), 1030; *pt. s.* hizt (promised), 58; het (called), 521; *pp.* hoten (called), 405, † 13; hote, 3497, † 172, † 364. *See also* Hete, Hizt.
- Hotend, *pres. part.* hooting, shouting, 2387. *See* Hoot in Wedgwood.
- Hou3, *adv.* how, 4265; — hov, 97, 98, 225.

- Houes, 723. *See* the note.  
 Hude, *v.* S. to hide, 2743. *Cf.*  
 Hiden, Hcd.  
 Hue, she, † 34, † 36, † 39.  
 Hulde, *v.* to flay, take off the  
 covering or hide, 1708; 1 *p. pl.*  
*imp.* hulde, 2587. "From the  
 same root proceeds the modern  
 verb *to hull*, to take off the *hull* or  
 husk. It corresponds to the Goth.  
*and-huljan*, Lu. x. 22. Hence also  
 A.S. *hyldere*, a butcher."—M.  
 Hules, *pr. s.* fondles, lulls, hushes,  
 97. *See* *Hull* in Wedgwood.  
 Hupes, *n. pl.* hips, † 190.  
 Hur, her, † 185; (their), † 4, † 65.  
*See* Here.  
 Hure, *v.* S. to hear, 3270.  
 Hurne. *See* Hirne.  
 Hurtel, *v.* F. to strike together,  
 meet together with a shock, 5013.  
*See* the note. Ch.  
 Hye3. *See* Heie.
- I-, Y-, a prefix, used (in these  
 poems) chiefly in past participles,  
 where it represents the A.S. *ge-*;  
 or as an abbreviation for *in*, as in  
*i-fere, y-fere, i-liue*.  
 [The past participles are here collected  
 for convenience.]  
 I-armed, armed, † 485.  
 Ibene, been, † 1023.  
 I-bent, bent, † 181.  
 I-bet, bettered, remedied, 4613.  
 Ibore, born, † 849.  
 Iborne, born, † 642.  
 Ichaped. *See* I-schapen.  
 I-charged, loaded, 2499.  
 I-cloped, clothed, 2416.  
 I-corne, carved, † 569.  
 I-dizt, prepared, 3918.  
 I-fed, fed, 768.  
 I-fenked, vanquished, † 117.  
 Igett, begotten (*or, perhaps,*  
 born), † 633.  
 Igraue, graven, † 830.  
 Igrett, greeted, worshipped, † 731.  
 I-herd, heard, † 656.  
 I-holde, held, † 598.  
 I-horsed, mounted, 1950.  
 I-kid, known, renowned, † 453.  
 Ilaide, laid, † 203.  
 I-lengped, lengthened, 1040.  
 Imaked, made, † 630.  
 I-painted, painted, † 733.  
 I-proued, proved, 4661.  
 I-putt, put, † 845.  
 I-quelled, killed, 1166.  
 I-schapen, shaped, 2634; — *i-*  
*schape*, † 191, † 628; — *ischaped*,  
 † 186; — *ishape*, † 732.  
 I-seie, seen, 1874.  
 I-sett, set, † 339, † 618, † 728.  
 I-slayne, slain, 3908.  
 I-told, told, 1493.  
 [See also under Y-.]  
 Iced, *pt. pl.* issued, 3789. *See*  
*Isch* in Jamieson.  
 Ich, I, 548, 598, 624, &c.  
 Icham, (*for* Ich am), I am, 594,  
 1743, 3951.  
 Ich, each, 332, 510. *See* Eche.  
 I-fere, together, 2180, 2523, † 340.  
*See* Infere.  
 Iknowe, *v.* to know, † 607. [The  
 only instance of an infinitive pre-  
 ceded by *i-*.]  
 Ilk, *pron.* S. same; almost always  
 preceded by *pat*. Hence, *pat ilk* =  
 that same, that very, 281, 688,  
 2878; used absolutely (that very  
 thing, that very time), 531, 629,  
 1041, &c. Also, *pis ilk*, 2263;  
*pat ilk selue* (that very same), 4106.  
*Spelt* *pat ilke*, 1041; *pat ilche*,  
 † 448. Ch.



- I-live, in life, i. e. alive, 1690.
- Inped, set, *lit.* engrafted, † 616.
- Incle, *v.* to give an inkling of, to hint, † 616.
- In-fere, together, 2984, 3300, 3342. *Cf.* I-fere, Y-fere, Fere.
- Inkest, *sup. adj.* darkest, blackest, † 1061. [*The word is a little doubtful.*]
- Inne, *n.* an inn, lodging, 1485, 1524, 1574, &c.
- Inned, *pt. s.* lodged, 2479; *pp.* 1638. *Wycl. Gloss.*
- I-now, *adv.* enough, 483, 1121; i-nov, 100; i-nou3, 714; i-nou3e, 1673; y-now, 836; y-nou3, 118.
- Ioly, *adj.* F. jolly, i. e. pleasant, pretty, 3479.
- Ioyned, *pp.* adjoined, adjoining, 751.
- Irn, *adj.* iron, 3232. *Cf.* Yren.
- Is, *put for* His, 8, 69, 181, &c. *Both spellings occur in l. 4369.*
- It-selue, itself, 3116.
- Iuste, *v.* to joust, 1237. P. Pl.
- Iustislich, *adv.* justly, exactly, closely, 1724; — iustili, 2596; — iustly, 751.
- Iurnes, *n. pl.* journeys, 4286.
- I-wisse, *adv.* verily, truly, 697, 739, 960, &c.; — i-wis, 3397. *See* Y-wisse. *Ch.*
- [*For some words beginning with ka, ko, ku, see under C.*]
- Kairus, go ye, † 623. *See* Caire.
- Kan. *See* Can.
- Kares, *imp. pl.* be ye sad, be anxious, † 563. *Cf.* Carestow.
- Karp, Karpes. *See* Carpen.
- Kast, *sb.* design, † 146. *Ch.*
- Kastyng, *sb.* casting, 942.
- Kau3t. *See* Cacche.
- Kaysers, *n. pl.* Cæsars, emperors, 483.
- Kechene. *See* Kichen.
- Ked, *adj.* renowned, famous, † 556. *See* Kid. [In P. Pl. A. xi. 56, MS. U has *kedde* where MS. T has *kid.*]
- Kempe, *n.* S. knight, champion, 4029; — kemp, 3746; *pl.* kempes, 3352. A.S. *compa.* Icel. *kempa.*
- Ken, *n.* kindred. *See* Kin.
- Ken, *n. pl.* kine. *See* Kin.
- Kende. *See* Kenne, *v. intr.*
- Kende, *adj.* natural. *See* Kinde.
- Kendely. *See* Kindeli.
- Kene, *adj.* keen, eager (*said of* thought), 616; (cold), 908; (kisses), 1011; (knights), 1205.
- Keneli, *adv.* sharply, eagerly, shrilly, 4843; — kenely, 152, 859; — kenly, 37, 2174; — kenliche, 2532.
- Kenne, *v. tr.* to inform, shew, instruct, charge, 1665; *pt. s.* kenned, 2212, 5205; *pt. pl.* kenned, 343; *imp. pl.* kennes, 591. “Kenne, or teche. *Doceo.*” *Prompt. Parv.*
- Kenne, *v. intr.* to know, † 623; *pt. s.* kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* kende, † 367. *Ch.* “Kennyn, or knowyn. *Agnosco.*” *Prompt. Parv.*
- Kepen, *v. S.* to keep, take care of, 8; — kepe, 66, 123; 1 *p. s. pr.* kepe = I care, intend, wish, 993; kepe = I tend, 244; kepe = I regard, desire, 4738; *pt. s.* keped, 171; *pt. pl.* keped, 187; kepten, 3645; *pp.* keput, 5; ceput, 4094.
- Kerneles, *n. pl.* battlements, 2858; — cournales, † 295. *Ch.* Rom. Rose, 4195. P. Pl. A. vi. 78. O. F. *crenelx.*
- Kesse, *v. S.* to kiss, 5045; *pt. s.* kest, 63, 1265, 1570, 3205; keste, 1587, 1613, 4015; kessed, 1833; kessede, 4239; kust, 675; *pt. pl.* keste, 3100; kest, 2424; *pp.* kest, 859; *pres. part.* kessing, 1396. *Ch.*
- Kessing, *n.* kissing, 1053, 3076,

- 3474; —kesseng, 3659. [*Always joined with clipping.*]
- Kete**, *adj.* bold, fierce (?), or quick, smart (?), 330, 3793. A rare word, of which the following are instances. We find, "in a poem of the 13th century:—
- Pikede beth the shete,  
And wormes ther beth *kete*  
To don the soule tene.
- Save of Scint Bede, MS.*  
Digby 86, f. 127 b."—M.
- We also find mention of "a king *kete*," Rel. Ant. ii. 9; and the beams of the sun are called "*kete*," in Wright's Popular Treatises on Science, p. 138, l. 262 of the English fragment. Cf. also "Clerkes and *kete* men," P. Pl. A. xi. 56, where *kid* and *kedde* are other readings. "In our text, the most obvious etymology seems to be the Teut. *kut*, Belg. *kuyt*, audax, ferox."—M. Coleridge suggested O. N. *katr*, glad; and the Sw. *katighed*, boldness, may also be worth considering. Or again, as we find the forms *moulder* and *smoulder*, *kuap* and *snap*, we may connect it with the O. E. *skeet*, O. N. *skjótt*, sharp, quick, which is connected with *to shoot* and *to skate*. This would give the sense *sharp, quick, or smart*, which seems not inappropriate. See *Ketli*.
- Ketli**, *adv.* quickly, smartly (?), 3023; —ketly, 1986, 2105. See *Kete*.
- Keppe**. See *Kipen*.
- Keuer**, *v. tr.* F. to make to recover, to heal, 635; —keuere, 1521; —kuuere, to attain to, 128; —keueren him gate = to procure or make for himself a passage, †904; *pt. s.* euerede (recovered), 2824; *pt. pl.* keuered hem = obtained for themselves, †235; also (2) *ken*, *v. intr.* to recover, become whole, 1488; *pt. s.* keuered, made good his retreat, retreated, 3625; *pt. pl.* keuered, 3647; cf. *vp-keuerede*, 2759; *pp.* keuered, procured, made ready (*unless it means covered*), 4450. [Connected with F. *recouvrer*, Lat. *recuperare*.]
- Keuered**, *pt. s.* covered, 3034; *pp.* keuered (*unless it is from the preceding*), 4450. [Connected with F. *couvrir*, Lat. *cooperire*.] See *Kuere*.
- Kichen**, *n.* kitchen, 2171; —kyehene, 1707; —kechene, 1681.
- Kid**, *pt. t.* and *pp.* of *Kipen*, *q. v.* Also, as *adj.* renowned, famous, far-known, †11, †172, †310, †597; —kud, 51, 111, 114, 501, 512, 713, &c.; ked, †556; *sup.* kuddest, 631, 3047, 4231; *in the first of which it simply means best*. "It is very evident, that the *adj.* and *pp.* of *kipen* are one and the same word."—M.
- Kin**, *n. S.* kindred, 584; —ken, 513, 722; —kun, 110.
- Kin**, *n. pl.* kine, 480, 503; —ken, 6; —kyn, 244.
- Kinde**, *adj.* natural, related, *spoken of* that which is conferred by kindred or acquired by birth, 128, 3138, 3474, 4098; —kynde, 241; —kende, 513; —kyn, 364.
- Kinde**, *n. S.* nature, kindred, birth, 107, 109, 821, 3136; —kynde, 1445, 2506; *bi kinde* = by birth, 1425; *bi kynde*, 507.
- Kindeli**, *adv.* by nature, kindly, in an accustomed manner, 1265, 1570; —kindely, 111, 522; —kindliche, 1697; —kindeliche, 1613; —kyndely, 14; —kyndeliche, 1396; —kendeli, 4867; —kendely, 1110.
- Kinghod**, *n. S.* kingly office, 4059.
- King-riche**, *n. S.* kingdom, 2127.
- Kinhed**, *n. S.* kindness, such as one relation shews to another, 4514.
- Kinnesman**, *n. S.* kinsman, 365. [Probably an error for *Thomasin*; see note.]
- Kinrade**, *n. S.* kindred, 522.

- Kip, *n.* S. country, 4254, 4511, †241, †298; — kith, †48, †65, †591.
- Kipen, *v.* S. to cause to know, to make known, shew, declare, †162; — kipe, 1184, 2126, 2986, 4086, †286; — kithe, †655; — kupe, 1680; — keppe, 4964; 2 *p. s. pr.* kupest, 603; kipes, 4515, †509; *pr. s.* kipes, †298, †529; kiihes, †716, †783; *pt. s.* kudde, 231; kid, †222, †842; *pt. pl.* kidden, 2301, 4526; kudden, 1223; kiped, 5287; knpped, 1011; *imp. s.* kipe, 626; *pp.* kid, †169; kyd, 321, A.S. *cyðan*. [In l. 2301, kidden = shewed how to rather than knew how to.]
- Kleped. *See* Clepe.
- Knaue, *n.* S. a boy, 2394. Ch.
- Knightweede, *n.* S. knight's clothing, armour, †544.
- Knoulecheden, *pt. & pl.* acknowledged, 4782.
- Knowen, *v.* S. to know, 577; 2 *p. s. pr.* knowes, 1174; knowestow (knowest thou), 5365; 2 *p. pl. pr.* knowen, 594; 2 *p. s. pt.* knew, 3182; *pt. pl.* kneu, 2209; *pp.* knowe, 726. Ch.
- Kolieres, *n. pl.* colliers, 2523; — choliers, 2520.
- Komaundment, *n.* commandment, 1084.
- Kome. *See* Com.
- Konichauns, *n.* F. cognisance, badge, 3569. P. Pl. Crede, 185.
- Konyng. *See* Conyng.
- Kontre, Kontrey. *See* Cuntre.
- Koraious. *See* Coraious.
- Kortesie, *n.* F. courtesy, 3926; — kurteysie, 501.
- Kortesliche. *See* Curtesliche.
- Kosses, *n. pl.* kisses, 1011.
- Kouchid him, laid him down, 2240.
- Koueyne. *See* Couyne.
- Koure, *v.* to cower, crouch down, kneel, †558. *See* Couren.
- Kowden. *See* Can.
- Krepe of, creep out of, 3084. *See* Crep.
- Kud. *See* Kid, Kipen.
- Kun. *See* Kin.
- Kunne. *See* Can.
- Kuntenaunce. *See* Contenaunce.
- Kunteyned, *pt. s.* demeaned himself, 3301. *See* Contenaunce.
- Kurteyslyche. *See* Curtesliche.
- Kust. <sup>1</sup> *See* Kesse.
- Kuþe, Kuþest, Knpped. *See* Kipen.
- Kuppes, *n. pl.* S. manners, habits, 331.
- Kuere, (1) *v.* F. to cover, 1037; *pt. s. and pp.* keured, q. v.
- Kuere, (2) *v.* F. to attain to, succeed, 128. *See* Keuer.
- Kyrke, *n.* church, 4086.
- Lac, *v.* S. to lack, be without, 453. [Sir F. Madden suggests to read *lat*, dismiss: I think *lac* may stand.]
- Laced, *pt. s.* laced up, 1736.
- Lachen, *v.* S. to catch, receive, take, acquire, embrace, †4, †199; lache, †123, †214; *pr. s.* laechis, 4525; *imp. s.* laeche, 666; *pt. s.* lauzt, 1234, 2237, 4708; lauzt lond (landed), 2761; laught leue (took leave), †250; lauzt vp (caught up), 2308; lauzt out (drew out), 1244; *pt. pl.* lauzten leue, 5413; lauzt leue, 5087, 5201; lachte (they embraced, greeted, i.e. the Phœnians and their allies), †427; *pp.* lauzt, 671; laüht, †161. A.S. *laccan, gelaccan*, whence E. *e-lutch*.
- Ladde, *pt. s.* led, 1609, 2618; *pt. pl.* ladden, 1226, †20; ladde, 4292; lad, 459; ledde (governed), 5463.

- Lafte. *See* Leue (2).  
 Laike. *See* Layk.  
 Lang, long, 4130.  
 Langes. *See* Long.  
 Langour, *n.* F. languishing, faintness, pain, 918, 986, † 245; — langor, 869; — langure, 737; *pl.* langoures, 1034. Ch.  
 Langured, *pp.* F. pined, languished, 983.  
 Lappen, *v.* S. to lap, wrap, 1712; lappe, 2576; *pl. s.* lapped, 1908; *pp.* lapped. 740, 2153, 2246.  
 Laske, *v.* F. to relax, slacken; *hence*, to shorten, 570; lask it (= lask it, relax it, assuage it), 950. *Cf.* O. F. *luscher*; Sc. *lasche* (lazy); E. *lar*, *slack*; Sw. *läska-dryck* (cooling-draught); Sw. *sloka*, to droop, &c. *Cf.* Lask, *sb.* in Halliwell.  
 Lasse, *adj. comp.* less, 1079, 1490, 2414, &c. Ch.  
 Last, *conj.* lest, 641, 953, 2971.  
 Last, *pp.* lasted, endured, 1281; *pres. part.* lastend (enduring, strong), 1736.  
 Late, *v.* S. to let, permit, 2680; 2 *p. s. imp. late*, 2336, 2355; 3 *p. s. pr. subj. late*, 2581; 2 *p. pl. pr. subj. late*, 955; — late me worþ, 2355, 3597; *cf.* † 1186. *See* Lete.  
 Lauzeden, *pt. pl.* laughed, 1784.  
 Lauzt. *See* Lachen.  
 Launced, *pt. s.* launched, *i. e.* leapt, 2755. *Cf.* F. *se lancer*, and see *Lans* in Jamieson.  
 Launde, *n.* a lawn, or open space in a wood, † 520, † 710. Ch.  
 Layk, *sb.* a “lark,” a game, play, 678, 1784; — laike, 3110. Sw. *lek*.  
 Layke, *v.* to play, 1021; *pt. s.* layked, 1026; layked him, 31, 1411; *pt. pl.* laykeden, 3110; *pres. part.* layking, 699.  
 Layne, *v.* to conceal, act falsely, 906, 918, 1309. O. N. *leyna*.  
 Leame. *See* Leme.  
 Lebard, *n.* F. leopard, 2935; — lybard, 2896; *pl.* lebardes, 2874.  
 Leche, *n.* S. a physician, 576, 1032; *pl.* leches, 1328. Ch.  
 Ledden. *See* Ladde.  
 Ledes. *See* Lud.  
 Lederes, *gen. sing.* leader’s, provost’s, 2303.  
 Leef, Leefe, *adj.* *See* Leue.  
 Leef, leave we, 1836. *See* Leue.  
 Leese, Leeue. *See* Lese, Leue.  
 Lef, *adj.* lief, dear, 1879, 4372; (glad), 517; *as sb.* (dear one, the dear one), 2314, 1645; lef pinkes (seems dear, *i. e.* pleases), 384; *cf.* leefe thought (pleased), † 60; — leefe, † 774; — leef, 1839; — leue, 341, 666, 887, 1183, † 847; — leeue, † 226; *sup.* lewest, 3213. Ch.  
 Leflich, *adj.* trustful, † 427; — leeflich (trusty), † 139. A. S. *leóflíc*, lovely, faithful. *Cf.* Leue.  
 Lege, *adj.* F. liege, 1174, 2663, 3004.  
 Legge, *v.* S. to lay, 3234; *pp.* leide, 1448. Ch.  
 Leie, *pt. pl.* *See* Ligge.  
 Lel, *adj.* F. loyal, leal, true, just, 5119; *pl.* lele, 1312, 4158; *sup.* lelest, 4809.  
 Lelen, *v.* to make leal, sanction, authorize, 5284.  
 Lelli, *adv.* F. loyally, leally, truly, 687, 1281, 1807; — lelly, 985, 989; — lelliche, 117, 999; — lellyche, 357; — lelich, † 64; *sup.* leliest, 592. [*It occurs more than 30 times.*]  
 Leme, *n.* a limb, 1736.  
 Leme, *n.* gleam, light, † 774; — leame, † 1078. Ch.  
 Lemman, *n.* S. (lief-man), love, sweetheart, 663, 666, 695, 717, &c. [*Used of both sexes.*] Ch.  
 Lende, *v.* to tarry, stay, 1466. *See* Leind in Jamieson. *Cf.* Lengen.

- Lene, 3 *p. s. imp.* grant, impart, give, bestow, afford, 327; 2 *p. s. imp.* 4398; *pt. s. lente*, 1233; leut, 885; *pt. pl. lent*, 22; *pp.* leud, 4578. Ch.
- Lengen, *v. S.* to tarry, stay, remain long, dwell, † 44; lengce, 5421, 5538; leng, † 455, † 758; *pr. s. lenges*, 843, 5536; lengēþ, 2070; 2 *p. pl. pr.* leugen, † 1; *pt. s. lenged*, 2842; *pt. pl. lenged*, 2205, 5408, 5462; *pp.* (beþ) leuged, 1457; (is) leugged, † 196. A.S. *lengian*, to prolong. [*In l.* 2680, the MS. can be read lengþe or lengye; read lengye, another form of the infinitive.]
- Lenger, longer, 633, 1113, &c. Ch.
- Lengþe, *v. S.* to lengthen, 957; *miswritten* lengēþ, 1944; *imp. pl.* lengþes, 4348; lengþēþ, 4353; *pp.* lengþed, 1351, 1549; *miswritten* lengēþd or lengeyd, 2345.
- Lep, *pt. s.* leapt, 702, 2756.
- Lere, *n. S.* countenance, features, 227. A.S. *hleor*. P. Pl.
- Leren, *v. S.* to teach, 4770; 1 *p. pr.* lere, † 325; *pt. s. lerde*, 341; *pp.* lered (taught, learned), † 603, † 1152. A.S. *léræn*.
- Lere, *v. S.* to learn, 119. Ch.
- Lese, *n. S.* a pasture, 175, 3138, 3141. See *Lease, Leasow*, in Halliwell; cf. A.S. *lêsu*. It is not the plural of *lea*.
- Lese, *v. S.* to lose, 1258, 1484, 1645, † 280; leese, † 378; *pr. pl.* lesen, † 126; *imp. s.* les, 988; *imp. pl.* leses, 3369; *pt. s. les*, 887, 1234. Ch.
- Lesed, *pp.* See Lissen.
- Lesten, *v.* to listen to, 31; 1 *p. imp. pl.* lesten, 3528; 2 *p. imp. pl.* lestenes, 1183, 3329; listenes, 170, 1929; lusteneþ, 384; lestenēþ, 4607; lesten, 1439. Ch.
- Lestes. See Listes.
- Lestēþ, *pr. s.* lasts, 5538.
- Leten, *v.* to forego, let go, leave, forsake, 2184; 1 *p. s. pr.* lete, 382, 5465; *pt. s. let* (liþere of, i. e. thought the less of), 2119; 1 *p. pl. imp.* let, 3528; *imp. pl.* lettes, 1186; 3 *p. pr. subj.* lette, 4144; *pp.* lete (left), † 563. As a simple auxiliary *vb.* it is spelt late, q. v. It is common with infinitives in the sense to cause; as, he let sende, 2145; lete wite, 2171; let make, 5532. See Do. For the phrase, let him worþe, † 1186, see note to "Werwolf," 3597.
- Leþerly, *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 1231; — luperli, 2646, 3151; — luperly, 2334, 2775. See Liper.
- Letrure, *n.* F. letters, reading, † 1152. Ch.
- Lette, *n. S.* stay, hindrance, 1340, 2685, 4751. Ch.
- Lette, *v. S.* to prevent, hinder, 1253, 3552, 4258; — lett, 2971, † 149. Cf. Late, Lete. [*It is worth noting that this verb, in the sense to permit, is usually spelt late; in the sense to forego, it is lete; in the sense to prevent, it is lette.*] Cf. A.S. *létan*, *lettan*.
- Lettered, *pp.* learned, instructed, 4088.
- Letteres, *n. pl.* (in *sing.* signification), a letter, 4842, 4844.
- Leue, *v. S.* to believe, 708, 4175; 1 *p. s. pr.* leue, 497, 1032, 4105; leue, † 639; 2 *p. s. pr.* leuestow (believe thou), 2358; *imp. s.* leue, 1553; *imp. pl.* leue, 1351, 2071; leueth, 5068. Ch.
- Lene, *v. S.* to leave, 2358; *pt. s.* lafte, 1858; *pp.* leued, 83; 1 *p. pl. imp.* leef, 1836; 2 *p. pl. imp.* leues, 1806. In *neuter* sense, to remain, dwell, *pt. pl.* left, 1588; cf. Leuis.
- Leue, *adj.* dear. See Lef.
- Leued, *pp.* leaved, covered with leaves, 22, 757.
- Leuer, *comp. adv.* liefer, rather, 453, 546, 855, 918, &c. Cf. Lef. Ch.

- Leuere. *See* Liuere.
- Leuis, *pr. s.* lives, dwells, 525; *cf.* left in l. 1588. *See* Liuen.
- Leute, *n. F.* loyalty, fealty, 4838. Ch.
- Leye, *v. S.* to lay; "leye mi lif," 2169; *pr. s.* leyes on (lays on), 1208.
- Liaud, Ligand. *See* Ligge.
- Libbing. *See* Liuen.
- Liche, *adj.* like, 3678, 3698, †767.
- Liche, *n. S.* body, †195.
- Lidene, *n. S.* speech, †782; — ludene, †601. A.S. *lyden*. Ch.
- Lift, *adj.* left (arm), 2961, 5499.
- Ligge, *v.* to lie, dwell, 2194, 3062, †689; *lygge*, †1158; *pr. s.* ligges, 166; *lis*, 965; *pr. pl.* lyen, 2266; *pt. pl.* leie, 4307; *part. pres.* liand, 2180; ligand, 2246. Ch.
- Liif, *n.* life, 957, 961, 994.
- Liken, *v.* like, 2 *p. pl. pr.* 5529; *lyken*, 162; *as impers. vb.* (= pleases), likes me wel, 450; likes þe, 957, 1727; likes þou dere, 1050; *pt.* liked him, 28, 678; liked hire, 2032; *pres. part.* likand (pleasing), †192; *pp.* lyked, 1012. Ch.
- Liking, *n. S.* pleasure, 452, 2023; —likyng, 869, 1021. Ch.
- Lime, *n. S.* limb, †1121. Ch.
- Lisse, *n. S.* comfort, happiness, 631, 2828, 5228. A.S. *liss*. Dan. *lise*. Ch.
- Lissen, *v.* to loosen, assuage, mitigate, heal, 848; — lisse, 631; *pp.* lissed, 869; lesed, 1577. A.S. *lysau*.
- List, *v. impers. pt. s.* it pleases, †658; *pt. s.* lust, 1907; list, 2600. A.S. *lystan*.
- Listenes. *See* Lesten.
- Listes, *n. pl.* lists (in the phrase, lists of love), 740, 1057; — lestes, 946.
- Listli, *adv. S.* silyly, 2742; — listly, 2355; — listely, 25. A.S. *listlice*, artfully.
- Litel and litel, 950.
- Lip, *n. S.* a joint, 1724. [*It also means* a limb. Ch.]
- Liper, *adj. S.* wicked, evil, bad, 2169; — luþer, 5240. A.S. *lyðer*. Ch.
- Liuen, *v.* to live, 5394; *pr. s.* leuis, 525; *pt. pl.* liueden, 4802, 5508; *pres. part.* liuande, 3678; liuand, 1690; libbing, †790.
- Liuere, *n. F.* delivery (of blows), 3822; — leuere, 1233.
- Lizt, *v. S.* to lighten, gladden, 10. Ch.
- Liztere, *comp. adv.* lighter, less, 2119; — liztere, *adj.* (nimble, lighter), 154.
- Lizteli, *adv.* lightly, 702; — liztly, 1244; — liztli, 1973; *comp.* lizthiere, 1894.
- Lo, lo! 731; — loo, 1208.
- Lof, *n. S.* love, 430.
- Loged, *pp. F.* lodged, 1918.
- Loke, *v. S.* to keep, guard, take care of, 1757, 3166, 4770; *imp. s.* loke, 430.
- Lome, *adv.* frequently, often, †321; — ilome, †521. A.S. *gelóme*.
- Londe, *n. S.* land, 2763; — lond, 2761; *pl.* londes, 1175, 3055. Ch.
- Long, *v. S.* to belong, †547; *pr. s.* longedþ, 143; longes, 360; langes, 331; *pt. s.* longed, 73, 1147; longet, 2719; *pt. pl.* longede, 2766; *pres. part.* longyng, †635.
- Loos. *See* Los.
- Lorchipe (*read* lordchipe), *n. S.* lordship, 3680; — lordschip, 3955. [*Cf.* Lorld. Lorde (for Lord), 3404, 3405.] Lordship = lords, †335.

- Lordesse, *n. pl.* lords, 4539. *Cf.* Heizresse.
- Lordinges, *n. pl.* lords, 1183, 1206, 3004.
- Lore, *n. S.* lore, learning, teaching, advice, 328, 346, 2970, 2917. *Ch.*
- Lore, *pp.* lost, 1360, 1556, 2584; —lorn, 668; —lorne, 4396. *Ch.*
- Lorel, *n. F.* laurel, 2983.
- Lorked, *pt. s.* lurked, slunk along, 25; *pres. part.* lorkinde, 2213.
- Los, *n. F.* praise, 1386, 5132; —loos, 1448, 3973; —loose, †4. *Lat. laus. Ch.*
- Losengeres, *n. F.* flatterers, 5482. *Ch.*
- Lop, *adj. S.* loath; him lop bouȝt (= it seemed loath to him), 1255; hem lop were, 5201. *Ch.*
- Loped, *pt. pl.* loathed, †335.
- Lopli, *adj. S.* loathly, 50; —loȝelike, †99. *Ch.*
- Loueliche, *adj. S.* lovely, 965; *adv.* in a lovely manner, excellently, 975, 1315.
- Louen, 2 *p. pl. pr.* love, 162.
- Lourand, *pres. part.* louring, 2119. *Du. loeren. P. Pl.*
- Louwe (hire), *v. S.* to lower herself, condescend, 708; *pt. s.* lowed, 695.
- Louȝte, *v. S.* to bow, make obeisance, submit, 2900; *pt. s.* louted, 3485; *pt. pl.* louted, 3464. *A. S. hlutan. Cf. A-louted. Ch.*
- Lowed. *See* Louwe.
- Lud, *n. S.* a man, 452, 535, 1001, †231, &c.; —lude, †588; —lued, †44; *pl.* ludes, 390, 525, †331; ledes, 195, 1233. Londes and ledes, 4001; londes and leodes (where the MS. has *leethes*, with a *d*, or a *ð*, above it), †12. On this difficult phrase see Sir F. Madden's reply to Mr Singer's remarks on Havclok. *Cf.* also Wedgwood on *Lease, Leet*. It seems to mean "lands and leases," or "lands and tenements," as Robert of Brume uses it frequently to mean *tenements, rents, or fees*. The older form of the word is *lethe* or *lithe*, and it may, after all, not be connected in any way with *ledes*, the plural of *lud*. In l. †12, we surely ought to read *leȝes* or *leȝes*.
- Lufsum, *adj. S.* lovesome, lovable, †176.
- Lust. *See* List.
- Lusteneth. *See* Lesten.
- Luperli. *See* Leperly.
- Lybard. *See* Lebard.
- Lykame, *n. S.* body, 227. *P. Pl.*
- Lyked. *See* Liken.
- Lyst, *n. S.* desire, inclination, †794. *Ch.*
- Lysted, *pt. s.* desired, †776. *Cf. List.*
- Lyte, *adv. S.* little, †323.
- Maat. *See* Mat.
- Maister, *n. F.* master, 2735, †682; *pl.* maistres, 2744.
- Maistres, *n. F.* mistress, 1016.
- Maistrie, *n. F.* mastery, victory, †170; —maistry, 3341; —maistrye, 3137. *Ch.*
- Make, *n. S.* mate, companion, 1898, 2498, †249, †843, &c.; *pl.* makes, 1757. *Ch.*
- Makeles, *adj.* matchless, †799.
- Makes, *imp. pl.* make ye, 4933; *pp.* maked, 1951, 4131, 4933; mad, 4576; *pres. part.* makende, 2985.
- Malencoli, *n. F.* anger, 4362.
- Malskrid, *pt. s.* wandered, 416. Probably with the sense of *bewilderment*; cf. *Maskede* in Halliwell, *Mask* in Coleridge's Glossarial Index, and *masquer* in Burguy. *Malskred* seems = bewildered, *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris. C. 255.
- Manchipe, *n. S.* manhood, courage, 3337; —manchip, 2676.

- Maner, *n.* manner, kind (*used without of following*), 698, 1155, 3278.
- Manerli, *adv.* in a mannerly way, 5008.
- Manhede, *n.* S. manhood, 431; — man-hede, 4390; — manhed, 197. Ch.
- Mankynne, *n.* S. mankind, 143.
- Manly, *adv.* S. manly, *hence*, fittingly, suitably, 1042, 2040; — manli, 2690, 3341; — manliche, 2325, 3253; — manlich, † 375. "This adverb is often used as a mere expletive, merely to fill up the alliteration, as *manly hem meked*, 1276."—M.
- Manly, *adj.* S. manly, 1424; *sup.* manlokest, 3419.
- Manquellere, *n.* S. mankiller, murderer, 993.
- Marche, *n.* S. boundary, limit of territory, territory, † 312, † 1031; *pl.* marches, 2214, † 14, † 137; *no doubt* marches *is written for, or is equivalent to*, marches, † 173; cf. † 14.
- Mark, *v.* F. to inflict by way of reprisal, † 197; — merken, † 284; *pt. s.* marked, † 932. O. F. "*marquer*, user de représailles." Roq. Cf. *the phrase*, letters of *marque*.
- Marques. See Marche.
- Marres, *pr. s.* mars, harms, 1171; *pp.* marred (bitterly vexed, maddened with chagrin), 438, 664, 884, 995, † 1041.
- Marring, *n.* a harming, injuring, 4362.
- Mase, 1 *p. pr. s.* am confounded, am at a loss, 438; *pp.* mased (stupefied), 554. Cf. A-mased.
- Massager, *n.* F. a messenger, 4156; — messenger, 4204; *pl.* massegeres, 4251; — messageres, 1441; — messageris, 1382; — messagers, 1465; — messangers, 1330; — messangeres, 1143.
- Mat, *adj.* F. dejected, faint, almost dead, 2441; — maat, 1776. Du. *mat.* Fr. *mat.* G. *mat.* Cf. Span. *matar*, to kill. Ch.
- Maugre, *n.* F. ill-will, spite, harm, † 932; *used as an adv.* in spite of, † 101, † 680; — mawgrey, 3745. F. *mal grè.* Ch.
- May, *n.* S. maiden, 659. Mæso-Goth. *mawi.* Ch.
- Mayne, *n.* S. a company, host of attendants, 416; — meyne, 184, 202, 1199, 1573. G. *menge.* Mæso-Goth. *managei.*
- Mayntene, *v.* F. to maintain, 2698; — meintene, 3002; — meyntene, 3642; *imp. pl.* meyntenes, 2676. [*Miswritten* meynete, 1098.]
- Mechef. See Meschef.
- Mede, *n.* S. reward, 2135, 4726, 5355; to mede (= by way of return, by way of security), 2341; to medis (= by way of request on *my* part), 3253. P. Pl. Ch.
- Mede, *adj.* meet, fitting, 604. Cf. A.S. *medene.*
- Meded, *pt. s.* bribed, 4646.
- Medle, *v.* F. to mingle (in fight), † 93; *pt. s.* medled him (was busy), 2492, † 170; medled, 2325; *pp.* medled (meddled), † 964. Ch. [*It occurs also in the shorter form* mele (2) q. v.]
- Meken, *v.* to humble oneself, to submit, 2118; — meke him, 2104, 3928; 1 *p. s. pr.* meke me, 665; *pt. pl.* meked hem, 1276; *imp. s.* meke, 3919; *imp. pl.* mekes (quiet, silence), 4604.
- Mekeli, *adv.* S. meekly, 642, 659, 1480; — mekkeli, 4456; — mekliche, 408; — mekeliche, 808.
- Mele (1), *v.* S. to talk, speak, discuss, 621, 4009; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mele, 1342; *pt. s.* meled, 4684, 5204; *pt. pl.* meleden (twittered), 821. A.S. *mēlan*, to speak, converse. [*Observe the distinction between this word and the next.*]



- Mele** (2), *v.* F. to mingle in fight, to fight, 3325; *pt. s.* meled (assembled), 1287; melled hire (busied herself), 1709, 1719. O.F. *mester*, to meddle, mingle, mell. [*This verb is a shortened form of medle, q. v.*]
- Meling**, *n.* S. conversation, 760. *See* Mele (1).
- Meling**, *n.* mingling, 5257; *hence*, meling-while (hour of combat), 3858. *See* Mele (2).
- Menden**, *v.* F. to mend, 647; *imp. pl.* mendes, 845.
- Mene**, *v.* S. to mean, intend, signify, tell, 4808; 1 *p. s. pt.* mente, 560; mennede, 1925; *pt. s.* ment, 641; *pt. pl.* mened, 4845; *pp.* ment (intended, designed), 1819. A.S. *mænan*. Ch.
- Mene**, *v.* S. to bemoan oneself, mourn, 493; *pt. s.* mened, 940; *pp.* mened, 561, 1490. A.S. *mēnan*.
- Menge**, *v.* S. to tell, speak, mention, 1422; — mengge, 449; — meng, 613; — minge, 1624, 1925, 1937, 4327, 5032, &c.; — munge, 831, 1441, 1635, 2616, 2735, 4767; — myng, 1404; *pr. s.* minges, 1067, † 839; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mingeþ, 1876; 1 *p. s. pt.* munged, 4863; *pt. s.* munged, 833; *pt. pl.* munged, 2999; minged, 3711; mynged, 1335; *pp.* munged, 4847; minged, 2844; 1 *p. pl. imp.* munge, 3097; menge, 794; myng, † 45. A.S. *myngian*.
- Mennes**, *gen. pl.* men's, 6; — mennis, 480.
- Mensk**, *n.* S. honour, worship (*lit.* humanity), 1257, 2028, 3900, 5527; — menske, 313, 2050. *Cf.* *P. Pl. Crede*, 81. O.S. *menniski*.
- Mensk**, *v.* to honour, 4815; — menske, 4834; *pp.* menskked, 5132.
- Mensklful**, *adj.* honourable, worshipful, 202, 242, 405, 431, 508, &c.; — menskfull, † 555; *sup.* menskfulles[t], 1435.
- Mensklfully**, *adv.* honourably, wor-
- shipfully, 1142; — menskfulli, 4992, 5048.
- Mensklliche**, *adv.* honourably, with worship, † 173. *Cf. the preceding.*
- Menstracie**, *n.* F. minstrelsy, 1155, 1619, 3812; — menstraeye, 1951; — minstracie, 5011.
- Merciabul**, *adj.* F. merciful, 4406, 5131; — merciabule, 5146; — mereyabul, 5118.
- Merie**, *adj.* S. *pl.* 1148, 1880; — merye, 821; — miric, 1905, † 821; — murie, 2853; — muri (hounds), 2192; *sup.* muriest, 4926.
- Merken**. *See* Mark.
- Merþe**, *n.* S. mirth, 823, 2017; — murþe, 1634.
- Meschef**, *n.* F. mischief, misfortune, sorrow, 1044, 1247, 1362, 3096; — mechef, 5131.
- Mest**, *sup. adj.* most, chief, 2735; *adv.* chiefly, above all, 1433, 4729.
- Mesurabul**, *adj.* F. moderate, 333. *P. Pl.*
- Mete**, *v.* S. to meet, 815; *imp. pl.* metep, 3338.
- Mete**, *v.* S. to dream, 658, 862; *pt. s.* mette, 2869; mett, † 726, † 1142; met, † 821; *used reflexively*, hire mette, 2920, 5497. Ch.
- Meting**, *n.* S. a dream, 900; — metyng, 698, 706, 716, 733, † 839, &c. Ch.
- Meued**, *pt. s.* moved, 4285; — meeued, † 204; *pt. pl.* meuede, 4330. Ch.
- Meuwe**, *n.* F. a mew, i. e. a cage, prison, 3336. Ch.
- Miche**, *adj.* S. great, much, 117, 1362, 3555; — mich, † 600, † 932; — moch, 313; — moche, 202, 891, 1073; — muche, 2374. *Cf.* Mo.
- Michel**, *adv.* S. greatly, very, very much, 4305; — mochel, 367, 900, 1044, 1406, 1490, 2039; — muchel, 850. Ful mochel (very

- much). 4095; to mochel (too much), 1747. *See* Mo.
- Midde, *prep.* with, 5009; — mide, 2133; — myd. 3143. A.S. *mid*.
- Midesomer, *n.* midsummer, 1464.
- Middel-erþe, *n.* S. the earth, world, 1004.
- Mildeliche, *adv.* S. mildly, 1898.
- Mile-wei, *n.* a mile-way, *used to denote* a very short space of time, 1578. *Cf.* Ch. Shipm. Ta. 276.
- Minge, Minges, Minged. *See* Menge.
- Mires, *n. pl.* miry places, 3507; *cf.* 2619.
- Mirie. *See* Merie.
- Misdone, *v. tr.* S. to wrong, harm, 2581; *pt. pl.* misdede, 2548; *intr.* 2 *p. pl. pr.* misdon (do amiss), 3949.
- Misdrede 3ow, *imp. pl.* fear. 1567.
- Misferde, *pt. pl.* fared amiss, 2999; *pp.* misfaren, 1359; misfare, 995.
- Mis-gilt, *n.* S. offence, fault, 2118, 3919, 4792; — mis-gelt, 3996, 4397; — mis-gelt, 1541; — misse-gilt, 2104.
- Mislikede me, *pt. s. impers.* mis-liked me, 2039.
- Misproude, *adj.* S. *pl.* haughty, † 312; — misseproude, 2944.
- Missaide, 1 *p. pt. s.* reprovéd, 2040.
- Misse, *n.* S. a fault, error, offence, 532; *hence* mysse, *adv.* amiss, wrongly, 141, 1480. *Perhaps in l.* 1480 *myssetrowed is one word; cf.* Mistrowe.
- Misse, *v.* S. to miss, 1016; *pt. pl.* missedén, 1827.
- Misseliche, *adv.* S. wrongly, 711; — missely (mistakenly), 207.
- Misseproude. *See* Misproud.
- Missespeche, *n.* S. evil report, defamation, 1523. "In the same manner is formed the Isl. *mismæli*, from *mis* and *mæli*, loquela."—M.
- Mister, *n.* F. need, want, 1919. O.F. *mester*; Roq.
- Mistrowe, *n.* S. mistrust, 3314.
- Miswerche, *v.* S. to act amiss, 5148.
- Mite; *in phrase* a mite worþ (the worth of a mite), 4543.
- Mix, *n.* S. a vile wretch, 125. *Cf.* Felpe, *which is similarly used.* A.S. *meor.* O.F. *mixe*, filth. Hence the *pp.* mixed = filthy.  
"That *fule* traytour, that *mixed* cherl." Havelok, 2533.
- Mizt. *See* Mow.
- Mizth, *n.* S. might, 3508.
- Mizthi, *adj.* S. mighty, 2859.
- Miztow, thou mightest, 3041. *See* Mow.
- Mo, *comp. adj.* S. more, 1162, 1189, 1454, 2780, 5241; — more (greater), 3464.
- Mo, *adv.* more, 1271, 3457. More betér, 2134.
- Moche, Mochel. *See* Miche, Michel.
- Mod, *n.* S. mood, mind, 1985.
- Moder, *n.* S. mother, 242; *gen. sing.* moder, 1177.
- Molde, *n.* S. mould, i. e. earth, 85; — mold, 377, 528, 618. *Men vpon molde* is a common phrase, both here and in P. Pl.
- Mornes, *imp. pl.* mourn ye, 633; *pt. s.* morned, 1761; *pres. part.* mornyng, 1640.
- Morning, *n.* S. mourning, sorrow, 742; — mornyng, 746.
- Morwe, *n.* S. morning, 763, 776. A morwe (on the morrow), 1296.
- Most, Moste. *See* Mot.
- Mot, 1 *p. s. pr.* I am obliged, I must, I ought, 548; *pr. s.* mot, 4141, 4171; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mot, 3988;

- 2 *p. pl. pr.* mote, 1043; *pt. s.* most, 5188; *pt. pl.* moste, 1052; *pr. s.* subj. mot (expressing a wish), 602, 1433, 1547, 4509; 1 *p. pl. subj.* most (= might, would), 3252; *pt. s.* subj. most, 3547, 3978, 4226, 4817; must, † 68; *pt. pl. subj.* most, 4798. Mot nede, *pr. s.* 4141; most nedes, *pt. s.* 5188. A.S. *ic mōt*, *pt. t.* *ic mōste*.
- Mountance, *n.* F. amount, 2391.
- Mow, 1 *p. s. pr.* I may, I can, I am able, 636, 3802; *pr. s.* 730, 2055, 3998; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mowe, 2794, 3903; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mow, 1458, 4092; *pr. pl.* mowe, 4162; 1 *p. s. pt.* miȝt (could), 2351; *pt. s.* miȝt, 3623; miȝth, 3621; *pt. pl.* miȝth, 3539; miȝt, 3632. Miȝtow (= mightest thou), 3041. A.S. *magan*, *pr. t.* *ic mæg*, *pt. t.* *ic mihte*. Mæso-Goth. *magan*, *pr. t.* *ik mag*, *pt. t.* *ik mahta*.
- Muche. See Miche.
- Muchel. See Michel.
- Munde, *n.* S. mind, 4123.
- Munge, Munged. See Menge.
- Muntaynes, *n. pl.* F. mountains, 2619, 3507.
- Mures, *n. pl.* moors, 2619. Cf. Mires in l. 3507.
- Murdred (to deþe), pp. 2859; — murþered (to deþe), 1774.
- Muri, Murie. See Merie.
- Mut, *n.* F. cry of hounds, 2192. O. F. *esmeute*; Cotgrave.
- Mys, *adj.* false, 716. [But *mys* is generally a substantive, or a prefix, and I should prefer to read *mys-metyng*.] See Misse.
- Myslych, *adj.* S. various, of all kinds, † 1160. Mæso-Goth. *missa-leiks*.
- N. “This letter, by a species of prosthesis, is often taken from the end of an article or pronoun, and prefixed to the substantive which follows. Examples of this occur in *no neiz*, for *non eiz*, 83; *a noyement*, for *an oynement*, 136; *my nother*, for *myn other*, 468; *thi narmes*, for *thiu armes*, 666; *zister neue*, for *zistern eue*, 2160, &c. See Tyrwhitt's Gloss. in v. *nale*. The practice existed in familiar writing so late as the reign of Q. Elizabeth, and, perhaps, later still.”—M. Cf. note on Nones.
- Na, *adv.* not, 1172. See Ne.
- Namore, no more, 2812, 2924, 4907; *written* na more, 2556; na mo, 1271.
- Nad (*contr.* from *ne had*), *pt. s.* had not, 154; — nade, 1358; — nadde, 119, 1350, 2465; *pt. pl.* nad, 460.
- Nam. See Nym.
- Nameliche, *adv.* S. namely, especially, 1203; — namliche, 2604; — namli, 2508.
- Nammed. See Nempne.
- Narmes. See under N.
- Nas (*contr.* from *ne was*), was not, 278, 2784, † 460, &c.
- Naþ (*contr.* from *ne haþ*), hath not, 4934.
- Napeles, *adv.* nevertheless, 1751, 4506, 5265. Ch.
- Naueye, *n.* navy, collection of ships, 2719. Ch.
- Nay, *adv.* no, 251, 482, 543, 547, 1559, 1814, 1826, 2003, 2314, &c.; — nai, 916, 965. *There is a clear distinction between no and nay. No signifies assent to the previous speaker; nay implies strong denial, and is generally followed by an oath. See No, and Nickes.*
- Ne, *adv.* not, nor, 315, 450, 457, &c. Hence, *nad* for *ne had*; *nis* for *ne is*; *nas* for *ne was*; *nath* for *ne hath*; *nel* for *ne wil*; *ner* for *ne were*; *noilde* for *ne wolde*; *not* for *ne wot*; *nist* for *ne wist*.
- Ned, *n.* S. need, 3210; — nede, 119; *pl.* nedes, 1436, 4164, 4251.

- Neded, *pt. s.* needed, 1919.
- Nedes, *adv.* of necessity, necessarily, 1042, 1679, 5185, 5188; — *nedc*, 3922, 4141. A.S. *neádes*, *neáde*.
- Needely, *adv.* S. urgently, † 747; — *nedelich* (necessarily), † 817. Ch.
- Neiz. See Nest.
- Neizh, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 434, 664, 686; — *neiz*, 151; — *neizc*, 1511; — *neicz*, 3185; — *nezh*, 979; — *ney*, 2074. *Comp.* *nerre*, 1911; *þe nere*, 758. *Neizhonde* (*lit.* nigh hand), nearly, 1494; — *neiz*, *honde*, 884; — *neizh* *hondes*, 438.
- Neizhe, *v. S.* to approach, draw nigh, 3230, 3241; — *nezh*, 278; — *nye*, † 493, † 700, † 764; *pt. s.* *neized*, 770; *neizet*, 2599; *neiyed*, 1606; *neihed*, † 739; *nyed*, † 136, † 505; *pt. pl.* *neized*, 4899; *neyþed*, 2179. [*In* l. † 493 it *may* mean, to annoy; *cf.* *Noyzed*.]
- Neizede, *pt. s.* S. neighed, 3238.
- Nel (*for* ne wil), 1 *p. s. pr.* I will not, 484, 718, 1098, 4907; *pr. s.* *nel*, 986, 4260; *pr. pl.* *nelle*, 4937.
- Nempne, *v. S.* to name, tell, 4213; — *nynpne*, 2179; *pt. s.* *nenmed*, 368; *pp.* *nammed*, † 524. Ch.
- Nende; *here*, a *nende* = an *ende*, 3946.
- Nere (*contr. from* ne were), *pr. s. subj.* were not, 714, 2409. (*Cf.* *Nas*.)
- Nere, Nerre. See Neizh.
- Nere, never, † 316; *the usual form is* *neuer*, 735, &c.
- Nesche, *adj.* S. soft. In hard and in *nesche*, 495; to *harde* and to *nesche*, 534. Ch.
- Nest, *n.* 83. “Nest and no *neiz* (= nest and non *ei3*, i. e. nest and no egg), evidently a proverbial phrase.”—M.
- Neuen, *v. S.* to name, tell, 2453, 2517. Ch.
- Newew, *n.* F. nephew, 1198, 3537, 4211; — *newe*, 1023, 3418, 4983; — *neweu*, 5095, 5098 (*in which last live it seems to mean* great-nephew).
- Newe, *adv.* S. newly, lately, 1354; (*anew*), 2999.
- Newene, *v. S.* to renew, 779.
- Nickes with nay, refuses with a “no,” 4145. “A proverbial phrase familiar to our old poets. See *Gawayne and the Grene Knight*, 706; *Pistill of Susan*, st. xii. ap. Laing; *Amis & Amiloun*, 2176, ap. Weber; *King Estmere*, 47, ap. Percy, and Pinkerton’s *Scottish Poems*, vol. iii. pp. 15, 72, 82.”—M. *Cf.* *Swed. neka*.
- Nigramaunce, necromancy, 119; — *nigremauncie*, † 460, † 981.
- Nigremaunciens, necromancers, † 837.
- Nis (*contr. from* ne is), is not, 377, 1357, 3210; — *nys*, 712.
- Nist. See Not.
- No, *adv.* no, 2701, 3115; — *ne*, 1556. See note on *Nay*.
- No, *put for* Ne, not, 67, 85, &c. *Conversely, we find* *ne for* no; see *the preceding*.
- Nobul, *adj.* noble, 1109, 1198.
- Noiper. See Noper.
- Nold (*for* ne wold), would not, 1 *p. s. pt.* 1731, 1877; *pt. s.* 561, 2692; *molde*, 2184; *pt. pl.* *molde*, † 236.
- Nome, Nomen. See Nym.
- Non, *pron.* no one, 396, 443, 2461; (neither of them) 2423; *adj.* (= no) 509; — *no*, 275, 1282; — *noue*, 74; *adv.* no, 2455.
- Nones, *for* þe, 1157, 2015. In the note to l. 7160 of *Dr White’s Ormulum*, vol. ii. p. 642, we find—“*For þe nanness*, for the purpose. This phrase is so written in the MS., but its grammatical structure, as admitted on the authority of the late Mr Price and of Sir F. Madden,

- requires the form *forr þen aness*, being a slight variation of the A.S. *for þan anes*, literally *for the once*. In *Laṡamon* we have to *þan anes*, to *þan ane*, for that only." For further information, see the rest of the note, and cf. the remark under N.
- Nory, *n.* F. nurse, 1511.
- Not (*for ne wot*), know not, 1 *p.* *s. pr.* 320, 541, 903, 4155; *pt. s.* *nist* (*for ne wist*), 741.
- Noþer, *conj.* neither, 1675; — noþer, 722, 2385. "This broad pronounciation is not peculiar to the English provinces, but has also been remarked in France, in such words as *chandole* for *chandelle*, &c. A writer on the subject says, "En general, quand, dans le Français, se trouve un *e* ouvert, le rustique y substitue *oi*." *Melanges sur les langues*, p. 71. Svo. Paris, 1831."—M.
- Noþer; *we find* my noþer (= myn oþer), my other, 468; no noþer (= non oþer), no other thing, nothing else, 1679; *spelt* no noþer, †489, †756.
- Nov, *adv.* now, 78, 79; — nou, 454; — nouþe, 1543; — nowþe, 354, 356, 603; — noþe, 1005, 5032; — nouþ, 626.
- Nouþt, *adv.* not, 13, 299, 358, 450, &c.; *n.* nothing, naught, 72, 83; *miswritten* nouþ, 720.
- Noyce, *n.* noise, 823.
- Noynement, 136. *A noynement* = an oynement, an ointment, unguent.
- Noyzed, *pp.* annoyed, grieved, 770. *See* note to Neiphe.
- Nyce, *adj.* foolish, 491. Ch.
- Nym, *v.* to take (take prisoner), 1364; *pt. s.* nam, 1203, 2450, †468; nam hede (took heed), 368; *pt. pl.* nomen (*the nom. case being sondes*), 1309; *pp.* nome, 2330. Mæso-Goth. *niman*, *pt. t.* *ik nam*, *pl. veis nemum*, *pp. numans*.
- Nymphe. *See* Nempne.
- O, *art.* and *adj.* one, a, 1112, 1350, 1628, 2461, 3017, 4033, 4321, 4733; — on, 192, 403, 1345; þat on (the one), 1198.
- O, *miswritten* for Or, 1455.
- O, *prep.* on, †258.
- Of, *prep.* of, *passim*; (out of), 1039, 3084, 3141; (off), 1218; (for), 442, 500. Brouzt of liue, brouzt of dawe (brought out of life, brought out of day), killed, 1159, 3817; as opposed to *on liue*. As a verbal prefix, it is the A.S. *of-* or *a-*. Mæso-Goth., Du., Dan., Swed., Isl. *af-*. It occurs in Of-reche, Of-se, Of-sende, Of-sette, Of-souzt, Of-take; see below.
- Of-reche, *v.* to reach to, 3874; *pt. s.* of-rauzte, 1233. A.S. *a-récan*. Cf. Rob. Glouc. 285.6.
- Of-se, *v.* S. to perceive, 2223; *pt. s.* of-sei, 2245; of-seic, 273, 2771; of-sey, 4444; of-seve, 224; of-saw, 49, 3283; *pt. pl.* of-seizyen, 1221. A.S. *of-seon*.
- Of-sende, *v.* S. to send after, send for, 5293; *pt. s.* of-sent, 1081. *See of-sended* in *Laṡamon*.
- Of-sette, *pt. pl.* beset, 2648; *pp.* of-sett, †308, †395. A.S. *of-settan*.
- Of-souhte, *pt. s.* searched out, hence approached, †1217; *pp.* of-souzt (sought after), 1676; of-sought (attacked), †25. A.S. *a-sécan*.
- Of-take, *v.* to overtake, 1275, 2198, 2398, 2590; *pt. s.* of-tok, 3895; of-toke, 3916; *pt. pl.* of-toke, 3881. *See oftake, atake*, in Wycl. Gloss., and *oftake* in *Laṡamon*.
- Of-turned, *pt. pl.* turned off, stripped off, 2590. [*Perhaps the words of and turned should be separated.*]
- Ofte, *adv.* S. oft, often, 1570; *comp.* ofter, 610.

- Oþer, *conj.* or, 3130. See Oþer.
- Ok, *n.* S. an oak, 295.
- Omage, *n.* F. homage, 1306, 5403, 5474.
- On, *prep.* in; often represented in modern language by *a-*; see Acts xiii. 36. *On dayes*, by day, 244, 773. *On face*, in face, 2634. *On felde*, afield, 173. *On gate*, on their way, 2092; see Gate. *Ipon hast*, hastily, 5195. *On heiz*, on high, 2020. *On live*, alive, 2100 (cf. *I-live*. 1690). *On-loft*, aloft, †1186. *On morwe*, in the morning, 3640. *On niztes*, by night, 739; *on a nizt*, 656. *On peces*, in pieces, 3410. *On-sunder*, asunder, 5455 (cf. *a-sunder*, 1759). *On swore*, in a swoon, 87. *On weie*, on their way, 1751.
- On, *adj.* one. See O.
- One, *adj.* S. alone, 211, 511, 3156. *Al him-self one*, 3316; *him-self one*, 657; *bi here-self one*, 3101. *Him one*, 17, 4112; *hym one*, †792. *Þei þre one*, 1415. *Al-one*, 659, 864; *allone but*, 1532. *God one*, 4002. *On þe one* (by thee alone), 4575. Cf. *Alone* in Jamieson.
- Ones, *adv.* S. once, 195, 611, 637. *At ones* (at once), 5412; *at onis* (together), 5180; (once for all), 3255.
- On-honged, *pp.* S. hanged, 1564.
- Onliche, *adv.* S. only, 3155, 3799.
- Onwhar, *adv.* anywhere, somewhere, 1820; — *onwar*, 2251.
- Or, *adv.* S. before, 147, 1747, 2351, †30, †142, †310.
- Or-trowed, *pt. s.* supposed, imagined, †738. See *or-troweden* in Wyel. Gloss., and cf. *Ouer-trowe*.
- Ost, *n.* F. host, 1127, 1197, 3767. Ch.
- Oþer, *conj.* or, 696, 966, 1498, 1523; (or else), 4067. Oþer—or (either—or), 1212. 1822. Ch.
- Oþer, *adj.* other; hence, þat oþer = the second, the next, 1199; *pl.* oþer (others), 5218. Oþer-gate (otherwise), 3761; and hence, *elliptically*, oþer = otherwise, 2071, 2122.
- Ouer-borde, overboard, 2823; — *ouer-bord*, 2778.
- Ouer-gret, *adj.* over-great, very great, 1069. *The MS. has ouer-gart gret ost, probably by mistake. "Ouer-gret is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116 (Chan. Yem. Prot.)"*—M.
- Ouer-mached, *pp.* over-matched, 1216.
- Ouer-pase, *v.* to pass by, pass unnoticed, 4113.
- Ouer-ride, *v.* to ride over, harry, 4147, 4262. Ch.
- Ouer-slide, *v.* to pass away without effort to retain it, to slip away, 3519.
- Ouer-trowe, *n.* S. mistrust, suspicion, 1402. Cf. *Or-trowed*.
- Our, *adv.* over. *But our on tifty tumbel*, except one (of us) soon tumble over, 3388.
- Our, *poss. pron.* our, 4223; *pl.* oure, 3385.
- Out, *prep.* out of, 1640; — *ouȝt* (out), 3068; — *ouȝt of* (out of), 1204, 1691.
- Out-wende, *v.* S. to go out, 4853.
- Ouȝt, *n.* S. anything, aught, 952; — *out*, 1823, 2090, 2971; *adv.* ouȝt (at all), 2395, 3244, 5219.
- Out, *pt. s.* possessed, 2627; *ouȝt*, 3229; aught, †14, †173, †237; *pt. pl.* ouȝten (owed), 1080. *As auxil. vb.* out, *pt. s.* ought, 520, 874, 1323; aught, †547; 1 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 3589; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 4129; *pr. pl.* ouȝt, 5221.
- Ow, you, 106. See ȝou.
- Paide, *pt. s.* pleased, 4988; *pp.* payed, 1313, †1038. *From Lat. pacare.* Ch.
- Paie, *n.* F. pleasure, 193, 5427, †701; — *paye*, 5492, 5524, †159.

- Paleis, *n.* F. palace, 2838; — paleys, 2845.
- Pane, *n.* F. cloth, or fur, 5356. "See *Sir Tristrem*, p. 37."—M. See also *Pane* in Wedgwood and Halliwell.
- Paradijs, Paradise, 443.
- Paramours, *n.* F. mistress, lover, 1534; *gen. pl.* paramoures, lovers', 2987; for paramours, for love, 1758; of paramours, of love, 1412.
- Parayled, *pp.* appalled, 1990.
- Park, *n.* a park, 2845. F. *parc*. A.S. *pearroc*.
- Partened, *pt. pl.* belonged, 1419.
- Party, *n.* F. to hold *party* to = to maintain the battle against, 3643; *pl.* partizes, sides, 1146; partyes, 1150.
- Pas, *n.* F. course, 3915; a "pas-sus," canto, 161; — pase, pace, 4337.
- Passed, *pt. s.* passed, went, 4112; passad, 3068; *pt. pl.* passeden, 2166, 3938.
- Patriarkes, *n. pl.* patriarchs, 5047.
- Paulions, *n. pl.* pavilions, tents, 1630; — paulounns, 1627.
- Payenes, *gen. sing.* pagan's, 365.
- Paype, or Pappe, *n.* path, 1674.
- Pellure, *n.* F. costly fur, 53. "See Roq. and Jamieson's examples, which might be greatly augmented."—M. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 9.
- Peple, *n.* F. people, 1122; — puple, 499, 4139, 5061.
- Peraunture, peradventure, 254.
- Perced, *pp.* pierced, 1225.
- Pere, *n.* F. peer, equal, 443, 709; *pl.* pers, 3976. Ch.
- Perelouste, *sup. adj.* F. most perilous, 1191.
- Perles, *adj.* F. peerless, 499, 516, 740, 933, &c.
- Perrey, *n.* F. precious stones, jewels, 53. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 12, and Ch.
- Pert, *adj.* F. true, *lit.* evident, 4930. Lat. *apertus*.
- Pertly, *adv.* F. openly, clearly, plainly, 180, 2536; — pertli, 2489; — pertely, 156, 684; — pertily, 1225; — pertili, 4384; — pertliche, 5044, — pertelyche, 53; — pertilyche, 361; — pertiliche, 96, 291. *Cf.* Apertli.
- Pes, *n.* F. peace, 2951.
- Peter, by saint Peter! 681. The line means—"But, by saint Peter! it was only his pillow," &c. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. vi. 28; Ch. House of Fame, ii. 526; Morte Arth. (ed. Perry), 2884.
- Peyne, *v.* S. to punish, 2898, 3662; *pt. pl.* pinte, †238; *pp.* peyned, *in phr.* bat on croyce was peyned, that was put to a painful death on the cross, 350, 3127, 4151.
- Piled, *pp.* F. robbed, plundered, 5123. Ch.
- Pilus, *n. pl.* feathers, down, †814. "*Poil folet*, the first down or soft feathers of a young bird." Cotgrave.
- Pitous, *adj.* F. piteous, 643; — pytous, 1180; — pitevows, 5488. Ch.
- Pitousli, *adv.* F. piteously, 1168; — pitously, 933; pituosli, 1756.
- Pizt, *pp.* S. pitched, 1627. Ch.
- Plece, *v.* F. to please, 4729; — plese, 5435.
- Pleie, *v.* to play, 678, 1020, 2736; *pt. s.* pleide, 216, 1195; *pt. pl.* pleide, 1477; pleyed, 1058.
- Pleint, *n.* F. complaint, 1180. Ch.
- Plenerli, *adv.* F. fully, 5435.
- Plenteousliche, *adv.* F. plenteously, 180; — plenteousli, 4970; — plentiously, 1122.
- Pleyn, *adv.* F. full, 3158. Ch.

- Pleynd hem, *pt. pl.* complained, 1845.
- Pliht, *n.* S. plight, condition, 5373.
- Pope, 1957. See the note.
- Porayle, *n.* F. the poor, the lower order of people, 5123. Ch.
- Porsewed, *pt. pl.* pursued, 2196; *pp.* porsewed, 2474.
- Portingale, Portugal, 116.
- Portreide, *pp.* pourtrayed, 445, 619.
- Posterne, *n.* F. postern-gate, 1752, 3068; posterne-gate, 2166; posterne-gate, 2871.
- Pouert, *n.* F. poverty, 5373. Ch.
- Praide, *pt. s.* he prayed, 270; praiced, 3546; preiede, 1168; preide, 643; *pt. pl.* preid, 1903; *imp. pl.* preieth, 164; preizes, 5529.
- Praire, *n.* prayer, 996.
- Praisen, *pr. pl.* praise, 617.
- Preeued, *pp.* proved, approved, † 604.
- Proned, *pp.* pinned, † 420. See *Prein* in Jamieson. A.S. *preon*. Dan. *preen*, a bodkin. We still use the phrase, "pinned to the earth."
- Prent, *n.* F. print, † 845.
- Pres, *n.* F. press, throng, crowd, 1191, 1225, 1481, 3431; — prese, 3848. Ch.
- Presed, *pt. s.* pressed forward, 3424, 4959.
- Prest, *adj.* F. ready, prepared, 1598, † 6, † 165, † 422, † 595, &c. Ch.
- Prestly, *adv.* F. readily, quickly, soon, 1146, 1232, † 171, † 368; — prestli, 2649; — prestely, 291, 335, 996; — presteli, 1237, 1717; — prestili, 3319, 3431; — presteliche, 399; — prestlich, † 792. [It occurs more than 20 times.]
- Prie, *v.* to pry, look, 5019; *pt. s.* pried, 96.
- Prike, *v.* S. to spur, ride fast, 2382; *pt. s.* priked, 1191, 3319; prikede, 1481, 3362; *pt. pl.* priken, † 352.
- Pris, *adj.* F. worthy, choice, rich, noble, 161, 411, 2442, † 306, † 466; *pt. pris*, † 6; prise, † 1038; price, 1630.
- Prisely, *adv.* choicely, well, † 733.
- Prisoun, *n.* F. a prisoner, 1251; *pl.* prisouns, 1290; prisons, 3458, 4215. P. Pl.
- Proddest, *sup. adj.* proudest, 2942.
- Properly, *adv.* F. properly, truly, 652; — propirli, 619; — propirly, 672.
- Proueyed hire, *pt. s.* provided for herself, procured, 3064.
- Prouost, *n.* provost, 2265, 2270.
- Pult, *v.* to put, 3093; *pt. s.* pult, 4593; *pp.* pult, 381, 4219, 4223, 4236, 4522, 5373. "In O.E. the word *put* was frequently written with an intrusive *t*, *pult*, analogous to the *t* in *falter*, *halt*, *jolt*." — Wedgwood, who derives it from F. *bouter*. In l. 2951 we find *Put*.
- Puluere, *n.* F. a pillow, 675, 681, 684; — pulwere, 672.
- Puple. See *Peple*.
- Pure litel, very little, 3093.
- Purli, *adv.* purely, wholly, 4219; — purliche, 4428; — purlich, † 1038.
- Pursewend, *pres. part.* F. pursuant, suitable, 5028.
- Purueaunce, *n.* F. provision, 1598, 1605.
- Purueyed, *pp.* provided, 1605.
- Quarrere, *n.* F. quarry, 2232, 2319; — quarrer, 2281, 4692.
- Quap, *pt. s.* quoth, said, 251, 2028, 2168, † 635; quod, 3753, † 682.
- Queite, *pt. s.* whisked, darted, moved swiftly, 4344. Sir F. Madden suggested a derivation from the A.S. *cuehte*, moved (which is, however, transitive), or that it might



- mean *crept*, from the F. *quatir*, explained by Roquefort to mean *se tapir*, i. e. to squat. But it is rather from the W. *chweido*, to move nimbly, and is familiar to us in Lowland Scotch in the forms *quhid* and *whid*. See *quhid* in Jamieson.
- Queintyse, *n.* F. cunning, skill, 4220.
- Quelle, *v.* S. to kill, 1246, 2123, 2773, 2811, &c.; *pr. s.* quelles, 179; *pt. s.* quelled, 1109. *Cf.* *kyllen* in l. † 924.
- Queme, *v.* S. to please, delight, satisfy, 3404, † 227, † 682, † 1181; 2 *p. s. pr.* quemest, † 593; *pp.* quemed, † 788. Ch.
- Quemfull, *adv.* S. pleasing, giving delight, † 552.
- Queynt, *adj.* F. quaint; i. e. cunning, skilful, 4136, 4254;—quinte, 1101. Ch.
- Queyntli, *adv.* F. quaintly, i. e. cunningly, 4644;—queyntliche, 3233. Ch.
- Quic, *adj.* S. alive, 1564;—quik, 1212. Ch.
- Quicliche, *adv.* S. quickly, soon, 908;—quikliche, 2127.
- Quinte. See Queynt.
- Quite, *v.* F. to repay, requite, 325, 4726; *pr. s. subj.* quite, 4713. Ch.
- Quitly, *adv.* freely, entirely, 2341. "Used by Ch. Cant. T. 1794 (Knights T. 934)."—M.
- Quod. See Quap.
- Radde. See Rede, *v.*
- Raddely, Radely, Rapli. See Redeli.
- Rauzt, *pt. s.* S. reached, 1193, 4424; raught, † 1174; *pp.* rauzt, 4523.
- Railed, *pp.* striped, decked, 1618. See *Rail* in Wedgwood, *Riotè* in Cotgrave, and cf. Norman *Railer*, to score, draw lines, streak.
- Rapli, *adv.* very quickly, hastily, 3179. Du. *rap*, nimble. P. Pl. A. v. 176.
- Real, *adv.* F. royal, splendid, 866, 1310, 1405, 1597, 1601;—riall, † 178, † 267; *sup.* realest, 3944. Ch.
- Realy, *adv.* F. royally, 352, 1260, 1391, 1426, 1618;—reali, 5460;—rialliche, 4859; *comp.* realiere, 4852. Ch.
- Realte, *n.* F. royalty, splendour, 5006;—reaute, 1926, 1959;—reaulte, 5331, 5345;—riaulte, 5057.
- Reaume. *n.* F. realm, 1310, 1964, 3920, 4102.
- Reching, *n.* explanation, † 599. A.S. *recan*, to say, explain.
- Recuer, *n.* F. to recover, i. e. to gain. 2801; *pt. s. intr.* recuered (recovered), 3874.
- Recuerere, *n.* F. recovery, revival, 439.
- Reddour, *n.* F. violence, injury, 2953. [The words *reddour* = violence (O.F. *roidour*), and *reddour* = fear (Suio-Goth. *rædde*), are often mistaken for each other.]
- Redè, *adj.* ready, 1963.
- Rede, *n.* S. advice, counsel, 803, 1458, 1692, 5115, † 356. *What is me to rede.* what is advisable for me, 903; shortened into *what to rede*, 3885; *take hire to rede*, considered as advisable for herself, 133. *Cf.* A.S. *to ræde*, s.v. *ræd* in Bosworth.
- Rede, *v.* S. to advise, counsel, 1356; 1 *p. pr. pl.* rede, 1112; *pt. s.* radde, 1301; (= read), 4433; *pr. s. subj.* rede, 2262. *Too rede*, to read, to explain, † 556. Ch.
- Redeles, *adj.* S. without counsel, at a loss what to do, † 394;—redles, 2915.
- Redeli, *adv.* S. readily, quickly, soon, 461, 1824, 1828, 2516;—redeliche, 439, 5467;—redili, 3563;—rediliche, 1226;—redli,

- 2143, 2488; — redly, 866, 1153; — reddely, 1367; — radely, 41; — raddely, 810. [It occurs nearly 30 times. In l. 3179 Sir F. Madden explains *rafli* by *quickly*, but we should read *rapli*, as in the MS.]
- Regal, *n. F.* regality, 282.
- Reioische, *v. F.* to enjoy, 4102. Cf. *Reioshe* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.
- Reken, *v. S.* to reckon, tell, 1597, 3179; — rekene, 336, 1934, 1958. Ch.
- Remued, *pt. s. intr.* removed, went, 1325; remewed, 5106, 5317; *pt. pl.* remewed, 1297. Ch.
- Renkes. See Rink.
- Renne, *v. S.* to run, 219, 2268, 3179. Ch.
- Reproue, *n. F.* reproof, 652.
- Res, *n. S.* rush of emotion, conflict of mind, 439; attack. onset, †389; violence, †1159. A.S. *ra's*, rush, onset, violence. Ch.
- Resset, *n. F.* a place of shelter or refuge, 2801. See *Recet* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.
- Restored, *pp.* stored, 2846.
- Rette, *v.* to impute, ascribe, 461. "Reety, or retty, or wty. *Imputo, reputo, ascribo.*" Prom. Parv. Used by Ch. O.N. *retta*.
- Reue, *v. S.* to rob, bereave, 1824, 4392; reued, 2755. Ch.
- Reueles, *n. pl. F.* revels, 1953.
- Reuested, *pp.* dressed, 1959, 5047.
- Reuliche, *adv.* ruefully, pitiaibly, 86.
- Renowres, *n. pl. S.* robbers, 5478.
- Renpe, *n. S.* ruth, pity, 2115, 3270.
- Reward, *n. F.* regard, 3339.
- Rewes me. *pr. s.* grieves me, 562; *pt. s.* rewed him, grieved him, 4987. Ch.
- Rialiche. See Reali.
- Rialte. See Realte.
- Riche, *v. F.* to enrich, or more probably, to be rich, 3014.
- Riche, *n. S.* a kingdom, †58.
- Richesse, *n. F.* riches, 1935, 3014, 5057. [It is in the sing. number.] Ch.
- Richier, *adv.* more richly, 1934.
- Ridende, *pres. part.* 1954.
- Rif, Rifliche. See Riuedli.
- Rigge, *n. S.* back, †1174. Ch.
- Rink, *n. S.* a man, hero, warrior, 1193, 1935, 3563, †105, †480; — rynk, 1472; — ring, 5213; — ryng, †1145; *pl.* rinkes, 1213, 1226, †341, †354; renkes, 1153.
- Rise, *n.* Reggio, in Calabria, 2717. "See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxi. *n.* The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martiniere's Dictionary, sub. *v. Riez.*"—M.
- Rist, *n. S.* rising; *sonne rist* = rising of the sun, †791; hence, the East, †855.
- Rit, *adv.* right, 4268; — rīzt, 273.
- Riue, *adj.* S. rife, abundant, full, 4415, 5414, †726; — ryfe, †268.
- Riuedli, *adv.* abundantly, widely, 2953, 3840; — riuedliche, 2115; — rifliche, 1472; — rif, 1953.
- Rīzt, *adv.* See Rit.
- Rīztes, *n. pl.* rights, 3218. At here rīztes, exactly, rightly, suitably, 4906; — at alle rīztes, 4255; — to pe rīztes, 5006, 5026; — to pe rīztes, 53; — to rīztes, 1957; — to rīztes, 1605, 1632; — too rīztes, †660, †846, †980; to rīztus, †1222. Anon rīztes, straightway, immediately, 1306; — anon rīztes, 235. Vp-rīztes (upright), 1789; doun-rīztes, 1165. Rīztes gates, by the right way, 5322. [In *At*

- all riztes, to riztes, &c.*, I suppose *riztes* to be the pl. of *rizt*, sb. ; in *anon riztes, vp-rizttes, down-riztes*, it is the gen. case sing. used adverbially ; cf. *rihtes*, adv. in Lazamon. In *riztes gates*, I think *riztes* is the gen. sing. of *rizt*, adj. agreeing with *gates*, gen. of *gate* ; the whole expression being used adverbially.]
- Riztleche, *v.* S. to govern, 282, 1310. A.S. *rihtlecan*.
- Riztly, *adv.* directly, straightway, 232. *Cf.* Rit.
- Roche, *n.* F. rock, 2367. Ch.
- Rode, *n.* S. rood, cross, 1669, 1802, 2083, 2360. Ch.
- Rode, *n.* complexion, † 178. O.N. *rodi*. *Cf.* A.S. *rudu*, redness.
- Romed, *pt. s.* roamed, 1608 ; *pt. pl.* romden, 810. Ch.
- Rote, *n.* S. root, 638. Ch.
- Roted, *pp.* rotted, 4124.
- Route, *v.* F. to trouble, harass, 5478.
- Route, *n.* F. a rout, company, troop, 1213, 1616, 1942, 3354 ; — roun̄te, 4276 ; — rowte, 397. Ch.
- Roum, *n.* a room, i. e. a space, while, † 1030.
- Roūzt hem, it recked them, i. e. they cared, 3353 ; *pt.* rought (recked), † 383.
- Rowe, *adj.* S. rough, 4778. Ch.
- Rudli, *adv.* rudely, 3270.
- Sad, *adj.* firm, steadfast, *in various senses* ; as, discreet, steady, sober, 228 ; firm, massive, 1072 ; firm, sure, 1463 ; severe, grievous, 2775 ; — sadde, firm, sure, 1371 ; *sup.* saddest, chiefest, 677 ; *in which last instance it is very nearly equivalent to* most joyous ; cf. l. 3675. “In the sense of heavy, hard, or solid, it is used in the Wycliffite Bib’le, in the Prompt. Parv. (A. D. 1440), and in Stanbridge’s Vocab. (A. D. 1513). In the North,
- this signification is not yet obsolete ; see Brockett, and Hunter.” — M. Cf. Welsh, *sad*, firm, steady, discreet. Ch.
- Sadly, *adv.* firmly, 1014 ; seriously, 488, 557 ; steadfastly, 469, 524 ; earnestly, 418, 1165, 2388 ; — sadli, fixedly, 762 ; discreetly, 969 ; earnestly, 2524 ; seriously, 4146, 4170 ; purposely, 2750 ; heavily, 539 ; — saddleh, closely, 2281, 2592 ; — saddely, quietly, in a low tone, 311 ; *sup.* saddest, most earnestly, 3675 ; *cf.* l. 677. Ch.
- Saf. *See* Sauf.
- Sai, Saie. *See* Se.
- Saile, *v.* to sail, 2673 ; — sayle, 2721 ; *pt. pl.* saileden, 2763.
- Sake, *n.* S. cause ; hence, for þat sake = on that account, 2019. A.S. *sacu*, a dispute, suit at law, cause.
- Saluede, *pt. s.* saluted, 4017.
- Samen, *adv.* S. together, 433, 909, 1288, 1907, 2267, 2445, &c. ; — same, 4318, 4899 ; — samme, † 342. It occurs 19 times. The expressions *samen to-geder* (909), and *samen y-fere* (2267) are pleonastic. It is found in Spenser.
- Samli, *adv.* together, 1835 ; *cf.* ll. 433, 909. A.S. *samodlice*.
- Sarre, *comp. adv.* more sorely, 2025, 3441.
- Sauf, *adv.* F. safe, sound, whole, 868, 1329, 2816, 4634 ; — saf, 1332. *Sauf and sound*, 868, 2816. *See* Fouche.
- Sautly, *adv.* safely, 3051 ; — sautli, 2688 ; — sauffiche, 256 ; — safliche, 258. Ch.
- Saules, *n. pl.* souls, 3705.
- Saundbruel ; the name of a horse, 3585. “So named from its colour.” — M.
- Sauor, *n.* F. scent, perfume, 638, 818 ; — sawour, 849.
- Saūzt, *n.* F. assault, 2651 ; —

- saute, † 301; *pl.* sautes, 2682; sautes, 2857. Ch.
- Sawe, *n. S.* saying, word, 1112, 1305, 1483, † 757; *pl.* sawes, 1439.
- Say. *See* Se.
- Sayle. *See* Saile.
- Schal, *pr. s.* shall, 2938, 2945, &c.; 1 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5422; 2 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5162; schulle, 3690; chul, 3339; *pr. pl.* schul, 964, 2943, 2952; schulle (ought), 3807; 2 *p. s. pt.* schuldest, 5194; *pt. s.* schold, 2969, 2971; chold, 2014; 2 *p. pl. pt.* schuld, 3685; *pt. pl.* schuld, 3810. *See* next word.
- Schaltow, shalt thou, 340, 5132; —schalstow, 325.
- Schamful, *adj. S.* harmful, 1855.
- Schamly, *adj. S.* shameful, 556.
- Schap, *n. S.* shape, 2885.
- Schape, *v. F.* to escape, 2749; *pt. pl.* schaped, 2752; *pp.* schaped, 460, 731, 1282; schapit, 2151.
- Schapen, *pp.* shapen, shaped, 126, 225, 1447; —schape, 3214.
- Scharplyche, *adv. S.* sharply, 178.
- Schape, *n. S.* scathe, harm, disgrace, 3008, 3084, 4051.
- Schapeles, *adv. S.* scatheless, without injury, 1855; —scapeles, 2749.
- Schaplî, *adv.* harmfully, hardly, 2794. [But it may be a mistake for *schapelestli.*]
- Schawes, *n. pl.* groves, 178. Ch.
- Schawes, *n. pl.* men, † 484. The sing. *shawe*, † 766, should rather be spell *schawe*. A.S. *scate*, a servant, man.
- Sche, *pron.* she, 836, 837, &c.; —hue, † 34, † 35, † 36; —che, 462, 641. A.S. *leo*.
- Scheche, *v. S.* to seek, 2068.
- Scheld, *n. S.* shield, 3214; —schel, 3216.
- Schenchip, *n. S.* shame, dishonour, 556, 1803. Ch.
- Schende, *v. S.* to shame, dishonour, disgrace, 556, † 995; —schend, † 566; *pp.* schent (destroyed, dead). 2798, † 1028. Ch.
- Schene, *adj. S.* fair, beautiful, bright, 3214, 3296; —scheene, † 202. Used as *sb.*, *lady* being understood, 733, 3299. Ch.
- Scheenely, *adv. S.* brightly, † 631.
- Scheppe, *n. S.* ship, 5088; —schipe, 5212; —schip, 2729; *pl.* schippes, 2728.
- Schete, *v. S.* to shoot, 2399; —schote, 178; *pt. s.* shet (*read* schet), † 277.
- Schette, *v. S.* to shut, fasten, 3649; *pt. pl.* schetten, 3267. Cf. Bi-schet, 2014.
- Scheuered, *pp.* shivered, 3411.
- Schilde, 3 *p. s. imp.* shield, 1803.
- Schille, *adj.* shrill, 213; *adv.* (shrilly), 37, 3831. Du. *schel*.
- Schinnes, *n. pl.* skins, 2420.
- Schipmen, *n. pl.* sailors, 2768; —chipmen, 2811, 2818.
- Schire, *adj.* clean, † 1008. *See Sheer* in Wedgwood.
- Schoche, *v. F.* to suspect, 1398, —souche, 1983; *pt. s.* scouched, 1413; souched, 1059. O. F. *souche*, souci. Roq.
- Schon, *n. pl.* shoon, shoes, 14.
- Schonde, *n. S.* shame, dishonour, 555.
- Schore, *n. S.* a score; foure schore, 1102, 2540; teu schore, 3909.
- Schorned, *pp.* scorned, 554.
- Schortely, *adv.* shortly, 1132; —chortly, 2035.
- Schortet, *pp.* shortened, 1549.
- Schote. *See* Schete.
- Schour, *n. S.* shower; scharp

- schour = shower of darts or blows, 4514; *cf.* l. 2756. *Cf. flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith.
- Schoute[s], *n. pl.* flat-bottomed boats of light draught, † 484. See *Shout* in Halliwell. Du. *schuit*.
- Schrewe, *n.* a wicked person, 4643; *pl.* shrews, † 80. See *Shrew* in Wedgwood. Ch.
- Schrewedest, *sup. adj.* most wicked, 4643. See Wycl. Gloss.
- Schuft, *pt. s.* either shifted, from A.S. *scyftan*, or shoved, from A.S. *scufan*, 3290. See *Shift* in Wedgwood.
- Schuft, *pp.* well-shaped, † 186. A.S. *scuft*, *adj.*, formed, made.
- Schul. See *Schal*.
- Sclauder, *n. F.* slander, 4045. Ch.
- Se, *v. S.* to see, 765; — *sen*, 1283, 3203; *sene*, 759, 3834, 4487; 1 *p. s. pt.* *sai*, 2160; 2 *p. s. pt.* *sei*, 276; *pt. s. sei*, 2117; *sey*, 4901; *sei*, 34, 590, 871, &c.; *say*, 228, 1585; *seie*, 1505; *seize*, 402, 2183; *seye*, 26; 1 *p. pl. pt.* *seizen*, 3501; *pt. pl. seizen*, 1063; *seien*, 4503; *sezen*, 2760; *saie*, 2232; *pp. seie*, 279, 2344, 2886; *seien*, 5003; *seizen*, 1792; *seyn*, 5058; *imp. pl. seþ*, 1715.
- Seccleled, *pt. s.* sickened, 575. A.S. *sæclian*.
- Sece, *v.* to cease, 2124; *pp. seced*, 2114; 1 *p. pl. imp. secc*, 2707; *pt. pl. sesed*, 2190. See *Sese*.
- Seche, *v. S.* to seek, 223, 2203; *pr. s. seeþ*, 4121, 5520; *pres. pt. sechande*, 2603. See *Souþt*.
- Seehyng, *n. S.* a seeking, searching, 2190.
- Sede, Seide, &c. See *Seie*.
- Seemeli, Seemlich. See *Semli*.
- Seg, *n. S.* a man, 226, 518, 772, 839, &c.; — *segge*, † 232; *pl. segges*, 1341, 2223, † 286; *segēs*, 1063. P. Pl.
- Seged, *pp. F.* besieged, 3805.
- Segging, *n. S.* a saying, a repetition of words of incantation, † 531.
- Seie, *v. S.* to say, 1279; — *sei*, 60; *seye*, 1251; *segge*, † 584, † 1033; *sigge*, † 8; 2 *p. s. pr. seistow*, 2256; *pt. s. seide*, 70, 3191; *seyde*, 954; *sede*, 913; *seyede*, 2274; 2 *p. s. pt. seidestow* (= *seidest þow*), 267; *imp. pl. seic*, 4173; *seib*, 4170; *seizth*, 593.
- Seile, *n. S.* 2731; *where þe seile* = sailing, voyage; *we find sayle* = a sail, 568.
- Seizt, of his = out of his sight, 420. [Probably miswritten for *sist*.] See *Sist*.
- Sek, *adj. S.* sick, 557, 590, 1489.
- Sekly, *adj. S.* sick, 1505. [We still use sickly as an *adj.*]
- Seknes, *n. S.* sickness, 842; — *sekenes*, 841; — *sekenesse*, 593.
- Selcouþ, *adj. S.* strange, wonderful, admirable, 1621, 2708; — *selcouþe*, 658, 700, 2329; — *selcouþe*, 2869, 2989; — *selkouthe*, † 130. Used as *sb.*, thing being understood, *selcouþ*, 2291, 2579; *selcouþe*, 700, 3488.
- Selcouþli, *adv. S.* strangely, wonderfully, 2650, 4924, 5064; — *selcouþeli*, 3263; — *selkouþely*, 3330.
- Sell, *n. F.* a seal, † 834, † 853.
- Sell, *n. F.* a cell, † 525. Ch.
- Selue, *S.* self, same, very, 1149, 1300, &c.; — *self*, 1839; *pt. selue*, 727, 889, &c. *Selue* wise, very way, same way, 462, 490, 1438. *þat selue*, the very same, 3502. *þe selue duk*, the duke himself, 1368. What I suppose *þe selue*, what if I suppose that very thing, 519.
- Selner, *n. S.* silver, 2554.
- Semblant, *n. F.* outward semblance, appearance, show, 228, 841, 3502, 4512.
- Sembul, *v. F.* to assemble, gather,

- 3555; *pp.* 2147, 3319. *In* l. 3511, *we have* *pl. pl.* ssembled, *which probably means* encountered; *cf.* l. 3515. Ssembling = encountering *occurs in* Lancelot of the Laik, 2951.
- Semes, *me* = it seems to me, 620; *pl. me* semen, seem to me, 1656; *pl. pl.* semde, 2850.
- Semes, *n. pl.* S. horse-loads, 2554. "A sack of eight bushels is now called a *seam*, which was a horse-load—hence generally a *load*, a *burden*." Bosworth, in *v. seam*. *Cf.* G. *saum*, a burden. F. *soumier*, a *sumpter* or pack-horse, &c. [Sir F. Madden suggests that the word (which is somewhat indistinct) may, however, be *selues*.]
- Semli, *adj.* S. seemly, comely, fair, 829, 1882; — semly, 298, 765, 837, 849; — semliche, 49, 1454, 2232; — semlyche, 565; — seemelich, †322; — seemeli, †232. *pat* semly = that seemly person *or* lady, 732, 853, 871, &c. *Sup.* semlyest, 518, 551.
- Semly, *adv.* in a seemly manner, courteously, 1432; — seemlich, becomingly, †189.
- Sendeth, *imp. pl.* send ye, 2068.
- Sene, 3035. This can hardly mean *seen*, and I have no doubt that it is simply miswritten for *soone* = soon, which ends l. 3037 below. It is an instance of the common confusion between *e* and *o*, like *sweto* for *swete* in l. 818.
- Sent, *n.* assent, agreement; *in the phr.* at o sent = with one assent, 3017, 5253; at sent = in agreement, well aware, 1983. Halliwell quotes  
 "Many armys were tynt,  
 That were never *at the sent*  
 To come to that tournament."  
 MS. Lincoln, A. i. 17. f. 134.
- Sere, put for Sire, sir, 3570. *See* Sire.
- Serliche, 2149, *adv.* explained Serreli, 3316, } by Sir F. Mad-
- den to mean "surely." But I would suggest different explanations in both places, and I take them to be distinct words: (1) *serliche*, closely; *cf.* "Serre, to join closely" (Halliwell), from F. *serrecer*; also "*Serrelliche*, closely" (Halliwell). (2) *serreli*, lordly, in a *sir-like* manner, as explained by Wedgwood, *s. v. Sarly*: *cf.* "Sike *sirly* shepherds han we none," Spenser, Sheph. Cal. July, l. 203, where the "Glosse" has "*Sarly*, stately and prowde."
- Sertes, *adv.* F. certainly, 268, 280, 543, 899, &c.
- Serued, *pp.* deserved, 4352.
- Serues, *n.* F. service, 3729.
- Sese, *v.* to cease, 1516; — sece, 2124; *pl. pl.* sesed, 2190; *pp.* sesed, 648; seced, 2114; 1 *p. pl.* *imp.* sece, 2707.
- Sese, *v.* to seize, †135; *pp.* *pl.* †299; *pt. s.* sesed, 1236; *pl. pl.* seseden, †234. *See* notes to ll. †135, †299. *In* l. 5391, *sese* is explained by Sir F. Madden to mean to *take*, *attain*; it is rather the regular law term, to *seize* a person of a thing, i. e. to put him into legal possession of it. *Cf.* Ch. *Troil. and Cres.* (Aldine ed.), bk. iii. st. 57.
- Sebbe, (1) *adv.* S. since, afterwards, then, 433, 902, 2047; — seppen, 104, 206, 420; — sepen, 1370, 3672; — sibbe, 3050; — sippen, †308; — sithen, †624; — sithe, †45; *also in the sense* ago, 1647, 4210; sebbe a gret while = since a great while, 1991; (2) *conj.* since, seeing that, after that, 329, 454, 456, 516, 4207; — sep, 973.
- Set, *pt. s.* dealt (a blow), 2775; — sette (set), 2459; *pl. pl.* setten, appointed, 1462.
- Sete, 1 *p. s. pt.* did sit, sat, 1622. [It implies that the reciter of the story did not stand, but sat.] *See* Sittus.

- Setled, *pp.* S. settled, sunk, 2452 ;  
— setteled, settled, composed, 4562.
- Seue-niçt, *n.* seven-night, a week,  
766 ; — seueniçt, 573.
- Seurte, *n.* F. surety, 1463. Ch.
- Seute, *n.* F. suit, case, 1080, 1250.
- Seute, *n.* F. pursuit, chase, 2392,  
2615.
- Sewe, *v.* F. to follow, pursue,  
2521 ; — sew, 2751 ; — seuwe, 581 ;  
*pr. s.* sewes, 1376 ; sewep, 4897 ;  
*pt. s.* sewede, 3354 ; sewed, 418 ;  
sued, † 957 ; *pt. pl.* seweden, 2193,  
2766 ; sewede, 204 ; sewed, 2190,  
2358, 3506 ; *pp.* sewed, 1773 ; *imp.*  
*pt. sewes*, 1116. Ch.
- Sexti, *num.* sixty, 1087.
- Sigge, *v.* to say, † 8. See Seie.
- Signifiaunce, *n.* F. significance,  
2958. Ch.
- Sikamour, *n.* a sycamore, 829.
- Siken, *v.* S. to sigh, † 395 ; — sike,  
691, 780 ; 1 *p. s. pr.* sike, 433 ;  
siçh, 909 ; *pt. s.* siked, 1487, 1641,  
4069 ; siçt, 2971 ; *pres. pt.* sikande,  
5448 ; sikand, 539, 662 ; sikende,  
894 ; sikinde, 490 ; siking, 5189,  
5209. Ch.
- Siker, *adj.* S. secure, sure, 2361,  
4366, 4657 ; *sup.* sikerest, surest,  
strongest, † 334. Ch.
- Sikered, *pp.* secured, assured,  
1463.
- Siking, *n.* S. a sighing, lament,  
5451 ; — sikyng, 601 ; *pl.* sikingges,  
566.
- Simple, *adj.* F. of low degree,  
714.
- Sin, *conj.* since, † 103.
- Sinifieth, *pr. s.* signifieth, † 853.  
*Cf.* Signifiaunce.
- Sire, *n.* F. sir, 326, 1250 ; — sir,  
1095 ; — sere, 3570 ; *pl.* sires, 2248.
- Sipe, *n.* S. *only in pl.* 780, 1755 ;  
(þousand) 1696, 5154 ; (six) 2098 ;  
*also in form* sipes, 103, 1038,  
1265, 2470, 5200. Ch. [*The form*
- sipes = A.S. *sipas* ; siþe = A.S.  
siþon or siþum, *forms which often*  
*follow numerals.*]
- Sittus, *pr. s.* sits, 446 ; — sittes,  
620 ; 1 *p. s. pt.* sete, 1622.
- Sizt, *n.* S. sight, 933, 1687, &c.
- Siztes, *n. pl.* S. 924. “Sights,  
used for the singular.”—M. But  
may it not mean *sighs*, which suits  
the context better, and requires no  
foreing? Cf. Du. *zucht*, a sigh ;  
A.S. *siccet*. See *sikten* in Strat-  
mann.
- Skil, *n.* S. reason, 1680, 4098 ;  
— skille, 336. Ch.
- Skoumfit, *pp.* F. discomfited, de-  
feated, † 371 ; — skoumfyt (*mis-*  
*written skoumkyt*), † 86.
- Slake, *v.* (1) *trans.* to slacken,  
relax, assuage, abate, 728, 778,  
788, 1521 ; *pt. s.* slaked on = fell  
relaxingly upon, † 779 ; *pp.* slaked,  
1507, 4796 ; (2) *intr. pr. s.* slakes,  
becomes less, 924 ; *pt. s.* slaked,  
died out, faded away, † 714. Icel.  
*slökra*, to extinguish, O.N. *slökna*,  
to die out. Suio-Goth. *slücka* (*v.*  
Ihre) ; Sw. *slakna*, to become  
slack, A.S. *slacian*. Ch.
- Sle, *v.* S. to slay, 2797 ; *pt. s.*  
slow, 1196 ; slonç, 3890 ; *pt. pl.*  
slowen, 1275 ; slowe, 1165, 3459 ;  
*pp.* slawe, 1779, 3421, 3435 ; sleie,  
379. Ch.
- Sleizþe, *n.* S. sleight, 2151.
- Slepend, *pres. pt.* sleeping, 2291 ;  
*pt. s.* slept, 656 ; *pt. pl.* slepten,  
2292.
- Sliçli, *adv.* sliçly, secretly, in-  
sensibly, 792 ; — sliçliche, 1065 ;  
— sliliche, 1413 ; — sleiliche, 637.  
Ch.
- Slod, *pt. s.* S. slid, slipped, 792.
- Smyland, *pres. part.* smiling, 991.
- So, *adv.* S. so ; hence, wat so =  
whatsoever, 607 ; what so = what-  
soever, 621 ; who-so = whosoever,  
† 87. See Ho. So as = in like  
manner as, 338.

- Soberliche, *adv.* soberly, i. e. seriously, prudently, 237; — *so-burli*, 991. Ch.
- Socoures, *imp. pl.* succour ye, 4349.
- Sode, *pp.* S. sodden, 1849.
- Softili, *adv.* softly, gently, 632, 677.
- Soget, *n.* F. subject, 473; *pl.* sogettes, 463. Ch.
- Solas, *n.* F. solace, comfort, enjoyment, 677, 1550. Ch.
- Solas, *v.* F. to solace, delight, 1621.
- Solempne, *adj.* F. *lit.* solemn; suitable to a great occasion, 1599; grand, famous, 1454. See *Solempne* in Roq.
- Solempnte, *n.* F. solemnity, solemnization of marriage, 1462.
- Son. See Sowne.
- Sond, *n.* S. *lit.* that which is sent, just as a *find* is that which is found; hence (1) a messenger, 1872; *pl.* sondes, 1078, 1308, 1594, 5271, † 291; (2) a message, 5195, 5199; (3) a God's-send, a gift, that which is sent us by God's grace, 4561; — sonde, 64, † 973; and hence we may explain the difficult phrase "seemely to sonde" in † 175 as meaning "a comely creature for a man to acquire;" cf. l. 64 of the *Werwolf*.
- Sonken, *pp.* sunk, 4111; — sunk, † 1092.
- Soothelich. See *Sopli*.
- Sor, *n.* S. sorrow, 894; — sore, 891; *pl.* sores, 598; soris, 639. Cf. *sorice* in l. 3543.
- Sore, *adv.* S. sorely, 593; *comp.* sorer, 634.
- Sorful, *adj.* S. sorrowful, 3541.
- Sori, *adj.* worthless, 3509; painful, 3696.
- Sorly, *adv.* 463. "Surely (?); see *Serliche*."—M. Probably mis-
- written for *serly*, as Sir F. Madden suggests, in which case I would explain it by *straightly, strictly, closely*; see note on *Serliche*. The French has, "sont il a lui oil por voir, et font *du tot* a son voloir."
- Sorwfuliche, *adv.* sorrowfully, 2971.
- Sope, *n.* S. truth, 108, 116, 238, 772, &c. Ch.
- Sop, *adj.* S. true, 2799; *soply* sop, verily true, true indeed, 700.
- Sopli, *adv.* truly, verily, 949, 1194; — *soply*, 76, 379, 473; — *sopliche*, 1452; — *soothelich*, † 973.
- Sotilest, *sup. adj.* most subtle, most secret, 2603.
- Sotiliche, *adv.* subtly, 3117, 4783. Ch.
- Souche, *v.* to suspect, 1983; *pi. s.* souched, 1059, 1065. See Schoche.
- Soudiour, *n.* Low Lat. soldier, 3954; — *sowdiour*, 3951. Ch.
- Souerayn, *n.* F. chief, leader, 4938; *gen. sing.* souerayne, provost's, 4695. "The title is still retained in some towns in Ireland."—M.
- Soueraynest, *sup. adj.* most sovereign, chiefest, above all others, 524, 4932; cf. most souereyn, 518.
- Soueraynli, *adv.* above all, chiefly, supremely, 1062.
- Souked, *pt. s.* sucked, 2702. Ch.
- Soupe, *v.* F. to sup, 3524. Ch.
- Souzt, *pt. s.* of *to seche*, but used in a peculiar manner; thus, souzt forþ = found out his way onward, 4677; souzt out = ventured out, went out, 4681; sought to = made for, reached, † 95; *pl.* souzt to = reached, 2717; soute on-sunder = parted, 5455; souzten on gate = went on their way, 5214. Cf. *Seche*.
- Sowdiour. See *Soudiour*.
- Sowne, *n.* F. sound, 210; — son, 39. [It is vulgar to say *gownd* for



- gown*, but custom has sanctioned *sound* for *soun*. Ch. has *soun*, but *sownde* is the form in the Prompt. Parv. A. D. 1440.]
- Spakly, *adv.* wisely, knowingly, excellently, well, 19; but *more generally it is an expletive, meaning quickly, soon, as in 966*; — spakli, 3357, 3631; — spacly, 3399; — spacli, 3389, 3392, 3529, 4499, 4887, 5212. “The root is, apparently, to be sought in the Su-Goth. *spak*, Icel. *spakr*, sapiens. See Ihre.” —M. The same root probably is that of Sc. *spae*, and of O. H. Ger. *spahi*, prudent; Dan. *spaae*, to predict; and probably also of Ger. *spähen*, Eng. *spy*, &c. The word occurs in the form *spakety* in Morte Arthur, ed. Perry, l. 2063.
- Spaynols, *n. pl.* Spaniards, 3631, 3730, 3770, 5168, 5212; — spaynoles, 3399; — spaynolus, 3529; — spaynolnes, 3357.
- Spede, *v.* (in *out-spede* or *out spede*) to succeed, 548; *pp.* spedde, 1293, 1715; (2) *trans.* to help, succour, in *pt. s.* spedde. 4922.
- Spedeliche, *adv.* speedily, 19; — spedly, 5468, † 296.
- Speized, *pt. pl.* spied, saw, 3399. Cf. A-spie.
- Speldes, *n. pl.* S. splinters, 3392, 3603, 3855. Cf. E. *spell* or *spill*, originally a chip of wood for lighting a candle. See *Spall*, *Spelk*, *Spell* in Wedgwood. “In the Prompt. Parv. we have *Spalle*, or *chyppe*. *Quisquilia*, *assula*. The latter term is still used in the North; v. Brockett.” —M. See also *Spawl*, *Speall*, *Speel*, *Spelder*, *Spelk*, *Spelt*, in Halliwell, all meaning a *chip*; and cf. G. *spalten*, to split.
- Spenen, *v. S.* to spend, † 362; *pp.* spended, distributed, 4324.
- Spille, *v. trans.* to destroy, confound, overthrow, 966, 1891, 3009, 3437, 4100, 4395; *pp.* spilt, 3764; (2) *intrans.* to die, 1 *p. s. pr.* spille, 1535. Ch.
- Spire, *v. S.* to inquire, seek, 4594. Sc. *speir*.
- Spors, *n. pl.* spurs, 1482. Ch.
- Spret, *n. S.* a boatman’s pole, 2754; — sprite, a pole, † 1097. See *Spret* in Halliwell. “It is still preserved in the term *bow-sprit*.” —M. A *sprit*-sail has its name from the pole that traverses it diagonally.
- Stabled, *pp.* established, † 514.
- Stalkeden, *pt. pl.* S. walked cautiously, one step at a time, 2728. “Dan. *stalke*, to go with high uplifted feet, with long steps;” Wedgwood. Ch.
- Stalworþ, *adj.* S. strong, stout, 1950.
- Standes, *imp. pl.* stand ye, 2263; *pt. pl.* stoden, 2728.
- Stede, *n. S.* place, stead, 3521, † 303, † 769. Ch.
- Stef, *adj.* S. stiff, strong, 2894, 3600, 3604; — styf = deep, profound, 4056; — stif, 3535.
- Stelen, *adj.* of steel, 3535, 3859; — stel, † 416.
- Stepchilderen, *n. pl.* 131.
- Stepmoder, *n.* stepmother, 2640; *pl.* stepmoderes, 130, 4099.
- Sterne, *adj.* S. stern, fierce, brave, 159, 2981, 3243; — sturne, 3409, 3780; *sup.* sturnest, 3226.
- Sternely, *adv.* S. sternly, fiercely, bravely, boldly, 1158; — sternli, 2894, 3240; — sturnli, 3907. Ch.
- Stert, *v. S.* to start off, gallop, 3600; 1 *p. s. pt.* sterte, I started off, I ran, 2277; *pt. s.* stert vp, started up, 4355; stirte vp, 3275. Ch.
- Sterue, *v. S.* to die, † 445; *pp.* storue, died, 1515. Ch.
- Stif. See Stef.
- Stifly, *adv.* S. earnestly, eagerly,

- profoundly, 736, 880; — stilli, 1657; — stiffly, 219.
- Stiked, *pp.* pierced. 3818.
- Stint, *n.* S. stop, delay, 2350, 5379.
- Stint, *v.* S. to stop, dwell, cease, pause, leave off, 159, 1612, 1961, 5232; — stinte, 1042; — stynt, 2781; *in transitive sense*, to make to leave off, 4056; *pt. s.* stint, 61, † 951; stinte, 1574; *pt. pl.* stinten, † 445; stint, † 386; *imp. s.* stint, 1652; *imp. pl.* stintes, 1206; stintep, 1113. "It is inserted in the Prompt. Parv. 'Styntyn'. *Pauso, desisto, subsisto.*"—M. Ch.
- Stirte *vp.* See Stert.
- Stip, *adj.* S. strong, † 91.
- Stiued, *pp.* baked hard, 3033. Sw. *stufca*, Dan. *stuce*, Eng. *stew*. See *Stew* in Wedgwood, and cf. F. *estuver*.
- Stiward, *n.* S. a steward, 3378, 4211; *gen. sing.* stiwardes, 3446. Ch.
- Stiȝt, *pp.* S. set, fixed, 4425.
- Stiȝtli, *v.* S. to dispose, arrange, manage, 3841, 5379; stiȝtli to-gadere = arrange matters between them, 3281; *pt. s.* stiȝtled, 1199; (disposed of), 2899. Cf. P. Pl. Crede, 315.
- Stiȝtlich, *adv.* disposedly, in right order, in their proper place, † 293.
- Stoden, *pt. pl.* stood, waited, 2728. Cf. Standes.
- Stonen, *adj.* of stone, 1072.
- Store, *n.* F. story, 4806.
- Storue. See Sterne.
- Stoteye, *n.* cunning, stratagem, 4985. Lat. *astutia*, O.F. *astuce*.
- Stounde, *n.* S. a space of time, a while, 159, 1360, 1574, 1657, 2263, † 630; bi a stounde, for a short while, 1832; a stounde while, a moment, † 951. Ger. *stunde*. Ch.
- Stoundemele, *adv.* = A.S. *stund-malum*, by little times, by degrees, 736. Cf. *stound-mael* in Wycl. Gloss., and see Ch.
- Stour, *n.* F. battle, conflict, 3536, 3907; — stoure, 4214; — sthoure, 3530. O.F. *estour*; cf. Icel. *styr*, a battle. Ch.
- Stoutliche, *adv.* stoutly, 1950.
- Strane, *pr. pl.* strain, † 349. See the note.
- Strawed, *pp.* strewn, 1617.
- Strecche, *v.* S. to stretch, 219; *pt. s.* streyt, 2957; streȝt him = went, 3279; *pp.* straiȝed, 3617; *imp. pl.* strecces, 1113.
- Streȝt, *adv.* straight, 3328; — streȝet (*probably miswritten for streȝte*), 3592. Ch.
- Strek into a studie = fell into deep thought, 2981, 4038. A.S. *strecan*, to pass on. Cf. G. *streichen*, to strike, to fly, &c. It is even applied to the flowing onward of a stream—"Ase strem that *striket* stille:" Lyric Poetry; ed. T. Wright. Percy Soc. 1842, p. 44.
- Striked, *pp.* streaked, strewn, 1617.
- Striued, *pt. s.* strove, 4099.
- Sturme, Sturnli. See Sterne, Sternely.
- Studie, *n.* F. deep thought, 4038, 4056. Cf. l. 130.
- Sty, *n.* S. a path, 212.
- Sued, *pt. s.* followed, † 957. See Sewe.
- Sufreded, *pt. s.* suffered (*miswritten for Sufred*), 783; *pp.* suffred, 1014; *imp. pl.* sullrep, permit ye, 3337.
- Sunder, *v. intr.* to part, 1052.
- Sunner, *comp. adv.* sooner, 962, 3366.
- Surgens of salerne = surgeons of Salerno, 964, 1576; *spelt* surgyens, 1033. Cf. "A surgyne of Salerne

- enserehes his wondes." Morte Arthure; ed. Perry, l. 4312.
- Suster, *n.* S. sister, 2643, 5093, †175; *gen. sing.* susteres, †236. Ch.
- Swapped, *pp.* struck off with a sweeping blow, 3609. Cf. A.S. *swapan*, to sweep; *swipe*, a whip. Ch.
- Swelt, *pt. s.* S. fainted, 4268. "Swalteryn for hete, or fehylnesse, or other cawsys. *Exalto, sincopizo.*" Prompt. Parv. A.S. *sweltan*, to die, perish.
- Swenged. See Swinge.
- Sweteliche, *adv.* sweetly, 1329.
- Sweting, *n.* S. sweetheart, a term of endearment, 916, 1537, 2799, 3088.
- Sweuen, *n.* S. a dream, 2312, 2569, 2916, &c.; — sweuene, 658, 915, 2294; *pl.* sweuenes, †599. Ch.
- Swiche, *such*, 414, 544, 710, 766, 781, &c.; — swich, 869. A.S. *swile*. Ch.
- Swiftiest, *sup. adv.* swiftest, 3454.
- Swinge, *pr. pl.* they strike, 3439; *pt. s.* swenged, 3444; *pt. pl.* swonge, 3856. A.S. *swingan*, to beat.
- Swipe, *adv.* S. quickly, 41, 266, 1078, 1129, 1256, 1303, 1824, 4843, 5214; *before an adj.* swipe = very, as in 1628, †107; and as in †546, †567, †833, where it is *spell* swith. As swipe = as quickly as may be, 108, 352, 837; also swipe, 3158. Swipe vpon hast, very fast, very soon, 5195. [It was by his criticisms upon this word as occurring in Havelok that Mr Singer demonstrated his singular ignorance. He interprets *swipe* to mean a sword! At this rate "a swith faire sword" in Alisaunder, l. 833, would be tautological indeed.]
- Swowe, *n.* S. swoon, 87. Ch.
- Tabours, *n. pl.* 3813.
- Tach, *n.* F. spot, blemish, disgrace, †282. Ch.
- Takes, *pr. s.* bestows, gives, 866; *pt. s.* tok, delivered, gave, 4683; *pp.* take, 1271, 1289; *put for* untake, 1280.
- Tale. See Telle.
- Taliage, *n.* F. a tax, impost, 5124. O.F. *tailage*.
- Talke, *v.* to tell, 1018, 1322, &c.
- Talliche, *adv.* in a seemly manner, 1706. "This obsolete and unusual word, from the S. *telu*, bene, is preserved in the Prompt. Parv. *Tally*, or semely and in semely wyse. *Decenter, eleganter.*"—M. Cf. Welsh *telaid*, graceful. The Fr. *taillé* sometimes means *well proportioned*.
- Tamid, *pt. pl.* tamed, subdued, †84.
- Targe, *v.* to tarry, †211, †410; *pt. s.* targed, †94. O.F. *targer*, whence *larger*, which occurs at p. 210, l. 8 of this volume.
- Te, put for To, 1222. Cf. forte = for to, note to l. 788.
- Tei;ed, *pp.* S. tied, 3226; — teied, 3232.
- Telle, *v.* to tell, 34; — tele, 4993; — tale, 160; *pr. pl.* tellus, 198; *pt. s.* teld, 1475; told, 2009; *pt. pl.* telden, 1662; tolde, 1469; *pp.* teld, 2009; told, 1478; i-told, 1493; *imp. pl.* telles, 1346; tellep, 4621.
- Tended, *pt. pl.* attended, regarded, 1781; *pp.* tended of all, heard by all with attention, †997; *imp. pl.* tend, †7.
- Tene, *n.* S. (1) sorrow, trouble, grief, 607, 1107, 2369, 2476, 3013, 3735, 5192; — teene, †142, †241, †285; *pl.* tenes, 1013; also (2) teene = anger, wrath, †94, †806; treie and tene, vexation and anger, 2073. Ch.

- Tene, *v. S.* to vex, 2812;—teene, †380; *pt. s.* tened, 2025; *pp.* tened, 1992, 2201; teenid, †71; teened, †345. Ch.
- Tenful, *adj. S.* vexatious, grievous, painful, 2666, 4712;—teene-full, †252.
- Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 437;—tecnfully, harmfully, †353.
- Tent, *n.* intent, purpose, 1662. See *Tent* in Halliwell.
- Tentifly, *adv.* attentively, diligently, 2258;—tentyfli, 5124. Cf. *tentyff* in Ch.
- Tenþedel, *n. S.* tenth part, 4715;—tiþedel, 5346. Cf. *twentiþe parte*, 5354.
- þa, *pron.* that, the, 765, 2458, 3059, 3422; *rel. pron.* who, which, 843, 2536, 4115; *pl.* 5274;—þe (*rel. pron.*) 1687, 4422; *conj.* that, 544, 571, 903, 1983.
- þa, put for þo, then, 571. See þo. [Or else miswritten for þan.]
- þai, they, 11, &c.;—þei, 24, &c.; *pl.* þaim, them, 5407. See Hem.
- þan, the, *acc. sing. of def. art.*, 91.
- þan, then, 83, 92, &c.;—þanne, 100, &c.;—þen, †730.
- þan, than, 589;—þen, †319.
- þarto, thereto, 808.
- þat, “when prefixed to a verb in the present tense, [sometimes] gives it a subjunctive or optative signification, as in 319, 2795, &c.”—*M. þat*, those who, 3459.
- þatou, that thou, 3128, 5159;—þatow, 285, 914, 2787;—þattow, 4060.
- þe, *rel. pron.* which, 4422; *pl.* þe, 1687. A.S. *þe*, which is often a relative pronoun, and is indeclinable.
- þede, *n. S.* land, country, 1658.
- þeder, *adv.* thither, 2235;—þider, 33.
- þederward, *adv.* thitherward, 835.
- þei, they. See þai.
- þeiþh, *conj. S.* though, 451, 689, 3342;—þeþh, 919, 1017;—þei, 1563;—þouþh, 349;—þouþh, 2347;—ðei, †677. þei ðei = though they, †511. Ch.
- þemperour, put for þe *emperour*, 212, 218, &c.; but written þe *emperour*, 205. The *pl.* þemperoures also occurs, 1612.
- þen, than, †319. See þan.
- þenchesoun = þe enchesoun, the occasion, the cause, 2624. Ch. See Encheson.
- þende = þe ende, the end, 4869, 5092. Ch.
- þenke, *v. S.* to think, 4908; 1 *p. s. pr.* þenke, 711; þenk, 1624; 2 *p. pl. pr.* thinken, †2; *pr. s. subj.* þenk, 3370; *imp. pl.* þinkes, 3701. *Impersonal*, seems, as in me þinkes, 430, 446, 622; me þinkeþ, 839; þou dere þinkes, 4727; þou lef þinkes, 384. Ch.
- þennes, *adv.* thence, 2191;—ðennes, †67. Ch
- þer, *adv. S.* where, 1627, 3319, &c.;—þere, 216, 279, &c.
- þer as, there where, 1232, 1708;—þere as, 3480.
- þer a-boute, about it, 972.
- þer-a-gayn, against it, 1450.
- þer-mide, therewith, 5358.
- þer-out, thence, 2820.
- þer-tille, thereto, thereof, 2337.
- þer-to-fore, before that time, until then, 3435, 2611.
- þer-vnder, under it, 3034.
- þer-wiþt, therewith, 138.
- þerþe, put for þe *erþe*, the earth, the ground, 3866, 5014. Ch.
- þerwe, through, 107. See þrouþ.
- þewe, *n. S.* slave, bondman, 5514. A.S. *þeow*.
- þewes, *n. pl. S.* manners, customs,

- 189, 342, 500, 518. A.S. þeáw. Ch.
- þider, *adv.* thither, 33, 752, 1082;—þeder, 2235.
- þilke, the same, 2954; *pl.* those, 3530. Ch.
- þinkes. *See* þenke.
- þirles, *pr. s.* S. pierces, thrills through, 612, 3512; *pr. pl.* þurlen, 910; *pt. s.* þirled, 3696; thurlude, †608; *pp.* þirled, 826. Ch.
- þies, *n. pl.* S. thighs, †191.
- þis, *used in pl.* these, 2240, 4251;—þise, 849, 889. Ch.
- þo, *adv.* S. then, 1865, 3265, 3591, 4342, &c.;—þa, 571. A.S. þa. Ch.
- þo, *pl. pron.* those, them, 1757, 2285, 3648, †125, †137, †233. A.S. þá.
- þo, *probably miswritten for þe*, 2901.
- þof, though, †966. *See* þeiþh.
- þole, *v.* S. to suffer, 918, 1247; *pp.* þoled, 4514. Ch.
- þonges, *n. pl.* thongs, 1720, 1736.
- þonke, *n. sing.* S. thanks, 297.
- þonke, *v.* S. to thank, 3522;—þonk, 2794: 1 *p. s. pr.* 1248; *pr. s.* þonkes, 63; *pt. s.* þonked, 1003, 1038, 1269; thonked, 2143; *pt. pl.* þonked, 1716, 2444. Ch.
- þorou-oute, throughout, †191.
- þort, *pt. s.* need, might, ought, 1076, 3563, 3671;—þurt, 3355, 4411, 4541, 4705, 4821, 4960; *pt. pl.* þurte, 3788. "It is derived immediately from S. *tharf-an*, *tharf-an*, *thorf-ian*, making in pt. t. *thorftte*, and is allied to a large class of words in the remaining Gothic dialects. Thus, 'dar (= *thar*) no mon hem wite,' [l. 2434] in the *pr. t.* corresponds precisely to 'no gom *thurt* him wite,' [l. 4705] in the *pt. t.* Hence may be corrected the explanation of the word in Havclok, vv. 9, 10.
- He was the wicteste man at nede,  
That *thurte* riden on ani stede.
- A few more instances may not be out of place. In Robert of Brunne's translation of the *Manuel des Pechés*, completed in 1303, we have:
- He wax so mylde and so meke,  
A mylder man *thurt* no man seke.  
MS. Harl. 1701, fol. 39.
- So also, in the Romance of the Seven Sages:
- He toke a chamber nere that stede,  
Him *thurt* nocht care than for his brede.  
MS. Cott. Galb. E. ix. fol. 30 b.
- In Barbour's Bruce, according to Jamieson [p. 407] is written:
- For scho wes syne the best lady,  
And the fayrest, that men *thurst* se.  
But we evidently ought to read *thurt* se."—M. The verb occurs even in Meso-Gothic, as, "land bauhta jah *tharf* galeithan jah saihwan thata"—"I have bought land, and I *need* to go and see it," Luke xiv. 18; and in the *past tense*, "hwa gatawida Daweid, than *thaurfta* jah gredags was"—"how David did, when he *needed* and was hungry," Mark ii. 25.
- þourh, through, 4219. *See* þrouz.
- þoutest, 2 *p. s. pt.* thoughtest, 1249;—þoutes, 4066; *pt. s.* þouzt, 462; þout, 855; *impersonal*, me þout, 2298; him þouzt, 673; þouzt him loþ, 1255; hire þouzt, 857; hire þout, 2908; him del þouzt, 349.
- þouþ, *pers. pron.* thou, 312, 692.
- þouþh, þouþz. *See* þeiþh.
- þouzt, *n.* S. thought, 4054;—þout, 4116;—þout (*read* þout?), 447; *pl.* þouztes, 861, 941, 4064.
- þridde, *adj.* S. third, 2866, 4941.
- þristliche, *adv.* S. *lit.* boldly; *hence*, beautifully (much as our poets use *bravely*), †191.
- þro, *adj.* vehement, eager, 3264,

3564. Shortened from the word following.
- proli**, *adj.* S. vehement, severe, 3518; — *proly*, 612. A.S. *proð-lic*, severe, dire. Cf. *þra* in Jamieson.
- proli**, *adv.* vehemently, heartily, eagerly, earnestly, 910, 1038, 3176, 3407, 3664; — *proly*, 127, 1696; — *proliche*, 103, † 215. It occurs in P. Pl. A. ix. 107.
- propes**, *n. pl.* S. thorpes, small villages, 2141. See Halliwell.
- þrouz**, *prep.* S. through, 459; — *þurth*, 216, 254, 522, 635, &c.; — *þurþh*, 1320, 1643; — *þurh*, 2149; — *þurþh*, 655; — *þorou*, † 612, † 897. [In l. 3799 we find *þourh*, probably miswritten for *fourh*, (cf. 4219), owing to confusion with the word *þour* following soon after.]
- þrowe**, *n.* S. time, while, a trice, 462, 622, 649, 679, &c. Ch.
- þrusch**, *n.* a thrush, 820. † There
- þrustele**, *n.* a throstle, 820. † seems to be a distinction here. Palsgrave gives *grive* (*grive*) as the French for *thrush*, and *maulvis* (*mauris* = Sc. *maris*) as the French for *throstle*.
- þurlen**, Thurlude. See *þirles*.
- þurth**, *þurh*, *þurþh*, *þurþth*. See *þrouz*.
- þurth-out**, throughout, 1472; — *þurth-oute*, 5028; — *þorou-oute*, † 191.
- Tid**. See *Tit*.
- Tide**, *v. S.* (often *impers.*) to befall, betide, 3017; — *tyde*, 326; *pr. s.* *subj.* *tide*, 137, 607; *tyde*, 1560; *pt. s.* *tidde*, 198, 797, 1067, 1416, 2496, 3962; *tid*, 787, 4178; (*followed by an acc. case*) *pr. s.* *him tides*, † 681; *pt. s.* *hem tidde*, 1659, 1763, 2829; *þou tidde*, 1346; *pp.* *tidde*, 4918. See also *Bi-tide*.
- Tide**, *n.* S. time, season, 859, 4952.
- Tidi**, *adj.* timely, seasonable; hence, also, fair, brave (time), 1710; (host), 3556; (men), 4166; (cardom), 5384; — *tidy* (child), 160; (tidings), 1339; (words), 3077; — *tide* (werwolf), 2496; *sup.* *tidiest*, 3909; *tidejist*, 3556. A.S. *tid-lic*. Du. *tijdig*. G. *zeitig*.
- Tidili**, *adv.* seasonably, suitably, fitly, 4454; — *tidely*, 5482; — *tidily*, † 194.
- Tiding**, *n.* tidings, news, 1478; *pl.* *tidig*, 1493, 4877; *tyding*, 1075, 1134, 2677; *tidinges*, 4942; *tipinges*, 250. [The use of *tidig*, *tyding* as *pl. forms* is worth notice.]
- Tidly**. See *Titli*.
- Tified**, *pt. s.* attired, dressed, arrayed, 2995; *pp.* *tified*, 2995, 3183. Cf. O. N. *typpa*. See Cole-ridge's Gloss. Index.
- Tille**, *prep.* S. unto, to, 232, 662, 864, 977, 4039; — *till*, † 605, † 1025; — *til*, 412, 788, 1475. Ch.
- Timbred**, *pp.* S. built, 2015.
- Time**, *v.* to happen, in the *plur.* so me wel time (so may it happen well to me, so may good betide me), 3570, 5433; — so me wel tyme, 279. A.S. *getimian*, Sw. *tina*, Dan. *times*, to happen. See the note in Wedgwood on the word *Beteem*. [Mr Wedgwood is of opinion that I have wrongly explained *tymen* in P. Pl. *Crede*, 742, and that "Y mizt *tymen*" = I could find it in my heart to, as in the *phr.* "I could *teeme* it," for which see Halliwell, s. v. *Teem*. This would connect *tymen* in the *Crede* with A.S. *getimian*, to happen, not with A.S. *tymian*, to tame, compel.]
- Tine**, *v.* to lose, 299, 1365, † 358, † 378; — *tyne*, 358, 2176; 2 *p. pl.* *pr. tine*, 3015; *pp.* *tint*, † 30; *tynt*, 1560. O. N. *tyna*. [Marked as A.S. by Halliwell, but not given by Bosworth.]
- Tire**, *v.* to attire, 4478; *pp.* *tyred*, 263.
- Tipedel**. See *Tenpedel*.
- Tipinges**. See *Tiding*.

- Tit**, *adv.* quickly, soon, 1013, 1054, 3445, 3552, 4066, †90; — *tyt*, 1373, 4245; — *tid*, 753, 4167, 4192, 4763, †377, †519; — *tiȝt*, 133. As *tit* = as soon as might be, thereupon. 328, 3550; as *tyt*, 238, 292. As *tit* as, as soon as, 852, 2921; *sup.* *tittest*, soonest. Icel. *titt*, from *tix*, time. Sw. *tidt*, from *tid*, time. Hence the word is nearly related to *Tidily*. Cf. *Titli*, also spelt *Tidly*.
- Titli**, *adv.* quickly, soon, 2666; — *titly*, 1416, 2694, 3388; — *titliche*, 2528; — *tytely*, †7; — *tiȝtli*, 1706, 2282, 2476; — *tiȝtly*, 66, 285, 487. &c.; — *tidly*, †640, †809, †974. As *titly*, very soon, 2108. [In ll. 66 and 1706 it is possible that *tiȝtly* or *tiȝtli* may mean tightly, closely.]
- To**, *adv.* too, 11, 5024.
- To**, two, 2877. See **Tvo**.
- To-**, *verbal prefix*. It does not seem to have been hitherto sufficiently noted, that there are, in A.S., two distinct prefixes spelt alike. They are (1) *to-*, O. Sax. *te-*, Mæso-Goth. *dis-*, Ger. *zer-*, Lat. *dis-*, meaning *apart*, *asunder*, *in two pieces*; and (2) *to-*, Du. *toe-*, G. *zu-*, Mæso-Goth. *du-*, which is merely the prep. *to* in composition. Examples of the *first* are common in Early Eng., but of the *second* less so, which has led to an undue disregard of its force. Of the examples below, only the two last, *To-wawe* and *To-zelde*, belong to the latter class; and in the Wycl. Gloss. there is but *one*, viz. *to-neȝhen* = to approach. The verbs with this prefix are here collected.
- To-barst**, *pt. s.* S. burst asunder, 374. G. *zerbersten*, O. Sax. *tebres-tan*. Ch.
- To-brak**, *pt. s.* S. brake in pieces, 3237 (see Judges ix. 53); *pp.* *to-broke*, utterly broken, 3410. G. *zerbrechen*. Ch.
- To-clatered**, *pp.* broken to pieces with a loud clatter, 2858. "This reading is rendered certain by a passage in the Romance of Ferumbras;  
Ys scheld that was wyth gold y-  
batrid : & eke wyth ire  
ybounde,  
Sone thay had hit al *to-clatrid* :  
the peeces laye on the grounde.  
MS. Ashm. 60 β, fol. 12."—M.
- I add another example.  
"And on the bed he hym batrid  
That hys hedd all *to-clatride*."  
Sir Degaré, MS. Camb. Univ.  
Lib. Ff. ii. 38, fol. 259 b.
- And see Halliwell.
- Too-clef**, *pt. s.* S. *intr.* broke in half, split asunder, †1009.
- To-cleued**, *pt. s.* S. *trans.* clove asunder, 3865.
- To-drawe**, *pp.* S. drawn asunder, 1564, 2020, 2086, 2138, 3740, 4773, 5479.
- To-hewe**, *pp.* S. hewn to pieces, 3412. G. *zerhauen*. Ch.
- To-shett**, *pt. s.* S. brake in half, †1008. *Lit.* shot asunder; cf. the quotation in Halliwell, "Hys fote *schett*" = his foot shot aside, slipped.
- To-sprong**, *pt. pl.* S. sprang asunder, cracked asunder. G. *zerspringen*.
- To-tere**, *v.* S. to tear in pieces, 3884; *pt. s.* *to-tare*, 3884. Ch.
- To-twizt**, *pt. s.* S. twitched violently, pulled up by the roots, 2097. See *To-twitch* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.
- To-wawe**, *v.* S. move about, toddle to and fro like a child, 19. *Wawe* = *wag* is common; but it is also found in the exact sense used here.  
"Thanne is the child quic anon :  
of strenȝthe naveth hit noȝt  
Enes for to *wawe* : er hit beo  
furthe i-broȝt ;

- Of thulke soule hath ech man :  
that may *waxi* and gon," &c.  
Pop. Treatises on Science, ed. T.  
Wright, p. 139.
- The prefix *to-* has here nearly  
the force of the G. *zu-* in *zuranken*.  
The compound verb is very rare,  
but it is the same, I believe, as  
occurs in a transitive sense in the  
following—"weder bið fæger . . .  
broð wolcen *to-wegen*;" i. e. "the  
weather is fair, the clouds are re-  
mored." *Phœnix*, pt. III. (l. 2); in  
Codex Exoniensis, ed. Thorpe. Cf.  
Se. "*wauchle*. to move from side  
to side in walking, like a young  
child;" Jamieson. Cf. G. *zuranken*,  
*zugehen*, A. S. *To-gewagan*, to  
carry to.
- To-ȝelde, *pt. s.* yielded to; *vp to-  
ȝelde* = yielded up to, *with the to  
repeated*, 3924. Cf. G. *zugeben*, to  
grant, as showing the force of the  
prefix *to-*.
- To-fore, *prep.* S. before, 2091 ;  
*also adv.* before (of time), 142, 793,  
925, 2446, &c.; (of place), 2390 ;  
— to-for, 2886 ; — tofore, † 46,  
† 930. Ch.
- To-gaderes, *adv.* S. together, 699 ;  
— to-geder, 909 ; — to-gidere, 1011.
- Tokenesþ, *pr. s.* betokens, 2937.
- Tol, *n.* tool ; *egge-tol* = edged  
tool, weapon, 3755.
- Tom, *n.* leisure, 3778. Cf. Se.  
*toom*, Dan. and Sw. *tom*, vacant.  
The word occurs in P. Pl. A. ii.  
160. "Toom. *Spacium, tempus, oportu-  
nitas*." Prompt. Parv.
- Tumbled, *pt. s.* tumbled, 2776,  
3566. See Tumbel.
- Ton, *n. pl.* toes, † 194. Ch.
- Too-clef. See the word preceding  
To-cleud.
- Top over tail, head over heels,  
2776. "A proverbial phrase, used  
also in Lyndsay, which I believe is  
not yet obsolete."—M. It occurs  
in Barbour's Brus, ed. Jamieson,
- v. 755. Halliwell gives another  
instance.
- Tor, *adj.* difficult, 1428, 5143 ;  
— toor, 5966. "From the Su-G.  
and Isl. *tor*, difficile. This term,  
spelled *tore* and *teir*, occurs also in  
the three Romances of *Sir Garwayne*,  
in the *Houlate*, pt. 2. st. 9, and in  
*Rauf Coilzeor*, ap. Laing, st. 37."  
—M. See *Garwayne and Grene  
Kniȝt*, ed. Morris, 165, 719.
- To-riȝtes, 3066, &c. See Riȝtes.
- Touche, *v. F.* to touch upon,  
talk, treat of, 5033 ; 1 *p. s. pt.*  
touched, 4108 ; *pt. s.* toched,  
4991 ; *pt. pl.* touched, 4993 ; *pt. s.*  
(= belonged to), 5354 ; *pres. part.*  
touchend, 1383.
- Tour, *n. F.* a tower, 2015. Ch.
- Tow, *used for þou* (thou), after *þat*  
preceding, 4478. Cf. Seidestow,  
&c.
- To-ward, *adv.* S. forward, forth-  
coming, ready at hand, 1443 ; —  
toward, 1101. Cf. *Toward* in Nares.
- To-henene-ward, towards heaven,  
102.
- Trattes, *n. pl.* old women, spoken  
contemptuously, 4769. "See  
Jamieson's notes on this word, and  
Tyrrhiit on Chauc. v. 7164. The  
most obvious etymon is Teut. *trot*,  
a woman, an old woman, a witch.  
See Waechter, *in v.*"—M. See also  
*Trot* in Halliwell ; and cf.  
"An aged *trot* and tough did marie  
with a lad."  
*Of a contrerie mariage*, by G.  
Turberville, ab. A. D. 1567.
- Trauaille, *n. F.* labour, 1560 ; —  
trauayle, 358, 2176 ; — trawayle,  
299 ; *pl.* trauayles, 2666, 4712.
- Traysted, *pp. F.* deceived, betrayed,  
2075, 4769. "See Jamieson, in v.  
*Betreyss*, and Skinner. From the  
latter Chatterton borrowed the  
word, therefore Bryant might have  
saved himself the trouble of quoting  
passages from the present poem to  
prove the authenticity of the phan-



- tom Rowley."—M. Cf. O. F. *traistre*, a traitor.
- Treie, *n.* S. vexation, 2073. See the note.
- Trestes, 2 *p. s. pr.* trustest, 970.
- Trewe, *adj.* S. true; leue me for trewe = believe me to be true, 1562;—trew, 596.
- Triacle, *n.* treacle, i. e. an antidote against poisons and diseases, † 198. See *Treacle* in Prompt. Parv., and Way's note. Ch.
- Trie, *adj.* F. *lit.* tried, proved; hence choice, excellent, noble; (tree), 761; (attire), 1721, 4542; (lords), 1289; (order), 4465; (towers), † 16; (town), † 157; (treacle), † 198; (places), † 333; (folk), † 345;—tri (tree), 753. 789;—trye (game), 357; *sup.* triest, 1443. "The same word occurs in the Romance of *Richard Coeur de Lion*, l. 6450, 'with fyn syluyr and gold ful trye;' in the Romance of *Octavian*, l. 1467, 'of Sarsyns stout and trye;' in Chaucer's *Cant. T.* 'with suger that is trie;' and in the poems of Friar Michael Kyldare. MS. Harl. 913, which contain the earliest instances of it I have yet met with. It is undoubtedly an abbreviation of the *pp.* *tried*, as shown by the various readings of the Wycliffite texts of the Bible. Exod. c. xvi. and Lev. c. ii., where is the expression *trie* or *tried* flour."—M. So also *trieste*, *trizest*, and *tryest* are various readings for *triedest* in P. Pl. A. i. 126, q. v.
- Trieliche, *adv.* choicely, excellently (*always joined with a-tired*), 4819;—triliche, 1228;—tryli, 3198;—trizliche, 4861.
- Trist, *imp. s.* S. trust thou, † 489.
- Tristy, *adj.* trusty, 596, 1228, 2015, † 329, † 952.
- Trized, *pt. s.* 3556, in " & trized him to a tidi ost." Explained by Sir F. Madden to mean "drew, joined." But I believe that *him to* is put for *to him*, (a not uncommon usage. *cf.* ll. 662, 864, &c.), and then *trizied to him* = chose out for himself, picked out the best men he could find, which is the drift of the passage. Cotgrave gives "*Trier*, to pick, chuse, cull out from among others;" which further explains why the word *trie* bears the sense of *choice*. See *Trie*.
- Trompes, *n. pl.* trumpets, 3358;—trumpes, 3813.
- Trowe, *v.* S. to believe, trow, hold for a truth, 4840; 1 *p. s. pr.* trowe, 540, 1031, 1995; trow, 299; *pt. s.* trowed, 1018; trowede, 1480; *pt. pl.* trowed, † 919; *imp. s.* trowe, 1363; *imp. pl.* trowep, 2112. Ch. [In l. 1480 perhaps we should read *mysse-trowede* as one word; but l. 141 renders this doubtful.]
- Trusse, *v.* to pack up, † 549. Cf. *Havelok*, 2017.
- Trustili, *adv.* S. courageously, 3904.
- Tumbel, *pr. s. subj.* tumble, 3388. See *Tumbled*.
- Tunnes, *n. pl.* S. casks, 2743.
- Tvo, two, 1688, 1698, 1777, 2162, &c.;—to, 2877.
- Tweie, two, 2008, 2147;—tweine, 2507;—tweyne, 812, 929, 1528. [The distinction between this word and *two* is that *tweie* is used after the personal pronouns vs, hem, þei, &c.; whilst *two* precedes a noun.]
- Twentipe, twentieth, 5354.
- Twizes, *adv.* twice, 3721.
- Twynne, *v.* S. to part, 1572. Ch.
- Tyr, *n.* F. attire, 1725. Cf. *A-tir*.
- Uch, each, every, 776, 884, 1488;—uche, 5000;—vch a, 511.
- Venge, *v.* F. to avenge, 5197; cf. *auenged*, *pp.*, † 281.
- Venorye, *n.* F. beasts of the chase, game, 1685.

- Verali, *adv.* verily, 5197 ; —  
veraly, 639.
- Vitayles, *n. pl.* F. victuals, 1121.  
Ch.
- Vmbe-cast, *pp.* S. beset, sur-  
rounded, 2319, 4693. *Cf.* Bi-cast.  
[The prefix is the A.S. *ymb-*, Old  
Saxon *umbi-*, G. *um-*, Du. Dan.  
and Sw. *om-*, Gk. *αμφι-*]
- Unclainte, *pr. s.* † 1172. This is  
surely miswritten for *unclante* =  
unclamped, unfastened, from A.S.  
*clam*, a clamp. The only difference  
between *m* and *in*, in the hand-  
writing of the MS., would consist  
in there being a dot over the first  
of the three downstrokes. The  
copyist may have been thinking of  
*unchainte* = unchained.
- Vndede, *pt. s.* undid, unfastened,  
4846 ; *pp.* vndo, 2078.
- Vnder-fonge, *v.* S. to take, receive,  
5259.
- Vndersto (*miswritten for vnder-  
ston*), *pr. pl.* they understand,  
5533 ; *pt. s.* vnderstod, 877 ; *pp.*  
vnderston, 5262.
- Vnglad, *adj.* S. joyless, 2106.
- Ungome, *v.* S. to unman, to drive  
the men away from, † 294. [The  
meaning is clear, but I know of no  
other instance of the word.] *Cf.*  
Gome.
- Vn-hendly, *adv.* S. discourteously,  
492. *Cf.* Hende.
- Un-hent, *pp.* S. uncaught, un-  
captured, 1671. *Cf.* Hent.
- Unkinde, *adj.* S. unnatural, † 34.  
Ch.
- Unkouthe, *adj.* unknown, un-  
familiar, strange, † 48 ; —unkouth,  
unknown, not understood, † 683.  
Ch.
- Vnneþe, *adv.* S. scarcely, 132.  
Ch.
- Vn-tetche, *n.* disgraceful action,  
509. *Tetche* is another form of  
*Tach*. *q. v.* The O.F. *tache* means  
a quality or disposition, either *good*  
or *bad* ; so in the Prompt. Parv.  
“*Tetche*, or maner of condycyone,  
*Mos*, *condicio*.” Hence *vn-tetche*  
means an *evil* habit, or *disgraceful*  
act. At the same time, as the  
word was most commonly used in  
a *bad* sense, we find *tach* used  
for a *blemish*. See *tache*, *tacher*,  
*teche*, in Rog. ; *taches* in P. Pl. ;  
*tache* in Halliwell and Cotgrave.
- Vntille, *prep.* unto, 2998.
- Vntydi, *n. pl.* mean, poor, 1455.  
*Cf.* Tidi.
- Unwele, *adj.* S. wicked, † 513.  
*Well* = good. *adj.* is given in Cole-  
ridge's Gloss. Index.
- Vn-woundet, *pp.* unwounded,  
1280.
- Vowche-sauf, *imp. s.* vouchsafe,  
grant, 1449. *Cf.* Fouche. Ch.
- Vp, *prep.* S. upon, 2378, 2809.  
*Cf.* G. *auf*.
- Vp happe, perhaps, 2722.
- Vp-keuerede, *pt. s.* recovered, rose  
again, 2759.
- Vp-leped, *pt. s.* leapt up, 3283.
- Vp-rise, *v.* S. to rise up, 1791 ;  
*pr. s.* vp-rises, 872. Ch.
- Vp-riçttes, upright, 1789. *Cf.*  
Riçtes.
- Wahan, Wan, Wanne. *See* Whan.
- Waie, *miswritten for* weie, † 530.  
*See* Weij.
- Waite, *v.* F. (1) *intr.* to watch,  
look about, spy about, 1521, † 760 ;  
—wayte, 1023 ; *pt. s.* waited, 2729 ;  
waited him, 1230 ; waited out,  
2425 ; wayted, 835 ; wayted *pt.*  
aboute, 682 ; weited, 3030 ; *pt.*  
*pl.* wayteden out, 3300 ; wey-  
teden out, 5018 ; waited aboute,  
2231 ; *pres. part.* waytend out,  
2982 ; waitende out, 3713 ; wey-  
tende to, 779. (2) *trans.* to be on  
the look-out for, watch for, seek  
after, *pr. s.* waites him = seeks out

- for himself, † 808; *inf.* whayte, 1885; waite, 4051; wayte, 148. [In the latter sense it generally has a double accusative.] Cf. A-weite. O.F. *waiter*, *gaiter*. See *Wait* in Wedgwood; and cf. "*Waytyn* or *dōne harme*, *waytyn* to *harme*. *Insidiōr*." Prompt. Parv.
- Wake, *v. S.* to watch, keep awake, 2007.
- Walken, *v. S.* to walk, go, 2129; *pres. pl.* *walkende*, 2427.
- Wallop, *n. F.* gallop; hence, a wallop, on the gallop, 1770. "In the Prompt. Parv. we read, '*Waloppynge* of horse. *Foluptacio*;' and '*Waloppōn*, as horse. *Folupto*.'" —M. See Gloss. to *Romans of Partenay*.
- Walt, Walte. See *Welde*.
- Waltres, 2 *p. s. pr. S.* waverest, rollest about, 947. See *Welt* and *Wetter* in Jamieson, *Waltrynge* and *Weltrynge* in Prompt. Parv., and *Wallow*, *Wetter* in Wedgwood. A.S. *wealtian*, to reel. See *Wycl. Gloss.*
- Wan, Wanne (when). See *Whan*.
- Wan (*pt. s.* won). See *Winne*.
- War, *adv.* where, 3832. See *Whar*.
- War, *adj. S.* aware, 1201, 1238, 1769, 3594, 3635, 3827; — whar, 3382.
- Warchet. See *Waryshe*.
- Ward; *implying direction*. See *Cheping-ward*, *To-ward*.
- Ward, *n. F.* guard, keeping, 1370, 2202; — warde, 376, 961. Ch.
- Warded, *pp. F.* guarded, kept, 101.
- Wardeyn, *n. F.* commander, 1104.
- Ware, *pt. pl.* = were, 420.
- Warfore, *adv. S.* wherefore, 2027; — werfore, 1081.
- Warison, *n. F.* reward, 2259; — wareson, 2253, 2379. O.F. *warison*, *garison*; from *garir*, to guard. Cf. *Garisun*. Ch.
- Warnestured, *pp.* furnished, provided, 1121. O.F. *warnesture*, provisions; Roq. Cf. *Warnestore* in Ch.
- Warnished, *pp.* furnished, 1083. O.F. *warnir*, *garuir*. Roq.
- Warysche, *v. F.* to cure, 4283; *pp.* *warsched*, 604; *warchet* = guarded, 2622. O.F. *garir*, *guérir*, *préservir*, *garantir*. Roq. "In the first sense it occurs [used intransitively] in the Prompt. Parv. '*Warschyn*' or *recuryn* of *sekenesse*. *Convalesco*, *concaleo*.'" —M. Ch. *Wycl. Gloss.*
- Was, *used for had*, 538. "This is still provincial." —M.
- Waschen, *pp.* washed, 5070; — whasche, 2997.
- Wast, *in phr.* in wast = in waste, i.e. in vain, 703, 718, 802, 1660, &c.
- Wat, *put for What*, 2829, 4246. Wat so, whatsoever, 607.
- Wateren, *v. S.* to water, provide with water, 3234. *Wycl. Gloss.*
- Wawe, *n. S.* wall, 19. So in Sir F. Madden's edition; but see *To-wawe*, and the note on this line.
- Wax, Waxen. See *Wexe*.
- Waywarde, *adj. S.* (*used as sb.*) wayward, perverse, averse, 3985.
- Wayned, *pt. pl.* 2386. Wayned from = got away from, departed. "The original meaning seems to be that of gaining, getting. In some O.E. works *wayne* is used like our word *get*.
- Than past up the proude queene into preve chambre,  
*Waynes* out at wyndow, and waytes aboute.  
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, 944." Quoted by Morris, *Gloss. to Allit. Poems*. The context shews that *waynes out* in this quotation = puts out her head. See also P. Pl. A. vi. 92, where for *wayne vp*, MSS. of B-type have *wayne vp*. Cf.

- Winne. [*Obs.* This word is sometimes confused with *wayue*, O.F. *guesrer*.]
- Wede, *n. S.* clothes, armour, 585, 3535; *pl.* wedes, 1932, 2563, 3087. Ch.
- Weder, *n. S.* weather, 2440; *pl.* wederes, 5216. Ch.
- Wei, *n. S.* a way, road, 1578; — weie, 1732; — wey, 205, 1781; — weye, 1019; *pl.* weies, 2131, 2150; weyes, 1224; weizes, 2207, 3507, 4677. In a mile wei = in a short space, i.e. in a short time, 1578.
- Weih, *n. S.* a balance, 947. Waltres in a weih = waverest in a balance; as we now say, tremblest in the balance. A.S. *wiege*, *wége*, a weighing machine, balance. Cf. *Weike*, Wycl. Gloss.
- Weilawey, *interj. S.* alas! 935. A.S. *wa*, *la wa* = wo, lo! wo! *whence wei la wey, of which well-away is an unmeaning corruption.*
- Weited, Weytende. See Waite.
- Weiz, *n. S.* a man, 4466; — weizh, 281, 745, 790, 793, &c.; — weic, † 777; — weih, † 1184; — waie, † 530; — whiz, 4463; — wizh, 565, 724, 2021, 2415; *pl.* weies, † 164, † 653; whizes, 1221, 3456; whiezs, 3364; wies, 208; wizes, 239, 2036, 2521; wizesh, 1932; wiezs, 2709; wiezes, 3652. A.S. *wiga*, warrior, from *wig*, war.
- Weizes, *n. S.* wise, manner, 5526. *A better spelling is Wice*, q. v.
- Wel, *adv. S.* very; *thous*, wel old, very old, †; wel long, very long, 936; wel gret, very great, 1545; wel sore, very sorely, 1552; wel wo, very woful, 1642; wel god spede, very good pacc, 1846. Wel is, it is a good thing for (*the opposite of wo is*), 3303.
- Welde, *v. S.* to wield, have power over; *hence*, to possess, enjoy, have, 2946, 5157, † 206; — weld, 76, 135, 717, 1356, 1385, 1453, 2017, 2253, 2959, 4741; 1 *p. s. pr.* weld, 282, 4000; *pr. s.* weldes, 712, 1651, 1873, 3313, 3752, 3753, 3832, 4466; weldes his hele, enjoys his health, 1375, 1377; weldes a wrong, enjoys a possession wrongfully, † 57; *pl. s.* walt, 144, 2990, 3887, 4730; walte, † 450; welt 142, 230, 3710, 4835; welte, 3680; 2 *p. pl. pl.* walt, 3691; *pp.* welt, 856. [*It often has little more force than simply to have.*] Cf. Wycl. Gloss.
- Wele, *n. S.* wealth, 1325, 3658, 4073, 5046, 5054. [*In phr.* “worchip and welle,” except in 4073.] Ch.
- Wem, *n. S.* blemish, injury, 2460. Ch.
- Wen. See Whan.
- Wende, *v. S.* to go, 320, 329, 425, 2089; — wend, 771, † 727; — wen[d], 5185; wende of, to depart, 1663; 1 *p. s. pr.* wende, 1555; 2 *p. s. pr.* wendest, 1555; *pr. s.* wendes, 232, 1640, 1897; wendes of, departs from, 5537; wendeþ, 408; *pt. s.* went, 1839, 2069; wende, 259; *pl. pl.* went, 4201; *imp. pl.* wendeþ, 3338; *pres. pl.* wending, 1821. *Phrase*: he went = be gone to. *as in* is went, 701, 2064; was went, 15, 28, 376, 1984, 2109; were went, 208, 5409; be went, 2071. *We also find* was gon, 1859; and haue went, 1853.
- Wene, *v. S.* to ween, think, expect, suppose, 554, 706, 715; 1 *p. s. pr.* wene, 931; 2 *p. s. pr.* wenes-tow = wenest þow, 1558; *pr. s.* weneþ, 3116; 2 *p. pl. pr.* weneþ, 4205; *pl. s.* wende, 680, 687, 731, 1853, 1943; wend, 229, 671, 1488, 1773, 4982, † 789; wen[d], 261; *pl. pl.* wend, 2765. Ch.
- Wenne, 4263. See Winne.
- Wepe, *v. S.* to weep, 310; *pt. s.* wepte, 38; wept, 45; wep, 50; wepud, 2914; *part. pres.* wepand, 1668; wepande, 2357, 2419. Ch.

- Wer, *n.* doubt, perplexity, 3513. "Tyrwhitt considers this word, and, apparently, with reason, to be the Fr. *querre*. See Gloss. to Chaucer, and Jamieson's examples, in v."—M. Perhaps it may be better to say, rather, that *querre* is obviously from a Teutonic source. Cf. Du. *werre*, contention (Kilian); G. *wirre*, confused; *gewirre*, confusion. In fact, the word occurs in O. Saxon. "The thit *giuuer* frumid, he who makes a *sedition*, or *disturbance*." Heliand, ed. Schmel-ler. p. 148, l. 1. Cf. Werre.
- Wer, *adv.* where, 3030; — were, 222, 4839.
- Werche, *v.* to work, 650; — wirche, 1173, 1372, 2244, 2323, 3925, 4790; — wirch, † 517; — wirchen, 468, † 412; — worche, 257, 548, 809; *pr. s.* werches, 1207; wireches, 1176; worchep, 2579; *imp. s.* wirche, 667. *And see* Wrouȝt.
- Werder, *adj.* 3185. Sir F. Madden suggests "wild," but doubtfully. By a mere guess, I suggest *werder-bestes* = harmful beasts, as if from *werder*, a harmer, from the A.S. *wyrdan*, to harm, which is used in the Ormulum in the forms *wæordenn* and *wærdenn*. The word is very plain in the MS., or we might conjecture it to be an error for *wonder* = wonderful, as in ll. 1873, 2786.
- Werfore, wherefore, 1081.
- Werne, *v. S.* to refuse, oppose, 305; 2 *p. pl. pr.* werni, † 1105; *pt. pl.* werned, † 66, † 905. Ch.
- Werre, *n. S.* war, 1083, 2349, 2613, 2645; —wer, 2625.
- Werre, *v. S.* to war, 1070, 1077, 1173; *pp.* werred, 3997.
- Werwolf, *n. S.* man-wolf, *passim*; *pl.* werwolfs, 2540. Cf. P. Pl. Crede, 459.
- Wery, *adj. S.* weary, 2236; wo wery, weary with woe, 793. See the note.
- Weues, *pr. s. trans.* sways, causes to waver, makes to vacillate, causes to change from hope to fear and from fear to hope, keeps in agitation, 922; *infm. intr.* weue, waver or hover in the air, 4368. [In the latter case, Sir F. Madden calls it the *pp.*, but we may translate it, "the ashes of her body (shall) waver in the wind." The A.S. verb is *wafian*, to waver. Cf. G. *wæben*, (*intr.*) to float about.]
- Wened, *pt. s.* raised, lifted, 2978. [The word implies a *swaying* or quivering motion in the thing lifted; see the preceding word. Cf. "*weflen* up þa castles ȝate" = weighed up the castle-gate; *Lazamon*, iii. 373; and see *Werynge* in Prompt. Parv. In P. Pl. A. vi. 92, for *To wyne vp þe wicket-ȝat* two MSS. have *To weue out þe wyket*.]
- Wexe, *v. S.* to grow, become, 124; — wex, 563, 737, † 668; *pr. s. subj.* wex, 266; *pt. s.* wax, 630, 785, 828, 1035, 1204, 1911, 2053, 2222, 4095; wex to = became, 140; *pt. pl.* waxen, 2931; *pp.* wox, 109, 798; wexen, 1776; woxen, † 54. Ch.
- Whyte. See Waite.
- Wham, *pron. S.* whom, 314, 441, 769, 1275, 4155. [In l. 4340 it is spelt *wahan*, unless we supply *hire*, which is preferable.]
- Whan, *pt. s.* procured, 2852. See Winne.
- Whan, *adv.* when, 305, 308, 744, &c.; —whanne, 80, 145, &c.; —wanne, ll. 854, 1262; —wan, 2484, 4026; —wen, 2821; —wahan, (*read* whan?), 1572.
- Whar, *adv.* where, 394; —war, 3832. Wharbi, why, 2256.
- Whar, *adj.* aware, 3382. See War.
- Whas, *pron.* whose, 1441.
- Whas, *pul. for* Was, 3912.
- Whasche, *pp.* washed, 2997. See Waschen.

- What = what if, 549.
- What rink so, whatsoever man, 1193.
- What, *put for* Wot, knows, 1172. *See* Wite.
- Whatow, *put for* What þow, what thou, 4066.
- Whedir, Whederward. *See* Whider.
- Whennes, *adv.* whence, 478, 3122.
- Where, *put for* Were, 261, 502, 2750.
- Where, *adv.* whether, 2946; — wher, 799. Ch.
- Where as, where that, 1782.
- Whiche, *used in the sense* what sort of, 1777, 2705, 3118. *See* Wich.
- Whider, *adv.* whither, 104, 701, 948, 2659; — whedir. 2309. *Whider* sometimes has the sense of *where*, as in 2486.
- Whiderward, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 105, 223, 2167; — whederward, 2827. Whiderward as, wherever, 2830.
- While, *n. S.* while, time, 15, 574; — wile, 79, 487; — wille, 988.
- While, *adv.* whilst, 2537; — wile, 537; — whille, 129; — wil, 1492, 2277, 5228, 5536. Ch.
- Whiles, *adv. S.* meanwhile, 2736. "Is formed, like *nedes*, from the *gen. case*. Hence our *whilst*."—M. Cf. *Whilis*, Wycl. Gloss.
- Whiles, *n. pl. S.* wiles, 862.
- Whilum, *adv.* sometimes, at times, 1788; — whilom, in former times, formerly, 2846. [In † 521 *whilome* is a gloss for *ilome*, q. v.] As *whiles* is the *gen. sing.* of A.S. *hwil*, so *whilum* is the *dat. plural*. Ch.
- White, *v.* *See* Wite (to blame).
- Whi3, *n.* *See* Wei3.
- Whi3t, *n.* *See* Wi3t.
- Wic. *See* Wicke.
- Wicche, *v. S.* to practise witchcraft, use sorcery, 2539; *pp.* wicched, bewitched, 4427. A.S. *wiccian*.
- Wicchecraft, *n. S.* witchcraft, 118, 120, 4427; — wicchecraft, 4044.
- Wice, *n. S.* wise, way, 4380. Cf. Weiges, Wise.
- Wich, *pron. acc. sing.* what, 3981; *acc. pl. masc.* whom, 4093, 4161. Wiche a = what sort of a, 3354; wiche an = what sort of a (*referring to the hart only, and we must suppose wiche repeated before an hinde*), 2820.
- Wicke, *adj.* wicked, evil, bad, 4599; — wic. 4652; — wicked (*applied to ways*), 3507. Ch.
- Wide, *v. S.* to grow mad, 1509. The A.S. is *wedan*, and *wide* is perhaps miswritten for *wede*. Cf. A-wede.
- Wide where a-boute, *adv. S.* abroad, everywhere, 2605, 4763; — wide wher a-boute, 82, 2202. The word wide went, 1569. "A phrase much used in our old writers. See notes to Havelok, l. 959."—M. Cf. P. Pl. A. ix. 53, and Ch.
- Wie3s, Wie3es. *See* Wei3.
- Wikkedly, *adv. S.* cruelly, dangerously, 1218.
- Wil, Wile, Wille. *See* While.
- Willeful, *adj. S.* willing, desirous, bent upon, 5493; — wilfull, † 412. Wycl. Gloss.
- Wilfulli, *adv. S.* willingly, with good will, readily, heartily, 1782, 3300, 3322, 4733; — wilsfully, † 590. Ch.
- Willenyng, *n. S.* wish, desire, choice, 3983. Cf. A.S. *willnung*.
- William, *gen. case*, 1221, 1372.
- Wilne, *v. S.* to wish for, desire, 719, 3563, 4597, 4736; — wilne, 3983, 3985; 1 *p. s. pr.* wilne,

- 4732; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wilne, 3343; *pr. s.* wilnes, 265, 301, † 622; *pr. pl.* wilnen after, 59; 1 *p. s. pt.* wilned, 4132; *pt. s.* wilned, 3925, 4590; *imp. s.* wilne, 4734; *pp.* wilned, 2134. Ch.
- Wilsofully. *See* Wilfulli.
- Wilsum, *adj.* S. loved, desirable, amiable, 5394.
- Winne, *v. S.* to win, acquire, come (*used much as we use get colloquially*); winne in sigt = get in sight, come in sight, 94; winne hom = get home, 2457; winne him awei = get him away, 3623; winne þe = get hold of thee, 4263; winne nere him, get near him, 3889; 1 *p. s. pt.* wan, 2026; *pt. s.* wan (got), 190, 1920, 2500; (came), 2498; wanne, 3973; whan, 2852; wan in (came in), 4237; wan bi (went by), 417; wan vp (got up), 3259; *pt. pl.* wonne, 1224, 2242; *pp.* wonne, 82, 1117.
- Wirch, Wirchen, Wirches. *See* Werehe.
- Wirdernesse, *probably an error for* wildernesse, 3311.
- Wise, *n. S.* way, manner, 485, 490, &c.;—wice, 4380. Ch.
- Wisli, *adv. S.* truly, verily, 2947, 3118;—wisly, 661;—wiseli, 4615;—wisseli, 673, 721; wislich, † 754. Ch.
- Wisse, *v. tr. S.* to make to know, to teach, instruct, shew, tell, 1356, 1666, 2110, 3086; (to protect), † 806;—wissen, 640; *pr. s. subj.* wisse, 1804; *pt. s.* wissed, 2207, 2716, 2727; wist, 172; *pt. pl.* wissed, 5445; *imp. s.* wisses, 4004. P. Pl.
- Wisse; *phr.* i wot wel to wisse, I know for certain, 3397. *Here wisse seems to be an adj.* (A.S. *gewis*, Old S. *uwiss*, certain). *Cf.* l. 4114.
- Wit-oute, *prep.* without, 2573.
- Wite, *v. S.* to blame, 458, 530, 4705, † 972;—white, 304; 1 *p. s.* *pr.* wite, 900; *pp.* wited, 519; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 2069; wite, 4335, 4600, 5525. Ch.
- Wite, *v.* to keep, guard, preserve, 257; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* 302; *pt. s.* wited, 176; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 3008. *See* Gloss. to Havclok and Lazamon.
- Wite, *v. S.* to know, 542, 560, 1458, 2081, 2733, &c.; 1 *p. s. pr.* wot, 105, 239, 316, 478, 697, &c.; wott, † 754; 2 *p. s. pr.* wost, 4065; wostou (= wost þou), 2274; *pr. s. wot*, 314, 1871; what, 1172; 2 *p. pl. pr.* witen, 4328; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* wite, 281; *pr. s. subj.* wite, 937; *pt. s.* wist, 40, 375, 690, 951, 1118, † 334, &c.; wiste, 145, 830, 836; *pt. pl.* wisten, 2195, 5283, † 372; wist, 1663; *imp. s.* wite, 38; white, 1884; witow (= wite þou) 68, 105, 300, &c.; wittow, 375, 752; wittou, 3178; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 4351. Lete wite, 2171. Do vs to wite, 1459. Ch.
- Witerly, *adv.* plainly, openly, clearly, unmistakably, certainly, 40, 229, 289, 316, 533, 624, 680;—witerli, 5288;—witterli, 667, 815, 2705;—witterly, 491, 514, 1407. *Cf.* Dan. *vitterlig*, publicly known. Ch.
- Wip, *prep.* with (*used in the sense of* by), 1060, 1367, 1492;—wizt, 2177; wizth, 163; *cf.* þerwizt in l. 138. *Observe* ll. 411, 824.
- Wip-drow him, *pt. s. repl.* with-drew, 2993; *pt. pl.* wip-drow hem, 1285.
- Withlich. *See* Wiztly.
- Wip-oute, *prep.* besides, 1291.
- With-sede, *pt. s.* gainsaid, contradicted, opposed, 3930. Ch.
- Wip-patow, on condition that thou, 3161.
- Wiptli. *See* Wiztly.
- Witly. *See* Wittily.
- Witte, *n. S.* senses, reason, understanding, 1204, 1483, &c.;—witt, 36, 142; *pl.* wittes, 468. Ch.

- Wittened, *pt. pl.* imputed it to be, ascribed it as being, 3162. [*Placed under Wite*, to know, by Sir F. Madden, but may it not be from A.S. *witan*, which has the sense to ascribe (honour) as well as to impute (blame)? If so, it may be connected with A.S. *witnian*, a derived form of the same *witan*. Cf. "Witton' or retton'. *Imputo*." Prompt. Parv.]
- Wittily, *adv.* S. wisely, prudently, sagaciously, 2602; — wittili, 3364, 4112; — wityl, 259, 1259.
- Witty, *adj.* S. possessed of reason, sagacious, wise, skilled, 145, 158, 2712, 2832; — witthi, 2182; — witti, 2204. Wycl. Gloss.
- Wiue, *n.* S. wife, 242; *dat.* wine, 2916.
- Wizh, Wizes, Wizhes. See Weiz.
- Wizt, Wizth, *prep.* See Wip.
- Wizt, *n.* S. a wight, person, 407, 655, 786; — wizth, 758; — whizt, 4037; — wight, † 590; *pl.* wightes, † 598. Ch.
- Wizt, *adj.* nimble, active, agile, brave, 2877, 3349; — wight, 3293; — wyght, † 54; *comp.* wiztere, 3441; wiztere, 3576. Sw. *vig.* See Prompt. Parv. and Ch.
- Wiztly, *adv.* nimbly, actively, quickly, bravely, 92, 140, 489, 669, 791, &c.; — wiztli, 135, 265, 1861, 4188; — wizliche, 65, 310, 1195; — wightly, † 3; — withlich, † 326; — wiptli (*or* wyptli), 1695; — wiztthli, 3612; — wiztthli, 3581; — wizttili, 3640. [*The spelling wizth in the former edition (in l. 1861) is a misprint for wiztli.*]
- Wlonke, *adj.* S. gay, proud, elate, grand (*spoken of mirth*), 1634; (*of a den*), 80; (*of wits*), 468. [*In the two latter places it is written woluk.* The A.S. is *wlonc*, *wlonc*; the Old Saxon is *wlonc*, arrogant, proud.]
- Wo, *n.* S. woe, sorrow; *spelt* wozh, 514; wo3, 1483. Him was wo, 1167. Wo is me. 1642.
- Wod, *adj.* S. mad, 36, 554, 715, 1483, 1770, &c. Ch.
- Wodly, *adv.* S. madly, 550; — wodli, 3583, 4026. Ch.
- Wol, *1 p. s. pr.* I will, 486, 533, 607, 906, &c.; *2 p. s.* wolt (wilt), 324, 4263; *3 p. s.* wol, 326, 452, 5126; wol sche = is she willing, 4203; *1 p. pl. pr.* wol, 2260; *2 p. pl.* wol, 4004; *1 p. s. pt.* wold, 457, 1558; *pt. s.* wold, 529, &c.; *pt. pl.* wold, 5185. *The form wil also occurs, as in 1568.* [*Schal is more often used than wol. Ne wil is contracted into nel, and ne wold into nold.*]
- Wold, *n.* S. power, possession, 4429. A.S. *wald*. G. *gewalt*.
- Wolnk. See Wlonke.
- Won, *n.* S. quantity, † 546. Ch. The A.S. is *wian*, what is acquired, a winning; in *Lazamon* are the *pl.* forms *wiane* and *wunnen*, possessions.
- Won, *n.* S. any dwelling-place; hence, a town, a country, a place, † 164, † 237, † 337; — wonne, † 598, † 622. Cf. A.S. *wun-stowe*, a dwelling-place.
- Wonde, *v.* S. to hesitate from fear, hesitate to say, 4071, † 347; — wond, 614; *imp. s.* wonde, 275. A.S. *wandian*, to fear. *Wond* = to fear, occurs in *Kyng Alisaunder* (Weber's *Metr. Rom.*), l. 6525. Cf. Ch. Leg. Good Women. Dido, 262.
- Wonded, *pp.* wounded, 1377. Ch.
- Wonder, *adj.* S. wonderful, strange, 1873, 2786. Ch.
- Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 1895.
- Wonderli, *adv.* wonderfully, surprisingly, 1214, 1668, 2535; — wonderliche, 345; wonderly, 3682.
- Wonne. See Winne, and Won.
- Wonye, *v.* S. to dwell, 3312; *pr. s.* wonep, 4471; *pt. s.* woned, 4, 1492; *pp.* woned, 3311. A.S. *wunian*. Ch.



- Woode, *adj.* S. mad, † 914. *See* Wod.
- Worche, Worcheþ. *See* Werehe.
- Worcheþ, *n.* S. worship, honour, 551, 4000; — worchepe, 497, 515; — worchip, 618; — worchipe, 1324, 3343.
- Worchipeþ, *pr. s.* honoureth, 511.
- Worchipfulli, *adv.* S. honourably, 5157.
- Word, *possibly an error for* wizh, 883. *See* the note.
- Wore, *written for* Were, 2370, 2485.
- Worli, Worliche. *See* Worþliche.
- Worþ, *written for* Wroþ, *adj.* 4335. *Cf.* 2002.
- Worþi, *adj.* S. worthy, honoured, dear, 2792, 2795; *contracted to* worþ (= A.S. *weorð*), 2498, 2522, 2990.
- Worþliche, *adj.* S. worthy, dear, 1814; — worthlich, † 596; wortlych, † 1024; worþiliche, 1642; worþili, 2786; worliche, 2700; worli, 138.
- Worþli, *adv.* S. worthily, honourably, 673, 3202.
- Worþe, *v.* S. to be, to become, 327, 3081; 3 *p. s. imp.* worþe, 2567; *pr. s.* worþ (*with future signification*, will become, will be), 2534, 2667, 2947, 3341; (*used as an auxiliary verb*, will be), 1673, 4181, 4253; *pl.* worþ, 2291. Wo worþ me, wo be to me, 4118. Late me worþ, let me be, let me alone, 2355, 3597; lete hym worthe, † 1186. A.S. *weorðan*. G. *werden*. Mæso-Goth. *weirþan*.
- Woruzt, *written for* Wrouzt, 5182.
- Wot, Wost, Wostou. *See* Wite.
- Wox. *See* Wexe. [In l. † 337 *wox* should rather have been *wax*.]
- Wozh. *See* Wo.
- Woves, *n. pl.* S. walls, † 1122. A.S. *wāh*. Wycl. Gloss.
- Wraped, 1 *p. s. pt.* made angry, 981.
- Wreche, *n.* S. revenge, vengeance, 3404, † 937. A.S. *wraec*. Ch.
- Wreche, *v.* S. to revenge, avenge, wreak vengeance, † 806; — wreke, 1111, 3335; *pp.* wroke, 5431; wroken, † 76. Ch.
- Wrong, *adj.* false, 706.
- Wronger, *comp. adv.* more wrongly, 1176.
- Wroþli, *adv.* S. angrily, wrathfully, 3683, 3738; — wroþliche, 2074.
- Wrouzt, 1 *p. s. pt.* I wrought, did, 3694; — wroust, 725; *pl.* wrouzten, 3873; wroust, 1571; *pp.* wrought, † 76; wruzt, 1503. *Cf.* Werehe.
- Wus, *n.* S. ooze, juice, † 712, † 813. A.S. *wōs*.
- Wynli, *adv.* pleasantly, 749. A.S. *wynlic*, pleasant. [Explained as *laboriously, carefully*, by Sir F. Madden; as if from A.S. *wiu*, labour. *See* *wynne* in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, and *wynuelych*, pleasant, in *Gawayne and Grene Knigt*, l. 980.]
- [For past participles beginning with I- or Y-, see below, and also under I-.]
- Y-armed, armed, † 230.
- Y-charged, loaded, 182.
- Y-clepuð, called, 121. Ch.
- Y-gladed, gladdened, 850.
- Ytryed, selected, choice, 1233. F. *trier*, to pick, select.
- Yeeme. *See* 3eme.
- Yern, *n.* iron, † 1119, † 1133. *Cf.* *Irn*.
- Y-fere, together, 2267. *See* I-fere.
- Yie, *n.* S. eye, † 277, † 451; *pl.* yien, † 182. *See* Eijen.
- Y-now, enough, 836, † 8, † 265. *See* I-now.

- Yond, *adv.* yonder, 263 ;—zond, 846. *See* zond. Ch.
- Youlden, *pt. pl.* yielded, † 304. *See* zeld.
- Y-wisse, *adv.* verily, 846, 937 ;—y-wis. † 465. *See* I-wisse.
- 3** in these poems is equivalent to *y* at the beginning of a word, as in *3a*, *3ate*; to *gh* in *nigt*, *burw3*; in *3he* it seems to be a guttural; *cf.* *hue*. But it is also found (perhaps by mistake) in place of *p* in the words *3anked*, *3out*, *3ourh*.
- 3a**, *adv.* S. yea, 268, 326, 923, 1380, 2255, 2585, 3245, 3723, 4728, 4742, 5367, 5432;—*3e*, 2275, 3493. *See* *3is*.
- 3af**. *See* *3eue*.
- 3ain-torn**, *n.* S. way of escape, 3552. *Cf.* *A3en-turn*.
- 3ald**, **3alde**. *See* *3elden*.
- 3anked**, *pt. s.* thanked, 642.
- 3are**, *adj.* S. quick, nimble, ready, 895, 1963, 3265, &c.; *sup.* *3arest*, 2729.
- 3ate**, *n.* S. gate, 3757 ; *pl.* *3ates*, 3267, 3649, † 304. Ch.
- 3e**. *See* *3a*, *3is*. Also, *see* *3on*.
- 3ede**, *pt. s.* went, 1767 ; *pt. pl.* 1429, 2199, 2238; *3eede*, † 304. Ch.
- 3ef**, *if*, 1677. *See* *3if*.
- 3eft**, *n.* S. a gift, 3664 ; *pl.* *3iftes*, 1061, 5357. Ch.
- 3elden**, *v.* to yield, requite, 3019 ; *3elde*, 321, 601, 3941; *zeld*, 319, 1547; *pr. s.* *zeldes*, 234; *pt. s.* *3alde*, 3661; *3ald*, 1256; *pt. pl.* *3olde*, 2708; *youlden*, † 304; *imp. s.* *zeld*, 1252, 3917; *3 p. s. imp.* *3elde*, 4711. Ch.
- 3eme**, *v.* S. to take care of, to take charge of, rule, provide for, 91, 2734, 3219, † 318, † 365, † 439; *yeeme*, † 43; *pr. s.* *3emes*, 2790; *pt. s.* *3emed*, 2806; *pt. pl.* *3emed*, 3267, 3320. Ch.
- 3epi**, *adv.* S. quickly, 3346, 3649, 3596, 3941;—*3eply*, 1252. A.S. *gæp*, shrewd. P. Pl.
- 3erd**, *n.* S. wand, rod (yard), † 481.
- 3ere**, *n. pl.* years, 1040 ;—*3er*, 5369;—*3eres*, 1057. P. Pl.
- 3erne**, *v.* S. to yearn for, wish for, 58, 1633, 4730; *pt. s.* *3erned*, 782.
- 3erne**, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, soon, fast, 1893, 2027, 2197, &c.; al so *3ern* (very soon), 2043. P. Pl.
- 3er-while**, *adv.* erewhile, a short time ago, 1246, 3104.
- 3ete**, *adv.* yet, 2274 ;—*3it*, 186, 577, 609;—*3ut*, 515, 800, 993;—*3utte*, 1955.
- 3eue**, *v.* S. to give, 1110 ; *3inen*, 2963; *3if*, 5071; *3 p. imp. s.* *3if*, 258, 876, 5536; *pt. s.* *3af*, 5381; *pp.* *3euen*, 2857; *3eue*, 1471, 5355; *3ue*, 2254. Ch.
- 3he**, *she*, 141, 172, 1983. *Cf.* *Hue*.
- 3if**, *if*, 147, 172, 324, &c.;—*3ef*, 1677. But *3if* (except), 472.
- 3is**, *yes*, 697, 1567, 2260, 3184, 3490, 4731, 4746, 5149. *See* *3a*. [There is certainly a distinction between *3a* (*3e*) and *3is*. *3a* = I admit that, granted that, that's true, or else it simply answers a simple question; but *3is* is an affirmative of great force = yes, I swear it, by all means, and is often followed by *i-wisse*, *certes*, *bi marie*, *bi erist*, or it answers a question involving a negative. *See* Marsh, Lectures, 1st Series, p. 579.]
- 3ister-neue** (= *3istern-eue*), yesterday evening, yesterday evening, 2160.
- 3it**. *See* *3ete*.
- 3olde**. *See* *3elden*.
- 3omen**, *n. pl.* yeomen, 3649.
- 3ond**, *adj.* yon, 3384;—*3one*, 4572; *þe 3ond* (the person yonder), 3052. *Cf.* *Yond*, *adv.* Mæso-Goth. *jains*. G. *jener*.

<p>3ore, <i>adv.</i> S. long ago, formerly, 1503, 2513, 3298;—for 3ore, 4174;—full 3ore, 4046.</p> <p>3ou, you, 262; —3ow, 238; —3ouz, 634, 2262, 3121; —ow, 106. <i>It is the acc. case, the nom. being</i> 3e, 251, 269.</p>	<p>3ourh (<i>used for</i> þourh), through, 3799.</p> <p>3out (<i>used for</i> þout), <i>n.</i> thought, 447.</p> <p>3ut, 3utte. <i>See</i> 3ete.</p>
--	--

NOTE. Dr Stratmann (in his Dictionary of Old English) cites examples from the poem of "William of Palerne" thus: "*hel*, a hill. *Will. Gloss.* 229." The numbers merely refer to the page of the glossary in which the word is found, not to the pages or lines of the poem. The references in the glossary to the edition by Sir F. Madden are to the pages of the book, and the following list is given, in order to shew with what line each page of his book begins. Most of his pages contain 28 lines, but page 1 contains only 16; page 16 has 24 lines; p. 131 has 27 lines; p. 170 has 26 lines; p. 177 has 27 lines; p. 196 has 27 lines; and p. 199 has 17 lines, being the last page of the text.

PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE
1	1	5	101	9	213	13	325
2	17	6	129	10	241	14	353
3	45	7	157	11	269	15	381
4	73	8	185	12	297	16	409
						17	433

To find with what line any one of the succeeding pages begins, we must multiply the number of the page by 28, subtracting 43 for pp. 18—131; subtracting 44 for pp. 132—170; subtracting 46 for pp. 171—177; and subtracting 47 for pp. 178—196. Thus p. 196 begins with line  $196 \times 28 - 47 = 5441$ . Page 197 begins with l. 5468; p. 198 with l. 5496; and p. 199 with l. 5524.

## INDEX OF NAMES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book ; otherwise, the references are to the lines.]

Abelot, 363.

Acelone, l. 42 on p. 2 ; — Achilles, 4775.

Akarin, 364.

ALISAUNDRINE, daughter of the duke of Lombardy, p. 28 ; advises and assists Melior, pp. 28, 29 ; causes William to dream, p. 30 ; brings Melior to find William, pp. 34—41 ; aids the lovers to escape, pp. 59—62 ; excuses them to the emperor, p. 69 ; meets Melior again, p. 156 ; is betrothed to Braundis, p. 159 ; is married, p. 160.

Almauns, Germans of Saxony, 1165.

ALPHOUS (THE WERWOLF), steals William away, p. 3 ; leaves William in the den, p. 7 ; sees William adopted by the cowherd's wife, p. 9 ; his father was king of Spain, p. 10 ; he is made a WERWOLF by his stepmother, p. 10 ; finds that William and Melior are dressed up in bear-skins, and guards them, and provides them with food, pp. 65—67 ; saves them from the hounds, p. 75 ; brings them to Benevento, p. 75 ; saves their lives by stealing

the provost's son, pp. 80—83 ; kills a hart and a hind for them, p. 86 ; brings them to Reggio, p. 90 ; helps them over the Straits, pp. 91—94 ; is seen by the queen of Palermo, p. 113 ; salutes the king of Spain, p. 129 ; threatens his stepmother, pp. 139, 140 ; is disenchanted, p. 142 ; is embraced by William, p. 144 ; he falls in love with Florence, p. 144 ; tells William's history, pp. 147—150 ; is betrothed to Florence, p. 151 ; is married, p. 160 ; is made king of Spain, p. 167 ; meets William for the last time, p. 168 ; swears friendship to William once more, p. 172.

Apulia. *See* Poyle.

Bonuent, Benevento, 2221 ; — Boneuent, 4692.

BRAUNDE, BRAUNDEN, *or* BRAUNDINE. is queen of Spain, and princess of Portugal, p. 10 ; enchants Alphous, p. 10 ; receives an embassy from her lord, pp. 135, 136 ; goes to Palermo, p. 137 ; is attacked by the werwolf, p. 139 ; disenchant him, p. 141 ; returns to Spain, p. 164.

- BRAUNDINIS, BRAUNDNIS, *or* BRAUNDYNS, prince of Spain, asks Florence in marriage, p. 88; is taken prisoner by William, p. 117; is betrothed to Alisaundrine, p. 159; is married, p. 160; comes to Palermo, p. 168; returns home, p. 171. [The name occurs in ll. 4944, 5299, 5411.]
- Calabre, Calabria, 2628, 5512.
- Cisile, Sicily, 2603, 2628.
- Ebrouns. *See* Embrons.
- Edwardes, (King) Edward's, 166, 5531. [Sir Humfrey de Bohun's mother was a daughter of King Edward I.]
- EMBRONS, *or* EBROUNS, king of Palermo, p. 2; loses his son William, p. 3; pursues the werwolf without success, pp. 4—6; dies, p. 88; the story of his horse Saundbruel, pp. 106, 107; his resemblance to his son William, p. 119.
- Englysch, English, 168.
- Far, a name for the Straits of Messina. *See* page 4, and the note.
- FELICE, queen of Palermo, and daughter of the emperor of Greece, p. 2; her grief at losing her son William, p. 5; is besieged in Palermo by the king of Spain, p. 94; her dream, p. 95; the dream expounded, pp. 96, 97; she encourages her knights, p. 99; she puts on a hind's skin, p. 100; she overhears about Melior's dream, p. 102; addresses William, p. 103; takes the hides off William and Melior, p. 105; sees the werwolf, p. 113; perceives a likeness between William and King Ebrouns, p. 119; discovers that William is her son, p. 147; her dream comes true, p. 174.
- FLORENCE, daughter to the queen of Palermo, and sister to William, is sought in marriage by Braundyns, p. 94; is admitted to see the werwolf after his disenchantment, p. 143; marries Alphouns, p. 160. [The name occurs in l. 4490.]
- Frensche, 167, 5522, 5533.
- Gergeis, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2200. *Possibly miswritten for* Gregeis. *Cf.* Gryffouns.
- Gloriande, l. 41 on p. 2;—Gloriauns, 4775.
- Glouseter, 166.
- Greece, a grom of, 1767.
- GREECE, EMPEROR OF, is father to Queen Felice, p. 2; sends an embassy to Rome, p. 53; comes to Rome, p. 58; raises a hue and cry after William and Melior, p. 73; sends an embassy to Palermo, p. 157.
- Greece, prince of. *See* Partendon.
- Grewes, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2080. *See* Gryffouns.
- Gryffouns, *n. pl.* Greeks, 1961. Roquefort gives the forms *Gréu*, *Gréus*, *Gréyois*, *Grifous*, &c., as equivalent to the Lat. *Græcus*. Hence the forms *Gregeis* (miswritten *Gergeis*), *Grewes*, and *Gryffouns* in the present poem.
- Hereford, 5530;—Herford, 165.
- Huet, 362.
- Hugones, Hugo's, 363.
- Hugonet, 362.
- Humfray de Bowne, 165;—Humfray de Bonne, 5530. [Sir Walter Scott rimes *de Bonne* with *soon*; Lord of the Isles, Bk VI. c. xiv.]
- Kostant-noble, Constantinople, 1425.
- Krist, Christ, 1315.
- Lumbardie, 585, 1315.

- Marie, 838, 2229, 2698, &c.
- Martynot, 363.
- Meliadus, 3846, 3858, 3863, 3869.
- MELIOR, *or* MELIORS, daughter of the emperor of Rome, p. 19; falls in love with William, p. 23; her soliloquy, pp. 23—26; is comforted by Alisaundrine, p. 28; goes to the garden, p. 34; and finds William asleep there, p. 35; is betrothed to William, p. 40; is wooed by the prince of Greece, p. 53; escapes with William, disguised as a bear, pp. 61—67; arrives at Benevento, p. 75; is saved by the werwolf, pp. 76—81; is disguised as a bind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; is nearly killed by a barge-boy, p. 92; comes to Palermo, p. 93; her dream, p. 102; is received by the queen of Palermo, p. 105; her meeting with her father, p. 156; is married to William, p. 160; is crowned empress of Rome, p. 169; her children, p. 174. *See* William.
- Midesomer, Midsummer, 1464.
- Moyses, Moses, the name of a priest, 2918, 3025.
- Nauerne, Navarre, 4076.
- Palerne, Palermo, l. 61 on p. 3; 2838, 4223, 4287; *spelt* Pallerne, 2628.
- PALERNE, QUEEN OF. *See* Felice.
- PARTENDO, *or* PARTENEDON, son of the emperor of Greece, and brother of Queen Felice, woos Melior, p. 53; waits at church for his bride, who does not come, p. 65; arrives at Palermo, p. 157; returns to Greece, 161. [The name occurs in lines 4930, 4939, 5039, 5078, 5088.]
- Payenes, Pagan's, 364.
- Petyr, cherche of seynt, 1956.
- Pope, 1957.
- Portingale, Portugal, 116.
- Poyle, Apulia, 156, 2628, 5512.
- Rise, Reggio, 2717. "It is so termed by the French and Italian Romancers of the middle ages. *See* Panizzi's *Life of Bojardo*, vol. ii. p. lxxxii. *n.* The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martinière's Dictionary, sub v. *Riez*."—M.
- Roachas, 1437.
- Romaynes, Romans, 5167.
- ROME, EMPEROR OF, finds William in a forest, p. 13; talks to the cowherd, p. 14; adopts William, pp. 15—19; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 42—49; consents that his daughter Melior shall marry Partenedon, p. 54; loses Melior, p. 68; his wrath, pp. 69—71; finds his daughter at Palermo, p. 155; his last advice to Melior, p. 163; his death, p. 166.
- Saundbruel (a horse), 3585.
- Saxoyne, duke of, 1068, 1108, 1318.
- SPAYNE, KING OF, father of Alphouns the werwolf, p. 9; marries Braunde, p. 10; besieges Palermo, p. 88; seeks to revenge his son Braundinis, p. 121; is taken prisoner, p. 127; is saluted by the werwolf, p. 129; tells William his story, pp. 131, 132; escorts Melior to church, p. 160; returns to Spain p. 165; his death, p. 167.
- Spain, prince of. *See* Braundinis.
- Spaynols, Spaniards, 3631, 3770, 5168;—Spaynoles, 3399;—Spaynolus, 3529;—Spaynolnes, 3357.
- WILLIAM (OF PALERNE), son of King Ebrouns and Queen Felice, p. 2; stolen by the werwolf, pp. 3—6; found and adopted by a cowherd, pp. 7—9; found and adopted by the emperor of Rome, pp. 13—23; is beloved by Melior, p. 23;

dreams of Melior, p. 39; betrothed to Melior, p. 40; is knighted, p. 43; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 45—49; his sickness, p. 55; is healed, p. 57; escapes with Melior, disguised as a bear, pp. 59—65; is saved by the werwolf, p. 75; hides with Melior in a quarry, p. 76; bids Melior save herself, p. 79; takes off the bear-skin, p. 81; hides with Melior in a forest, p. 82; is nearly discovered by some colliers, p. 84; disguises himself as a hart, and Melior as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; embarks secretly in a ship with Melior, p. 91; carries her to land, p. 92; is found by the queen of Palermo, p. 103; undertakes to

assist her, p. 104; has a *werwolf* painted on his shield, p. 105; mounts King Ebrouns' horse, p. 107; attacks the Spaniards, pp. 110—112, 117—126; takes prisoner Prince Braundinis, p. 118; and the king of Spain, p. 127; sends for Queen Braunden to disenchant the werwolf, p. 134; embraces Alphouns, p. 144; his story and parentage, pp. 147—150; is king of Apulia, p. 154; marries Melior, p. 160; is emperor of Rome, p. 167; creates the cowherd an earl, p. 170; his wise rule, p. 173; his children, p. 174.

William (the author's name), 5521.

## INDEX OF NAMES TO "ALISAUNDER."

Ægypt, 454.

Alisaunder, son of Amyntas, 22, 27, 37.

Alisaunder, son of Philip, 1034, 1049, 1095, 1148, &c.

Amon, 661, 727, 805.

Amyntas, 13.

Arabes, 498.

Arisba. *See* Erubel.

Aristote (Aristotle). *See* page 211.

Arofagi, *a corruption of* Agriophagi, i. e. eaters of *wild* animals, 500.

Artasarses, 491.

Assyriens (*a mistake for* Illyriens), 109, 130.

Assyrie (*a mistake for* Illyrie), 159.

Attènes, Athens, 157; — Attens, 898; — Attanus, 90.

Atteniens, Athenians, 415; — Attenicins, 902, 938.

Augmi *or* Augni, 498.

Barbre, Barbary (*a mistake for* Barbarians, Lat. *Barbari*), 533, 536.

Bosorij, 499.

Byzaunce, Byzantium, 1208; — Byzancee, 1222.

Cappadoee, Cappadocia (*a mistake for* Chalcidice), 944, 1111.

Comothonham (*a corrupt name for* Methone). *See* Methone.

Constantine, 1225.

Constantinoble, 1223; — Constantinople, 1229.

Egipt, 486, 534, &c.

Elaine, Helen (mother of Constantine), 1226.

Enomanus, 429.

Epaminondas, 52, 75.

- Erubel, 172 ;—Eruba, 240.  
Ethiope, Æthiopia, 552.
- Eurydice, 34.
- Greece, 258, &c.
- Jupiter (the planet), 1077.
- Komothonham (*a corrupt spelling of Methone*). See Methone.
- Lacedemonie, 335, 336, 417, 444 ;—Lacedemoine, 449, 879.  
Lacedemonieins, 351.  
Larissea, 119 ;—Larisse, 131, 161.  
Latine, 458.
- Macedoine, 14, 59, &c.  
Medie, 495.  
Mercurie (the planet), 1077.  
Mesopotamic, 497.  
Methone, 255, 310 ; *corruptly spelt* Comothonham, 255 ; *and* Komothonham, 310.  
Molosor (*also* Malasor), *a corruption of* Molossis, 173, 204.
- Nectanabus, 459, 505, &c.
- Olympias, 177, 576, &c.
- Pausanias, 1218, 1246.  
Perce, Persia, 492, 494 ;—Perss, 462, 471.  
Perthe, Parthia, 494.  
Philip, *passim*.  
Philomelo, 364, 421.  
Phocus, Phocis, 365, 413, 428, 446, 878 ;—Phocos, 336.  
Phosus, *pl.* Phocians, 391.
- Roome, 103, 1224.
- Seraphin, Serapis, 557, 572.  
Sparte, 1246.  
Syria, 496.
- Tebeniens, Thebans, 877 ;—Tebeniens, 351, 380.  
Tebs, Thebes, 51, 71 ;—Tebss, 94.  
Tessalonie, Thessalonica, 913.













1880-1881

1

PR  
1119  
E5  
no.1

Early English Text  
Society  
[Publications]  
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

